Welcome to Corel VideoStudio

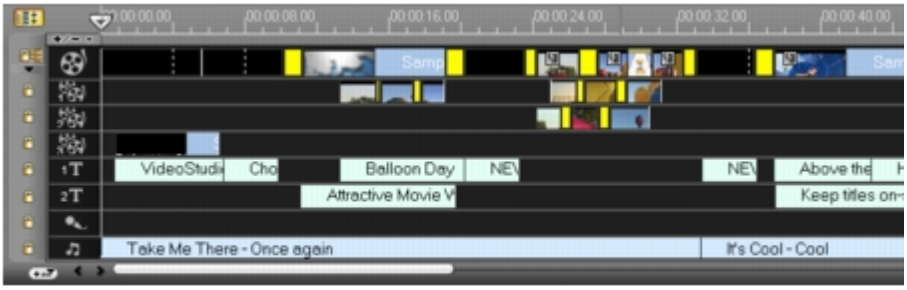
Thank you for purchasing VideoStudio, the video editing software that allows even beginners to produce professional-looking movies. VideoStudio provides you with a complete set of tools to capture videos, edit them, and share your final production on a VCD, DVD, BD or the Web.
Note: The availability of features depends on the VideoStudio version you have.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

How VideoStudio works

VideoStudio follows a step-by-step paradigm that lets you easily capture, edit, and share your video. VideoStudio also offers more than a hundred transition effects, professional titling capabilities and simple soundtrack creation tools. Learn in seconds, create in minutes.

To make a movie production, you need to capture footage from a camcorder or another video source. You can then trim the captured videos, arrange their order, apply transitions, add overlays, animated titles, voiceover narration, and background music. These elements are organized on separate tracks. Changes to one track do not affect other tracks.



Components of a project as displayed in Timeline View

A movie production is in the form of a VideoStudio project file (*.VSP), which contains information on the path location of the clips and how the movie has been put together. After you have finished your movie production, you can burn it to a VCD, DVD, BD or record the movie back to your camcorder. You can also output your movie as a video file for playback on the computer, import it to mobile devices or share it online.

VideoStudio uses the information in the video project file to combine all the elements in your movie into a video file through a process called
rendering.

VideoStudio contains a sample finished project that lets you have a general overview of most of the features that are available in the program. This sample project also lets you experiment and get a general feel of how to use VideoStudio. Select
Sample Project from the VideoStudio program group on the Windows Start menu.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Getting started

Before you install VideoStudio, make sure that your system meets the minimum hardware and software requirements to get optimal performance.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

System requirements

For general and Proxy HDV Editing

Intel® Pentium® 4 3.0 GHz, AMD Athlon® XP 3000+ or higher with Hyper-Threading technology

Microsoft® Windows® XP SP2 Home Edition/Professional, Windows® XP Media Center Edition, Windows® XP Professional x64 Edition, Windows® Vista

512 MB of RAM or higher (1 GB of RAM may be recommended depending on the video capture device used)

1 GB of available hard disk space for program installation

Windows-compatible sound card (multi-channel sound card for surround sound support recommended)

Windows-compatible DVD-ROM for installation

Non-Proxy HDV editing

Intel® Pentium® 4 3.0 GHz or higher with Hyper-Threading technology

Microsoft® Windows® XP (Service Pack 2 for HDV camcorder support recommended)

1 GB of RAM (2GB or more recommended)

16X PCI ExpressTM display adapter

Input/Output Device Support

1394 FireWire cards for use with DV/D8/HDV*/AVCHD* camcorders

Support for OHCI Compliant IEEE-1394 and 1394 Adaptec 8940/ 8945

Analog capture cards for analog camcorders (VFW & WDM support for XP and BDA support for Vista)

Analog and Digital TV capture device (BDA support)

USB capture devices, PC cameras, and DVD/hard drive camcorders

Windows® compatible Blu-ray, DVD-R/RW, DVD+R/RW, DVD-RAM or CD-R/RW drive

Apple iPod with video*, iPod Touch, iPhone, Sony PSP*, WMV Pocket PC, WMV Smartphone, Nokia Mobile phone, Microsoft Zune

* Pro version

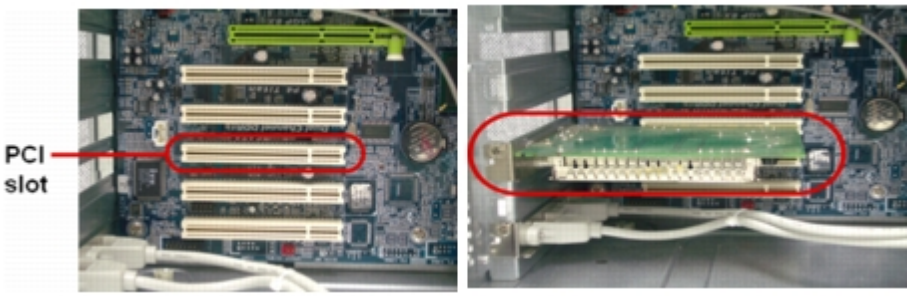
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Setting up your computer

Before you can start making movie projects using your own video footage, you first need to capture video from your video camera into your computer. Your computer needs to be equipped with the proper capture card or interface port for connecting your video camera and for capturing video to your computer. Since capturing and video editing require a lot of computer resources, your computer must also be properly set up to ensure successful capturing and smooth editing of your videos.

Installing a capture card

If your capture card is a PCI-based card, install the card on your computer by inserting it in an available PCI slot on the computer's motherboard.



Note: The type of capture card or interface port that you will need to connect your video camera to your computer depends on the type of video camera you have.

Connecting a video camera to the computer

Use an IEEE-1394 cable to connect your digital camcorder to the IEEE-1394 port. Before purchasing one, check first the pin connectors used on your camcorder and your computer. Most DV and Digital 8 camcorders have 4-pin connectors, whereas desktop computers that come with IEEE-1394 ports or installed with IEEE-1394 cards usually have 6-pin connectors. The IEEE-1394 cable that is required for desktop computers is a 4-pin to 6-pin cable. Most laptop computers have 4-pin connectors which require a 4-pin to 4-pin cable.



Connecting the IEEE-1394 cable to the DV camcorder





Connecting a 4-pin to 6-pin IEEE-1394 cable to a desktop computer





Connecting a 4-pin to 4-pin IEEE-1394 cable to a laptop computer

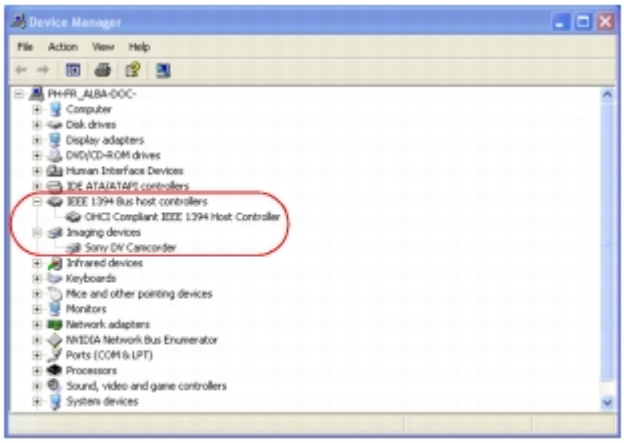
Checking the hardware setup

After connecting your digital camcorder to the computer, check if the device is detected by your Windows system. If you installed an IEEE-1394 card on your computer, check also if the card is detected.

To check if the IEEE-1394 card and digital camcorder are detected:

1 Insert your video tape into the camcorder and switch it on. Make sure it is in playback mode (usually named VTR or
VCR). Check your camcorder's manual for specific instructions.

2 Open the Control Panel, then open
System: Hardware - Device Manager.
3 Make sure the following device names are listed in the
Device Manager.
Under Windows XP: 1394 Bus Controller <Brand name> DV Camcorder (The brand name depends on the DV camcorder connected to the IEEE-1394 interface.)



Windows XP: Device Manager

4 If your digital camcorder has been detected properly, it will be listed as a source device in VideoStudio's **Options Panel**. In VideoStudio, select the Capture Step and check if your camcorder is displayed under the Source list in the **Options Panel**

.

Note: In addition to commonly used Texas Instruments and Microsoft DV drivers, there are other drivers available. Consult your camcorder's manual for suitable drivers.

Connecting a USB camera

To capture live video and still images from a USB camera, connect the camera to an available USB port on your computer.

USB cameras may require installation of a device driver, depending on the Windows version you are using. For information on how to install your USB camera, refer to its accompanying manual. AVCHD camcorders also use USB connections to copy video files to your hard drive.

After properly installing your USB camera, check if it is detected by your Windows system.

To check if the USB camera is detected:

1 Open the Control Panel, then open
System: Hardware - Device Manager.

2 In the Device Manager, double-click
Imaging devices. Check if your USB camera is listed in this folder.

3 If your USB camera has been detected properly, it will be listed as a source device in VideoStudio's **Options Panel**. In VideoStudio, select the Capture Step and check if your USB camera is displayed under the Source list in the **Options Panel**

.

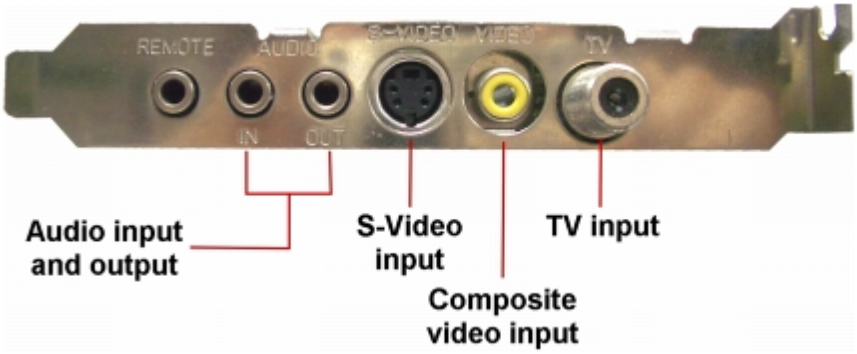
Connecting a digital TV

To capture digital television broadcasts, you need to install a Digital TV capture card or a digital TV adapter. Check the hardware's user guide to learn information on how to connect it to your computer.

Connecting analog video sources

VHS, S-VHS, Video-8, and Hi8 camcorders and VCRs are examples of analog video sources. To capture video from analog sources, you will need to install an analog capture card in your computer. Conventional broadcast television is also an analog source. To capture TV footage, you need to have a TV tuner card installed in your computer.

Note: TV capture cards provide S-Video/Composite inputs and a TV tuner, which can be used to capture both video and TV footage.



Connecting the video device to the analog capture card

To connect your video device to the analog capture card, use either an S-Video or RCA Composite cable depending on your device's video output. If your video device has both types of output, use the S-Video connection for higher video quality captures.



S-Video cable



Connecting the S-Video source to the capture card

If you want to use the Composite output of your video device, connect the yellow plugs of the Composite cable to the video output of your your video device and the video input port of the analog capture card.



Composite cable



Connecting the Composite video source to the capture card

Most higher-end analog capture cards do not have the S-Video / Composite input ports crowded on the side of the cards. Instead, these cards come with an external breakout box that provides all the video input ports at the front of the box. Video devices can be connected to the capture card more easily through the breakout box.



Breakout box

Connecting a TV antenna to the tuner card

A tuner card has a TV antenna input ju st like the regular television monitor. Plug your TV antenna to the TV connector of the tuner card.



TV antenna cable



Connecting TV antenna to the tuner card

Note: When purchasing a tuner card, make sure you acquire one that provides the correct TV system (NTSC or PAL) for your region.

Connecting the capture or tuner card to the sound card

Most capture and tuner cards only allow video capture. To preview the audio from your video device or TV and to capture the audio into your computer, you need to connect the audio output of the capture or tuner card to the sound card's Line In port. The required cables for connecting to the sound card are different for each type of video source.



Line-in and audio cables for S-Video



S-Video connection



Line-in and audio cables for Composite video



Composite video connection



Line-in cable for TV tuner card



TV tuner connection



Line-in cable for high-end TV capture card



High-end TV capture card connection

Connecting optical drives

To burn or author your video projects onto a VCD, DVD or BD, you need to connect their respective optical drive burners to enable you to output your projects to your desired formats. Check the hardware's user guide to learn information on how to connect it to your computer.

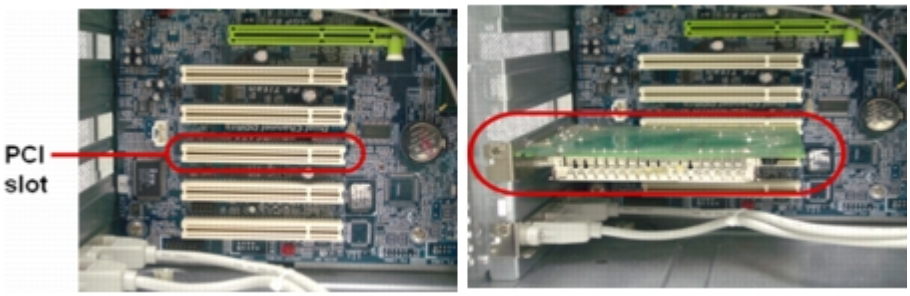
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Setting up your computer

Before you can start making movie projects using your own video footage, you first need to capture video from your video camera into your computer. Your computer needs to be equipped with the proper capture card or interface port for connecting your video camera and for capturing video to your computer. Since capturing and video editing require a lot of computer resources, your computer must also be properly set up to ensure successful capturing and smooth editing of your videos.

Installing a capture card

If your capture card is a PCI-based card, install the card on your computer by inserting it in an available PCI slot on the computer's motherboard.



Note: The type of capture card or interface port that you will need to connect your video camera to your computer depends on the type of video camera you have.

Connecting a video camera to the computer

Use an IEEE-1394 cable to connect your digital camcorder to the IEEE-1394 port. Before purchasing one, check first the pin connectors used on your camcorder and your computer. Most DV and Digital 8 camcorders have 4-pin connectors, whereas desktop computers that come with IEEE-1394 ports or installed with IEEE-1394 cards usually have 6-pin connectors. The IEEE-1394 cable that is required for desktop computers is a 4-pin to 6-pin cable. Most laptop computers have 4-pin connectors which require a 4-pin to 4-pin cable.



Connecting the IEEE-1394 cable to the DV camcorder





Connecting a 4-pin to 6-pin IEEE-1394 cable to a desktop computer





Connecting a 4-pin to 4-pin IEEE-1394 cable to a laptop computer

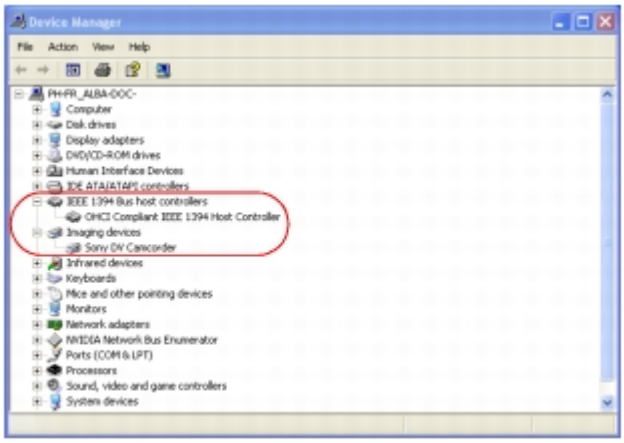
Checking the hardware setup

After connecting your digital camcorder to the computer, check if the device is detected by your Windows system. If you installed an IEEE-1394 card on your computer, check also if the card is detected.

To check if the IEEE-1394 card and digital camcorder are detected:

1 Insert your video tape into the camcorder and switch it on. Make sure it is in playback mode (usually named VTR or
VCR). Check your camcorder's manual for specific instructions.

2 Open the Control Panel, then open
System: Hardware - Device Manager.
3 Make sure the following device names are listed in the
Device Manager.
Under Windows XP: 1394 Bus Controller <Brand name> DV Camcorder (The brand name depends on the DV camcorder connected to the IEEE-1394 interface.)



Windows XP: Device Manager

4 If your digital camcorder has been detected properly, it will be listed as a source device in VideoStudio's **Options Panel**. In VideoStudio, select the Capture Step and check if your camcorder is displayed under the Source list in the **Options Panel**

.

Note: In addition to commonly used Texas Instruments and Microsoft DV drivers, there are other drivers available. Consult your camcorder's manual for suitable drivers.

Connecting a USB camera

To capture live video and still images from a USB camera, connect the camera to an available USB port on your computer.

USB cameras may require installation of a device driver, depending on the Windows version you are using. For information on how to install your USB camera, refer to its accompanying manual. AVCHD camcorders also use USB connections to copy video files to your hard drive.

After properly installing your USB camera, check if it is detected by your Windows system.

To check if the USB camera is detected:

1 Open the Control Panel, then open
System: Hardware - Device Manager.

2 In the Device Manager, double-click
Imaging devices. Check if your USB camera is listed in this folder.

3 If your USB camera has been detected properly, it will be listed as a source device in VideoStudio's **Options Panel**. In VideoStudio, select the Capture Step and check if your USB camera is displayed under the Source list in the **Options Panel**

.

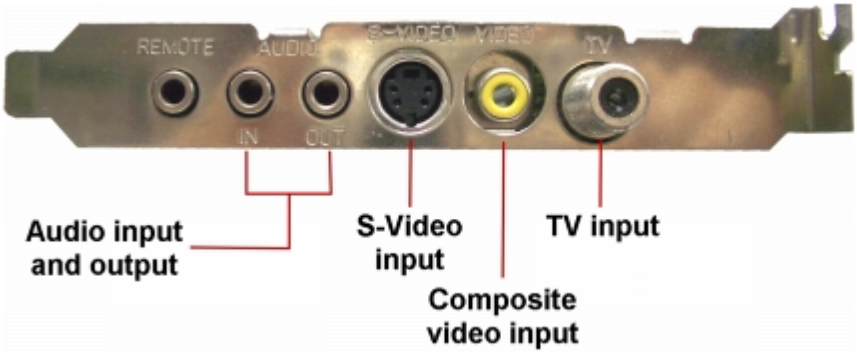
Connecting a digital TV

To capture digital television broadcasts, you need to install a Digital TV capture card or a digital TV adapter. Check the hardware's user guide to learn information on how to connect it to your computer.

Connecting analog video sources

VHS, S-VHS, Video-8, and Hi8 camcorders and VCRs are examples of analog video sources. To capture video from analog sources, you will need to install an analog capture card in your computer. Conventional broadcast television is also an analog source. To capture TV footage, you need to have a TV tuner card installed in your computer.

Note: TV capture cards provide S-Video/Composite inputs and a TV tuner, which can be used to capture both video and TV footage.



Connecting the video device to the analog capture card

To connect your video device to the analog capture card, use either an S-Video or RCA Composite cable depending on your device's video output. If your video device has both types of output, use the S-Video connection for higher video quality captures.



S-Video cable



Connecting the S-Video source to the capture card

If you want to use the Composite output of your video device, connect the yellow plugs of the Composite cable to the video output of your your video device and the video input port of the analog capture card.



Composite cable



Connecting the Composite video source to the capture card

Most higher-end analog capture cards do not have the S-Video / Composite input ports crowded on the side of the cards. Instead, these cards come with an external breakout box that provides all the video input ports at the front of the box. Video devices can be connected to the capture card more easily through the breakout box.



Breakout box

Connecting a TV antenna to the tuner card

A tuner card has a TV antenna input ju st like the regular television monitor. Plug your TV antenna to the TV connector of the tuner card.



TV antenna cable



Connecting TV antenna to the tuner card

Note: When purchasing a tuner card, make sure you acquire one that provides the correct TV system (NTSC or PAL) for your region.

Connecting the capture or tuner card to the sound card

Most capture and tuner cards only allow video capture. To preview the audio from your video device or TV and to capture the audio into your computer, you need to connect the audio output of the capture or tuner card to the sound card's Line In port. The required cables for connecting to the sound card are different for each type of video source.



Line-in and audio cables for S-Video



S-Video connection



Line-in and audio cables for Composite video



Composite video connection



Line-in cable for TV tuner card



TV tuner connection



Line-in cable for high-end TV capture card



High-end TV capture card connection

Connecting optical drives

To burn or author your video projects onto a VCD, DVD or BD, you need to connect their respective optical drive burners to enable you to output your projects to your desired formats. Check the hardware's user guide to learn information on how to connect it to your computer.

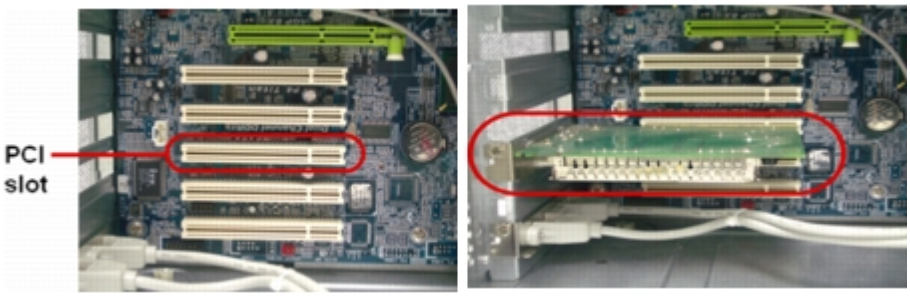
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Setting up your computer

Before you can start making movie projects using your own video footage, you first need to capture video from your video camera into your computer. Your computer needs to be equipped with the proper capture card or interface port for connecting your video camera and for capturing video to your computer. Since capturing and video editing require a lot of computer resources, your computer must also be properly set up to ensure successful capturing and smooth editing of your videos.

Installing a capture card

If your capture card is a PCI-based card, install the card on your computer by inserting it in an available PCI slot on the computer's motherboard.



Note: The type of capture card or interface port that you will need to connect your video camera to your computer depends on the type of video camera you have.

Connecting a video camera to the computer

Use an IEEE-1394 cable to connect your digital camcorder to the IEEE-1394 port. Before purchasing one, check first the pin connectors used on your camcorder and your computer. Most DV and Digital 8 camcorders have 4-pin connectors, whereas desktop computers that come with IEEE-1394 ports or installed with IEEE-1394 cards usually have 6-pin connectors. The IEEE-1394 cable that is required for desktop computers is a 4-pin to 6-pin cable. Most laptop computers have 4-pin connectors which require a 4-pin to 4-pin cable.



Connecting the IEEE-1394 cable to the DV camcorder





Connecting a 4-pin to 6-pin IEEE-1394 cable to a desktop computer





Connecting a 4-pin to 4-pin IEEE-1394 cable to a laptop computer

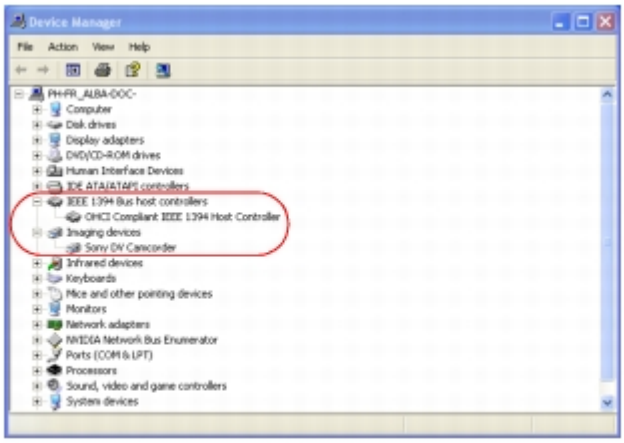
Checking the hardware setup

After connecting your digital camcorder to the computer, check if the device is detected by your Windows system. If you installed an IEEE-1394 card on your computer, check also if the card is detected.

To check if the IEEE-1394 card and digital camcorder are detected:

1 Insert your video tape into the camcorder and switch it on. Make sure it is in playback mode (usually named VTR or
VCR). Check your camcorder's manual for specific instructions.

2 Open the Control Panel, then open
System: Hardware - Device Manager.
3 Make sure the following device names are listed in the
Device Manager.
Under Windows XP: 1394 Bus Controller <Brand name> DV Camcorder (The brand name depends on the DV camcorder connected to the IEEE-1394 interface.)



Windows XP: Device Manager

4 If your digital camcorder has been detected properly, it will be listed as a source device in VideoStudio's **Options Panel**. In VideoStudio, select the Capture Step and check if your camcorder is displayed under the Source list in the **Options Panel**

.

Note: In addition to commonly used Texas Instruments and Microsoft DV drivers, there are other drivers available. Consult your camcorder's manual for suitable drivers.

Connecting a USB camera

To capture live video and still images from a USB camera, connect the camera to an available USB port on your computer.

USB cameras may require installation of a device driver, depending on the Windows version you are using. For information on how to install your USB camera, refer to its accompanying manual. AVCHD camcorders also use USB connections to copy video files to your hard drive.

After properly installing your USB camera, check if it is detected by your Windows system.

To check if the USB camera is detected:

1 Open the Control Panel, then open
System: Hardware - Device Manager.

2 In the Device Manager, double-click
Imaging devices. Check if your USB camera is listed in this folder.

3 If your USB camera has been detected properly, it will be listed as a source device in VideoStudio's **Options Panel**. In VideoStudio, select the Capture Step and check if your USB camera is displayed under the Source list in the **Options Panel**

.

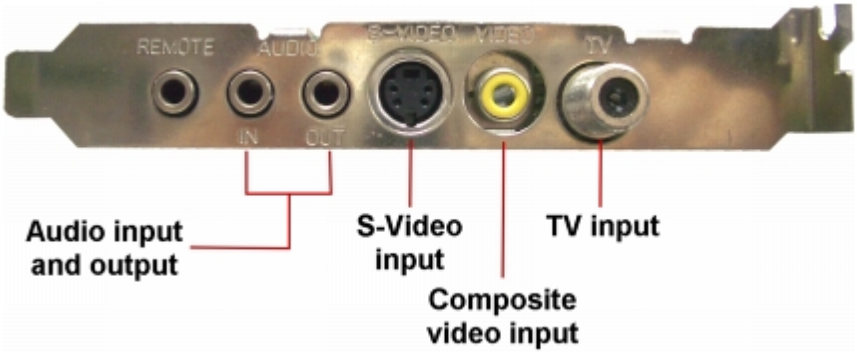
Connecting a digital TV

To capture digital television broadcasts, you need to install a Digital TV capture card or a digital TV adapter. Check the hardware's user guide to learn information on how to connect it to your computer.

Connecting analog video sources

VHS, S-VHS, Video-8, and Hi8 camcorders and VCRs are examples of analog video sources. To capture video from analog sources, you will need to install an analog capture card in your computer. Conventional broadcast television is also an analog source. To capture TV footage, you need to have a TV tuner card installed in your computer.

Note: TV capture cards provide S-Video/Composite inputs and a TV tuner, which can be used to capture both video and TV footage.



Connecting the video device to the analog capture card

To connect your video device to the analog capture card, use either an S-Video or RCA Composite cable depending on your device's video output. If your video device has both types of output, use the S-Video connection for higher video quality captures.



S-Video cable



Connecting the S-Video source to the capture card

If you want to use the Composite output of your video device, connect the yellow plugs of the Composite cable to the video output of your your video device and the video input port of the analog capture card.



Composite cable



Connecting the Composite video source to the capture card

Most higher-end analog capture cards do not have the S-Video / Composite input ports crowded on the side of the cards. Instead, these cards come with an external breakout box that provides all the video input ports at the front of the box. Video devices can be connected to the capture card more easily through the breakout box.



Breakout box

Connecting a TV antenna to the tuner card

A tuner card has a TV antenna input ju st like the regular television monitor. Plug your TV antenna to the TV connector of the tuner card.



TV antenna cable



Connecting TV antenna to the tuner card

Note: When purchasing a tuner card, make sure you acquire one that provides the correct TV system (NTSC or PAL) for your region.

Connecting the capture or tuner card to the sound card

Most capture and tuner cards only allow video capture. To preview the audio from your video device or TV and to capture the audio into your computer, you need to connect the audio output of the capture or tuner card to the sound card's Line In port. The required cables for connecting to the sound card are different for each type of video source.



Line-in and audio cables for S-Video



S-Video connection



Line-in and audio cables for Composite video



Composite video connection



Line-in cable for TV tuner card



TV tuner connection



Line-in cable for high-end TV capture card



High-end TV capture card connection

Connecting optical drives

To burn or author your video projects onto a VCD, DVD or BD, you need to connect their respective optical drive burners to enable you to output your projects to your desired formats. Check the hardware's user guide to learn information on how to connect it to your computer.

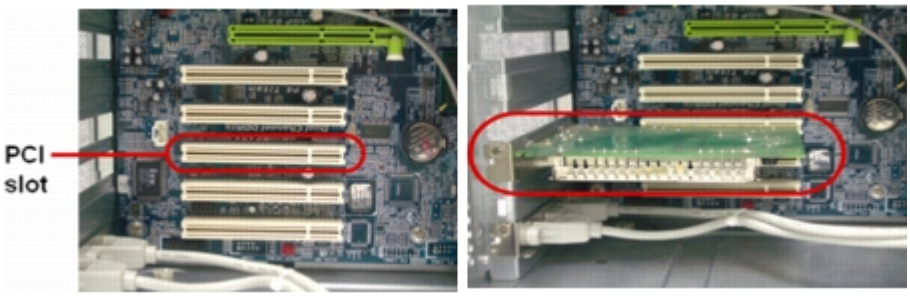
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Setting up your computer

Before you can start making movie projects using your own video footage, you first need to capture video from your video camera into your computer. Your computer needs to be equipped with the proper capture card or interface port for connecting your video camera and for capturing video to your computer. Since capturing and video editing require a lot of computer resources, your computer must also be properly set up to ensure successful capturing and smooth editing of your videos.

Installing a capture card

If your capture card is a PCI-based card, install the card on your computer by inserting it in an available PCI slot on the computer's motherboard.



Note: The type of capture card or interface port that you will need to connect your video camera to your computer depends on the type of video camera you have.

Connecting a video camera to the computer

Use an IEEE-1394 cable to connect your digital camcorder to the IEEE-1394 port. Before purchasing one, check first the pin connectors used on your camcorder and your computer. Most DV and Digital 8 camcorders have 4-pin connectors, whereas desktop computers that come with IEEE-1394 ports or installed with IEEE-1394 cards usually have 6-pin connectors. The IEEE-1394 cable that is required for desktop computers is a 4-pin to 6-pin cable. Most laptop computers have 4-pin connectors which require a 4-pin to 4-pin cable.



Connecting the IEEE-1394 cable to the DV camcorder





Connecting a 4-pin to 6-pin IEEE-1394 cable to a desktop computer





Connecting a 4-pin to 4-pin IEEE-1394 cable to a laptop computer

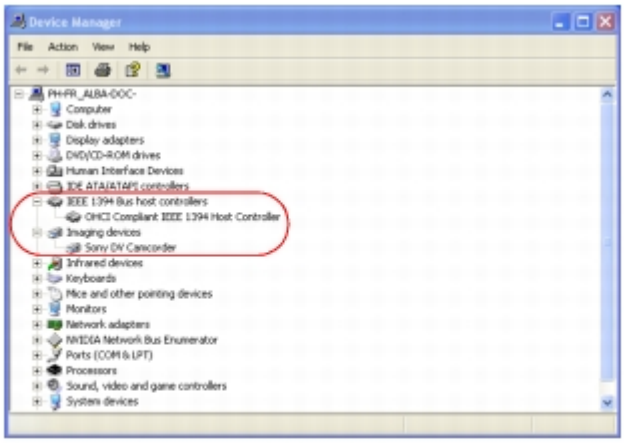
Checking the hardware setup

After connecting your digital camcorder to the computer, check if the device is detected by your Windows system. If you installed an IEEE-1394 card on your computer, check also if the card is detected.

To check if the IEEE-1394 card and digital camcorder are detected:

1 Insert your video tape into the camcorder and switch it on. Make sure it is in playback mode (usually named VTR or
VCR). Check your camcorder's manual for specific instructions.

2 Open the Control Panel, then open
System: Hardware - Device Manager.
3 Make sure the following device names are listed in the
Device Manager.
Under Windows XP: 1394 Bus Controller <Brand name> DV Camcorder (The brand name depends on the DV camcorder connected to the IEEE-1394 interface.)



Windows XP: Device Manager

4 If your digital camcorder has been detected properly, it will be listed as a source device in VideoStudio's **Options Panel**. In VideoStudio, select the Capture Step and check if your camcorder is displayed under the Source list in the **Options Panel**

.

Note: In addition to commonly used Texas Instruments and Microsoft DV drivers, there are other drivers available. Consult your camcorder's manual for suitable drivers.

Connecting a USB camera

To capture live video and still images from a USB camera, connect the camera to an available USB port on your computer.

USB cameras may require installation of a device driver, depending on the Windows version you are using. For information on how to install your USB camera, refer to its accompanying manual. AVCHD camcorders also use USB connections to copy video files to your hard drive.

After properly installing your USB camera, check if it is detected by your Windows system.

To check if the USB camera is detected:

1 Open the Control Panel, then open
System: Hardware - Device Manager.

2 In the Device Manager, double-click
Imaging devices. Check if your USB camera is listed in this folder.

3 If your USB camera has been detected properly, it will be listed as a source device in VideoStudio's **Options Panel**. In VideoStudio, select the Capture Step and check if your USB camera is displayed under the Source list in the **Options Panel**

.

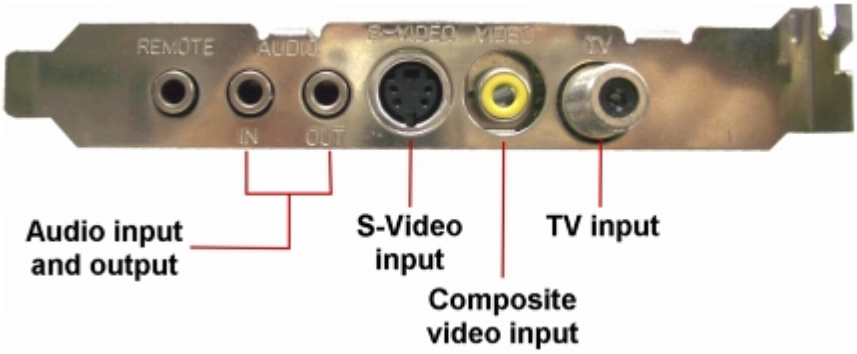
Connecting a digital TV

To capture digital television broadcasts, you need to install a Digital TV capture card or a digital TV adapter. Check the hardware's user guide to learn information on how to connect it to your computer.

Connecting analog video sources

VHS, S-VHS, Video-8, and Hi8 camcorders and VCRs are examples of analog video sources. To capture video from analog sources, you will need to install an analog capture card in your computer. Conventional broadcast television is also an analog source. To capture TV footage, you need to have a TV tuner card installed in your computer.

Note: TV capture cards provide S-Video/Composite inputs and a TV tuner, which can be used to capture both video and TV footage.



Connecting the video device to the analog capture card

To connect your video device to the analog capture card, use either an S-Video or RCA Composite cable depending on your device's video output. If your video device has both types of output, use the S-Video connection for higher video quality captures.



S-Video cable



Connecting the S-Video source to the capture card

If you want to use the Composite output of your video device, connect the yellow plugs of the Composite cable to the video output of your your video device and the video input port of the analog capture card.



Composite cable



Connecting the Composite video source to the capture card

Most higher-end analog capture cards do not have the S-Video / Composite input ports crowded on the side of the cards. Instead, these cards come with an external breakout box that provides all the video input ports at the front of the box. Video devices can be connected to the capture card more easily through the breakout box.



Breakout box

Connecting a TV antenna to the tuner card

A tuner card has a TV antenna input ju st like the regular television monitor. Plug your TV antenna to the TV connector of the tuner card.



TV antenna cable



Connecting TV antenna to the tuner card

Note: When purchasing a tuner card, make sure you acquire one that provides the correct TV system (NTSC or PAL) for your region.

Connecting the capture or tuner card to the sound card

Most capture and tuner cards only allow video capture. To preview the audio from your video device or TV and to capture the audio into your computer, you need to connect the audio output of the capture or tuner card to the sound card's Line In port. The required cables for connecting to the sound card are different for each type of video source.



Line-in and audio cables for S-Video



S-Video connection



Line-in and audio cables for Composite video



Composite video connection



Line-in cable for TV tuner card



TV tuner connection



Line-in cable for high-end TV capture card



High-end TV capture card connection

Connecting optical drives

To burn or author your video projects onto a VCD, DVD or BD, you need to connect their respective optical drive burners to enable you to output your projects to your desired formats. Check the hardware's user guide to learn information on how to connect it to your computer.

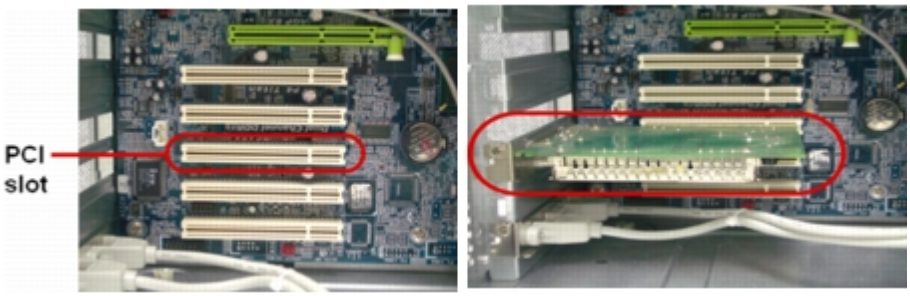
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Setting up your computer

Before you can start making movie projects using your own video footage, you first need to capture video from your video camera into your computer. Your computer needs to be equipped with the proper capture card or interface port for connecting your video camera and for capturing video to your computer. Since capturing and video editing require a lot of computer resources, your computer must also be properly set up to ensure successful capturing and smooth editing of your videos.

Installing a capture card

If your capture card is a PCI-based card, install the card on your computer by inserting it in an available PCI slot on the computer's motherboard.



Note: The type of capture card or interface port that you will need to connect your video camera to your computer depends on the type of video camera you have.

Connecting a video camera to the computer

Use an IEEE-1394 cable to connect your digital camcorder to the IEEE-1394 port. Before purchasing one, check first the pin connectors used on your camcorder and your computer. Most DV and Digital 8 camcorders have 4-pin connectors, whereas desktop computers that come with IEEE-1394 ports or installed with IEEE-1394 cards usually have 6-pin connectors. The IEEE-1394 cable that is required for desktop computers is a 4-pin to 6-pin cable. Most laptop computers have 4-pin connectors which require a 4-pin to 4-pin cable.



Connecting the IEEE-1394 cable to the DV camcorder





Connecting a 4-pin to 6-pin IEEE-1394 cable to a desktop computer





Connecting a 4-pin to 4-pin IEEE-1394 cable to a laptop computer

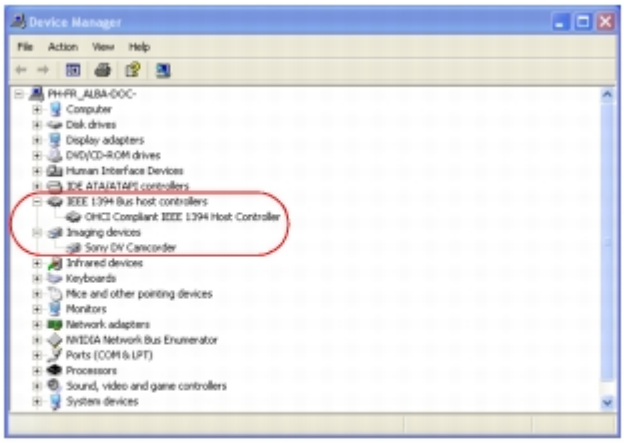
Checking the hardware setup

After connecting your digital camcorder to the computer, check if the device is detected by your Windows system. If you installed an IEEE-1394 card on your computer, check also if the card is detected.

To check if the IEEE-1394 card and digital camcorder are detected:

1 Insert your video tape into the camcorder and switch it on. Make sure it is in playback mode (usually named VTR or
VCR). Check your camcorder's manual for specific instructions.

2 Open the Control Panel, then open
System: Hardware - Device Manager.
3 Make sure the following device names are listed in the
Device Manager.
Under Windows XP: 1394 Bus Controller <Brand name> DV Camcorder (The brand name depends on the DV camcorder connected to the IEEE-1394 interface.)



Windows XP: Device Manager

4 If your digital camcorder has been detected properly, it will be listed as a source device in VideoStudio's **Options Panel**. In VideoStudio, select the Capture Step and check if your camcorder is displayed under the Source list in the **Options Panel**

.

Note: In addition to commonly used Texas Instruments and Microsoft DV drivers, there are other drivers available. Consult your camcorder's manual for suitable drivers.

Connecting a USB camera

To capture live video and still images from a USB camera, connect the camera to an available USB port on your computer.

USB cameras may require installation of a device driver, depending on the Windows version you are using. For information on how to install your USB camera, refer to its accompanying manual. AVCHD camcorders also use USB connections to copy video files to your hard drive.

After properly installing your USB camera, check if it is detected by your Windows system.

To check if the USB camera is detected:

1 Open the Control Panel, then open
System: Hardware - Device Manager.

2 In the Device Manager, double-click
Imaging devices. Check if your USB camera is listed in this folder.

3 If your USB camera has been detected properly, it will be listed as a source device in VideoStudio's **Options Panel**. In VideoStudio, select the Capture Step and check if your USB camera is displayed under the Source list in the **Options Panel**

.

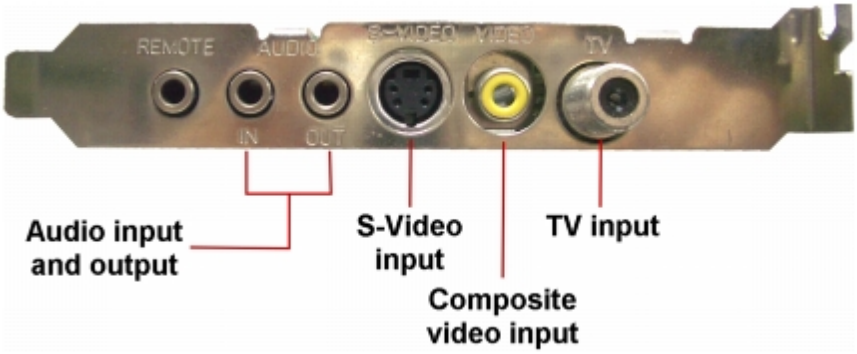
Connecting a digital TV

To capture digital television broadcasts, you need to install a Digital TV capture card or a digital TV adapter. Check the hardware's user guide to learn information on how to connect it to your computer.

Connecting analog video sources

VHS, S-VHS, Video-8, and Hi8 camcorders and VCRs are examples of analog video sources. To capture video from analog sources, you will need to install an analog capture card in your computer. Conventional broadcast television is also an analog source. To capture TV footage, you need to have a TV tuner card installed in your computer.

Note: TV capture cards provide S-Video/Composite inputs and a TV tuner, which can be used to capture both video and TV footage.



Connecting the video device to the analog capture card

To connect your video device to the analog capture card, use either an S-Video or RCA Composite cable depending on your device's video output. If your video device has both types of output, use the S-Video connection for higher video quality captures.



S-Video cable



Connecting the S-Video source to the capture card

If you want to use the Composite output of your video device, connect the yellow plugs of the Composite cable to the video output of your your video device and the video input port of the analog capture card.



Composite cable



Connecting the Composite video source to the capture card

Most higher-end analog capture cards do not have the S-Video / Composite input ports crowded on the side of the cards. Instead, these cards come with an external breakout box that provides all the video input ports at the front of the box. Video devices can be connected to the capture card more easily through the breakout box.



Breakout box

Connecting a TV antenna to the tuner card

A tuner card has a TV antenna input ju st like the regular television monitor. Plug your TV antenna to the TV connector of the tuner card.



TV antenna cable



Connecting TV antenna to the tuner card

Note: When purchasing a tuner card, make sure you acquire one that provides the correct TV system (NTSC or PAL) for your region.

Connecting the capture or tuner card to the sound card

Most capture and tuner cards only allow video capture. To preview the audio from your video device or TV and to capture the audio into your computer, you need to connect the audio output of the capture or tuner card to the sound card's Line In port. The required cables for connecting to the sound card are different for each type of video source.



Line-in and audio cables for S-Video



S-Video connection



Line-in and audio cables for Composite video



Composite video connection



Line-in cable for TV tuner card



TV tuner connection



Line-in cable for high-end TV capture card



High-end TV capture card connection

Connecting optical drives

To burn or author your video projects onto a VCD, DVD or BD, you need to connect their respective optical drive burners to enable you to output your projects to your desired formats. Check the hardware's user guide to learn information on how to connect it to your computer.

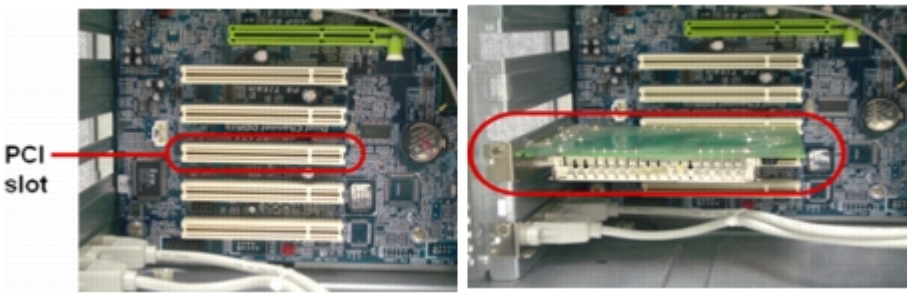
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Setting up your computer

Before you can start making movie projects using your own video footage, you first need to capture video from your video camera into your computer. Your computer needs to be equipped with the proper capture card or interface port for connecting your video camera and for capturing video to your computer. Since capturing and video editing require a lot of computer resources, your computer must also be properly set up to ensure successful capturing and smooth editing of your videos.

Installing a capture card

If your capture card is a PCI-based card, install the card on your computer by inserting it in an available PCI slot on the computer's motherboard.



Note: The type of capture card or interface port that you will need to connect your video camera to your computer depends on the type of video camera you have.

Connecting a video camera to the computer

Use an IEEE-1394 cable to connect your digital camcorder to the IEEE-1394 port. Before purchasing one, check first the pin connectors used on your camcorder and your computer. Most DV and Digital 8 camcorders have 4-pin connectors, whereas desktop computers that come with IEEE-1394 ports or installed with IEEE-1394 cards usually have 6-pin connectors. The IEEE-1394 cable that is required for desktop computers is a 4-pin to 6-pin cable. Most laptop computers have 4-pin connectors which require a 4-pin to 4-pin cable.



Connecting the IEEE-1394 cable to the DV camcorder





Connecting a 4-pin to 6-pin IEEE-1394 cable to a desktop computer





Connecting a 4-pin to 4-pin IEEE-1394 cable to a laptop computer

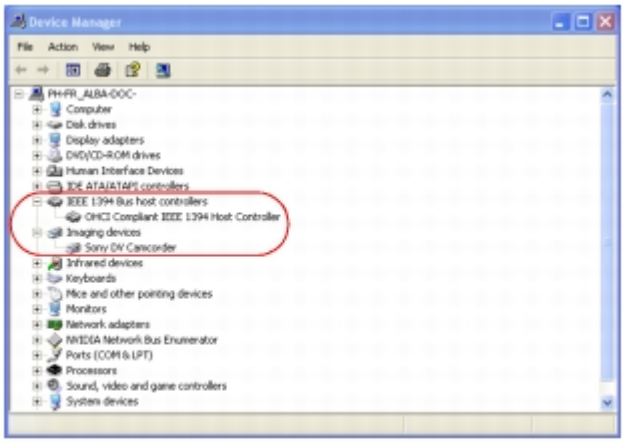
Checking the hardware setup

After connecting your digital camcorder to the computer, check if the device is detected by your Windows system. If you installed an IEEE-1394 card on your computer, check also if the card is detected.

To check if the IEEE-1394 card and digital camcorder are detected:

1 Insert your video tape into the camcorder and switch it on. Make sure it is in playback mode (usually named VTR or
VCR). Check your camcorder's manual for specific instructions.

2 Open the Control Panel, then open
System: Hardware - Device Manager.
3 Make sure the following device names are listed in the
Device Manager.
Under Windows XP: 1394 Bus Controller <Brand name> DV Camcorder (The brand name depends on the DV camcorder connected to the IEEE-1394 interface.)



Windows XP: Device Manager

4 If your digital camcorder has been detected properly, it will be listed as a source device in VideoStudio's **Options Panel**. In VideoStudio, select the Capture Step and check if your camcorder is displayed under the Source list in the **Options Panel**

.

Note: In addition to commonly used Texas Instruments and Microsoft DV drivers, there are other drivers available. Consult your camcorder's manual for suitable drivers.

Connecting a USB camera

To capture live video and still images from a USB camera, connect the camera to an available USB port on your computer.

USB cameras may require installation of a device driver, depending on the Windows version you are using. For information on how to install your USB camera, refer to its accompanying manual. AVCHD camcorders also use USB connections to copy video files to your hard drive.

After properly installing your USB camera, check if it is detected by your Windows system.

To check if the USB camera is detected:

1 Open the Control Panel, then open
System: Hardware - Device Manager.

2 In the Device Manager, double-click
Imaging devices. Check if your USB camera is listed in this folder.

3 If your USB camera has been detected properly, it will be listed as a source device in VideoStudio's **Options Panel**. In VideoStudio, select the Capture Step and check if your USB camera is displayed under the Source list in the **Options Panel**

.

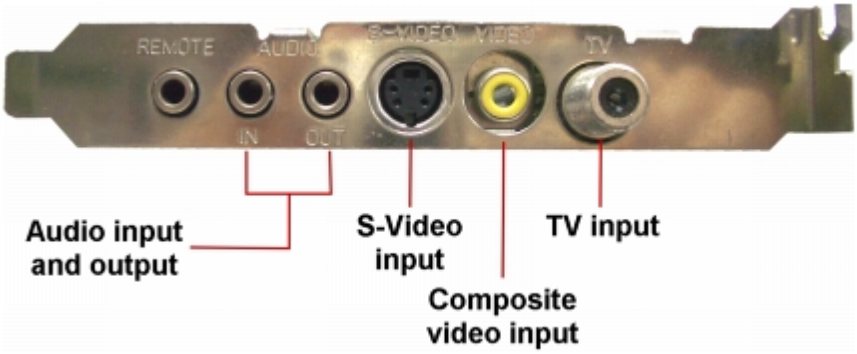
Connecting a digital TV

To capture digital television broadcasts, you need to install a Digital TV capture card or a digital TV adapter. Check the hardware's user guide to learn information on how to connect it to your computer.

Connecting analog video sources

VHS, S-VHS, Video-8, and Hi8 camcorders and VCRs are examples of analog video sources. To capture video from analog sources, you will need to install an analog capture card in your computer. Conventional broadcast television is also an analog source. To capture TV footage, you need to have a TV tuner card installed in your computer.

Note: TV capture cards provide S-Video/Composite inputs and a TV tuner, which can be used to capture both video and TV footage.



Connecting the video device to the analog capture card

To connect your video device to the analog capture card, use either an S-Video or RCA Composite cable depending on your device's video output. If your video device has both types of output, use the S-Video connection for higher video quality captures.



S-Video cable



Connecting the S-Video source to the capture card

If you want to use the Composite output of your video device, connect the yellow plugs of the Composite cable to the video output of your your video device and the video input port of the analog capture card.



Composite cable



Connecting the Composite video source to the capture card

Most higher-end analog capture cards do not have the S-Video / Composite input ports crowded on the side of the cards. Instead, these cards come with an external breakout box that provides all the video input ports at the front of the box. Video devices can be connected to the capture card more easily through the breakout box.



Breakout box

Connecting a TV antenna to the tuner card

A tuner card has a TV antenna input ju st like the regular television monitor. Plug your TV antenna to the TV connector of the tuner card.



TV antenna cable



Connecting TV antenna to the tuner card

Note: When purchasing a tuner card, make sure you acquire one that provides the correct TV system (NTSC or PAL) for your region.

Connecting the capture or tuner card to the sound card

Most capture and tuner cards only allow video capture. To preview the audio from your video device or TV and to capture the audio into your computer, you need to connect the audio output of the capture or tuner card to the sound card's Line In port. The required cables for connecting to the sound card are different for each type of video source.



Line-in and audio cables for S-Video



S-Video connection



Line-in and audio cables for Composite video



Composite video connection



Line-in cable for TV tuner card



TV tuner connection



Line-in cable for high-end TV capture card



High-end TV capture card connection

Connecting optical drives

To burn or author your video projects onto a VCD, DVD or BD, you need to connect their respective optical drive burners to enable you to output your projects to your desired formats. Check the hardware's user guide to learn information on how to connect it to your computer.

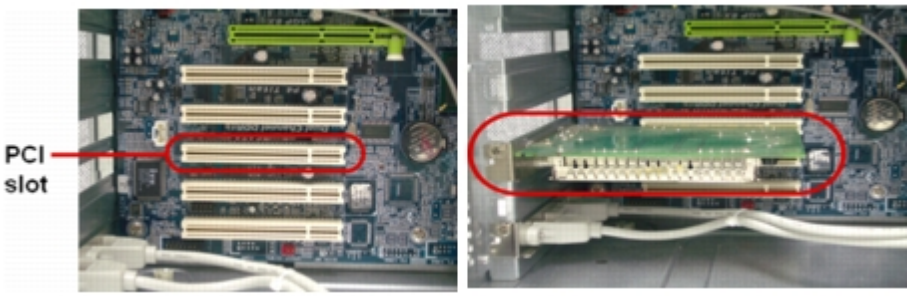
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Setting up your computer

Before you can start making movie projects using your own video footage, you first need to capture video from your video camera into your computer. Your computer needs to be equipped with the proper capture card or interface port for connecting your video camera and for capturing video to your computer. Since capturing and video editing require a lot of computer resources, your computer must also be properly set up to ensure successful capturing and smooth editing of your videos.

Installing a capture card

If your capture card is a PCI-based card, install the card on your computer by inserting it in an available PCI slot on the computer's motherboard.



Note: The type of capture card or interface port that you will need to connect your video camera to your computer depends on the type of video camera you have.

Connecting a video camera to the computer

Use an IEEE-1394 cable to connect your digital camcorder to the IEEE-1394 port. Before purchasing one, check first the pin connectors used on your camcorder and your computer. Most DV and Digital 8 camcorders have 4-pin connectors, whereas desktop computers that come with IEEE-1394 ports or installed with IEEE-1394 cards usually have 6-pin connectors. The IEEE-1394 cable that is required for desktop computers is a 4-pin to 6-pin cable. Most laptop computers have 4-pin connectors which require a 4-pin to 4-pin cable.



Connecting the IEEE-1394 cable to the DV camcorder





Connecting a 4-pin to 6-pin IEEE-1394 cable to a desktop computer





Connecting a 4-pin to 4-pin IEEE-1394 cable to a laptop computer

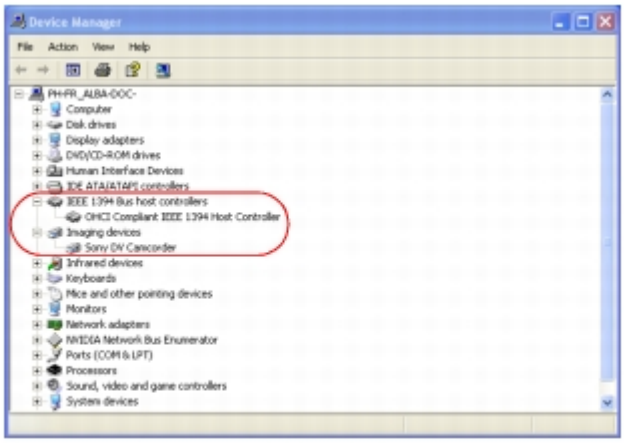
Checking the hardware setup

After connecting your digital camcorder to the computer, check if the device is detected by your Windows system. If you installed an IEEE-1394 card on your computer, check also if the card is detected.

To check if the IEEE-1394 card and digital camcorder are detected:

1 Insert your video tape into the camcorder and switch it on. Make sure it is in playback mode (usually named VTR or
VCR). Check your camcorder's manual for specific instructions.

2 Open the Control Panel, then open
System: Hardware - Device Manager.
3 Make sure the following device names are listed in the
Device Manager.
Under Windows XP: 1394 Bus Controller <Brand name> DV Camcorder (The brand name depends on the DV camcorder connected to the IEEE-1394 interface.)



Windows XP: Device Manager

4 If your digital camcorder has been detected properly, it will be listed as a source device in VideoStudio's **Options Panel**. In VideoStudio, select the Capture Step and check if your camcorder is displayed under the Source list in the **Options Panel**

.

Note: In addition to commonly used Texas Instruments and Microsoft DV drivers, there are other drivers available. Consult your camcorder's manual for suitable drivers.

Connecting a USB camera

To capture live video and still images from a USB camera, connect the camera to an available USB port on your computer.

USB cameras may require installation of a device driver, depending on the Windows version you are using. For information on how to install your USB camera, refer to its accompanying manual. AVCHD camcorders also use USB connections to copy video files to your hard drive.

After properly installing your USB camera, check if it is detected by your Windows system.

To check if the USB camera is detected:

1 Open the Control Panel, then open
System: Hardware - Device Manager.

2 In the Device Manager, double-click
Imaging devices. Check if your USB camera is listed in this folder.

3 If your USB camera has been detected properly, it will be listed as a source device in VideoStudio's **Options Panel**. In VideoStudio, select the Capture Step and check if your USB camera is displayed under the Source list in the **Options Panel**

.

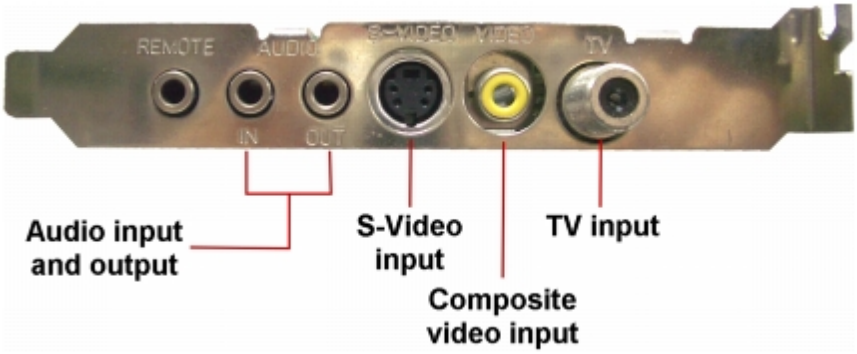
Connecting a digital TV

To capture digital television broadcasts, you need to install a Digital TV capture card or a digital TV adapter. Check the hardware's user guide to learn information on how to connect it to your computer.

Connecting analog video sources

VHS, S-VHS, Video-8, and Hi8 camcorders and VCRs are examples of analog video sources. To capture video from analog sources, you will need to install an analog capture card in your computer. Conventional broadcast television is also an analog source. To capture TV footage, you need to have a TV tuner card installed in your computer.

Note: TV capture cards provide S-Video/Composite inputs and a TV tuner, which can be used to capture both video and TV footage.



Connecting the video device to the analog capture card

To connect your video device to the analog capture card, use either an S-Video or RCA Composite cable depending on your device's video output. If your video device has both types of output, use the S-Video connection for higher video quality captures.



S-Video cable



Connecting the S-Video source to the capture card

If you want to use the Composite output of your video device, connect the yellow plugs of the Composite cable to the video output of your your video device and the video input port of the analog capture card.



Composite cable



Connecting the Composite video source to the capture card

Most higher-end analog capture cards do not have the S-Video / Composite input ports crowded on the side of the cards. Instead, these cards come with an external breakout box that provides all the video input ports at the front of the box. Video devices can be connected to the capture card more easily through the breakout box.



Breakout box

Connecting a TV antenna to the tuner card

A tuner card has a TV antenna input ju st like the regular television monitor. Plug your TV antenna to the TV connector of the tuner card.



TV antenna cable



Connecting TV antenna to the tuner card

Note: When purchasing a tuner card, make sure you acquire one that provides the correct TV system (NTSC or PAL) for your region.

Connecting the capture or tuner card to the sound card

Most capture and tuner cards only allow video capture. To preview the audio from your video device or TV and to capture the audio into your computer, you need to connect the audio output of the capture or tuner card to the sound card's Line In port. The required cables for connecting to the sound card are different for each type of video source.



Line-in and audio cables for S-Video



S-Video connection



Line-in and audio cables for Composite video



Composite video connection



Line-in cable for TV tuner card



TV tuner connection



Line-in cable for high-end TV capture card



High-end TV capture card connection

Connecting optical drives

To burn or author your video projects onto a VCD, DVD or BD, you need to connect their respective optical drive burners to enable you to output your projects to your desired formats. Check the hardware's user guide to learn information on how to connect it to your computer.

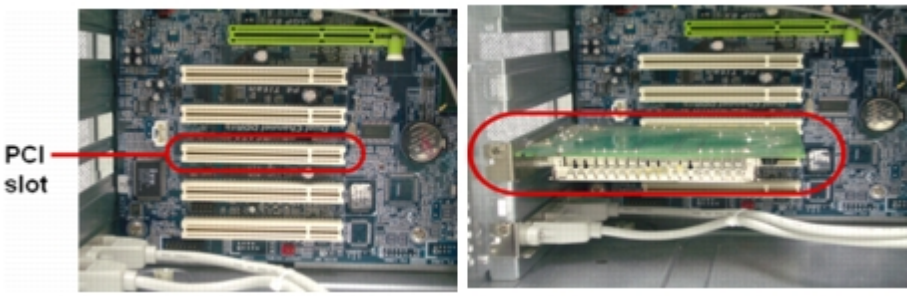
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Setting up your computer

Before you can start making movie projects using your own video footage, you first need to capture video from your video camera into your computer. Your computer needs to be equipped with the proper capture card or interface port for connecting your video camera and for capturing video to your computer. Since capturing and video editing require a lot of computer resources, your computer must also be properly set up to ensure successful capturing and smooth editing of your videos.

Installing a capture card

If your capture card is a PCI-based card, install the card on your computer by inserting it in an available PCI slot on the computer's motherboard.



Note: The type of capture card or interface port that you will need to connect your video camera to your computer depends on the type of video camera you have.

Connecting a video camera to the computer

Use an IEEE-1394 cable to connect your digital camcorder to the IEEE-1394 port. Before purchasing one, check first the pin connectors used on your camcorder and your computer. Most DV and Digital 8 camcorders have 4-pin connectors, whereas desktop computers that come with IEEE-1394 ports or installed with IEEE-1394 cards usually have 6-pin connectors. The IEEE-1394 cable that is required for desktop computers is a 4-pin to 6-pin cable. Most laptop computers have 4-pin connectors which require a 4-pin to 4-pin cable.



Connecting the IEEE-1394 cable to the DV camcorder





Connecting a 4-pin to 6-pin IEEE-1394 cable to a desktop computer





Connecting a 4-pin to 4-pin IEEE-1394 cable to a laptop computer

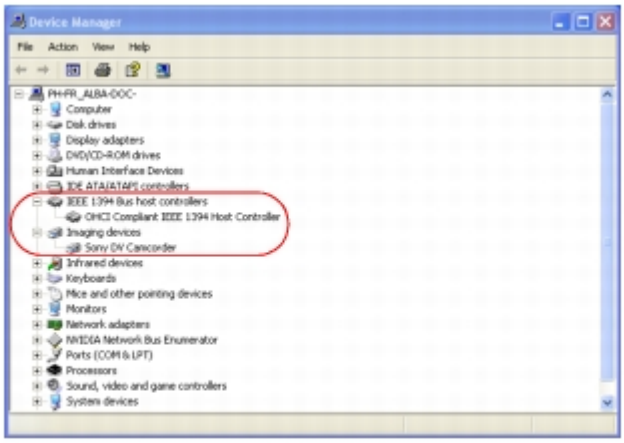
Checking the hardware setup

After connecting your digital camcorder to the computer, check if the device is detected by your Windows system. If you installed an IEEE-1394 card on your computer, check also if the card is detected.

To check if the IEEE-1394 card and digital camcorder are detected:

1 Insert your video tape into the camcorder and switch it on. Make sure it is in playback mode (usually named VTR or
VCR). Check your camcorder's manual for specific instructions.

2 Open the Control Panel, then open
System: Hardware - Device Manager.
3 Make sure the following device names are listed in the
Device Manager.
Under Windows XP: 1394 Bus Controller <Brand name> DV Camcorder (The brand name depends on the DV camcorder connected to the IEEE-1394 interface.)



Windows XP: Device Manager

4 If your digital camcorder has been detected properly, it will be listed as a source device in VideoStudio's **Options Panel**. In VideoStudio, select the Capture Step and check if your camcorder is displayed under the Source list in the **Options Panel**

.

Note: In addition to commonly used Texas Instruments and Microsoft DV drivers, there are other drivers available. Consult your camcorder's manual for suitable drivers.

Connecting a USB camera

To capture live video and still images from a USB camera, connect the camera to an available USB port on your computer.

USB cameras may require installation of a device driver, depending on the Windows version you are using. For information on how to install your USB camera, refer to its accompanying manual. AVCHD camcorders also use USB connections to copy video files to your hard drive.

After properly installing your USB camera, check if it is detected by your Windows system.

To check if the USB camera is detected:

1 Open the Control Panel, then open
System: Hardware - Device Manager.

2 In the Device Manager, double-click
Imaging devices. Check if your USB camera is listed in this folder.

3 If your USB camera has been detected properly, it will be listed as a source device in VideoStudio's **Options Panel**. In VideoStudio, select the Capture Step and check if your USB camera is displayed under the Source list in the **Options Panel**

.

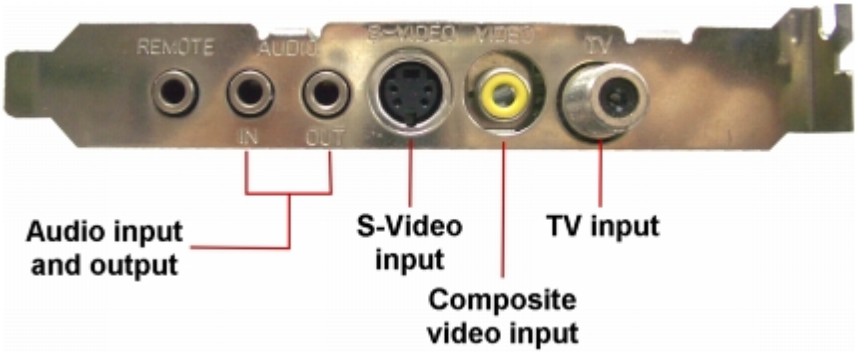
Connecting a digital TV

To capture digital television broadcasts, you need to install a Digital TV capture card or a digital TV adapter. Check the hardware's user guide to learn information on how to connect it to your computer.

Connecting analog video sources

VHS, S-VHS, Video-8, and Hi8 camcorders and VCRs are examples of analog video sources. To capture video from analog sources, you will need to install an analog capture card in your computer. Conventional broadcast television is also an analog source. To capture TV footage, you need to have a TV tuner card installed in your computer.

Note: TV capture cards provide S-Video/Composite inputs and a TV tuner, which can be used to capture both video and TV footage.



Connecting the video device to the analog capture card

To connect your video device to the analog capture card, use either an S-Video or RCA Composite cable depending on your device's video output. If your video device has both types of output, use the S-Video connection for higher video quality captures.



S-Video cable



Connecting the S-Video source to the capture card

If you want to use the Composite output of your video device, connect the yellow plugs of the Composite cable to the video output of your your video device and the video input port of the analog capture card.



Composite cable



Connecting the Composite video source to the capture card

Most higher-end analog capture cards do not have the S-Video / Composite input ports crowded on the side of the cards. Instead, these cards come with an external breakout box that provides all the video input ports at the front of the box. Video devices can be connected to the capture card more easily through the breakout box.



Breakout box

Connecting a TV antenna to the tuner card

A tuner card has a TV antenna input ju st like the regular television monitor. Plug your TV antenna to the TV connector of the tuner card.



TV antenna cable



Connecting TV antenna to the tuner card

Note: When purchasing a tuner card, make sure you acquire one that provides the correct TV system (NTSC or PAL) for your region.

Connecting the capture or tuner card to the sound card

Most capture and tuner cards only allow video capture. To preview the audio from your video device or TV and to capture the audio into your computer, you need to connect the audio output of the capture or tuner card to the sound card's Line In port. The required cables for connecting to the sound card are different for each type of video source.



Line-in and audio cables for S-Video



S-Video connection



Line-in and audio cables for Composite video



Composite video connection



Line-in cable for TV tuner card



TV tuner connection



Line-in cable for high-end TV capture card



High-end TV capture card connection

Connecting optical drives

To burn or author your video projects onto a VCD, DVD or BD, you need to connect their respective optical drive burners to enable you to output your projects to your desired formats. Check the hardware's user guide to learn information on how to connect it to your computer.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Installing and running VideoStudio

The VideoStudio DVD has an auto-run feature that automatically starts up the installation.
Back up your projects and media files first before installing the new version of VideoStudio.

To install VideoStudio:

1 Insert the VideoStudio DVD into your DVD-ROM drive.
2 When the Setup screen appears, follow the instructions to install VideoStudio on your computer.
Note: If the Setup screen does not appear after loading the DVD, then you can manually start it by double-clicking the My Computer icon on your desktop, then double-click the icon for the DVD-ROM drive where the installation disc is inserted. When the DVD-ROM window opens, double-click the Setup icon.
3 In addition to VideoStudio, these programs and drivers will be automatically installed:
· QuickTime
· SmartSound
· Visual C++ 2005 Redistributable Package
· DirectX

To run VideoStudio: Double-click the VideoStudio icon on your Windows desktop. Select the VideoStudio icon from the VideoStudio program group on the Windows Start menu.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Preparation for video capturing and editing

Capturing and video editing are tasks that require a lot of computer resources. Your computer must be properly set up to ensure successful capturing and smooth video editing. Below are some tips on how to prepare your digital camcorder and optimize your computer for capturing and editing. For better workability of DV Quick Scan and camcorder device control, having the correct timecode on the DV tape is a must. To do this, before shooting your video, use the standard playback (SP) mode and shoot a blank video (for example, leaving the lens cover on while recording) without interruption from start to end of a tape. It is recommended that you close all other applications when working with VideoStudio. You should also turn off any automatically-launched software like screen savers to avoid possible interruptions while capturing. If you have two hard drives in your system, it is recommended that you install VideoStudio to your system drive (usually C:) and store captured videos in your other drive (usually D:). The choice of what hard drive to use is also crucial. Using a dedicated video hard drive, preferably with Ultra-DMA/66 7200 rpm and 30GB free space, is recommended. Make sure DMA is enabled for your hard disk. Disable Write-Behind Caching on the hard drive used for video capture. Increase the Paging File (Swap File) size to twice your amount of RAM.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

The VideoStudio Launcher

When you run VideoStudio, a startup screen appears which allows you to choose between the following video editing modes:



VideoStudio Editor gives you the full editing features of VideoStudio. It provides you total control over the movie production process, from adding clips, titles, effects, overlays, and music to making the final movie on disc or other medium.



Movie Wizard is ideal for users who are new to video editing. It guides you through the movie production process in three quick, easy steps.



DV-to-DVD Wizard allows you to capture video, add a theme template to it, then burn it onto a disc.

Tip: Select 16:9 to use widescreen for your project.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

DV-to-DVD Wizard

Use the
DV-to-DVD Wizard to easily create a movie from the content of your DV tape then burn it onto a disc.

Step 1: Scan for scenes

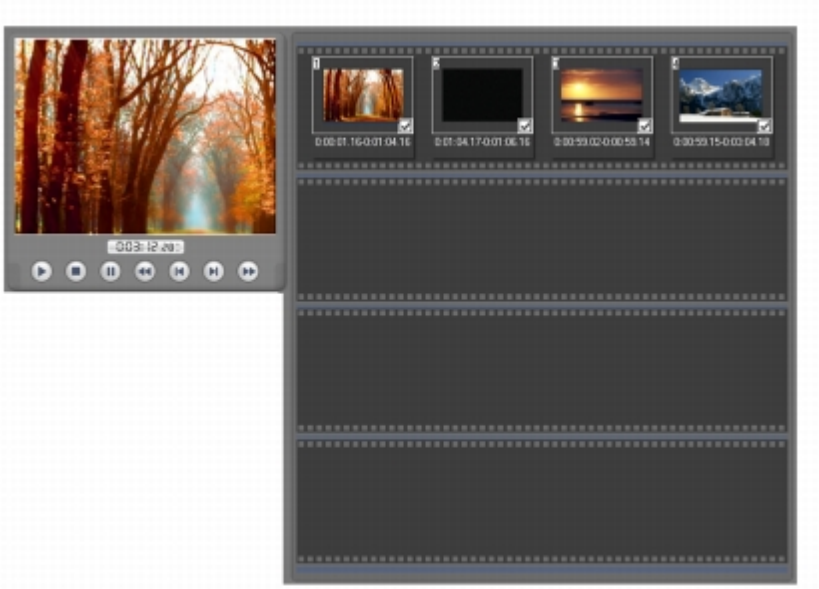
Scan the DV tape and select the scenes you want to add to your movie.
1 Connect your camcorder to your computer and turn on the device. Set it to Play (or VTR/VCR) mode.
2 Select a recording device under Device
.
3 Click the
Capture format arrow to select a file format for captured videos.
4 Specify whether to burn all videos of the tape (Burn whole tape) or scan your DV tape (
Scene detection).

To burn whole tape:

1 Select Burn whole tape and then specify the tape duration under
Duration.
2 Click
Next to apply template and burn onto DVD.

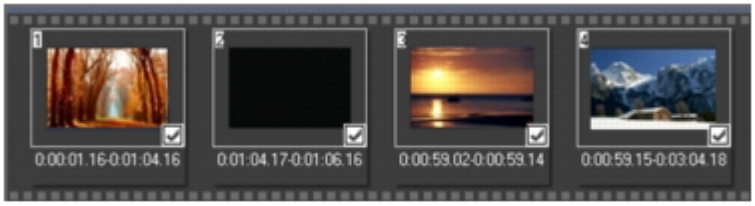
To use Scene detection:

1 After selecting Scene detection, choose whether to scan the tape from the Beginning or
Current position.
.
Beginning: Scans the tape for scenes from the beginning. VideoStudio will automatically rewind the tape if the tape position is not in the beginning.
.
Current position: Scans the tape for scenes from the current tape position.
2 Specify the scan speed, then click
Start Scan to begin scanning the DV device for scenes. Scenes are video segments that are distinguished by shooting date and time.



Storyboard

3 In the Storyboard, choose the scenes you want to include in your movie. To do this, select a scene then click
Mark Scene.



4 Click Next
to go to the next step.

Tip: Click and select Save DV Quick Scan Digest to save scanned file and import without having to scan again or
Save DV Quick Scan Digest as HTML to manage large number of tapes by printing this HTML file and attaching it with your tapes.

Step 2: Apply a theme template and burn to DVD

1 Specify a Volume name and
Recording format for your movie.
Note: If you have more than one burner installed in your computer or the default drive is not a burner, specify the burner you want to use in the
Advanced Settings dialog box.
2 Select a theme template from one of the available presets to apply to your movie then select its output video quality.
3 To customize the theme template text, click
Edit Title.



4 In the Begin tab of the
Edit Template Title dialog box, double-click the text to modify. You can also modify its attributes like font, color or shadow settings.
5 Click the End tab to modify its text. Click
OK.
6 To mark your video clips with its date information, click Add as title in Video date information. Select Entire video if you want it to appear from beginning to end. Or specify duration.
7 Click 
to burn your movie file to a disc.
Tip: If you see at the bottom of the dialog box that the movie is too big to fit onto a DVD, click Fit & Burn.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

DV-to-DVD Wizard

Use the
DV-to-DVD Wizard to easily create a movie from the content of your DV tape then burn it onto a disc.

Step 1: Scan for scenes

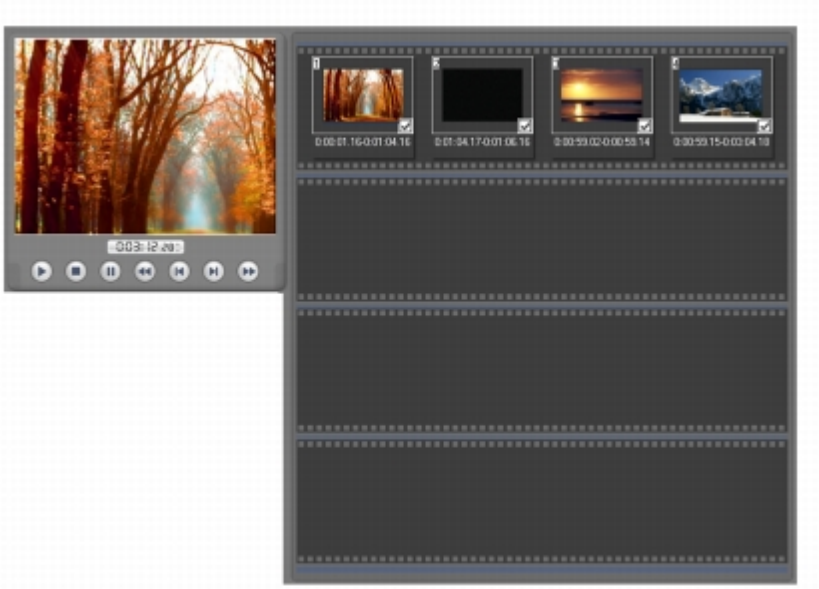
Scan the DV tape and select the scenes you want to add to your movie.
1 Connect your camcorder to your computer and turn on the device. Set it to Play (or VTR/VCR) mode.
2 Select a recording device under Device
.
3 Click the
Capture format arrow to select a file format for captured videos.
4 Specify whether to burn all videos of the tape (Burn whole tape) or scan your DV tape (
Scene detection).

To burn whole tape:

1 Select Burn whole tape and then specify the tape duration under
Duration.
2 Click
Next to apply template and burn onto DVD.

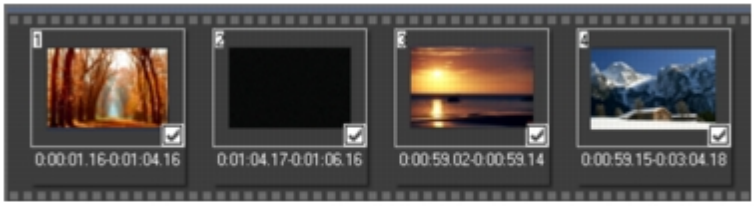
To use Scene detection:

1 After selecting Scene detection, choose whether to scan the tape from the Beginning or
Current position.
.
Beginning: Scans the tape for scenes from the beginning. VideoStudio will automatically rewind the tape if the tape position is not in the beginning.
.
Current position: Scans the tape for scenes from the current tape position.
2 Specify the scan speed, then click
Start Scan to begin scanning the DV device for scenes. Scenes are video segments that are distinguished by shooting date and time.



Storyboard

3 In the Storyboard, choose the scenes you want to include in your movie. To do this, select a scene then click
Mark Scene.



4 Click Next
to go to the next step.

Tip: Click and select Save DV Quick Scan Digest to save scanned file and import without having to scan again or
Save DV Quick Scan Digest as HTML to manage large number of tapes by printing this HTML file and attaching it with your tapes.

Step 2: Apply a theme template and burn to DVD

1 Specify a Volume name and
Recording format for your movie.
Note: If you have more than one burner installed in your computer or the default drive is not a burner, specify the burner you want to use in the
Advanced Settings dialog box.
2 Select a theme template from one of the available presets to apply to your movie then select its output video quality.
3 To customize the theme template text, click
Edit Title.



4 In the Begin tab of the
Edit Template Title dialog box, double-click the text to modify. You can also modify its attributes like font, color or shadow settings.
5 Click the End tab to modify its text. Click
OK.
6 To mark your video clips with its date information, click Add as title in Video date information. Select Entire video if you want it to appear from beginning to end. Or specify duration.
7 Click 
to burn your movie file to a disc.
Tip: If you see at the bottom of the dialog box that the movie is too big to fit onto a DVD, click Fit & Burn.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

DV-to-DVD Wizard

Use the
DV-to-DVD Wizard to easily create a movie from the content of your DV tape then burn it onto a disc.

Step 1: Scan for scenes

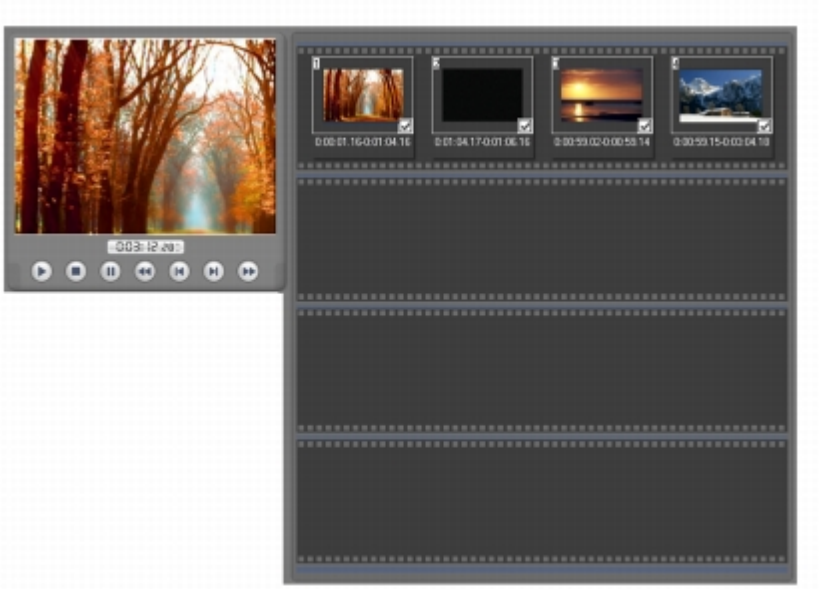
Scan the DV tape and select the scenes you want to add to your movie.
1 Connect your camcorder to your computer and turn on the device. Set it to Play (or VTR/VCR) mode.
2 Select a recording device under Device
.
3 Click the
Capture format arrow to select a file format for captured videos.
4 Specify whether to burn all videos of the tape (Burn whole tape) or scan your DV tape (
Scene detection).

To burn whole tape:

1 Select Burn whole tape and then specify the tape duration under
Duration.
2 Click
Next to apply template and burn onto DVD.

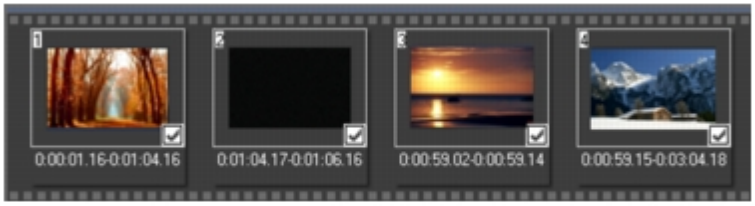
To use Scene detection:

1 After selecting Scene detection, choose whether to scan the tape from the Beginning or
Current position.
.
Beginning: Scans the tape for scenes from the beginning. VideoStudio will automatically rewind the tape if the tape position is not in the beginning.
.
Current position: Scans the tape for scenes from the current tape position.
2 Specify the scan speed, then click
Start Scan to begin scanning the DV device for scenes. Scenes are video segments that are distinguished by shooting date and time.



Storyboard

3 In the Storyboard, choose the scenes you want to include in your movie. To do this, select a scene then click
Mark Scene.



4 Click Next
to go to the next step.

Tip: Click and select Save DV Quick Scan Digest to save scanned file and import without having to scan again or
Save DV Quick Scan Digest as HTML to manage large number of tapes by printing this HTML file and attaching it with your tapes.

Step 2: Apply a theme template and burn to DVD

1 Specify a Volume name and
Recording format for your movie.
Note: If you have more than one burner installed in your computer or the default drive is not a burner, specify the burner you want to use in the
Advanced Settings dialog box.
2 Select a theme template from one of the available presets to apply to your movie then select its output video quality.
3 To customize the theme template text, click
Edit Title.



4 In the Begin tab of the
Edit Template Title dialog box, double-click the text to modify. You can also modify its attributes like font, color or shadow settings.
5 Click the End tab to modify its text. Click
OK.
6 To mark your video clips with its date information, click Add as title in Video date information. Select Entire video if you want it to appear from beginning to end. Or specify duration.
7 Click 
to burn your movie file to a disc.
Tip: If you see at the bottom of the dialog box that the movie is too big to fit onto a DVD, click
Fit & Burn.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Movie Wizard

If you are new to video editing or you want to quickly make a movie, you can use the VideoStudio Movie Wizard to assemble video clips and images, add background music and titles, then output the final movie as a video file, burn it onto a disc, or further edit the movie in VideoStudio Editor.

Step 1: Add video and images

Assemble your video and images into a movie.

To add video and images:

1 Click one the following buttons to add video and images to your movie.



Click Capture to import video footage or images into your computer.



Click Insert Video to add video files of different formats such as AVI, MPEG, and WMV.



Click Insert Image to add still images. (You can create a photo slideshow if you choose to only add images.)



Click Insert Digital Media to add video from a DVD-Video/DVD-VR formatted disc or from your hard drive.



Click Import from Mobile Device to add video from MS Windows-recognized devices.

Tip: Click Library to open the media library that contains media clips that come with VideoStudio. To import your own video or image files to the Library, click 

.

2 If you selected multiple clips, the Change Clip Sequence dialog box will appear where you can arrange the order of the clips. Drag the clips to the desired sequence then click OK.

3 The video and image clips that you selected for your movie will be added to the Media Clip List. Right-click a clip to open a menu with more options.



Tip: You can also arrange clips in the
Media Clip List by dragging them to the desired sequence.
4 To preview the clips, select each clip in the Media Clip List and use the Jog Slider and Navigation Panel buttons. When trimming a clip, drag the Mark-in and
Mark-out handles to select the desired start and end points of the clip.
You can also click
to recover lost DVB-T frames during DVB-T video capture.
Click to choose desired segments from a video file and extract them to the
Media Clip List.



Click
to automatically split video clips into smaller clips based on their shooting date and time.
You can also click to sort clips in the
Media Clip List according to their name or date.

To capture video and images:

1 Connect your camcorder to your computer and turn on the device. Set it to Play (or VTR / VCR) mode.
2 In VideoStudio Movie Wizard, click
Capture.
3 Check if your camcorder is selected in the
Source list.
4 Select the video file format to use for saving captured video files from the Format list. Specify the Capture folder in which to save the files.
5 Choose
Split by Scene to separate scenes in your DV video clip into several clips based on frame content or

shooting date and time.
Note: Click
Options to customize capture settings specific to your video device.
6 Play the videotape in your camcorder, and position the tape on the part of the video where to start capturing.
Tip: If you are capturing video from a DV or HDV camcorder, use the
Navigation Panel to play your videotape.
7 Click Capture Video to start capturing. Click Stop Capture or press
[Esc] to stop capturing.
8 To capture a still image from the video footage, pause the video on the desired image then click Capture Image.
9 Click
Enable/Disable Audio Preview to play or stop DV audio preview while capturing.

Step 2: Select a template

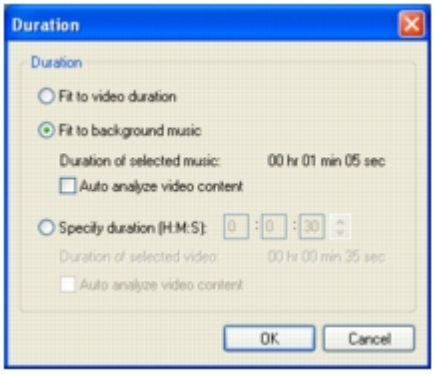
Select a movie template to apply to your project. Each template provides a different theme which comes with preset start and ending video clips, transitions, title and background music.
Notes:

· To save your project, click 
then select Save.
· If you accessed VideoStudio Movie Wizard from within VideoStudio Editor, the above button will not appear and you will have to save from the File Menu when you go back to the editor.

To apply a Theme template:

1 Select a theme template from the
Theme template list.
Home Movie templates allow you to create movies that include both video and images while Slideshow templates are used exclusively for creating image slideshows.
2 To set the overall length of your movie, click 
.
For Home Movie, specify the following options in the
Duration dialog box:

.
Fit to video duration: Keeps the current movie duration.
.
Fit to background music: Adjusts the movie duration to fit into the length of the background music. (The background music is added to your movie in the second step of the Movie Wizard.)
.
Specify duration: Lets you define a custom duration for the whole movie.



For Slideshow templates, specify Smart Pan & Zoom in the Settings dialog box.
Smart Pan & Zoom automatically focuses the pan and zoom motion to important parts of the image like the face.

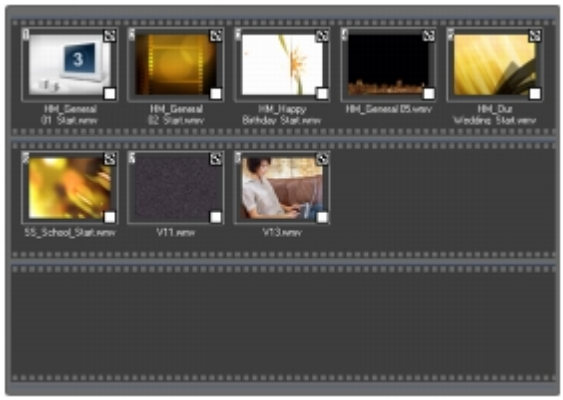


.

Fit to image duration: Trims the background music to fit the total duration of the slideshow.
Tip: Select
Keep Previous to use the image duration you set in the previous page of the Movie Wizard.
· Fit to background
music tempo and duration: Adjusts the duration of each clip and the total duration of the slideshow to fit the background music's tempo and duration.
Note: A prompt will be displayed if the images' total duration is longer than the music. Select Yes to automatically drop images in excess of the music's duration or
No to select another background music. A longer music duration will result to the repetition of images to fit the duration of the music.
.

Fit to background music tempo: Adjusts the duration of each clip to fit the background music's tempo.

3 For Home Movie templates, click  to open the Mark Clips dialog box. Select a clip then click Must or
Optional to specify whether or not to include the clip in the show.



Note: Click
Auto to let the program decide which clips to retain or exclude.
4 To replace the title, first select the preset title from the
Title list. Double-click the preset text in the Preview Window and then type in your text.



Drag yellow handles to resize text



Drag blue-green handle to position or resize shadow



Drag purple handles to rotate text

5 Click 
to change text formatting.
In the
Text Properties dialog box, select a font type, size and color for the text, and set the desired shadow color and transparency.

6 To replace the background music, click  to open the
Audio Options window. Locate and select the desired music file.

Click 
to specify music file settings.
Note: Make sure that your background music is 30 seconds or longer if you want to fit the video to the music. If the music duration is less than 30 seconds, the music will not be looped leaving the remaining video without any background music.

7 Use the
Volume slider to adjust the volume of the background music with respect to the video's audio. Dragging the slider to the left increases the volume of the background music and decreases the volume of the video's audio.

8 Click
Next.

Note: If you opened the VideoStudio Movie Wizard within VideoStudio Editor, clicking
Next will skip the last step and directly insert the clips onto the Timeline in the VideoStudio Editor.

Step 3: Finish

Select how to output the final movie:



Click Create Video File to output your movie as a video file that can be played back on the computer.



Click Create Disc to burn your movie onto a disc.



Click Edit in Corel VideoStudio Editor to make further edits to your movie using VideoStudio Editor.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Movie Wizard

If you are new to video editing or you want to quickly make a movie, you can use the VideoStudio Movie Wizard to assemble video clips and images, add background music and titles, then output the final movie as a video file, burn it onto a disc, or further edit the movie in VideoStudio Editor.

Step 1: Add video and images

Assemble your video and images into a movie.

To add video and images:

1 Click one the following buttons to add video and images to your movie.



Click Capture to import video footage or images into your computer.



Click Insert Video to add video files of different formats such as AVI, MPEG, and WMV.



Click Insert Image to add still images. (You can create a photo slideshow if you choose to only add images.)



Click Insert Digital Media to add video from a DVD-Video/DVD-VR formatted disc or from your hard drive.



Click Import from Mobile Device to add video from MS Windows-recognized devices.

Tip: Click Library to open the media library that contains media clips that come with VideoStudio. To import your own video or image files to the Library, click 

.

2 If you selected multiple clips, the Change Clip Sequence dialog box will appear where you can arrange the order of the clips. Drag the clips to the desired sequence then click OK.

3 The video and image clips that you selected for your movie will be added to the Media Clip List. Right-click a clip to open a menu with more options.



Tip: You can also arrange clips in the
Media Clip List by dragging them to the desired sequence.
4 To preview the clips, select each clip in the Media Clip List and use the Jog Slider and Navigation Panel buttons. When trimming a clip, drag the Mark-in and
Mark-out handles to select the desired start and end points of the clip.
You can also click
to recover lost DVB-T frames during DVB-T video capture.
Click to choose desired segments from a video file and extract them to the
Media Clip List.



Click
to automatically split video clips into smaller clips based on their shooting date and time.
You can also click to sort clips in the
Media Clip List according to their name or date.

To capture video and images:

1 Connect your camcorder to your computer and turn on the device. Set it to Play (or VTR / VCR) mode.
2 In VideoStudio Movie Wizard, click
Capture.
3 Check if your camcorder is selected in the
Source list.
4 Select the video file format to use for saving captured video files from the Format list. Specify the Capture folder in which to save the files.
5 Choose
Split by Scene to separate scenes in your DV video clip into several clips based on frame content or

shooting date and time.
Note: Click
Options to customize capture settings specific to your video device.
6 Play the videotape in your camcorder, and position the tape on the part of the video where to start capturing.
Tip: If you are capturing video from a DV or HDV camcorder, use the
Navigation Panel to play your videotape.
7 Click Capture Video to start capturing. Click Stop Capture or press
[Esc] to stop capturing.
8 To capture a still image from the video footage, pause the video on the desired image then click Capture Image.
9 Click
Enable/Disable Audio Preview to play or stop DV audio preview while capturing.

Step 2: Select a template

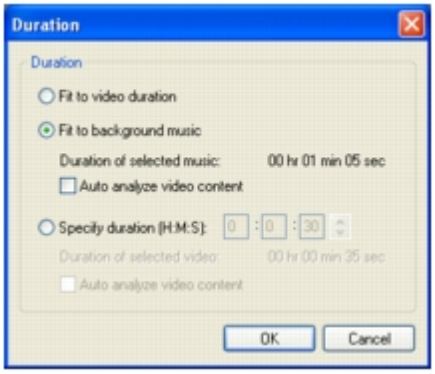
Select a movie template to apply to your project. Each template provides a different theme which comes with preset start and ending video clips, transitions, title and background music.
Notes:

· To save your project, click 
then select Save.
· If you accessed VideoStudio Movie Wizard from within VideoStudio Editor, the above button will not appear and you will have to save from the File Menu when you go back to the editor.

To apply a Theme template:

1 Select a theme template from the
Theme template list.
Home Movie templates allow you to create movies that include both video and images while Slideshow templates are used exclusively for creating image slideshows.
2 To set the overall length of your movie, click 
.
For Home Movie, specify the following options in the
Duration dialog box:

.
Fit to video duration: Keeps the current movie duration.
.
Fit to background music: Adjusts the movie duration to fit into the length of the background music. (The background music is added to your movie in the second step of the Movie Wizard.)
.
Specify duration: Lets you define a custom duration for the whole movie.



For Slideshow templates, specify Smart Pan & Zoom in the Settings dialog box.
Smart Pan & Zoom automatically focuses the pan and zoom motion to important parts of the image like the face.

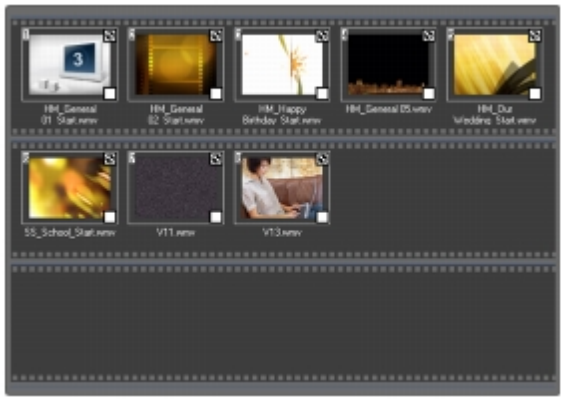


.

Fit to image duration: Trims the background music to fit the total duration of the slideshow.
Tip: Select
Keep Previous to use the image duration you set in the previous page of the Movie Wizard.
· Fit to background
music tempo and duration: Adjusts the duration of each clip and the total duration of the slideshow to fit the background music's tempo and duration.
Note: A prompt will be displayed if the images' total duration is longer than the music. Select Yes to automatically drop images in excess of the music's duration or
No to select another background music. A longer music duration will result to the repetition of images to fit the duration of the music.
·

Fit to background music tempo: Adjusts the duration of each clip to fit the background music's tempo.

3 For Home Movie templates, click to open the Mark Clips dialog box. Select a clip then click Must or
Optional to specify whether or not to include the clip in the show.



Note: Click
Auto to let the program decide which clips to retain or exclude.
4 To replace the title, first select the preset title from the
Title list. Double-click the preset text in the Preview Window and then type in your text.



Drag yellow handles to resize text



Drag blue-green handle to position or resize shadow



Drag purple handles to rotate text

5 Click 
to change text formatting.
In the
Text Properties dialog box, select a font type, size and color for the text, and set the desired shadow color and transparency.

6 To replace the background music, click  to open the
Audio Options window. Locate and select the desired music file.

Click 
to specify music file settings.
Note: Make sure that your background music is 30 seconds or longer if you want to fit the video to the music. If the music duration is less than 30 seconds, the music will not be looped leaving the remaining video without any background music.

7 Use the
Volume slider to adjust the volume of the background music with respect to the video's audio. Dragging the slider to the left increases the volume of the background music and decreases the volume of the video's audio.

8 Click
Next.

Note: If you opened the VideoStudio Movie Wizard within VideoStudio Editor, clicking
Next will skip the last step and directly insert the clips onto the Timeline in the VideoStudio Editor.

Step 3: Finish

Select how to output the final movie:



Click Create Video File to output your movie as a video file that can be played back on the computer.



Click Create Disc to burn your movie onto a disc.



Click Edit in Corel VideoStudio Editor to make further edits to your movie using VideoStudio Editor.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Movie Wizard

If you are new to video editing or you want to quickly make a movie, you can use the VideoStudio Movie Wizard to assemble video clips and images, add background music and titles, then output the final movie as a video file, burn it onto a disc, or further edit the movie in VideoStudio Editor.

Step 1: Add video and images

Assemble your video and images into a movie.

To add video and images:

1 Click one the following buttons to add video and images to your movie.



Click Capture to import video footage or images into your computer.



Click Insert Video to add video files of different formats such as AVI, MPEG, and WMV.



Click Insert Image to add still images. (You can create a photo slideshow if you choose to only add images.)



Click Insert Digital Media to add video from a DVD-Video/DVD-VR formatted disc or from your hard drive.



Click Import from Mobile Device to add video from MS Windows-recognized devices.

Tip: Click Library to open the media library that contains media clips that come with VideoStudio. To import your own video or image files to the Library, click 

.

2 If you selected multiple clips, the Change Clip Sequence dialog box will appear where you can arrange the order of the clips. Drag the clips to the desired sequence then click OK.

3 The video and image clips that you selected for your movie will be added to the Media Clip List. Right-click a clip to open a menu with more options.



Tip: You can also arrange clips in the
Media Clip List by dragging them to the desired sequence.
4 To preview the clips, select each clip in the Media Clip List and use the Jog Slider and Navigation Panel buttons. When trimming a clip, drag the Mark-in and
Mark-out handles to select the desired start and end points of the clip.
You can also click
to recover lost DVB-T frames during DVB-T video capture.
Click to choose desired segments from a video file and extract them to the
Media Clip List.



Click
to automatically split video clips into smaller clips based on their shooting date and time.
You can also click to sort clips in the
Media Clip List according to their name or date.

To capture video and images:

1 Connect your camcorder to your computer and turn on the device. Set it to Play (or VTR / VCR) mode.
2 In VideoStudio Movie Wizard, click
Capture.
3 Check if your camcorder is selected in the
Source list.
4 Select the video file format to use for saving captured video files from the Format list. Specify the Capture folder in which to save the files.
5 Choose
Split by Scene to separate scenes in your DV video clip into several clips based on frame content or

shooting date and time.
Note: Click
Options to customize capture settings specific to your video device.
6 Play the videotape in your camcorder, and position the tape on the part of the video where to start capturing.
Tip: If you are capturing video from a DV or HDV camcorder, use the
Navigation Panel to play your videotape.
7 Click Capture Video to start capturing. Click Stop Capture or press
[Esc] to stop capturing.
8 To capture a still image from the video footage, pause the video on the desired image then click Capture Image.
9 Click
Enable/Disable Audio Preview to play or stop DV audio preview while capturing.

Step 2: Select a template

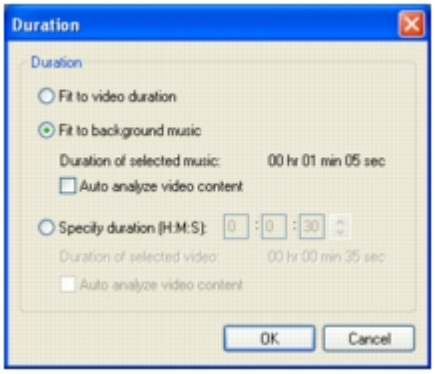
Select a movie template to apply to your project. Each template provides a different theme which comes with preset start and ending video clips, transitions, title and background music.
Notes:

· To save your project, click 
then select Save.
· If you accessed VideoStudio Movie Wizard from within VideoStudio Editor, the above button will not appear and you will have to save from the File Menu when you go back to the editor.

To apply a Theme template:

1 Select a theme template from the
Theme template list.
Home Movie templates allow you to create movies that include both video and images while Slideshow templates are used exclusively for creating image slideshows.
2 To set the overall length of your movie, click 
.
For Home Movie, specify the following options in the
Duration dialog box:

.
Fit to video duration: Keeps the current movie duration.
.
Fit to background music: Adjusts the movie duration to fit into the length of the background music. (The background music is added to your movie in the second step of the Movie Wizard.)
.
Specify duration: Lets you define a custom duration for the whole movie.



For Slideshow templates, specify Smart Pan & Zoom in the Settings dialog box.
Smart Pan & Zoom automatically focuses the pan and zoom motion to important parts of the image like the face.

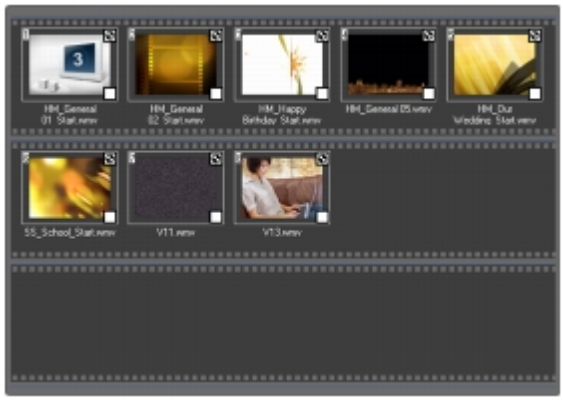


.

Fit to image duration: Trims the background music to fit the total duration of the slideshow.
Tip: Select
Keep Previous to use the image duration you set in the previous page of the Movie Wizard.
· Fit to background
music tempo and duration: Adjusts the duration of each clip and the total duration of the slideshow to fit the background music's tempo and duration.
Note: A prompt will be displayed if the images' total duration is longer than the music. Select Yes to automatically drop images in excess of the music's duration or
No to select another background music. A longer music duration will result to the repetition of images to fit the duration of the music.
.

Fit to background music tempo: Adjusts the duration of each clip to fit the background music's tempo.

3 For Home Movie templates, click to open the Mark Clips dialog box. Select a clip then click Must or
Optional to specify whether or not to include the clip in the show.



Note: Click
Auto to let the program decide which clips to retain or exclude.
4 To replace the title, first select the preset title from the
Title list. Double-click the preset text in the Preview Window and then type in your text.



Drag yellow handles to resize text



Drag blue-green handle to position or resize shadow



Drag purple handles to rotate text

5 Click 
to change text formatting.
In the
Text Properties dialog box, select a font type, size and color for the text, and set the desired shadow color and transparency.

6 To replace the background music, click  to open the
Audio Options window. Locate and select the desired music file.

Click 
to specify music file settings.
Note: Make sure that your background music is 30 seconds or longer if you want to fit the video to the music. If the music duration is less than 30 seconds, the music will not be looped leaving the remaining video without any background music.

7 Use the
Volume slider to adjust the volume of the background music with respect to the video's audio. Dragging the slider to the left increases the volume of the background music and decreases the volume of the video's audio.

8 Click
Next.

Note: If you opened the VideoStudio Movie Wizard within VideoStudio Editor, clicking
Next will skip the last step and directly insert the clips onto the Timeline in the VideoStudio Editor.

Step 3: Finish

Select how to output the final movie:



Click Create Video File to output your movie as a video file that can be played back on the computer.



Click Create Disc to burn your movie onto a disc.



Click Edit in Corel VideoStudio Editor to make further edits to your movie using VideoStudio Editor.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Movie Wizard

If you are new to video editing or you want to quickly make a movie, you can use the VideoStudio Movie Wizard to assemble video clips and images, add background music and titles, then output the final movie as a video file, burn it onto a disc, or further edit the movie in VideoStudio Editor.

Step 1: Add video and images

Assemble your video and images into a movie.

To add video and images:

1 Click one the following buttons to add video and images to your movie.



Click Capture to import video footage or images into your computer.



Click Insert Video to add video files of different formats such as AVI, MPEG, and WMV.



Click Insert Image to add still images. (You can create a photo slideshow if you choose to only add images.)



Click Insert Digital Media to add video from a DVD-Video/DVD-VR formatted disc or from your hard drive.



Click Import from Mobile Device to add video from MS Windows-recognized devices.

Tip: Click Library to open the media library that contains media clips that come with VideoStudio. To import your own video or image files to the Library, click 

.

2 If you selected multiple clips, the Change Clip Sequence dialog box will appear where you can arrange the order of the clips. Drag the clips to the desired sequence then click OK.

3 The video and image clips that you selected for your movie will be added to the Media Clip List. Right-click a clip to open a menu with more options.



Tip: You can also arrange clips in the
Media Clip List by dragging them to the desired sequence.
4 To preview the clips, select each clip in the Media Clip List and use the Jog Slider and Navigation Panel buttons. When trimming a clip, drag the Mark-in and
Mark-out handles to select the desired start and end points of the clip.
You can also click
to recover lost DVB-T frames during DVB-T video capture.
Click to choose desired segments from a video file and extract them to the
Media Clip List.



Click
to automatically split video clips into smaller clips based on their shooting date and time.
You can also click to sort clips in the
Media Clip List according to their name or date.

To capture video and images:

1 Connect your camcorder to your computer and turn on the device. Set it to Play (or VTR / VCR) mode.
2 In VideoStudio Movie Wizard, click
Capture.
3 Check if your camcorder is selected in the
Source list.
4 Select the video file format to use for saving captured video files from the Format list. Specify the Capture folder in which to save the files.
5 Choose
Split by Scene to separate scenes in your DV video clip into several clips based on frame content or

shooting date and time.
Note: Click
Options to customize capture settings specific to your video device.
6 Play the videotape in your camcorder, and position the tape on the part of the video where to start capturing.
Tip: If you are capturing video from a DV or HDV camcorder, use the
Navigation Panel to play your videotape.
7 Click Capture Video to start capturing. Click Stop Capture or press
[Esc] to stop capturing.
8 To capture a still image from the video footage, pause the video on the desired image then click Capture Image.
9 Click
Enable/Disable Audio Preview to play or stop DV audio preview while capturing.

Step 2: Select a template

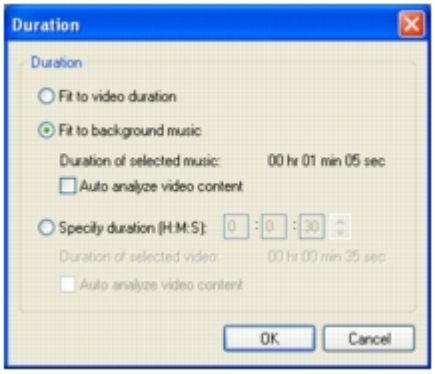
Select a movie template to apply to your project. Each template provides a different theme which comes with preset start and ending video clips, transitions, title and background music.
Notes:

· To save your project, click 
then select Save.
· If you accessed VideoStudio Movie Wizard from within VideoStudio Editor, the above button will not appear and you will have to save from the File Menu when you go back to the editor.

To apply a Theme template:

1 Select a theme template from the
Theme template list.
Home Movie templates allow you to create movies that include both video and images while Slideshow templates are used exclusively for creating image slideshows.
2 To set the overall length of your movie, click 
.
For Home Movie, specify the following options in the
Duration dialog box:

.
Fit to video duration: Keeps the current movie duration.
.
Fit to background music: Adjusts the movie duration to fit into the length of the background music. (The background music is added to your movie in the second step of the Movie Wizard.)
.
Specify duration: Lets you define a custom duration for the whole movie.



For Slideshow templates, specify Smart Pan & Zoom in the Settings dialog box.
Smart Pan & Zoom automatically focuses the pan and zoom motion to important parts of the image like the face.

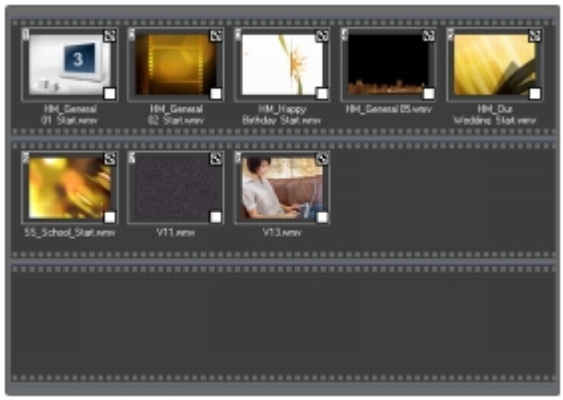


.

Fit to image duration: Trims the background music to fit the total duration of the slideshow.
Tip: Select
Keep Previous to use the image duration you set in the previous page of the Movie Wizard.
· Fit to background
music tempo and duration: Adjusts the duration of each clip and the total duration of the slideshow to fit the background music's tempo and duration.
Note: A prompt will be displayed if the images' total duration is longer than the music. Select Yes to automatically drop images in excess of the music's duration or
No to select another background music. A longer music duration will result to the repetition of images to fit the duration of the music.
.

Fit to background music tempo: Adjusts the duration of each clip to fit the background music's tempo.

3 For Home Movie templates, click  to open the Mark Clips dialog box. Select a clip then click Must or
Optional to specify whether or not to include the clip in the show.



Note: Click
Auto to let the program decide which clips to retain or exclude.
4 To replace the title, first select the preset title from the
Title list. Double-click the preset text in the Preview Window and then type in your text.



Drag yellow handles to resize text



Drag blue-green handle to position or resize shadow



Drag purple handles to rotate text

5 Click 
to change text formatting.
In the
Text Properties dialog box, select a font type, size and color for the text, and set the desired shadow color and transparency.

6 To replace the background music, click  to open the
Audio Options window. Locate and select the desired music file.

Click 
to specify music file settings.
Note: Make sure that your background music is 30 seconds or longer if you want to fit the video to the music. If the music duration is less than 30 seconds, the music will not be looped leaving the remaining video without any background music.

7 Use the
Volume slider to adjust the volume of the background music with respect to the video's audio. Dragging the slider to the left increases the volume of the background music and decreases the volume of the video's audio.

8 Click
Next.

Note: If you opened the VideoStudio Movie Wizard within VideoStudio Editor, clicking
Next will skip the last step and directly insert the clips onto the Timeline in the VideoStudio Editor.

Step 3: Finish

Select how to output the final movie:



Click Create Video File to output your movie as a video file that can be played back on the computer.



Click Create Disc to burn your movie onto a disc.



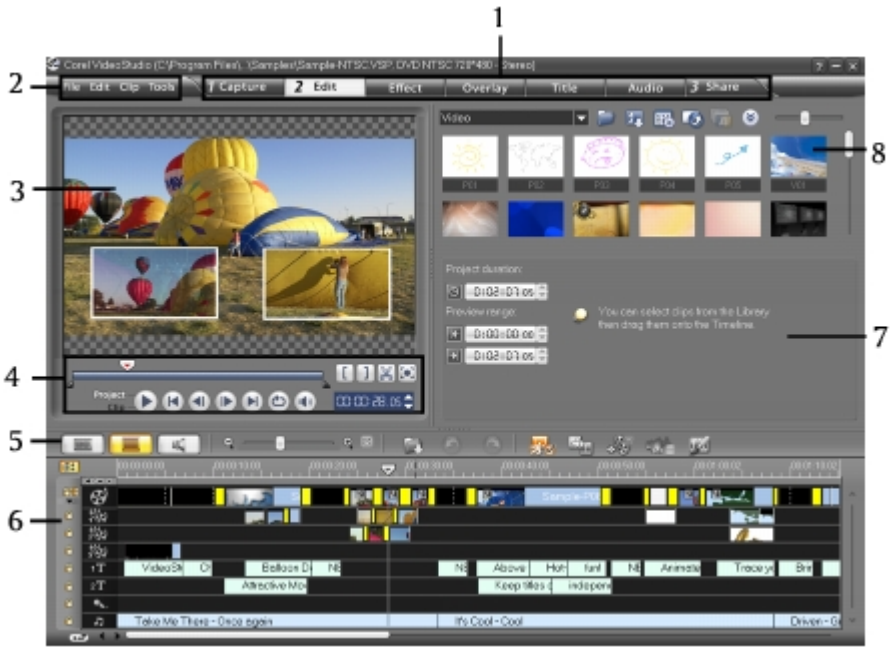
Click Edit in Corel VideoStudio Editor to make further edits to your movie using VideoStudio Editor.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

VideoStudio Editor

VideoStudio Editor provides a step-by-step workflow that makes creating movies simple and easy. This section introduces you to the VideoStudio Editor interface and briefly explains the steps involved in creating a movie. Refer to the succeeding chapters for more in-depth information on each step.

The user interface



1 Step Panel
Contains buttons that correspond to the different steps in video editing.
2 Menu Bar
Contains menus that provide different set of commands.
3 Preview Window
Shows the current clip, video filter, effect, or title.
4 Navigation Panel
Provides buttons for playback and for precision trimming of clips. In the Capture Step, this also acts as the device control for the DV or HDV camcorder.
5 Toolbar
Contains buttons for switching between three project views and other quick settings.
6 Project Timeline
Displays all the clips, titles, and effects included in your project.
7 Options Panel
Contains controls, buttons, and other information that you can use to customize the settings of the selected clip. The contents of this panel change depending on the step you are in.
8 Library

Stores and organizes all of your media clips.
Notes:
· To change the user interface layout, click
Preferences: UI Layout.
· You can scale the layout of the user interface. Splitters between the Preview, Library and Timeline windows can be scaled. Drag the splitters and resize windows according to your editing preferences.

The Step Panel

VideoStudio simplifies the process of creating movies into seven simple steps. Click the buttons in the Step Panel to switch between steps.



Once a project is opened in VideoStudio, video can be recorded directly to your computer's hard drive in the Capture Step. Footage from a videotape can be captured as a single file or automatically divided into multiple files. This step allows you to capture video and still images.



The Edit Step and the Timeline are the heart of VideoStudio. This is where you arrange, edit, and trim your video clips. Video filters can also be applied to your video clips in this step.



The Effect Step lets you add transitions between video clips in your project. Choose from the variety of transition effects in the Library.



The Overlay Step allows you to superimpose multiple clips over another to create a picture-in-picture effect.



No movie would be complete without opening titles, captions and closing credits. In the Title Step, you can create animated text titles or choose from various presets in the Library.



Background music sets the mood of your movie. The Audio Step lets you select and record music files from one or several CD-ROM drives attached to your computer. You can also dub over your video in this step.



When your movie is complete, you can create a video file for sharing on the Web or output the movie on tape, DVD, or CD in the Share Step.

The Menu Bar

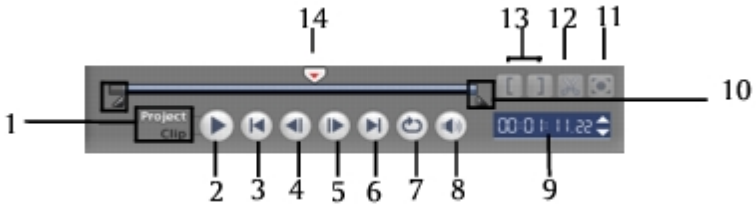
The
Menu Bar provides various commands for customizing VideoStudio, opening and saving movie projects,

working with individual clips, and more.

The Navigation Panel

The Navigation Panel is used to preview and edit the clips used in your project. Use the Navigation Controls to move around a selected clip or your project. Use the Trim Handles and Jog Slider to edit your clips.

When capturing video from a DV or HDV camcorder, the Navigation Controls are used for device control. Use these buttons to control your DV or HDV camcorder or any other DV device.



1 **Play Mode**
Select whether you want to preview your project or the selected clip only.

2 **Play**
Plays, pauses or resumes the current project or a selected clip.

3 **Home**
Returns to the starting frame.

4 **Previous**
Moves to the previous frame.

5 **Next**
Moves to the next frame.

6 **End**
Moves to the end frame.

7 **Repeat**
Loops playback.

8 **System Volume**
Click and drag the slider to adjust the volume of your computer's speakers.

9 **Timecode**
Allows you to directly jump to a part of your project or selected clip by specifying the exact timecode.

10 Trim Handles
Allows you to set a preview range in the project or trim a clip.

11 **Enlarge Preview Window**
Click to increase the size of the Preview Window. You can only preview, not edit, your clips when the Preview Window is enlarged.

12 Cut Clip
Cuts the selected clip into two. Position the Jog Slider to where you want the first clip to end and the second one to start, then click this button.

13 **Mark-in/out**
Use these buttons to set a preview range in the project, or to mark the start and end points where to trim a clip.

14 Jog Slider
Allows you to scrub through the project or clip.

The Toolbar

The toolbar allows you to easily access buttons for editing. You can change your project view or zoom your project timeline by adjusting your Timeline ruler. Click Smart Proxy Manager to speed up editing of your HD videos and other large source files. Or use the Track Manager to add more overlay tracks.



1 Storyboard View

2 Timeline View

Shows image thumbnails of your movie in the Timeline.

Allows you to perform frame-accurate editing of your clips.

3 Audio View
Shows the audio waveform view, allowing you to visually adjust the volume levels of your video clips, narration or background music.

4 Zoom Controls
Allows you to change the timecode increments in the Timeline ruler.

5 Fit Project in Timeline Window
Zooms in or out to display all the project's clips on the Timeline.

6 Insert Media Files
Displays a menu allowing you to place video, audio or image clips directly on the project.

7 Undo
Lets you undo a previous function.

8 Redo
Allows you to redo an undone function.

9 Enable/Disable Smart Proxy
Toggles between Enable and Disable Smart Proxy and allows you to customize proxy settings when creating working copies of your HD videos with lower resolution.

10 Batch Convert
Converts multiple video files to one video format.

11 Track Manager
Allows you to show/hide tracks.

12 Enable/Disable 5.1 Surround
Enables you to create 5.1 Surround audio tracks.

13 Painting Creator
A new feature of VideoStudio that allows you to create image and animation graphic overlays to further enhance your project.

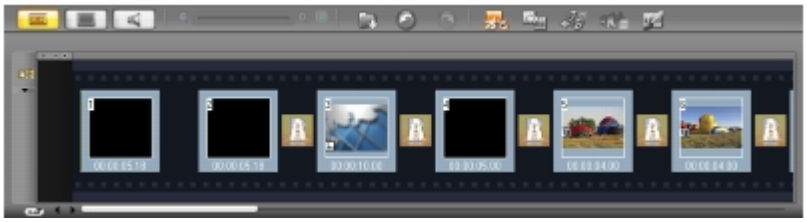
The Project Timeline

The Project Timeline at the lower part of the VideoStudio Editor window is where you assemble your movie project.
There are three types of views for displaying the Project Timeline: Storyboard, Timeline and Audio View. Click the buttons at the left side of the toolbar to switch between different views.



Storyboard View

Storyboard View is the fastest and simplest way to add video clips to your movie. Each thumbnail in the storyboard represents an event in your movie, an event being a video clip or a transition. Thumbnails show at a glance the chronological order of events in your project. The duration of each clip is shown at the bottom of each thumbnail.

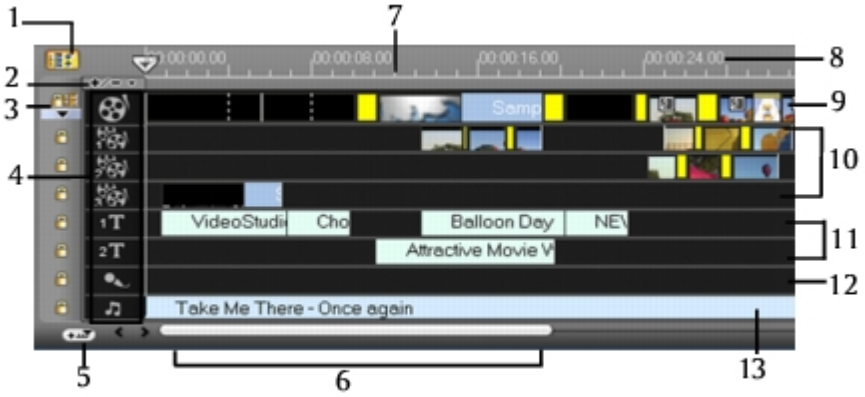


You can drag and drop video clips to insert and arrange them. Transition effects can be inserted between video clips. A selected video clip can be trimmed in the Preview Window.

Timeline View

Timeline View gives you the most comprehensive display of the elements in your movie project. It divides

a project into separate tracks for video, overlay, title, voice and music.



1 Show All Visible Tracks
Click to display all tracks in your project.

2 Add/Remove Chapter/Cue Point
Click to set chapter or cue points in your movie.

3 Ripple Editing
Enable/Disable Ripple Editing. When enabled, allows you to select which tracks to apply it to.

4 Track buttons
Click the buttons to switch between different tracks.

5 Timeline scroll control
Enable/disable scrolling along the Timeline when previewing a clip that extends beyond the current view.

6 Project scroll controls
Use the left and right buttons or drag the Scroll Bar to move around your project.

7 Selected range
This color bar represents the trimmed or selected part of a clip or project.

8 Timeline ruler
Displays the project's timecode increments in hours: minutes:seconds.frames, which helps you determine clip and project length.

9 Video Track
Contains video/image/color clips and transitions.

10 Overlay Tracks
Contains overlay clips, which can be video, image or color clips.

11 Title Track
Contains title clips.

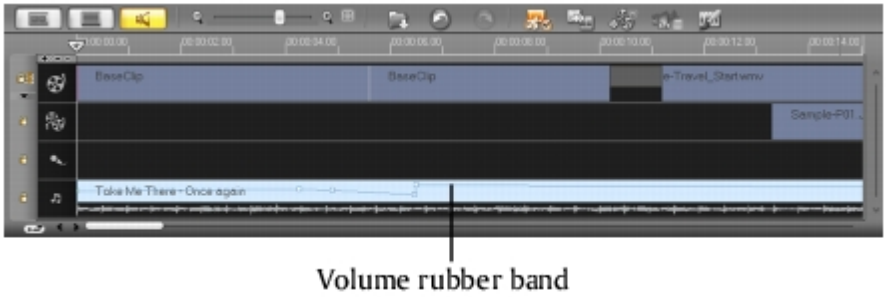
12 Voice Track
Contains voiceover clips.

13 Music Track
Contains music clips from audio files.

To switch to different tracks: Click a Step button in the Step Panel that corresponds to the track. Click the Track buttons. Double-click the desired track, or click a clip on the track.
Tips:
· The wheel mouse can be used to scroll through the Timeline.
· When the pointer is over the Zoom Controls or
Timeline ruler, you can use the wheel to zoom in and out of the Timeline.

Audio View

Audio View allows you to visually adjust the volume levels of video, voice and music clips.



Clips that contain audio are displayed with a
Volume rubber band that you can click and drag to adjust their volume.

The Options Panel

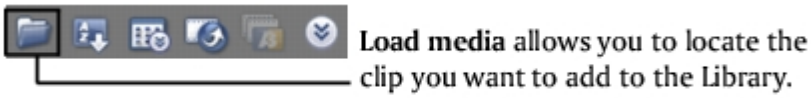
The
Options Panel changes depending on the program's mode and the step or track you are working on. The Options Panel may contain one or two tabs. The controls and options in each tab vary, depending on the selected clip.

The Library

The
Library is a storage depot for everything you need to create a movie: video clips, video filters, audio clips, still images, transition effects, music files, titles and color clips. These are collectively known as media clips.
Tips:
· You can print images directly from the Library. Right-click the image to print then select
Print Image and select an image size.
· Right-click the image then select
Print Options to specify print alignment and borders.

To add media clips to the Library:

1 Click
Load media to open a dialog box for locating the media clip to insert in the Library.



2 Select the desired file. You can also import VideoStudio projects and media files from your hard drive into the VideoStudio Library. This can be found in the Project Video and
Windows Media Library options in the Library drop-down menu.
Note:
In using Windows Vista OS, VideoStudio automatically synchronizes with Vista Media Library during program startup. In this case, Library modification is not possible in VideoStudio and you need to modify Library content in the Vista Media Library.
3 Click
Open when you are finished.
Notes:
· You can also drag and drop files from Windows Explorer straight to the Library.
· Right-click a clip in the Library to view the clip's properties as well as copy, delete, or Split by Scene.



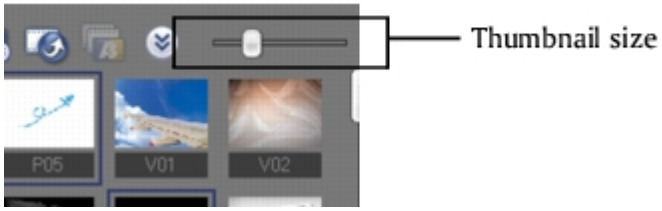
Hold [Ctrl] or [Shift] to select multiple clips.

To delete media clips from the Library:

1 Select the clip to remove from the **Library**, then press [
Delete].
Or, right-click the clip in the Library and select
Delete.
2 When prompted, verify whether you want to delete the thumbnail from the Library.
Tips:
· Export your Library to avoid losing important library information and media clips.This action will create a backup of the virtual media files information of your current library in the directory you will specify. You can find this option on
Tools:Library Manager - Export Library and specify your target location.
· You can also import your exported Library to restore media files and other library information. Click on
Tools:Library Manager - Import Library and find the directory you specified.
· To reset your Library to the default settings, select
Tools:Library Manager - Reset Library.
· Select the
Smart search option in the Relink dialog box and VideoStudio will try to automatically locate and relink the files in your library.

Thumbnail Views

VideoStudio allows you to adjust the size of thumbnails to compensate for different monitor sizes and for easier access to the different media in the Library.



To adjust thumbnail size:

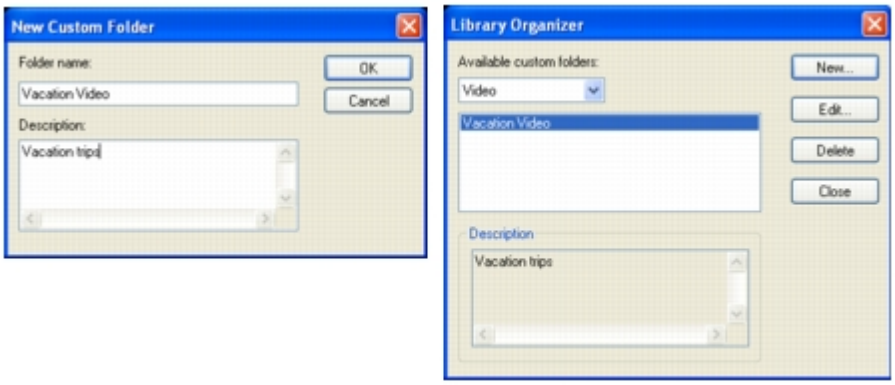
Move the slider to the left or right to decrease and increase thumbnail size, depending on your desired appearance. VideoStudio will keep the last thumbnail size you selected on your next session.

Library Organizer

The
Library Organizer organizes your custom Library folders. These folders help you store and manage all kinds of media files.

To use the Library Organizer:

1 Click to launch the Library Organizer dialog box and select Library Organizer from the drop-down list. You can also click on
Tools:Library Manager-Library Organizer.
2 Select a media type from the
Available custom folders list.
3 Click New to display the New Custom Folder dialog box and create a new folder. Specify a Library Folder name and a Description. Click
OK.



Click
Edit to rename or modify the description of a selected custom folder.
Click Delete to remove a selected custom folder from the **Library**
.
4 Click
Close.

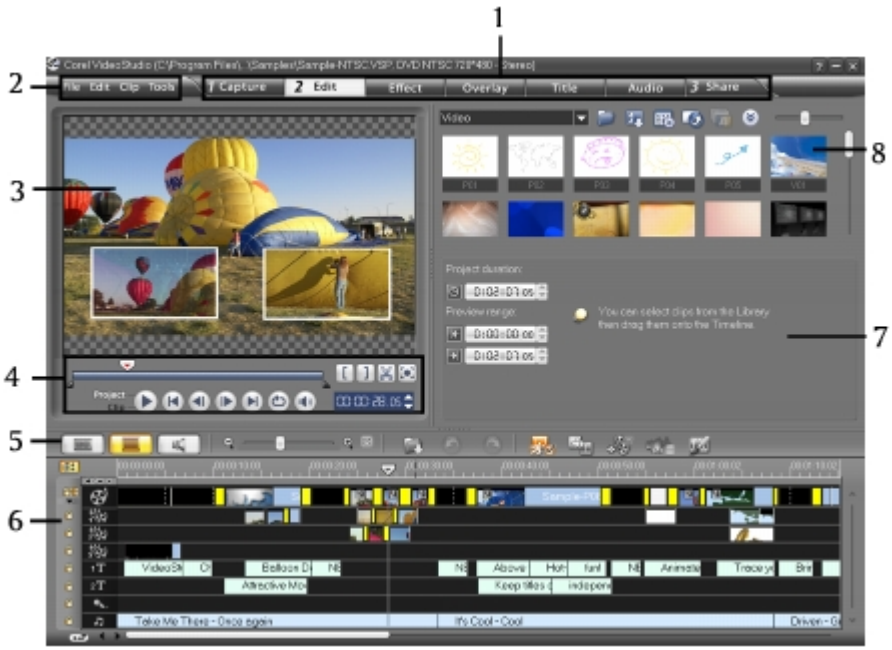
_____

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

VideoStudio Editor

VideoStudio Editor provides a step-by-step workflow that makes creating movies simple and easy. This section introduces you to the VideoStudio Editor interface and briefly explains the steps involved in creating a movie. Refer to the succeeding chapters for more in-depth information on each step.

The user interface



1 Step Panel
Contains buttons that correspond to the different steps in video editing.
2 Menu Bar
Contains menus that provide different set of commands.
3 Preview Window
Shows the current clip, video filter, effect, or title.
4 Navigation Panel
Provides buttons for playback and for precision trimming of clips. In the Capture Step, this also acts as the device control for the DV or HDV camcorder.
5 Toolbar
Contains buttons for switching between three project views and other quick settings.
6 Project Timeline
Displays all the clips, titles, and effects included in your project.
7 Options Panel
Contains controls, buttons, and other information that you can use to customize the settings of the selected clip. The contents of this panel change depending on the step you are in.
8 Library

Stores and organizes all of your media clips.
Notes:
· To change the user interface layout, click
Preferences: UI Layout.
· You can scale the layout of the user interface. Splitters between the Preview, Library and Timeline windows can be scaled. Drag the splitters and resize windows according to your editing preferences.

The Step Panel

VideoStudio simplifies the process of creating movies into seven simple steps. Click the buttons in the Step Panel to switch between steps.



Once a project is opened in VideoStudio, video can be recorded directly to your computer's hard drive in the Capture Step. Footage from a videotape can be captured as a single file or automatically divided into multiple files. This step allows you to capture video and still images.



The Edit Step and the Timeline are the heart of VideoStudio. This is where you arrange, edit, and trim your video clips. Video filters can also be applied to your video clips in this step.



The Effect Step lets you add transitions between video clips in your project. Choose from the variety of transition effects in the Library.



The Overlay Step allows you to superimpose multiple clips over another to create a picture-in-picture effect.



No movie would be complete without opening titles, captions and closing credits. In the Title Step, you can create animated text titles or choose from various presets in the Library.



Background music sets the mood of your movie. The Audio Step lets you select and record music files from one or several CD-ROM drives attached to your computer. You can also dub over your video in this step.



When your movie is complete, you can create a video file for sharing on the Web or output the movie on tape, DVD, or CD in the Share Step.

The Menu Bar

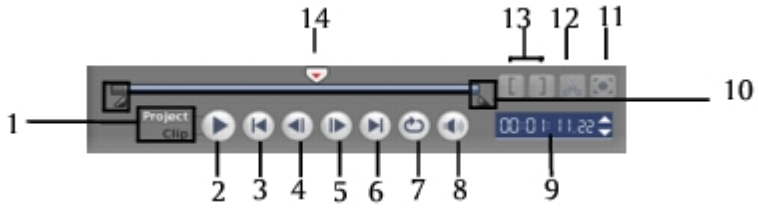
The
Menu Bar provides various commands for customizing VideoStudio, opening and saving movie projects,

working with individual clips, and more.

The Navigation Panel

The Navigation Panel is used to preview and edit the clips used in your project. Use the Navigation Controls to move around a selected clip or your project. Use the Trim Handles and Jog Slider to edit your clips.

When capturing video from a DV or HDV camcorder, the Navigation Controls are used for device control. Use these buttons to control your DV or HDV camcorder or any other DV device.



1 **Play Mode**
Select whether you want to preview your project or the selected clip only.

2 **Play**
Plays, pauses or resumes the current project or a selected clip.

3 **Home**
Returns to the starting frame.

4 **Previous**
Moves to the previous frame.

5 **Next**
Moves to the next frame.

6 **End**
Moves to the end frame.

7 **Repeat**
Loops playback.

8 **System Volume**
Click and drag the slider to adjust the volume of your computer's speakers.

9 **Timecode**
Allows you to directly jump to a part of your project or selected clip by specifying the exact timecode.

10 Trim Handles
Allows you to set a preview range in the project or trim a clip.

11 **Enlarge Preview Window**
Click to increase the size of the Preview Window. You can only preview, not edit, your clips when the Preview Window is enlarged.

12 Cut Clip
Cuts the selected clip into two. Position the Jog Slider to where you want the first clip to end and the second one to start, then click this button.

13 **Mark-in/out**
Use these buttons to set a preview range in the project, or to mark the start and end points where to trim a clip.

14 Jog Slider
Allows you to scrub through the project or clip.

The Toolbar

The toolbar allows you to easily access buttons for editing. You can change your project view or zoom your project timeline by adjusting your Timeline ruler. Click Smart Proxy Manager to speed up editing of your HD videos and other large source files. Or use the Track Manager to add more overlay tracks.



1 Storyboard View

2 Timeline View

Shows image thumbnails of your movie in the Timeline.

Allows you to perform frame-accurate editing of your clips.

3 Audio View
Shows the audio waveform view, allowing you to visually adjust the volume levels of your video clips, narration or background music.

4 Zoom Controls
Allows you to change the timecode increments in the Timeline ruler.

5 Fit Project in Timeline Window
Zooms in or out to display all the project's clips on the Timeline.

6 Insert Media Files
Displays a menu allowing you to place video, audio or image clips directly on the project.

7 Undo
Lets you undo a previous function.

8 Redo
Allows you to redo an undone function.

9 Enable/Disable Smart Proxy
Toggles between Enable and Disable Smart Proxy and allows you to customize proxy settings when creating working copies of your HD videos with lower resolution.

10 Batch Convert
Converts multiple video files to one video format.

11 Track Manager
Allows you to show/hide tracks.

12 Enable/Disable 5.1 Surround
Enables you to create 5.1 Surround audio tracks.

13 Painting Creator
A new feature of VideoStudio that allows you to create image and animation graphic overlays to further enhance your project.

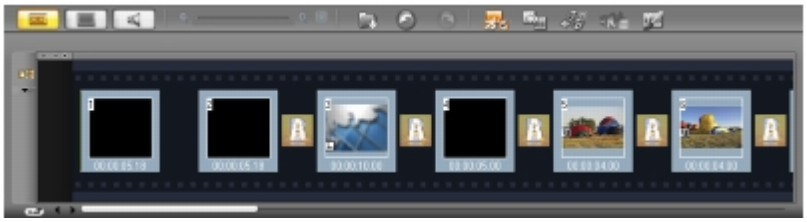
The Project Timeline

The Project Timeline at the lower part of the VideoStudio Editor window is where you assemble your movie project.
There are three types of views for displaying the Project Timeline: Storyboard, Timeline and Audio View. Click the buttons at the left side of the toolbar to switch between different views.



Storyboard View

Storyboard View is the fastest and simplest way to add video clips to your movie. Each thumbnail in the storyboard represents an event in your movie, an event being a video clip or a transition. Thumbnails show at a glance the chronological order of events in your project. The duration of each clip is shown at the bottom of each thumbnail.

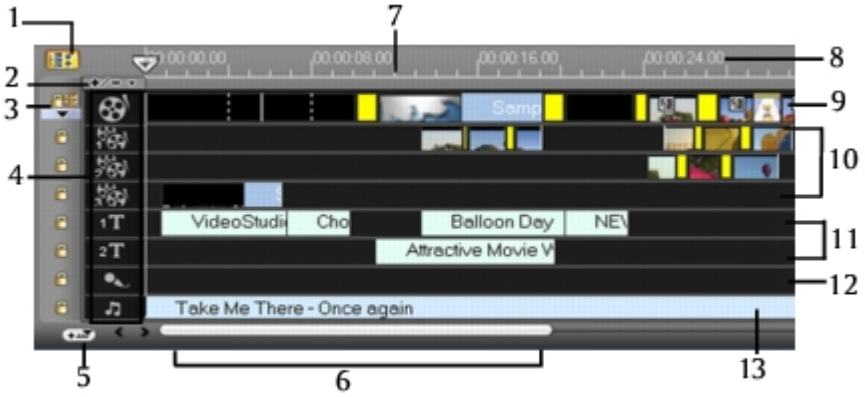


You can drag and drop video clips to insert and arrange them. Transition effects can be inserted between video clips. A selected video clip can be trimmed in the Preview Window.

Timeline View

Timeline View gives you the most comprehensive display of the elements in your movie project. It divides

a project into separate tracks for video, overlay, title, voice and music.



1 Show All Visible Tracks
Click to display all tracks in your project.

2 Add/Remove Chapter/Cue Point
Click to set chapter or cue points in your movie.

3 Ripple Editing
Enable/Disable Ripple Editing. When enabled, allows you to select which tracks to apply it to.

4 Track buttons
Click the buttons to switch between different tracks.

5 Timeline scroll control
Enable/disable scrolling along the Timeline when previewing a clip that extends beyond the current view.

6 Project scroll controls
Use the left and right buttons or drag the Scroll Bar to move around your project.

7 Selected range
This color bar represents the trimmed or selected part of a clip or project.

8 Timeline ruler
Displays the project's timecode increments in hours: minutes:seconds.frames, which helps you determine clip and project length.

9 Video Track
Contains video/image/color clips and transitions.

10 Overlay Tracks
Contains overlay clips, which can be video, image or color clips.

11 Title Track
Contains title clips.

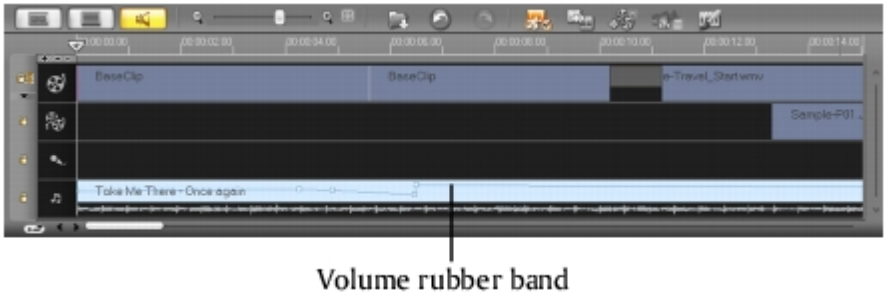
12 Voice Track
Contains voiceover clips.

13 Music Track
Contains music clips from audio files.

To switch to different tracks: Click a Step button in the Step Panel that corresponds to the track. Click the Track buttons. Double-click the desired track, or click a clip on the track.
Tips:
· The wheel mouse can be used to scroll through the Timeline.
· When the pointer is over the Zoom Controls or
Timeline ruler, you can use the wheel to zoom in and out of the Timeline.

Audio View

Audio View allows you to visually adjust the volume levels of video, voice and music clips.



Clips that contain audio are displayed with a
Volume rubber band that you can click and drag to adjust their volume.

The Options Panel

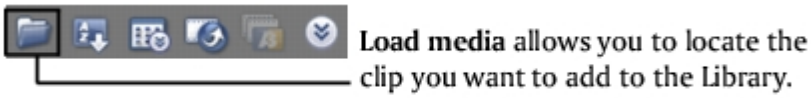
The
Options Panel changes depending on the program's mode and the step or track you are working on. The Options Panel may contain one or two tabs. The controls and options in each tab vary, depending on the selected clip.

The Library

The
Library is a storage depot for everything you need to create a movie: video clips, video filters, audio clips, still images, transition effects, music files, titles and color clips. These are collectively known as media clips.
Tips:
· You can print images directly from the Library. Right-click the image to print then select
Print Image and select an image size.
· Right-click the image then select
Print Options to specify print alignment and borders.

To add media clips to the Library:

1 Click
Load media to open a dialog box for locating the media clip to insert in the Library.



2 Select the desired file. You can also import VideoStudio projects and media files from your hard drive into the VideoStudio Library. This can be found in the Project Video and
Windows Media Library options in the Library drop-down menu.
Note:
In using Windows Vista OS, VideoStudio automatically synchronizes with Vista Media Library during program startup. In this case, Library modification is not possible in VideoStudio and you need to modify Library content in the Vista Media Library.
3 Click
Open when you are finished.
Notes:
· You can also drag and drop files from Windows Explorer straight to the Library.
· Right-click a clip in the Library to view the clip's properties as well as copy, delete, or Split by Scene.



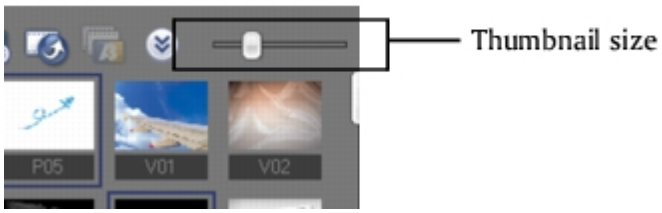
Hold [Ctrl] or [Shift] to select multiple clips.

To delete media clips from the Library:

1 Select the clip to remove from the **Library**, then press [
Delete].
Or, right-click the clip in the Library and select
Delete.
2 When prompted, verify whether you want to delete the thumbnail from the Library.
Tips:
· Export your Library to avoid losing important library information and media clips.This action will create a backup of the virtual media files information of your current library in the directory you will specify. You can find this option on
Tools:Library Manager - Export Library and specify your target location.
· You can also import your exported Library to restore media files and other library information. Click on
Tools:Library Manager - Import Library and find the directory you specified.
· To reset your Library to the default settings, select
Tools:Library Manager - Reset Library.
· Select the
Smart search option in the Relink dialog box and VideoStudio will try to automatically locate and relink the files in your library.

Thumbnail Views

VideoStudio allows you to adjust the size of thumbnails to compensate for different monitor sizes and for easier access to the different media in the Library.



To adjust thumbnail size:

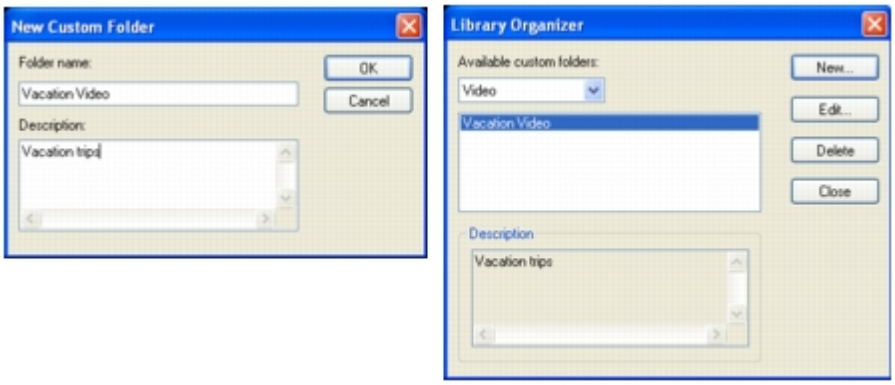
Move the slider to the left or right to decrease and increase thumbnail size, depending on your desired appearance. VideoStudio will keep the last thumbnail size you selected on your next session.

Library Organizer

The
Library Organizer organizes your custom Library folders. These folders help you store and manage all kinds of media files.

To use the Library Organizer:

1 Click to launch the Library Organizer dialog box and select Library Organizer from the drop-down list. You can also click on
Tools:Library Manager-Library Organizer.
2 Select a media type from the
Available custom folders list.
3 Click New to display the New Custom Folder dialog box and create a new folder. Specify a Library Folder name and a Description. Click
OK.



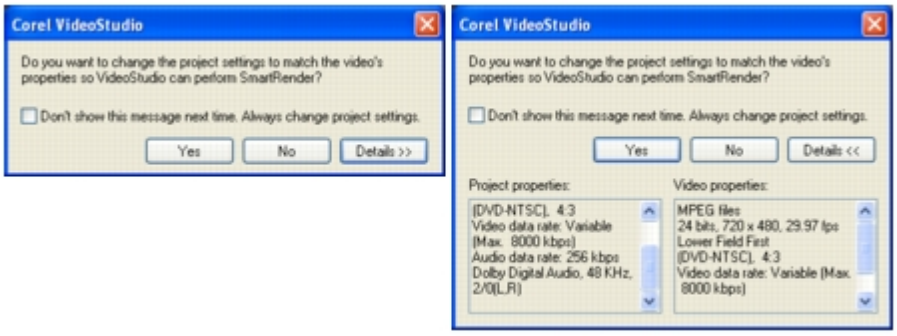
Click
Edit to rename or modify the description of a selected custom folder.
Click Delete to remove a selected custom folder from the **Library**
.
4 Click
Close.

_____

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Starting a new movie project

When you run VideoStudio, it automatically opens a new project and lets you start composing your movie production. A new project always uses VideoStudio's default settings. To check what these settings are, click
File: Project Properties.
Project settings determine how your movie project is rendered when you preview it. Rendering is the process by which VideoStudio converts raw video, titles, sounds, and effects into a continuous stream of data which can be played back in your computer. You can modify the project settings in the
Project Properties dialog box.
When you capture or insert your first video clip into the project, VideoStudio automatically checks the properties of the clip and your project. If properties such as file format, frame size, etc. are not identical, VideoStudio automatically adjusts the project settings to match the clip's properties. Changing the project settings to conform with clip properties allows VideoStudio to perform the SmartRender function.



Tip: The above message box lets you change the project properties to be the same as the first video clip inserted into the Timeline. To toggle between displaying and not displaying the message box, select or clear Show message when inserting first video clip into the Timeline in the
Preferences dialog box.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Setting your preferences

Customize the program's working environment through the Preferences dialog box. You can specify a working folder for saving files, set undo levels, choose preferred settings for program behavior, enable Smart Proxy and more. To open the Preferences dialog box, select
File: Preferences [F6].

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Setting project properties

Project Properties serve as your template for previewing your movie projects. The project settings in the Project Properties dialog box determine the appearance and quality of a project when it is previewed on-screen. To customize project settings, select
File: Project Properties.
When customizing project settings, it is recommended that you make the settings the same as the attributes of the video footage that will be captured to avoid distorting the video images and have smooth playback without jumping frames.
When you customize project properties to be the same as the desired output settings for your project (for instance, setting project properties to DVD settings if you will output the project to a DVD disc), you can have more accurate previews of your final movie.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Adding clips

There are three ways to add clips to your project: Capture video clips from a video source. The video clips will be inserted onto the Video track. Drag clips from the Library onto the correct tracks. Click  to directly insert media files to the different tracks.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Previewing

The Play button in the **Navigation Panel** serves two purposes: for playback of your entire project or a selected clip. To play back, click Project or Clip, then click
Play.

While working on your project, you will want to preview your work frequently to see how your project is progressing. VideoStudio offers you two preview options: Instant Playback and High Quality Playback.
Select File: Preferences - General, then choose the preview method that you prefer in
Playback method.
· Instant Playback
allows you to quickly preview changes in your project without the need to create a temporary preview file, however, playback may be jerky depending on your computer resources.
·
High Quality Playback renders your project as a temporary preview file then plays this preview file. Playback is smoother in High Quality Playback mode, but rendering your project for the first time in this mode may take a long time to complete depending on the size of your project and computer resources.
Note: When Perform non-square pixel rendering is selected in the Project Options dialog box (opened from
Project Properties dialog box), Instant Playback performance may be affected if computer resources are insufficient.
In High Quality Playback mode, VideoStudio uses SmartRender technology which renders only the changes you made such as transitions, titles and effects, and eliminates re-rendering the entire project. SmartRender saves time when generating previews.

Setting a preview range

For faster previews, you may choose to play only a part of your project. The selected range of frames to preview is referred to as the
preview range, and it is marked as a red bar in the Ruler Panel.



To play the preview area only:

1 Use the Trim Handles or the
Mark-in/out buttons to select the preview range.
The Preview range mark-in and Preview range mark-out
timecodes will then be displayed in the Options Panel.
2 To preview the selected range, select what you want to preview (Project or Clip), then click Play. To preview the entire clip, hold [Shift], then click
Play.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Previewing

The Play button in the **Navigation Panel** serves two purposes: for playback of your entire project or a selected clip. To play back, click Project or Clip, then click
Play.

While working on your project, you will want to preview your work frequently to see how your project is progressing. VideoStudio offers you two preview options: Instant Playback and High Quality Playback.
Select File: Preferences - General, then choose the preview method that you prefer in
Playback method.
· Instant Playback
allows you to quickly preview changes in your project without the need to create a temporary preview file, however, playback may be jerky depending on your computer resources.
·
High Quality Playback renders your project as a temporary preview file then plays this preview file. Playback is smoother in High Quality Playback mode, but rendering your project for the first time in this mode may take a long time to complete depending on the size of your project and computer resources.
Note: When Perform non-square pixel rendering is selected in the Project Options dialog box (opened from
Project Properties dialog box), Instant Playback performance may be affected if computer resources are insufficient.
In High Quality Playback mode, VideoStudio uses SmartRender technology which renders only the changes you made such as transitions, titles and effects, and eliminates re-rendering the entire project. SmartRender saves time when generating previews.

Setting a preview range

For faster previews, you may choose to play only a part of your project. The selected range of frames to preview is referred to as the
preview range, and it is marked as a red bar in the Ruler Panel.



To play the preview area only:

1 Use the Trim Handles or the
Mark-in/out buttons to select the preview range.
The Preview range mark-in and Preview range mark-out
timecodes will then be displayed in the Options Panel.
2 To preview the selected range, select what you want to preview (Project or Clip), then click Play. To preview the entire clip, hold [Shift], then click
Play.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Undoing and redoing actions

You can undo or redo the last set of actions that you performed while working on your movie by clicking Undo [Ctrl+Z] or Redo [Ctrl+Y] in the toolbar. You can adjust the number of undo levels in the Preferences dialog box.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Showing and hiding grid lines

You can use grid lines to guide you when repositioning or resizing images and videos or when adding titles to your movie.

To show grid lines in the Edit and Overlay steps, select a clip on the Timeline then select the Attribute tab. Select Distort clip then select Show grid lines. To show grid lines in the Title step, select Show grid lines in the Edit tab.

Tip: Click 
to adjust grid line settings.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Saving your project

While composing your movie project, select
File: Save [Ctrl + S] to frequently save your project and avoid accidental loss of your work. VideoStudio project files are saved in *.vsp file format.
To automatically save your work, select File: Preferences - General then select
Automatically save project every: and specify the time interval between saves.
To open an existing project, select File: Open Project [Ctrl + O]. To create a new project again, select File: New Project [Ctrl + N].

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Saving project as Smart Package

Packaging a video project is useful if you want to back up your work or transfer your files for sharing or for editing in a laptop or another computer.

To save projects as Smart Package, select File: Smart Package. Specify the Folder path, Project folder name and Project file name. Click
OK when done.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Capture

The bulk of video work involves working with raw footage. Transferring footage from a source device to the computer involves a process called
capturing.
When capturing, video data is transferred from a source (usually a video camera) through a capture card to the computer's hard drive.



VideoStudio lets you capture video from DV or HDV camcorders, mobile devices, analog sources, VCRs and digital televisions.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Seamless DV and MPEG capture

VideoStudio runs on Windows operating systems and is subject to limitations in file size when capturing or rendering video. VideoStudio automatically performs
seamless capture, saving video into a new file every time the maximum allowable file size for a single video file has been reached.
Seamless capture will be performed only when capturing DV Type-1 or DV Type-2 (from DV camcorder), or when capturing MPEG video (from DV and HDV camcorder or analog capture device).
The maximum captured file size per video file is 4 GB in Windows operating systems that use the FAT 32 partition file system. Captured video data in excess of 4 GB are automatically saved to a new file. In Windows XP which can use the NTFS file system, there is no limit in the captured file size.
Seamless capture is not available in VFW (Video For Windows) capture.
Note: VideoStudio automatically detects your file system and performs seamless capture only in a FAT 32 partition file system.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

The Capture Step Options Panel

The Capture Step Options Panel consists of four options: Capture Video, DV Quick Scan, Import Digital Media and
Import from Mobile Device.

Capture Video

The steps on how to capture are similar for all types of video sources except for the available capture settings in the Capture Video Options Panel that can be selected for each type of source.

To capture video:

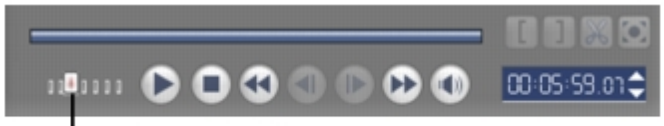
1 Click the Capture Step then click
Capture Video.
2 To specify a capture duration, enter the values in the
Duration box in the Options Panel.
3 Select your capture device from the
Source list.
4 Select a file format to use for saving your captured video from the
Format list.
5 Specify a
Capture folder in which to save video files.
6 Click
Options to open a menu for customizing more capture settings.
7 Scan your video to search the part to capture.
8 When your video for capture is already on cue, click Capture Video
to start capturing.
9 If you specified a capture duration, wait for the capture to complete. Otherwise, click Stop Capture or press [Esc]
to stop capturing.

Notes:

· When your camcorder is in Record mode (usually named CAMERA or
MOVIE), you can capture live video.
· The available settings in the
Video Properties dialog box vary, depending on the capture file format that you have chosen.

Capture Video Options Panel Duration: Sets the length of time for the capture. Source: Displays the detected capture device and lists other capture devices installed in your computer. Format: Gives you a list of options where you select a file format for saving your captured video. Capture folder: This feature allows you to specify a folder where you want your captured files to be saved. Split by Scene: Automatically separates captured video into several files based on changes in shooting date and time when capturing video from a DV camcorder. Options: Displays a menu allowing you to modify your capture settings. Capture Video: Transfers video from your source to your hard drive. Capture Image: Captures the displayed video frame as an image. Disable/Enable Audio Preview: Disables audio preview

on the computer while capturing DV.
Note: If the audio sounds choppy, there may be a problem with previewing audio on your computer during DV capture. This does not affect the audio capture quality. If this happens, click
Disable Audio Preview to mute the audio while capturing.
Digital Video (DV)
To capture Digital Video (DV) in its native format, select DV from the
Format list in the Options Panel. This saves the captured video as a DV AVI file (.avi).
Note: You can also use the DV Quick Scan
option to capture DV video.
DV AVI Type-1 and Type-2
When capturing DV, click Options in the Options Panel and select Video Properties to open a menu. In the Current Profile, choose whether to capture DV as DV Type-1 or
DV Type-2.
DV is a data stream that itself contains video and audio. In DV Type-1, the video and audio channels are stored unmodified as a single, interleaved stream in the AVI file. With
DV Type-2, the video and audio channels are stored as two separate streams in the AVI file.
The advantage of Type-1 is that the DV data does not need to be processed, and is stored in its exact original format. The advantage of Type-2 is that it is compatible with video software that is not specially written to recognize and process Type-1 files.
Note: To preview audio on the computer while capturing DV, click Enable Audio Preview in the Options Panel. If the audio sounds choppy, there may be a problem with previewing audio on your computer during DV capture. This does not affect the audio capture quality. If this happens, click Disable Audio Preview to mute the audio.
Controlling the DV camcorder with the Navigation Panel
When capturing from a DV camcorder, use the
Navigation Panel to scan your footage and locate the scenes you want to capture.



Shuttle Slider
Drag to move forward and back through the footage at variable speeds. This is a quick way to find scenes you are looking for in your video.

High Definition Videos
You can import high definition video from your AVCHD DVD or Hard Disk Drive (HDD) camcorders.

To capture high definition videos:

1 Connect your HDV camcorder to your computer's IEEE-1394 port using the IEEE-1394 cable.
2 Turn on your camcorder and switch it to Play/Edit mode and make sure that your HDV camcorder is switched to HDV mode.
Note: For Sony HDV camcorders, flip open the LCD screen and see if HDVout I-Link is on the LCD screen to check if the camera is set to HDV mode. If you see DVout I-Link, press P-MENU at the lower right of the screen. In the menu, press MENU> STANDARD SET> VCR HDV/DV and press HDV.
3 Click Capture on the Step Panel. In the Options Panel, click
.
Digital TV or DVB-T video
Before capturing, have the DVB-T source connected via a compatible capture card installed on your

computer first.

To capture DVB-T video:

1 Click the Capture Step then click
Capture Video.
2 In the Capture Step Options Panel, select Digital TV Source from the
Source list.
3 Click Options and select
Video Properties.
4 In Channel List, click
Start Scan to start scanning for channels.
Note: DVB-T channels are not automatically scanned. Make sure to manually scan the channels first before capturing.
5 Click
Capture Video.
6 Click
Yes when prompted if you want to start capturing and auto-recover DVB-T video.
7 Follow the remaining steps as described in the procedure for capturing videos.

To recover captured DVB-T videos:

1 Click Tools in the Edit Step and select
Recover DVB-T Video.
2 In the
Recover DVB-T Video dialog box, click Add and browse for the videos to recover.
3 Click
Recover.
Analog video
When footage is captured from analog sources such as VHS, S-VHS, Video-8, or Hi8 camcorders/VCRs, it is converted to a digital format that can be read and stored by the computer. Before capturing, choose the desired file format to use for saving the captured video in the Options Panel's
Format list.
Click Options then select
Capture Options to choose how you want footage to be captured.
To specify the type of video source you are capturing from, click Options then select
Video Properties. In the dialog box that opens, you can customize the following capture settings: In the Input **Source** tab, choose whether you are capturing NTSC, PAL, or SECAM video and select the Input source (Tuner, S-Video, or Composite). In the Color Manager tab, you can fine tune the video source to ensure good quality captures. In the Template tab, set the frame size and compression method to use for saving the captured video.
TV footage
VideoStudio allows you to capture TV footage through a TV tuner. Capture a segment of your favorite television show on regular TV or cable then save it in your hard drive in AVI or MPEG.

To capture TV footage:

1 Select your TV tuner device from the
Source drop-down list.
2 Click Options: Video Properties to open the
Video Properties dialog box. If needed, adjust the settings accordingly.
Click the

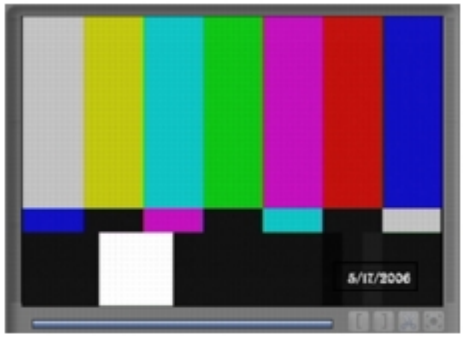
Tuner Information tab to choose Antenna or Cable TV, scan available channels in your region, and more.
3 In the
Channel box, specify the channel number from which to capture.
Split by Scene
It often happens that a single DV tape contains several footage that were shot at different times. VideoStudio saves you the hassle of having to capture the segments one by one then save them as separate files. The Split by Scene
feature will do that job for you.

To use Split by Scene option in Capture Step:

1 Select the Split by Scene
option in the Options Panel.
2 Click
Capture Video. VideoStudio will automatically look for the scenes according to their shooting date and time and capture them as separate files.

DV Quick Scan

Use this option to scan a DV device for scenes to import. To use DV Quick Scan, refer to the first step in the
DV-to-DVD Wizard section.
In DV Quick Scan, you can add the date and time of your video. After scanning your DV tape, click Next. This will then display the Capture to Timeline Settings dialog box. Select Insert to Timeline and choose Add video date information as title. If you want the shooting date to appear in the entire duration of the video, select
Entire video or only during a specified time.



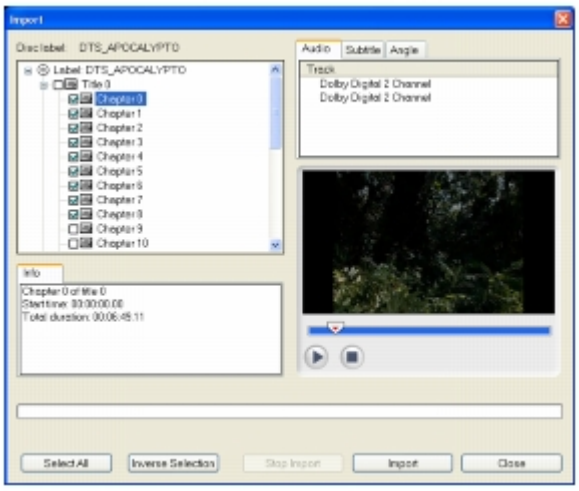
Importing digital media

You can import DVD/DVD-VR, AVCHD or BDMV video from a disc or hard drive or AVCHD *.m2ts and *.mts files from a disc or a hard disk into VideoStudio.

To import Digital Media:

1 Click the Capture Step then click Import Digital Media.
Select a Title dialog box opens.
2 Locate the DVD drive that contains the video files and click
Import.
Note: Click Import from Folder to search your hard drive for the video files. Browse for the DVD folder and click

OK.
3 In the Import dialog box, select which DVD tracks to import in
Label. Use the preview screen to view the selected tracks to import.



4 Click
Import to finish. All imported videos will be added to the thumbnail list in the Library.
Importing videos in AVCHD format
AVCHD (Advanced Video Codec High Definition), a new high-definition format, efficiently compresses videos using MPEG-4 AVC/H.264 standard and produces high quality videos.
You can import AVCHD *.m2ts and *.mts files stored in standard DVDs or hard drives and edit them in VideoStudio. To import AVCHD videos, follow the steps in Import Digital Media section.

Importing from mobile devices

You can insert media files from your mobile devices like Nokia cellphones, Microsoft Zune, Windows Mobile 5.0, iPod and PSP to your project.
Note: Make sure your device is properly connected and it can be recognized by VideoStudio.

To import videos from a mobile device:

1 In Capture Step Options Panel, click
Import from Mobile Device.
2 Click the device where you want to import files from in
Device.
3 Click the type of media file you want to add. Click
to display all your media files in the device.
4 Select the media file and click
OK.
Tip: Click
Settings to set where to browse for files and where to save imported and exported files.

To trim video clips before inserting into your project:

1 Select the clip you want to trim and click
to preview the clip.
2 At the bottom of the dialog box, drag the Jog Slider until you locate the point in the video clip that you want to set as the start of the clip. Click
.
3 Drag the Jog Slider until you locate the point in the video clip that you want to set as the end of the clip.

Click 
.

4 Click  to watch your trimmed clip. When finished, click OK.

_____

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

The Capture Step Options Panel

The Capture Step Options Panel consists of four options: Capture Video, DV Quick Scan, Import Digital Media and
Import from Mobile Device.

Capture Video

The steps on how to capture are similar for all types of video sources except for the available capture settings in the Capture Video Options Panel that can be selected for each type of source.

To capture video:

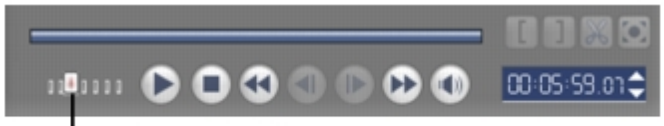
1 Click the Capture Step then click
Capture Video.
2 To specify a capture duration, enter the values in the
Duration box in the Options Panel.
3 Select your capture device from the
Source list.
4 Select a file format to use for saving your captured video from the
Format list.
5 Specify a
Capture folder in which to save video files.
6 Click
Options to open a menu for customizing more capture settings.
7 Scan your video to search the part to capture.
8 When your video for capture is already on cue, click Capture Video
to start capturing.
9 If you specified a capture duration, wait for the capture to complete. Otherwise, click Stop Capture or press [Esc]
to stop capturing.

Notes:

· When your camcorder is in Record mode (usually named CAMERA or
MOVIE), you can capture live video.
· The available settings in the
Video Properties dialog box vary, depending on the capture file format that you have chosen.

Capture Video Options Panel Duration: Sets the length of time for the capture. Source: Displays the detected capture device and lists other capture devices installed in your computer. Format: Gives you a list of options where you select a file format for saving your captured video. Capture folder: This feature allows you to specify a folder where you want your captured files to be saved. Split by Scene: Automatically separates captured video into several files based on changes in shooting date and time when capturing video from a DV camcorder. Options: Displays a menu allowing you to modify your capture settings. Capture Video: Transfers video from your source to your hard drive. Capture Image: Captures the displayed video frame as an image. Disable/Enable Audio Preview: Disables audio preview

on the computer while capturing DV.
Note: If the audio sounds choppy, there may be a problem with previewing audio on your computer during DV capture. This does not affect the audio capture quality. If this happens, click
Disable Audio Preview to mute the audio while capturing.
Digital Video (DV)
To capture Digital Video (DV) in its native format, select DV from the
Format list in the Options Panel. This saves the captured video as a DV AVI file (.avi).
Note: You can also use the DV Quick Scan
option to capture DV video.
DV AVI Type-1 and Type-2
When capturing DV, click Options in the Options Panel and select Video Properties to open a menu. In the Current Profile, choose whether to capture DV as DV Type-1 or
DV Type-2.
DV is a data stream that itself contains video and audio. In DV Type-1, the video and audio channels are stored unmodified as a single, interleaved stream in the AVI file. With
DV Type-2, the video and audio channels are stored as two separate streams in the AVI file.
The advantage of Type-1 is that the DV data does not need to be processed, and is stored in its exact original format. The advantage of Type-2 is that it is compatible with video software that is not specially written to recognize and process Type-1 files.
Note: To preview audio on the computer while capturing DV, click Enable Audio Preview in the Options Panel. If the audio sounds choppy, there may be a problem with previewing audio on your computer during DV capture. This does not affect the audio capture quality. If this happens, click Disable Audio Preview to mute the audio.
Controlling the DV camcorder with the Navigation Panel
When capturing from a DV camcorder, use the
Navigation Panel to scan your footage and locate the scenes you want to capture.



Shuttle Slider
Drag to move forward and back through the footage at variable speeds. This is a quick way to find scenes you are looking for in your video.

High Definition Videos
You can import high definition video from your AVCHD DVD or Hard Disk Drive (HDD) camcorders.

To capture high definition videos:

1 Connect your HDV camcorder to your computer's IEEE-1394 port using the IEEE-1394 cable.
2 Turn on your camcorder and switch it to Play/Edit mode and make sure that your HDV camcorder is switched to HDV mode.
Note: For Sony HDV camcorders, flip open the LCD screen and see if HDVout I-Link is on the LCD screen to check if the camera is set to HDV mode. If you see DVout I-Link, press P-MENU at the lower right of the screen. In the menu, press MENU> STANDARD SET> VCR HDV/DV and press HDV.
3 Click Capture on the Step Panel. In the Options Panel, click
.
Digital TV or DVB-T video
Before capturing, have the DVB-T source connected via a compatible capture card installed on your

computer first.

To capture DVB-T video:

1 Click the Capture Step then click
Capture Video.
2 In the Capture Step Options Panel, select Digital TV Source from the
Source list.
3 Click Options and select
Video Properties.
4 In Channel List, click
Start Scan to start scanning for channels.
Note: DVB-T channels are not automatically scanned. Make sure to manually scan the channels first before capturing.
5 Click
Capture Video.
6 Click
Yes when prompted if you want to start capturing and auto-recover DVB-T video.
7 Follow the remaining steps as described in the procedure for capturing videos.

To recover captured DVB-T videos:

1 Click Tools in the Edit Step and select
Recover DVB-T Video.
2 In the
Recover DVB-T Video dialog box, click Add and browse for the videos to recover.
3 Click
Recover.
Analog video
When footage is captured from analog sources such as VHS, S-VHS, Video-8, or Hi8 camcorders/VCRs, it is converted to a digital format that can be read and stored by the computer. Before capturing, choose the desired file format to use for saving the captured video in the Options Panel's
Format list.
Click Options then select
Capture Options to choose how you want footage to be captured.
To specify the type of video source you are capturing from, click Options then select
Video Properties. In the dialog box that opens, you can customize the following capture settings: In the Input **Source** tab, choose whether you are capturing NTSC, PAL, or SECAM video and select the Input source (Tuner, S-Video, or Composite). In the Color Manager tab, you can fine tune the video source to ensure good quality captures. In the Template tab, set the frame size and compression method to use for saving the captured video.
TV footage
VideoStudio allows you to capture TV footage through a TV tuner. Capture a segment of your favorite television show on regular TV or cable then save it in your hard drive in AVI or MPEG.

To capture TV footage:

1 Select your TV tuner device from the
Source drop-down list.
2 Click Options: Video Properties to open the
Video Properties dialog box. If needed, adjust the settings accordingly.
Click the

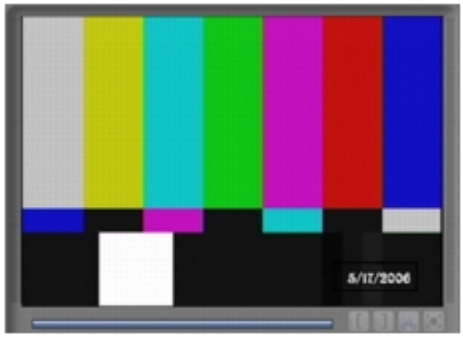
Tuner Information tab to choose Antenna or Cable TV, scan available channels in your region, and more.
3 In the
Channel box, specify the channel number from which to capture.
Split by Scene
It often happens that a single DV tape contains several footage that were shot at different times. VideoStudio saves you the hassle of having to capture the segments one by one then save them as separate files. The Split by Scene
feature will do that job for you.

To use Split by Scene option in Capture Step:

1 Select the Split by Scene
option in the Options Panel.
2 Click
Capture Video. VideoStudio will automatically look for the scenes according to their shooting date and time and capture them as separate files.

DV Quick Scan

Use this option to scan a DV device for scenes to import. To use DV Quick Scan, refer to the first step in the
DV-to-DVD Wizard section.
In DV Quick Scan, you can add the date and time of your video. After scanning your DV tape, click Next. This will then display the Capture to Timeline Settings dialog box. Select Insert to Timeline and choose Add video date information as title. If you want the shooting date to appear in the entire duration of the video, select
Entire video or only during a specified time.



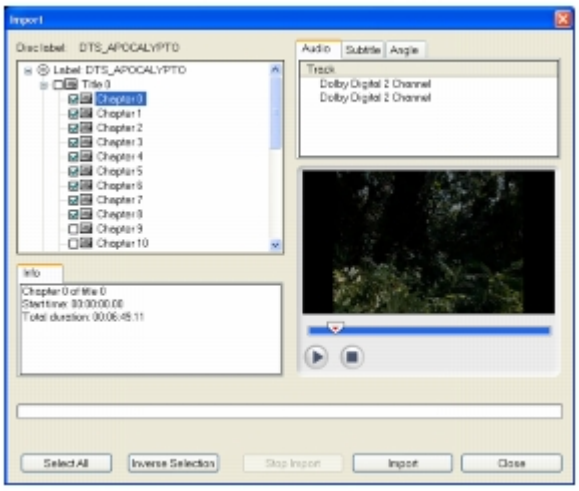
Importing digital media

You can import DVD/DVD-VR, AVCHD or BDMV video from a disc or hard drive or AVCHD *.m2ts and *.mts files from a disc or a hard disk into VideoStudio.

To import Digital Media:

1 Click the Capture Step then click Import Digital Media.
Select a Title dialog box opens.
2 Locate the DVD drive that contains the video files and click
Import.
Note: Click Import from Folder to search your hard drive for the video files. Browse for the DVD folder and click

OK.
3 In the Import dialog box, select which DVD tracks to import in
Label. Use the preview screen to view the selected tracks to import.



4 Click
Import to finish. All imported videos will be added to the thumbnail list in the Library.
Importing videos in AVCHD format
AVCHD (Advanced Video Codec High Definition), a new high-definition format, efficiently compresses videos using MPEG-4 AVC/H.264 standard and produces high quality videos.
You can import AVCHD *.m2ts and *.mts files stored in standard DVDs or hard drives and edit them in VideoStudio. To import AVCHD videos, follow the steps in Import Digital Media section.

Importing from mobile devices

You can insert media files from your mobile devices like Nokia cellphones, Microsoft Zune, Windows Mobile 5.0, iPod and PSP to your project.
Note: Make sure your device is properly connected and it can be recognized by VideoStudio.

To import videos from a mobile device:

1 In Capture Step Options Panel, click
Import from Mobile Device.
2 Click the device where you want to import files from in
Device.
3 Click the type of media file you want to add. Click
to display all your media files in the device.
4 Select the media file and click
OK.
Tip: Click
Settings to set where to browse for files and where to save imported and exported files.

To trim video clips before inserting into your project:

1 Select the clip you want to trim and click
to preview the clip.
2 At the bottom of the dialog box, drag the Jog Slider until you locate the point in the video clip that you want to set as the start of the clip. Click
.
3 Drag the Jog Slider until you locate the point in the video clip that you want to set as the end of the clip.

Click 
.

4 Click  to watch your trimmed clip. When finished, click OK.

_____

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

The Capture Step Options Panel

The Capture Step Options Panel consists of four options: Capture Video, DV Quick Scan, Import Digital Media and
Import from Mobile Device.

Capture Video

The steps on how to capture are similar for all types of video sources except for the available capture settings in the Capture Video Options Panel that can be selected for each type of source.

To capture video:

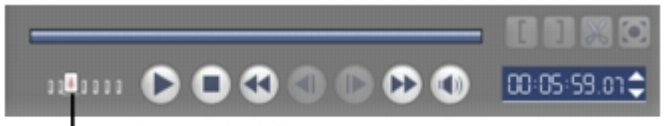
1 Click the Capture Step then click
Capture Video.
2 To specify a capture duration, enter the values in the
Duration box in the Options Panel.
3 Select your capture device from the
Source list.
4 Select a file format to use for saving your captured video from the
Format list.
5 Specify a
Capture folder in which to save video files.
6 Click
Options to open a menu for customizing more capture settings.
7 Scan your video to search the part to capture.
8 When your video for capture is already on cue, click Capture Video
to start capturing.
9 If you specified a capture duration, wait for the capture to complete. Otherwise, click Stop Capture or press [Esc]
to stop capturing.

Notes:

· When your camcorder is in Record mode (usually named CAMERA or
MOVIE), you can capture live video.
· The available settings in the
Video Properties dialog box vary, depending on the capture file format that you have chosen.

Capture Video Options Panel Duration: Sets the length of time for the capture. Source: Displays the detected capture device and lists other capture devices installed in your computer. Format: Gives you a list of options where you select a file format for saving your captured video. Capture folder: This feature allows you to specify a folder where you want your captured files to be saved. Split by Scene: Automatically separates captured video into several files based on changes in shooting date and time when capturing video from a DV camcorder. Options: Displays a menu allowing you to modify your capture settings. Capture Video: Transfers video from your source to your hard drive. Capture Image: Captures the displayed video frame as an image. Disable/Enable Audio Preview: Disables audio preview

on the computer while capturing DV.
Note: If the audio sounds choppy, there may be a problem with previewing audio on your computer during DV capture. This does not affect the audio capture quality. If this happens, click
Disable Audio Preview to mute the audio while capturing.
Digital Video (DV)
To capture Digital Video (DV) in its native format, select DV from the
Format list in the Options Panel. This saves the captured video as a DV AVI file (.avi).
Note: You can also use the DV Quick Scan
option to capture DV video.
DV AVI Type-1 and Type-2
When capturing DV, click Options in the Options Panel and select Video Properties to open a menu. In the Current Profile, choose whether to capture DV as DV Type-1 or
DV Type-2.
DV is a data stream that itself contains video and audio. In DV Type-1, the video and audio channels are stored unmodified as a single, interleaved stream in the AVI file. With
DV Type-2, the video and audio channels are stored as two separate streams in the AVI file.
The advantage of Type-1 is that the DV data does not need to be processed, and is stored in its exact original format. The advantage of Type-2 is that it is compatible with video software that is not specially written to recognize and process Type-1 files.
Note: To preview audio on the computer while capturing DV, click Enable Audio Preview in the Options Panel. If the audio sounds choppy, there may be a problem with previewing audio on your computer during DV capture. This does not affect the audio capture quality. If this happens, click Disable Audio Preview to mute the audio.
Controlling the DV camcorder with the Navigation Panel
When capturing from a DV camcorder, use the
Navigation Panel to scan your footage and locate the scenes you want to capture.



Shuttle Slider
Drag to move forward and back through the footage at variable speeds. This is a quick way to find scenes you are looking for in your video.

High Definition Videos
You can import high definition video from your AVCHD DVD or Hard Disk Drive (HDD) camcorders.

To capture high definition videos:

1 Connect your HDV camcorder to your computer's IEEE-1394 port using the IEEE-1394 cable.
2 Turn on your camcorder and switch it to Play/Edit mode and make sure that your HDV camcorder is switched to HDV mode.
Note: For Sony HDV camcorders, flip open the LCD screen and see if HDVout I-Link is on the LCD screen to check if the camera is set to HDV mode. If you see DVout I-Link, press P-MENU at the lower right of the screen. In the menu, press MENU> STANDARD SET> VCR HDV/DV and press HDV.
3 Click Capture on the Step Panel. In the Options Panel, click
.
Digital TV or DVB-T video
Before capturing, have the DVB-T source connected via a compatible capture card installed on your

computer first.

To capture DVB-T video:

1 Click the Capture Step then click
Capture Video.
2 In the Capture Step Options Panel, select Digital TV Source from the
Source list.
3 Click Options and select
Video Properties.
4 In Channel List, click
Start Scan to start scanning for channels.
Note: DVB-T channels are not automatically scanned. Make sure to manually scan the channels first before capturing.
5 Click
Capture Video.
6 Click
Yes when prompted if you want to start capturing and auto-recover DVB-T video.
7 Follow the remaining steps as described in the procedure for capturing videos.

To recover captured DVB-T videos:

1 Click Tools in the Edit Step and select
Recover DVB-T Video.
2 In the
Recover DVB-T Video dialog box, click Add and browse for the videos to recover.
3 Click
Recover.
Analog video
When footage is captured from analog sources such as VHS, S-VHS, Video-8, or Hi8 camcorders/VCRs, it is converted to a digital format that can be read and stored by the computer. Before capturing, choose the desired file format to use for saving the captured video in the Options Panel's
Format list.
Click Options then select
Capture Options to choose how you want footage to be captured.
To specify the type of video source you are capturing from, click Options then select
Video Properties. In the dialog box that opens, you can customize the following capture settings: In the Input **Source** tab, choose whether you are capturing NTSC, PAL, or SECAM video and select the Input source (Tuner, S-Video, or Composite). In the Color Manager tab, you can fine tune the video source to ensure good quality captures. In the Template tab, set the frame size and compression method to use for saving the captured video.
TV footage
VideoStudio allows you to capture TV footage through a TV tuner. Capture a segment of your favorite television show on regular TV or cable then save it in your hard drive in AVI or MPEG.

To capture TV footage:

1 Select your TV tuner device from the
Source drop-down list.
2 Click Options: Video Properties to open the
Video Properties dialog box. If needed, adjust the settings accordingly.
Click the

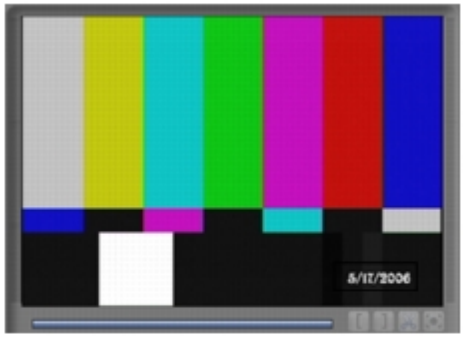
Tuner Information tab to choose Antenna or Cable TV, scan available channels in your region, and more.
3 In the
Channel box, specify the channel number from which to capture.
Split by Scene
It often happens that a single DV tape contains several footage that were shot at different times. VideoStudio saves you the hassle of having to capture the segments one by one then save them as separate files. The Split by Scene
feature will do that job for you.

To use Split by Scene option in Capture Step:

1 Select the Split by Scene
option in the Options Panel.
2 Click
Capture Video. VideoStudio will automatically look for the scenes according to their shooting date and time and capture them as separate files.

DV Quick Scan

Use this option to scan a DV device for scenes to import. To use DV Quick Scan, refer to the first step in the
DV-to-DVD Wizard section.
In DV Quick Scan, you can add the date and time of your video. After scanning your DV tape, click Next. This will then display the Capture to Timeline Settings dialog box. Select Insert to Timeline and choose Add video date information as title. If you want the shooting date to appear in the entire duration of the video, select
Entire video or only during a specified time.



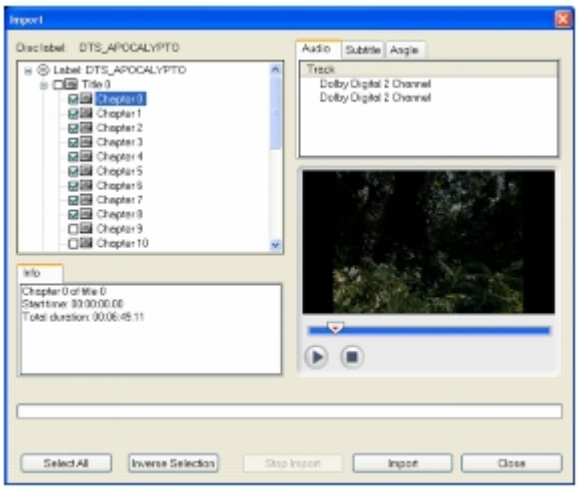
Importing digital media

You can import DVD/DVD-VR, AVCHD or BDMV video from a disc or hard drive or AVCHD *.m2ts and *.mts files from a disc or a hard disk into VideoStudio.

To import Digital Media:

1 Click the Capture Step then click Import Digital Media.
Select a Title dialog box opens.
2 Locate the DVD drive that contains the video files and click
Import.
Note: Click Import from Folder to search your hard drive for the video files. Browse for the DVD folder and click

OK.
3 In the Import dialog box, select which DVD tracks to import in
Label. Use the preview screen to view the selected tracks to import.



4 Click
Import to finish. All imported videos will be added to the thumbnail list in the Library.
Importing videos in AVCHD format
AVCHD (Advanced Video Codec High Definition), a new high-definition format, efficiently compresses videos using MPEG-4 AVC/H.264 standard and produces high quality videos.
You can import AVCHD *.m2ts and *.mts files stored in standard DVDs or hard drives and edit them in VideoStudio. To import AVCHD videos, follow the steps in Import Digital Media section.

Importing from mobile devices

You can insert media files from your mobile devices like Nokia cellphones, Microsoft Zune, Windows Mobile 5.0, iPod and PSP to your project.
Note: Make sure your device is properly connected and it can be recognized by VideoStudio.

To import videos from a mobile device:

1 In Capture Step Options Panel, click
Import from Mobile Device.
2 Click the device where you want to import files from in
Device.
3 Click the type of media file you want to add. Click
to display all your media files in the device.
4 Select the media file and click
OK.
Tip: Click
Settings to set where to browse for files and where to save imported and exported files.

To trim video clips before inserting into your project:

1 Select the clip you want to trim and click
to preview the clip.
2 At the bottom of the dialog box, drag the Jog Slider until you locate the point in the video clip that you want to set as the start of the clip. Click
.
3 Drag the Jog Slider until you locate the point in the video clip that you want to set as the end of the clip.

Click 
.

4 Click  to watch your trimmed clip. When finished, click OK.

_____

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

The Capture Step Options Panel

The Capture Step Options Panel consists of four options: Capture Video, DV Quick Scan, Import Digital Media and
Import from Mobile Device.

Capture Video

The steps on how to capture are similar for all types of video sources except for the available capture settings in the Capture Video Options Panel that can be selected for each type of source.

To capture video:

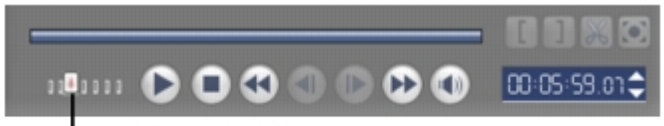
1 Click the Capture Step then click
Capture Video.
2 To specify a capture duration, enter the values in the
Duration box in the Options Panel.
3 Select your capture device from the
Source list.
4 Select a file format to use for saving your captured video from the
Format list.
5 Specify a
Capture folder in which to save video files.
6 Click
Options to open a menu for customizing more capture settings.
7 Scan your video to search the part to capture.
8 When your video for capture is already on cue, click Capture Video
to start capturing.
9 If you specified a capture duration, wait for the capture to complete. Otherwise, click Stop Capture or press [Esc]
to stop capturing.

Notes:

· When your camcorder is in Record mode (usually named CAMERA or
MOVIE), you can capture live video.
· The available settings in the
Video Properties dialog box vary, depending on the capture file format that you have chosen.

Capture Video Options Panel Duration: Sets the length of time for the capture. Source: Displays the detected capture device and lists other capture devices installed in your computer. Format: Gives you a list of options where you select a file format for saving your captured video. Capture folder: This feature allows you to specify a folder where you want your captured files to be saved. Split by Scene: Automatically separates captured video into several files based on changes in shooting date and time when capturing video from a DV camcorder. Options: Displays a menu allowing you to modify your capture settings. Capture Video: Transfers video from your source to your hard drive. Capture Image: Captures the displayed video frame as an image. Disable/Enable Audio Preview: Disables audio preview

on the computer while capturing DV.
Note: If the audio sounds choppy, there may be a problem with previewing audio on your computer during DV capture. This does not affect the audio capture quality. If this happens, click
Disable Audio Preview to mute the audio while capturing.
Digital Video (DV)
To capture Digital Video (DV) in its native format, select DV from the
Format list in the Options Panel. This saves the captured video as a DV AVI file (.avi).
Note: You can also use the DV Quick Scan
option to capture DV video.
DV AVI Type-1 and Type-2
When capturing DV, click Options in the Options Panel and select Video Properties to open a menu. In the Current Profile, choose whether to capture DV as DV Type-1 or
DV Type-2.
DV is a data stream that itself contains video and audio. In DV Type-1, the video and audio channels are stored unmodified as a single, interleaved stream in the AVI file. With
DV Type-2, the video and audio channels are stored as two separate streams in the AVI file.
The advantage of Type-1 is that the DV data does not need to be processed, and is stored in its exact original format. The advantage of Type-2 is that it is compatible with video software that is not specially written to recognize and process Type-1 files.
Note: To preview audio on the computer while capturing DV, click Enable Audio Preview in the Options Panel. If the audio sounds choppy, there may be a problem with previewing audio on your computer during DV capture. This does not affect the audio capture quality. If this happens, click Disable Audio Preview to mute the audio.
Controlling the DV camcorder with the Navigation Panel
When capturing from a DV camcorder, use the
Navigation Panel to scan your footage and locate the scenes you want to capture.



Shuttle Slider
Drag to move forward and back through the footage at variable speeds. This is a quick way to find scenes you are looking for in your video.

High Definition Videos
You can import high definition video from your AVCHD DVD or Hard Disk Drive (HDD) camcorders.

To capture high definition videos:

1 Connect your HDV camcorder to your computer's IEEE-1394 port using the IEEE-1394 cable.
2 Turn on your camcorder and switch it to Play/Edit mode and make sure that your HDV camcorder is switched to HDV mode.
Note: For Sony HDV camcorders, flip open the LCD screen and see if HDVout I-Link is on the LCD screen to check if the camera is set to HDV mode. If you see DVout I-Link, press P-MENU at the lower right of the screen. In the menu, press MENU> STANDARD SET> VCR HDV/DV and press HDV.
3 Click Capture on the Step Panel. In the Options Panel, click
.
Digital TV or DVB-T video
Before capturing, have the DVB-T source connected via a compatible capture card installed on your

computer first.

To capture DVB-T video:

1 Click the Capture Step then click
Capture Video.
2 In the Capture Step Options Panel, select Digital TV Source from the
Source list.
3 Click Options and select
Video Properties.
4 In Channel List, click
Start Scan to start scanning for channels.
Note: DVB-T channels are not automatically scanned. Make sure to manually scan the channels first before capturing.
5 Click
Capture Video.
6 Click
Yes when prompted if you want to start capturing and auto-recover DVB-T video.
7 Follow the remaining steps as described in the procedure for capturing videos.

To recover captured DVB-T videos:

1 Click Tools in the Edit Step and select
Recover DVB-T Video.
2 In the
Recover DVB-T Video dialog box, click Add and browse for the videos to recover.
3 Click
Recover.
Analog video
When footage is captured from analog sources such as VHS, S-VHS, Video-8, or Hi8 camcorders/VCRs, it is converted to a digital format that can be read and stored by the computer. Before capturing, choose the desired file format to use for saving the captured video in the Options Panel's
Format list.
Click Options then select
Capture Options to choose how you want footage to be captured.
To specify the type of video source you are capturing from, click Options then select
Video Properties. In the dialog box that opens, you can customize the following capture settings: In the Input **Source** tab, choose whether you are capturing NTSC, PAL, or SECAM video and select the Input source (Tuner, S-Video, or Composite). In the Color Manager tab, you can fine tune the video source to ensure good quality captures. In the Template tab, set the frame size and compression method to use for saving the captured video.
TV footage
VideoStudio allows you to capture TV footage through a TV tuner. Capture a segment of your favorite television show on regular TV or cable then save it in your hard drive in AVI or MPEG.

To capture TV footage:

1 Select your TV tuner device from the
Source drop-down list.
2 Click Options: Video Properties to open the
Video Properties dialog box. If needed, adjust the settings accordingly.
Click the

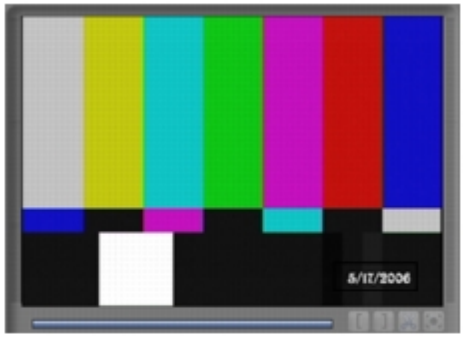
Tuner Information tab to choose Antenna or Cable TV, scan available channels in your region, and more.
3 In the
Channel box, specify the channel number from which to capture.
Split by Scene
It often happens that a single DV tape contains several footage that were shot at different times. VideoStudio saves you the hassle of having to capture the segments one by one then save them as separate files. The Split by Scene
feature will do that job for you.

To use Split by Scene option in Capture Step:

1 Select the Split by Scene
option in the Options Panel.
2 Click
Capture Video. VideoStudio will automatically look for the scenes according to their shooting date and time and capture them as separate files.

DV Quick Scan

Use this option to scan a DV device for scenes to import. To use DV Quick Scan, refer to the first step in the
DV-to-DVD Wizard section.
In DV Quick Scan, you can add the date and time of your video. After scanning your DV tape, click Next. This will then display the Capture to Timeline Settings dialog box. Select Insert to Timeline and choose Add video date information as title. If you want the shooting date to appear in the entire duration of the video, select
Entire video or only during a specified time.



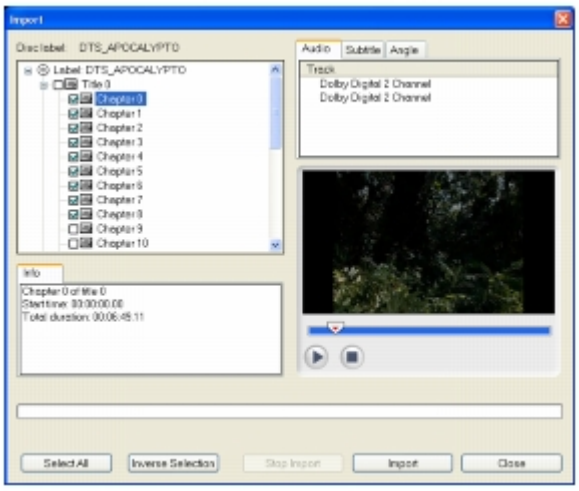
Importing digital media

You can import DVD/DVD-VR, AVCHD or BDMV video from a disc or hard drive or AVCHD *.m2ts and *.mts files from a disc or a hard disk into VideoStudio.

To import Digital Media:

1 Click the Capture Step then click Import Digital Media.
Select a Title dialog box opens.
2 Locate the DVD drive that contains the video files and click
Import.
Note: Click Import from Folder to search your hard drive for the video files. Browse for the DVD folder and click

OK.
3 In the Import dialog box, select which DVD tracks to import in
Label. Use the preview screen to view the selected tracks to import.



4 Click
Import to finish. All imported videos will be added to the thumbnail list in the Library.
Importing videos in AVCHD format
AVCHD (Advanced Video Codec High Definition), a new high-definition format, efficiently compresses videos using MPEG-4 AVC/H.264 standard and produces high quality videos.
You can import AVCHD *.m2ts and *.mts files stored in standard DVDs or hard drives and edit them in VideoStudio. To import AVCHD videos, follow the steps in Import Digital Media section.

Importing from mobile devices

You can insert media files from your mobile devices like Nokia cellphones, Microsoft Zune, Windows Mobile 5.0, iPod and PSP to your project.
Note: Make sure your device is properly connected and it can be recognized by VideoStudio.

To import videos from a mobile device:

1 In Capture Step Options Panel, click
Import from Mobile Device.
2 Click the device where you want to import files from in
Device.
3 Click the type of media file you want to add. Click
to display all your media files in the device.
4 Select the media file and click
OK.
Tip: Click
Settings to set where to browse for files and where to save imported and exported files.

To trim video clips before inserting into your project:

1 Select the clip you want to trim and click
to preview the clip.
2 At the bottom of the dialog box, drag the Jog Slider until you locate the point in the video clip that you want to set as the start of the clip. Click
.
3 Drag the Jog Slider until you locate the point in the video clip that you want to set as the end of the clip.

Click 
.

4 Click  to watch your trimmed clip. When finished, click OK.

_____

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

The Capture Step Options Panel

The Capture Step Options Panel consists of four options: Capture Video, DV Quick Scan, Import Digital Media and
Import from Mobile Device.

Capture Video

The steps on how to capture are similar for all types of video sources except for the available capture settings in the Capture Video Options Panel that can be selected for each type of source.

To capture video:

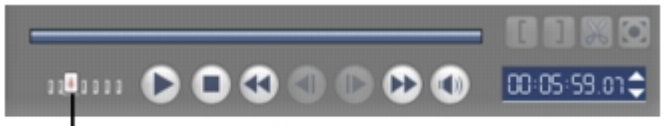
1 Click the Capture Step then click
Capture Video.
2 To specify a capture duration, enter the values in the
Duration box in the Options Panel.
3 Select your capture device from the
Source list.
4 Select a file format to use for saving your captured video from the
Format list.
5 Specify a
Capture folder in which to save video files.
6 Click
Options to open a menu for customizing more capture settings.
7 Scan your video to search the part to capture.
8 When your video for capture is already on cue, click Capture Video
to start capturing.
9 If you specified a capture duration, wait for the capture to complete. Otherwise, click Stop Capture or press [Esc]
to stop capturing.

Notes:

· When your camcorder is in Record mode (usually named CAMERA or
MOVIE), you can capture live video.
· The available settings in the
Video Properties dialog box vary, depending on the capture file format that you have chosen.

Capture Video Options Panel Duration: Sets the length of time for the capture. Source: Displays the detected capture device and lists other capture devices installed in your computer. Format: Gives you a list of options where you select a file format for saving your captured video. Capture folder: This feature allows you to specify a folder where you want your captured files to be saved. Split by Scene: Automatically separates captured video into several files based on changes in shooting date and time when capturing video from a DV camcorder. Options: Displays a menu allowing you to modify your capture settings. Capture Video: Transfers video from your source to your hard drive. Capture Image: Captures the displayed video frame as an image. Disable/Enable Audio Preview: Disables audio preview

on the computer while capturing DV.
Note: If the audio sounds choppy, there may be a problem with previewing audio on your computer during DV capture. This does not affect the audio capture quality. If this happens, click
Disable Audio Preview to mute the audio while capturing.
Digital Video (DV)
To capture Digital Video (DV) in its native format, select DV from the
Format list in the Options Panel. This saves the captured video as a DV AVI file (.avi).
Note: You can also use the DV Quick Scan
option to capture DV video.
DV AVI Type-1 and Type-2
When capturing DV, click Options in the Options Panel and select Video Properties to open a menu. In the Current Profile, choose whether to capture DV as DV Type-1 or
DV Type-2.
DV is a data stream that itself contains video and audio. In DV Type-1, the video and audio channels are stored unmodified as a single, interleaved stream in the AVI file. With
DV Type-2, the video and audio channels are stored as two separate streams in the AVI file.
The advantage of Type-1 is that the DV data does not need to be processed, and is stored in its exact original format. The advantage of Type-2 is that it is compatible with video software that is not specially written to recognize and process Type-1 files.
Note: To preview audio on the computer while capturing DV, click Enable Audio Preview in the Options Panel. If the audio sounds choppy, there may be a problem with previewing audio on your computer during DV capture. This does not affect the audio capture quality. If this happens, click Disable Audio Preview to mute the audio.
Controlling the DV camcorder with the Navigation Panel
When capturing from a DV camcorder, use the
Navigation Panel to scan your footage and locate the scenes you want to capture.



Shuttle Slider
Drag to move forward and back through the footage at variable speeds. This is a quick way to find scenes you are looking for in your video.

High Definition Videos
You can import high definition video from your AVCHD DVD or Hard Disk Drive (HDD) camcorders.

To capture high definition videos:

1 Connect your HDV camcorder to your computer's IEEE-1394 port using the IEEE-1394 cable.
2 Turn on your camcorder and switch it to Play/Edit mode and make sure that your HDV camcorder is switched to HDV mode.
Note: For Sony HDV camcorders, flip open the LCD screen and see if HDVout I-Link is on the LCD screen to check if the camera is set to HDV mode. If you see DVout I-Link, press P-MENU at the lower right of the screen. In the menu, press MENU> STANDARD SET> VCR HDV/DV and press HDV.
3 Click Capture on the Step Panel. In the Options Panel, click
.
Digital TV or DVB-T video
Before capturing, have the DVB-T source connected via a compatible capture card installed on your

computer first.

To capture DVB-T video:

1 Click the Capture Step then click
Capture Video.
2 In the Capture Step Options Panel, select Digital TV Source from the
Source list.
3 Click Options and select
Video Properties.
4 In Channel List, click
Start Scan to start scanning for channels.
Note: DVB-T channels are not automatically scanned. Make sure to manually scan the channels first before capturing.
5 Click
Capture Video.
6 Click
Yes when prompted if you want to start capturing and auto-recover DVB-T video.
7 Follow the remaining steps as described in the procedure for capturing videos.

To recover captured DVB-T videos:

1 Click Tools in the Edit Step and select
Recover DVB-T Video.
2 In the
Recover DVB-T Video dialog box, click Add and browse for the videos to recover.
3 Click
Recover.
Analog video
When footage is captured from analog sources such as VHS, S-VHS, Video-8, or Hi8 camcorders/VCRs, it is converted to a digital format that can be read and stored by the computer. Before capturing, choose the desired file format to use for saving the captured video in the Options Panel's
Format list.
Click Options then select
Capture Options to choose how you want footage to be captured.
To specify the type of video source you are capturing from, click Options then select
Video Properties. In the dialog box that opens, you can customize the following capture settings: In the Input **Source** tab, choose whether you are capturing NTSC, PAL, or SECAM video and select the Input source (Tuner, S-Video, or Composite). In the Color Manager tab, you can fine tune the video source to ensure good quality captures. In the Template tab, set the frame size and compression method to use for saving the captured video.
TV footage
VideoStudio allows you to capture TV footage through a TV tuner. Capture a segment of your favorite television show on regular TV or cable then save it in your hard drive in AVI or MPEG.

To capture TV footage:

1 Select your TV tuner device from the
Source drop-down list.
2 Click Options: Video Properties to open the
Video Properties dialog box. If needed, adjust the settings accordingly.
Click the

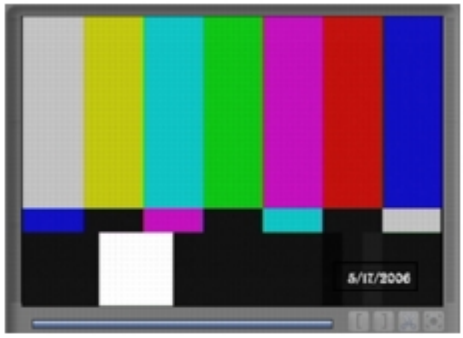
Tuner Information tab to choose Antenna or Cable TV, scan available channels in your region, and more.
3 In the
Channel box, specify the channel number from which to capture.
Split by Scene
It often happens that a single DV tape contains several footage that were shot at different times. VideoStudio saves you the hassle of having to capture the segments one by one then save them as separate files. The Split by Scene
feature will do that job for you.

To use Split by Scene option in Capture Step:

1 Select the Split by Scene
option in the Options Panel.
2 Click
Capture Video. VideoStudio will automatically look for the scenes according to their shooting date and time and capture them as separate files.

DV Quick Scan

Use this option to scan a DV device for scenes to import. To use DV Quick Scan, refer to the first step in the
DV-to-DVD Wizard section.
In DV Quick Scan, you can add the date and time of your video. After scanning your DV tape, click Next. This will then display the Capture to Timeline Settings dialog box. Select Insert to Timeline and choose Add video date information as title. If you want the shooting date to appear in the entire duration of the video, select
Entire video or only during a specified time.



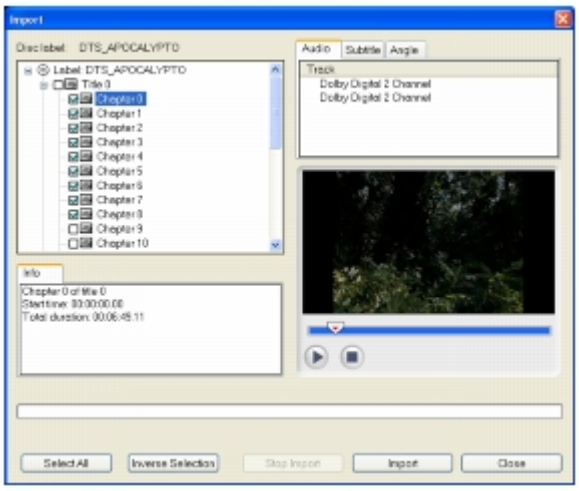
Importing digital media

You can import DVD/DVD-VR, AVCHD or BDMV video from a disc or hard drive or AVCHD *.m2ts and *.mts files from a disc or a hard disk into VideoStudio.

To import Digital Media:

1 Click the Capture Step then click Import Digital Media.
Select a Title dialog box opens.
2 Locate the DVD drive that contains the video files and click
Import.
Note: Click Import from Folder to search your hard drive for the video files. Browse for the DVD folder and click

OK.
3 In the Import dialog box, select which DVD tracks to import in
Label. Use the preview screen to view the selected tracks to import.



4 Click
Import to finish. All imported videos will be added to the thumbnail list in the Library.
Importing videos in AVCHD format
AVCHD (Advanced Video Codec High Definition), a new high-definition format, efficiently compresses videos using MPEG-4 AVC/H.264 standard and produces high quality videos.
You can import AVCHD *.m2ts and *.mts files stored in standard DVDs or hard drives and edit them in VideoStudio. To import AVCHD videos, follow the steps in Import Digital Media section.

Importing from mobile devices

You can insert media files from your mobile devices like Nokia cellphones, Microsoft Zune, Windows Mobile 5.0, iPod and PSP to your project.
Note: Make sure your device is properly connected and it can be recognized by VideoStudio.

To import videos from a mobile device:

1 In Capture Step Options Panel, click
Import from Mobile Device.
2 Click the device where you want to import files from in
Device.
3 Click the type of media file you want to add. Click
to display all your media files in the device.
4 Select the media file and click
OK.
Tip: Click
Settings to set where to browse for files and where to save imported and exported files.

To trim video clips before inserting into your project:

1 Select the clip you want to trim and click
to preview the clip.
2 At the bottom of the dialog box, drag the Jog Slider until you locate the point in the video clip that you want to set as the start of the clip. Click
.
3 Drag the Jog Slider until you locate the point in the video clip that you want to set as the end of the clip.

Click 
.

4 Click  to watch your trimmed clip. When finished, click OK.

_____

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Direct video capturing to MPEG format

VideoStudio supports real-time capturing from DV, analog, or any video source to MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 formats. Capturing straight to MPEG saves hard drive space as its file size is smaller compared with DV AVI.

To capture video in MPEG-1 or MPEG-2 format:

1 In the **Options Panel**, select MPEG from the
Format list to capture MPEG files that are intended for playback on the computer or for sharing on the Web.
You can also capture VCD, SVCD or DVD-ready MPEG files that can be burnt onto disc by selecting one of these formats from the
Format list.
2 Click Options and select Video Properties. In the dialog box that opens, select a profile in the Current Profile drop-down menu.
When MPEG is selected in Format, you can also click Advanced to customize or add templates. The MPEG Settings dialog box then appears in which you can customize attributes for the MPEG file.
3 Click
OK.

_____

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Edit

The
Edit Step is where you arrange, edit and trim the video clips used in your project. In this step, you can apply effects and transitions to the existing audio of a video clip, multi-trim or split video, and adjust a clip's playback speed. You can also choose from a wide selection of video filters to apply to your clips.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

The Edit Step Options Panel

The Edit Step Options Panel allows you to edit the video, image and color clips that you added to the Video Track. Video filters that you applied to your clips can be fine tuned in the **Attribute** tab.

Video tab Duration: Displays the duration of the selected clip in hours:minutes:seconds:frames. You can trim the selected clip by changing the clip duration. Clip volume: Allows you to adjust the volume of the audio segment of your video. Mute: Silences the audio segment of your video without deleting it. Fade-in/out: Gradually increases/decreases the volume of the clip for a smooth transition. Select File: Preferences - Edit to set the fade-in/out duration. Rotate: Rotates the video clip. Color Correction: Allows you to adjust the hue, saturation, brightness, contrast, and gamma of the video clip. You can also adjust the White balance of the video or image clip or make auto tone adjustments. Playback Speed: Launches the Playback Speed dialog box where you can adjust the pace of your clip. Reverse video: Plays the video backward. Save as Still Image: Saves the current frame as a new image file and places it in the Image Library. All enhancements made to the file are discarded before saving. Split Audio: Allows you to separate the audio from a video file and place it on the Voice Track. Split by Scene: Splits a captured DV AVI file based on the shooting date and time, or the changes in video content (i.e., motion change, camera shifting, brightness change, etc.). Multi-trim Video: Allows you to choose desired segments from a video file and extract them.

Image tab Duration: Sets the duration of the selected image clip. Rotate: Rotates the image clip. Color Correction: Allows you to adjust the hue, saturation, brightness, contrast, and gamma of the image. You can also adjust the White balance of the video or image clip or make auto tone adjustments. Resampling option: Sets how image size is adjusted. Keep aspect ratio: Maintains the relative width and height of the current image. Fit to project size: Makes the size of the current image the same as the project's frame size. Pan & Zoom: Applies the Pan & Zoom effect to the current image. Presets: Provides various Pan & Zoom presets. Choose a preset from the drop-down list. Customize: Allows you to define how to pan and zoom the current image.

Color tab Duration: Sets the duration of the selected color clip. Color Picker: Click the color box to adjust the color.

Attribute tab Replace last filter: Allows the last filter applied to a clip to be replaced when you drag a new filter onto the clip. Clear this option if you want to add multiple filters to your clips. Applied filters: Lists the video filters that were applied to a clip. Click  or  to arrange the order of the filters; click  to remove a filter. Presets: Provides various filter presets. Choose a preset from the drop-down list. Customize Filter: Allows you to define the behavior of the filter throughout the clip. Distort clip: Allows you to modify the size and proportions of the clip. Show grid lines: Select to display the grid lines. Click  to open a dialog box where you can specify settings for the grid lines.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Working with clips

Clips, whether audio, video, images or effects, are the foundation of your project and manipulating them is the most important skill you can master.

Adding clips to the Video Track

You only work on the Video Track when you are in the Edit Step. On the Video Track, you can insert three types of clips: video, image and color clips.

Video clips

There are several ways of inserting video clips on the Video Track: Select a clip in the Library and drag and drop it to the Video Track. Multiple clips can be selected by pressing [Shift] or [Ctrl]. Right-click a clip in the Library then select Insert To: Video Track. Select one or more video files in Windows Explorer then drag and drop to the Video Track. To insert a clip from a file folder directly to the Video Track, click Insert Media Files located to the left of the Timeline.

Notes:

· Aside from video files, you can also add video from DVD or DVD-VR formatted discs.

· Use the Fade-in/out buttons to make the audio of the video clips in your project smoothly fade from one clip to the next.

Images

The ways of adding still images to the Video Track are the same as when adding video clips.

Before you start adding images to your project, determine first the image size that you want for all your images. By default, VideoStudio adjusts the size to keep the image's aspect ratio.

To make the size of all inserted images the same as your project's frame size, select File: Preferences - Edit then change the Image resampling option default to Fit to project size.

Color clips

Color clips are solid colored backgrounds that are useful for titles. For example, insert a black color clip as background for end credits. You can use the preset color clips or create new color clips in the Library.

To select a color clip in the Color Library:

1 Select Color from the Library drop-down menu.

2 Choose your desired color displayed in the Library and drag to the Video or Overlay Track.

3 To load another color that is not in the Library, click the color box beside the Color Picker. Here, you can select a color either from Corel Color Picker or the Windows Color Picker.

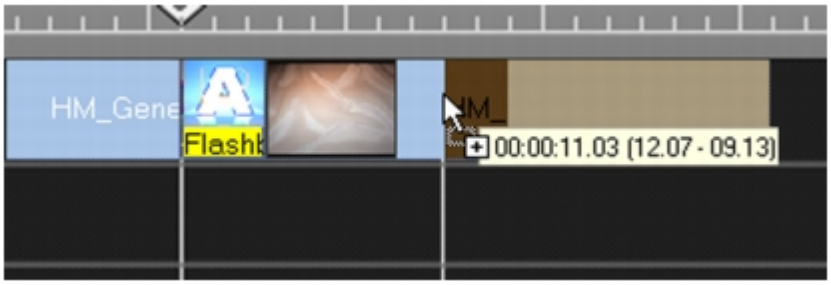


4 Set the
Duration of the color clip in the Options Panel.

Tips:

· Instant timecode tip is a feature of VideoStudio that allows you to add clips with a specific timecode. It appears while trimming and inserting overlapping clips on the timeline, enabling you to make adjustments based on the timecode shown.

· The instant timecode tip appears with the format 00:00:11.03 (12.07 - 09.13). 00:00:11.03 indicates the current timecode where the selected clip is located. 12.07 represents the duration overlapping with the previous clip while 09.13 is the duration overlapping with the next clip.



Sorting clips in the Library

To arrange clips in the Library, click in the Library to open the Options menu, then select Sort by Name or
Sort by Date.

The way video clips are sorted by date depends on the file format. DV AVI files (i.e., AVI files captured from DV camcorders) will be arranged by order of the shooting date and time of the footage. Other video file formats will be sorted by order of file date.

Notes:

· You can also right-click on the Library then select the desired sorting type in the
Sort By submenu.

· To toggle between ascending and descending order, select Sort by Name or
Sort by Date again.

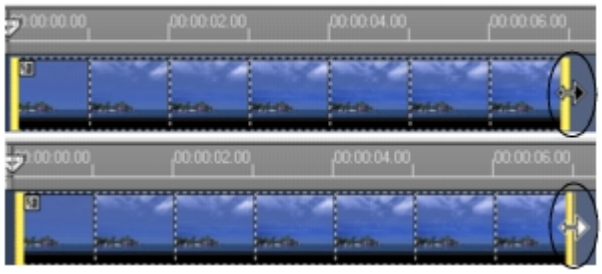
Playback speed

You can modify the playback speed of your videos. Set your video in slow motion to emphasize a movement, or set it to play at lightning speed and give your movie a comical air. Simply adjust the speed attributes for your video clip by clicking Playback Speed under the **Options Panel** of the Edit Step. Drag the slider according to your preferences (i.e., slow, normal or fast), or enter a value. The higher the value you set, the faster the playback of your clip. (Values range from 10-1000%). You can also specify a set duration for the clip in Time stretch. Click Preview to view the results of your settings then click OK when finished.

Tips:

· Hold [Shift]
then drag the end of the clip on the Timeline to change the playback speed.

· The black arrow means you are trimming or extending the clip, while the white arrow means that you are changing the playback speed.



Reversing video playback

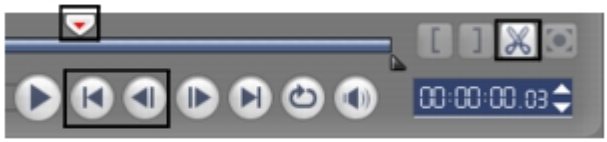
Reverse the playback of the video by selecting
Reverse video in the Options Panel.

Trimming a clip

The best part of editing your movie on your computer is the ease with which you can snip and trim your work with frame by frame accuracy. There are three ways of trimming a clip:

To split a clip into two:

1 Select the clip you want to split on the Storyboard or Timeline.
2 Drag the
Jog Slider to the point where you want to cut the clip.

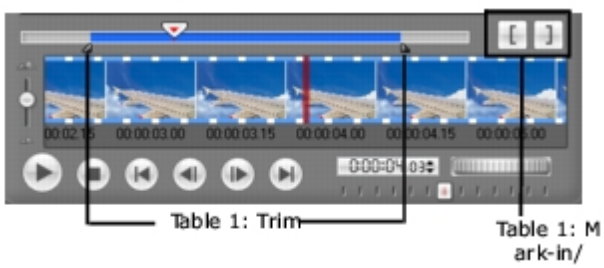


Tip: Click or
to set the cutting point more precisely.

3 Click to cut the clip into two clips. To remove one of these clips, select the unwanted clip and press
[Delete].

To trim a clip with the Trim Handles using Single Clip Trimmer:

1 Double-click a video clip in the Library or right-click on a video clip and choose Single Clip Trim to launch the
Trim Video dialog box.
2 Click and drag the Trim handles to set the Mark-in/Mark-out points on the clip.
For more precise trimming, click on a Trim handle, hold it, and use the left or right arrow keys on your keyboard to trim one frame at a time. The Mark-in/Mark-out points can also be set by pressing [F3] and
[F4], respectively.



3 Click Play Clip
to preview the trimmed clip.
Tip: You can also use Zoom controls to display each frame of your video on the Timeline and trim one frame at a time. The Scroll Bar makes navigating through your project quicker and easier. A wheel mouse can also be used to scroll, and to zoom by pressing
[Ctrl].

To trim a clip directly on the Timeline:

1 Click a clip on the **Timeline**
to select it.
2 Drag the yellow Trim handles
on either side of the clip to change its length. The Preview Window reflects the position of the Trim handle in the clip.
3 Or, click the timecode in the
Duration box in the Options Panel and enter the desired clip length.



4 Other clips in your project automatically reposition themselves according to changes made.
Note: Changes made in the video
Duration box only affect the Mark-out point. The Mark-in point remains unchanged.

Split by Scene

Use the Split by Scene feature in the Edit Step to detect different scenes in a video file and automatically break it down into several clip files.
The way VideoStudio detects scenes depends on the type of video file. In a captured DV AVI file, scenes can be detected in two ways: DV Recording Time Scan detects scenes according to their shooting date and time. Frame Content detects content changes, such as motion change, camera shifting, brightness change, etc., and splits them into separate files.
In an MPEG-1 or MPEG-2 file, scenes can only be detected based on content changes (i.e., by Frame Content).

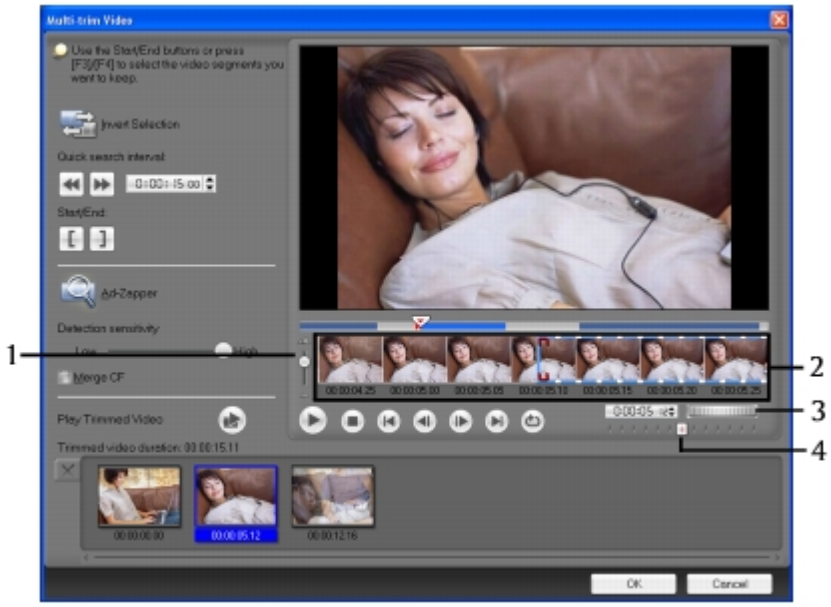
To use Split by Scene on a DV AVI or MPEG file:

1 Go to the
Edit Step and select a captured DV AVI file or an MPEG file on the Timeline.
2 Click Split by Scene in the Options Panel. This will open the
Scenes dialog box.
3 Choose your preferred scan method (DV Recording Time Scan or
Frame Content).
4 Click Options. In the Scene Scanning Sensitivity dialog box, drag the slider to set the Sensitivity level. A higher value means more precision in the scene detection.
5 Click
OK.
6 Click
Scan. VideoStudio then scans through the video file and lists all the detected scenes.

You may merge some of the detected scenes into a single clip. Simply select all the scenes that you want to join together then click Join. The plus sign (+) and a number indicates how many scenes are merged into that particular clip. Click Split
to undo any Join actions that you have done.
7 Click
OK to split the video.

Multi-trimming your video

The Multi-trim Video feature is another method for breaking down a clip into multiple segments. While Split by Scene is automatically done by the program,
Multi-trim Video gives you complete control over the clips you wish to extract, making it even easier for you to manage your project.



1 Timeline zoom
Drag up and down to sub-divide a video clip into frames per second.

2 AccuCut Timeline
Scan a video clip frame by frame for accurate mark-in and mark-out positions.

3 Jog Wheel
Use to scroll to different parts of the clip.

4 Shuttle Slider
Preview the clip at different playback speeds.

To trim a video file into multiple clips:

1 Go to the Edit Step and click Multi-trim Video in the **Options Panel**
.
2 View the whole clip first by clicking Play to determine how you want to mark segments in the Multi-trim Video dialog box.
3 Choose the number of frames to display by dragging the Timeline zoom. You can choose to display the smallest subdivision of one frame per second.
4 Drag the Jog Slider until you get to the part of the video that you want to use as the beginning frame of the first segment. Click
Start.
5 Drag the Jog Slider again, this time, to the point where you want the segment to end. Click
End.
6 Do steps 4 and 5 repeatedly until you have marked all the segments you want kept or removed.
Tips:

· To mark segments, you can also press [F3] and
[F4] while playing the video.
· Click Invert Selection
to toggle between marking segments that you want to retain or marking segments that you want taken out from the clip.
·
Quick search interval allows you to set a fixed interval between frames and browse through the movie using the set value.
7 Click
OK when finished. The video segments that you kept are then inserted onto the Timeline.

Navigation controls in the Multi-trim Video dialog box:



Reverses or advances through the video in fixed increments. By default, these buttons move up or down through the video in increments of 25 seconds.



Plays a preview of the final trimmed video.



Plays the video file. Hold [Shift] then click to play only the selected segments.



Moves to the start or end frame of a trimmed segment.



Moves to the previous/next frame in the video.

Using Ad-Zapper

VideoStudio lets you search your videos for commercial intervals. Clicking this feature extracts the commercials to the media list. Detection sensitivity allows you to control the rate of distinguishing between commercials. Merge CF merges all your extracted clips that are identified as commercials.

Saving trimmed clips

Frequently, when you make changes (i.e., after auto-splitting clips using Split by Scene, extracting clips using Multi-trim Video, or manually trimming clips), you may wish to make a permanent change to the clip and save the edited file. VideoStudio gives you a margin of safety in that it saves the trimmed video to a new file and does not alter the original file.
To save, select a trimmed clip in the Storyboard, Timeline or the Library and select
Clip: Save Trimmed Video.

Exporting a video file

VideoStudio provides you with a number of ways to export and share a video file. A video file can be exported to a Web page, converted to an executable greeting card, sent by e-mail, or set as a desktop screen saver.

Select a video file in the Library and click
. Choose the type of output for your video.

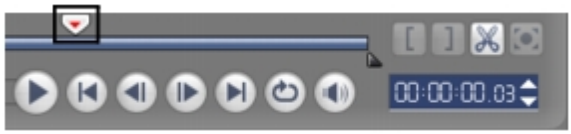
Capturing still images in the Edit Step

A still image can be captured in the Edit **Step** by selecting a specific frame on the Timeline and saving it as an image file. In this manner, possible distortions are avoided since the image is not acquired from a

running video, unlike in the
Capture Step.

To capture still images:

1 Select File: Preferences - Capture. Choose Bitmap or JPEG as the Captured still image save format. If you selected JPEG, also set the
Image quality.
2 Select a video clip in your project.
3 Drag the
Jog Slider to the frame you want to capture.



4 Switch to an image folder in the Library. The folder can be the default Image folder, or the one created by yourself.
5 Select
Clip: Save as Still Image. The new image file is saved to your working folder and is represented as a thumbnail in the image folder you assigned.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Working with clips

Clips, whether audio, video, images or effects, are the foundation of your project and manipulating them is the most important skill you can master.

Adding clips to the Video Track

You only work on the Video Track when you are in the Edit Step. On the Video Track, you can insert three types of clips: video, image and color clips.

Video clips

There are several ways of inserting video clips on the Video Track: Select a clip in the Library and drag and drop it to the Video Track. Multiple clips can be selected by pressing [Shift] or [Ctrl]. Right-click a clip in the Library then select Insert To: Video Track. Select one or more video files in Windows Explorer then drag and drop to the Video Track. To insert a clip from a file folder directly to the Video Track, click Insert Media Files located to the left of the Timeline.

Notes:

· Aside from video files, you can also add video from DVD or DVD-VR formatted discs.

· Use the Fade-in/out buttons to make the audio of the video clips in your project smoothly fade from one clip to the next.

Images

The ways of adding still images to the Video Track are the same as when adding video clips.

Before you start adding images to your project, determine first the image size that you want for all your images. By default, VideoStudio adjusts the size to keep the image's aspect ratio.

To make the size of all inserted images the same as your project's frame size, select File: Preferences - Edit then change the Image resampling option default to Fit to project size.

Color clips

Color clips are solid colored backgrounds that are useful for titles. For example, insert a black color clip as background for end credits. You can use the preset color clips or create new color clips in the Library.

To select a color clip in the Color Library:

1 Select Color from the Library drop-down menu.

2 Choose your desired color displayed in the Library and drag to the Video or Overlay Track.

3 To load another color that is not in the Library, click the color box beside the Color Picker. Here, you can select a color either from Corel Color Picker or the Windows Color Picker.

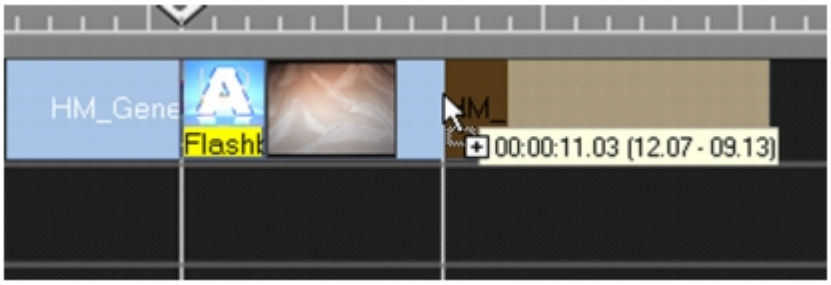


4 Set the
Duration of the color clip in the Options Panel.

Tips:

· Instant timecode tip is a feature of VideoStudio that allows you to add clips with a specific timecode. It appears while trimming and inserting overlapping clips on the timeline, enabling you to make adjustments based on the timecode shown.

· The instant timecode tip appears with the format 00:00:11.03 (12.07 - 09.13). 00:00:11.03 indicates the current timecode where the selected clip is located. 12.07 represents the duration overlapping with the previous clip while 09.13 is the duration overlapping with the next clip.



Sorting clips in the Library

To arrange clips in the Library, click in the Library to open the Options menu, then select Sort by Name or
Sort by Date.

The way video clips are sorted by date depends on the file format. DV AVI files (i.e., AVI files captured from DV camcorders) will be arranged by order of the shooting date and time of the footage. Other video file formats will be sorted by order of file date.

Notes:

· You can also right-click on the Library then select the desired sorting type in the
Sort By submenu.

· To toggle between ascending and descending order, select Sort by Name or
Sort by Date again.

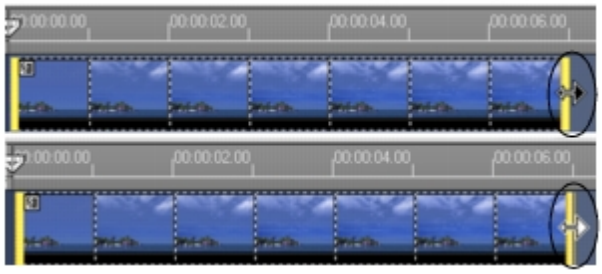
Playback speed

You can modify the playback speed of your videos. Set your video in slow motion to emphasize a movement, or set it to play at lightning speed and give your movie a comical air. Simply adjust the speed attributes for your video clip by clicking Playback Speed under the **Options Panel** of the Edit Step. Drag the slider according to your preferences (i.e., slow, normal or fast), or enter a value. The higher the value you set, the faster the playback of your clip. (Values range from 10-1000%). You can also specify a set duration for the clip in Time stretch. Click Preview to view the results of your settings then click OK when finished.

Tips:

· Hold [Shift]
then drag the end of the clip on the Timeline to change the playback speed.

· The black arrow means you are trimming or extending the clip, while the white arrow means that you are changing the playback speed.



Reversing video playback

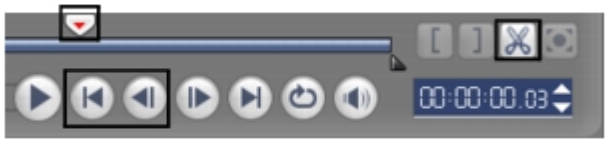
Reverse the playback of the video by selecting
Reverse video in the Options Panel.

Trimming a clip

The best part of editing your movie on your computer is the ease with which you can snip and trim your work with frame by frame accuracy. There are three ways of trimming a clip:

To split a clip into two:

1 Select the clip you want to split on the Storyboard or Timeline.
2 Drag the
Jog Slider to the point where you want to cut the clip.

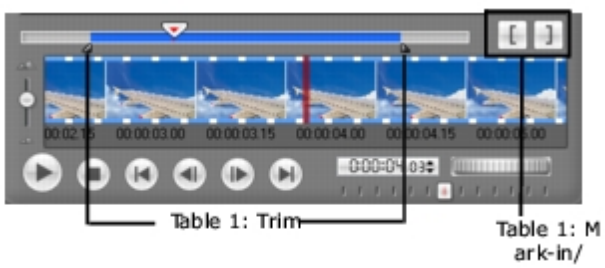


Tip: Click or
to set the cutting point more precisely.

3 Click to cut the clip into two clips. To remove one of these clips, select the unwanted clip and press
[Delete].

To trim a clip with the Trim Handles using Single Clip Trimmer:

1 Double-click a video clip in the Library or right-click on a video clip and choose Single Clip Trim to launch the
Trim Video dialog box.
2 Click and drag the Trim handles to set the Mark-in/Mark-out points on the clip.
For more precise trimming, click on a Trim handle, hold it, and use the left or right arrow keys on your keyboard to trim one frame at a time. The Mark-in/Mark-out points can also be set by pressing [F3] and
[F4], respectively.



3 Click Play Clip
to preview the trimmed clip.
Tip: You can also use Zoom controls to display each frame of your video on the Timeline and trim one frame at a time. The Scroll Bar makes navigating through your project quicker and easier. A wheel mouse can also be used to scroll, and to zoom by pressing
[Ctrl].

To trim a clip directly on the Timeline:

1 Click a clip on the **Timeline**
to select it.
2 Drag the yellow Trim handles
on either side of the clip to change its length. The Preview Window reflects the position of the Trim handle in the clip.
3 Or, click the timecode in the
Duration box in the Options Panel and enter the desired clip length.



4 Other clips in your project automatically reposition themselves according to changes made.
Note: Changes made in the video
Duration box only affect the Mark-out point. The Mark-in point remains unchanged.

Split by Scene

Use the Split by Scene feature in the Edit Step to detect different scenes in a video file and automatically break it down into several clip files.
The way VideoStudio detects scenes depends on the type of video file. In a captured DV AVI file, scenes can be detected in two ways: DV Recording Time Scan detects scenes according to their shooting date and time. Frame Content detects content changes, such as motion change, camera shifting, brightness change, etc., and splits them into separate files.
In an MPEG-1 or MPEG-2 file, scenes can only be detected based on content changes (i.e., by Frame Content).

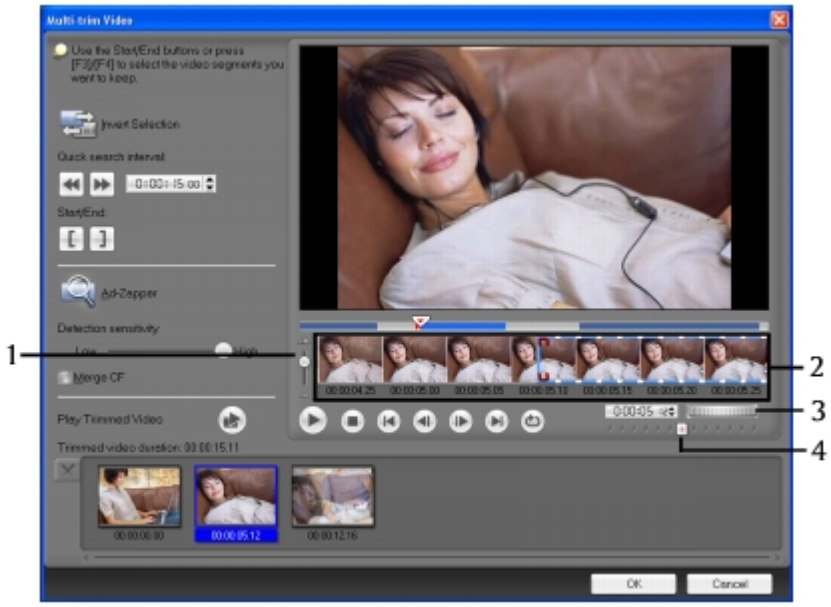
To use Split by Scene on a DV AVI or MPEG file:

1 Go to the
Edit Step and select a captured DV AVI file or an MPEG file on the Timeline.
2 Click Split by Scene in the Options Panel. This will open the
Scenes dialog box.
3 Choose your preferred scan method (DV Recording Time Scan or
Frame Content).
4 Click Options. In the Scene Scanning Sensitivity dialog box, drag the slider to set the Sensitivity level. A higher value means more precision in the scene detection.
5 Click
OK.
6 Click
Scan. VideoStudio then scans through the video file and lists all the detected scenes.

You may merge some of the detected scenes into a single clip. Simply select all the scenes that you want to join together then click Join. The plus sign (+) and a number indicates how many scenes are merged into that particular clip. Click Split
to undo any Join actions that you have done.
7 Click
OK to split the video.

Multi-trimming your video

The Multi-trim Video feature is another method for breaking down a clip into multiple segments. While Split by Scene is automatically done by the program,
Multi-trim Video gives you complete control over the clips you wish to extract, making it even easier for you to manage your project.



1 Timeline zoom
Drag up and down to sub-divide a video clip into frames per second.

2 AccuCut Timeline
Scan a video clip frame by frame for accurate mark-in and mark-out positions.

3 Jog Wheel
Use to scroll to different parts of the clip.

4 Shuttle Slider
Preview the clip at different playback speeds.

To trim a video file into multiple clips:

1 Go to the Edit Step and click Multi-trim Video in the **Options Panel**
.
2 View the whole clip first by clicking Play to determine how you want to mark segments in the Multi-trim Video dialog box.
3 Choose the number of frames to display by dragging the Timeline zoom. You can choose to display the smallest subdivision of one frame per second.
4 Drag the Jog Slider until you get to the part of the video that you want to use as the beginning frame of the first segment. Click
Start.
5 Drag the Jog Slider again, this time, to the point where you want the segment to end. Click
End.
6 Do steps 4 and 5 repeatedly until you have marked all the segments you want kept or removed.
Tips:

· To mark segments, you can also press [F3] and
[F4] while playing the video.
· Click Invert Selection
to toggle between marking segments that you want to retain or marking segments that you want taken out from the clip.
·
Quick search interval allows you to set a fixed interval between frames and browse through the movie using the set value.
7 Click
OK when finished. The video segments that you kept are then inserted onto the Timeline.

Navigation controls in the Multi-trim Video dialog box:



Reverses or advances through the video in fixed increments. By default, these buttons move up or down through the video in increments of 25 seconds.

Plays a preview of the final trimmed video.

Plays the video file. Hold [Shift] then click to play only the selected segments.

Moves to the start or end frame of a trimmed segment.

Moves to the previous/next frame in the video.

Using Ad-Zapper

VideoStudio lets you search your videos for commercial intervals. Clicking this feature extracts the commercials to the media list. Detection sensitivity allows you to control the rate of distinguishing between commercials. Merge CF merges all your extracted clips that are identified as commercials.

Saving trimmed clips

Frequently, when you make changes (i.e., after auto-splitting clips using Split by Scene, extracting clips using Multi-trim Video, or manually trimming clips), you may wish to make a permanent change to the clip and save the edited file. VideoStudio gives you a margin of safety in that it saves the trimmed video to a new file and does not alter the original file.
To save, select a trimmed clip in the Storyboard, Timeline or the Library and select
Clip: Save Trimmed Video.

Exporting a video file

VideoStudio provides you with a number of ways to export and share a video file. A video file can be exported to a Web page, converted to an executable greeting card, sent by e-mail, or set as a desktop screen saver.

Select a video file in the Library and click
. Choose the type of output for your video.

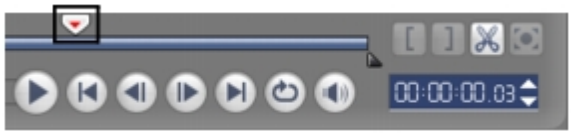
Capturing still images in the Edit Step

A still image can be captured in the Edit **Step** by selecting a specific frame on the Timeline and saving it as an image file. In this manner, possible distortions are avoided since the image is not acquired from a

running video, unlike in the
Capture Step.

To capture still images:

1 Select File: Preferences - Capture. Choose Bitmap or JPEG as the Captured still image save format. If you selected JPEG, also set the
Image quality.
2 Select a video clip in your project.
3 Drag the
Jog Slider to the frame you want to capture.



4 Switch to an image folder in the Library. The folder can be the default Image folder, or the one created by yourself.
5 Select
Clip: Save as Still Image. The new image file is saved to your working folder and is represented as a thumbnail in the image folder you assigned.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Working with clips

Clips, whether audio, video, images or effects, are the foundation of your project and manipulating them is the most important skill you can master.

Adding clips to the Video Track

You only work on the Video Track when you are in the Edit Step. On the Video Track, you can insert three types of clips: video, image and color clips.

Video clips

There are several ways of inserting video clips on the Video Track: Select a clip in the Library and drag and drop it to the Video Track. Multiple clips can be selected by pressing [Shift] or [Ctrl]. Right-click a clip in the Library then select Insert To: Video Track. Select one or more video files in Windows Explorer then drag and drop to the Video Track. To insert a clip from a file folder directly to the Video Track, click Insert Media Files located to the left of the Timeline.

Notes:

· Aside from video files, you can also add video from DVD or DVD-VR formatted discs.

· Use the Fade-in/out buttons

to make the audio of the video clips in your project smoothly fade from one clip to the next.

Images

The ways of adding still images to the Video Track are the same as when adding video clips.

Before you start adding images to your project, determine first the image size that you want for all your images. By default, VideoStudio adjusts the size to keep the image's aspect ratio.

To make the size of all inserted images the same as your project's frame size, select File: Preferences - Edit then change the Image resampling option default to

Fit to project size.

Color clips

Color clips are solid colored backgrounds that are useful for titles. For example, insert a black color clip as background for end credits. You can use the preset color clips or create new color clips in the Library.

To select a color clip in the Color Library:

1 Select

Color from the Library drop-down menu.

2 Choose your desired color displayed in the Library and drag to the Video or Overlay Track.

3 To load another color that is not in the Library, click the color box beside the Color Picker. Here, you can select a color either from Corel Color Picker or the Windows Color Picker.

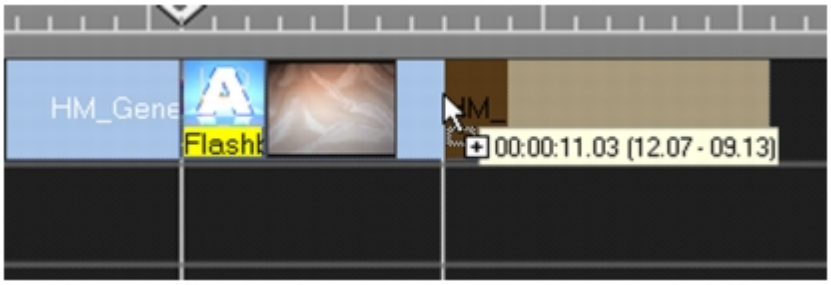


4 Set the
Duration of the color clip in the Options Panel.

Tips:

· Instant timecode tip is a feature of VideoStudio that allows you to add clips with a specific timecode. It appears while trimming and inserting overlapping clips on the timeline, enabling you to make adjustments based on the timecode shown.

· The instant timecode tip appears with the format 00:00:11.03 (12.07 - 09.13). 00:00:11.03 indicates the current timecode where the selected clip is located. 12.07 represents the duration overlapping with the previous clip while 09.13 is the duration overlapping with the next clip.



Sorting clips in the Library

To arrange clips in the Library, click in the Library to open the Options menu, then select Sort by Name or
Sort by Date.

The way video clips are sorted by date depends on the file format. DV AVI files (i.e., AVI files captured from DV camcorders) will be arranged by order of the shooting date and time of the footage. Other video file formats will be sorted by order of file date.

Notes:

· You can also right-click on the Library then select the desired sorting type in the
Sort By submenu.

· To toggle between ascending and descending order, select Sort by Name or
Sort by Date again.

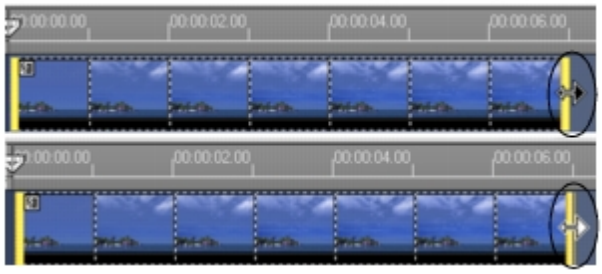
Playback speed

You can modify the playback speed of your videos. Set your video in slow motion to emphasize a movement, or set it to play at lightning speed and give your movie a comical air. Simply adjust the speed attributes for your video clip by clicking Playback Speed under the **Options Panel** of the Edit Step. Drag the slider according to your preferences (i.e., slow, normal or fast), or enter a value. The higher the value you set, the faster the playback of your clip. (Values range from 10-1000%). You can also specify a set duration for the clip in Time stretch. Click Preview to view the results of your settings then click OK when finished.

Tips:

· Hold [Shift]
then drag the end of the clip on the Timeline to change the playback speed.

· The black arrow means you are trimming or extending the clip, while the white arrow means that you are changing the playback speed.



Reversing video playback

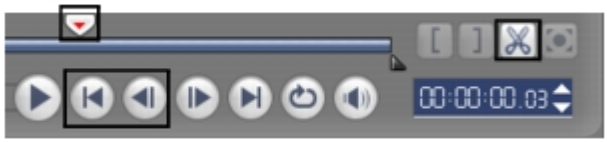
Reverse the playback of the video by selecting
Reverse video in the Options Panel.

Trimming a clip

The best part of editing your movie on your computer is the ease with which you can snip and trim your work with frame by frame accuracy. There are three ways of trimming a clip:

To split a clip into two:

1 Select the clip you want to split on the Storyboard or Timeline.
2 Drag the
Jog Slider to the point where you want to cut the clip.

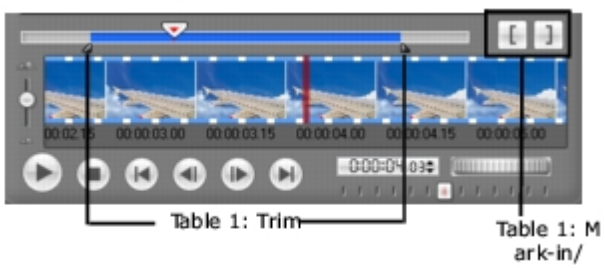


Tip: Click or
to set the cutting point more precisely.

3 Click to cut the clip into two clips. To remove one of these clips, select the unwanted clip and press
[Delete].

To trim a clip with the Trim Handles using Single Clip Trimmer:

1 Double-click a video clip in the Library or right-click on a video clip and choose Single Clip Trim to launch the
Trim Video dialog box.
2 Click and drag the Trim handles to set the Mark-in/Mark-out points on the clip.
For more precise trimming, click on a Trim handle, hold it, and use the left or right arrow keys on your keyboard to trim one frame at a time. The Mark-in/Mark-out points can also be set by pressing [F3] and
[F4], respectively.



3 Click Play Clip
to preview the trimmed clip.
Tip: You can also use Zoom controls to display each frame of your video on the Timeline and trim one frame at a time. The Scroll Bar makes navigating through your project quicker and easier. A wheel mouse can also be used to scroll, and to zoom by pressing
[Ctrl].

To trim a clip directly on the Timeline:

1 Click a clip on the **Timeline**
to select it.
2 Drag the yellow Trim handles
on either side of the clip to change its length. The Preview Window reflects the position of the Trim handle in the clip.
3 Or, click the timecode in the
Duration box in the Options Panel and enter the desired clip length.



4 Other clips in your project automatically reposition themselves according to changes made.
Note: Changes made in the video
Duration box only affect the Mark-out point. The Mark-in point remains unchanged.

Split by Scene

Use the Split by Scene feature in the Edit Step to detect different scenes in a video file and automatically break it down into several clip files.
The way VideoStudio detects scenes depends on the type of video file. In a captured DV AVI file, scenes can be detected in two ways: DV Recording Time Scan detects scenes according to their shooting date and time. Frame Content detects content changes, such as motion change, camera shifting, brightness change, etc., and splits them into separate files.
In an MPEG-1 or MPEG-2 file, scenes can only be detected based on content changes (i.e., by Frame Content).

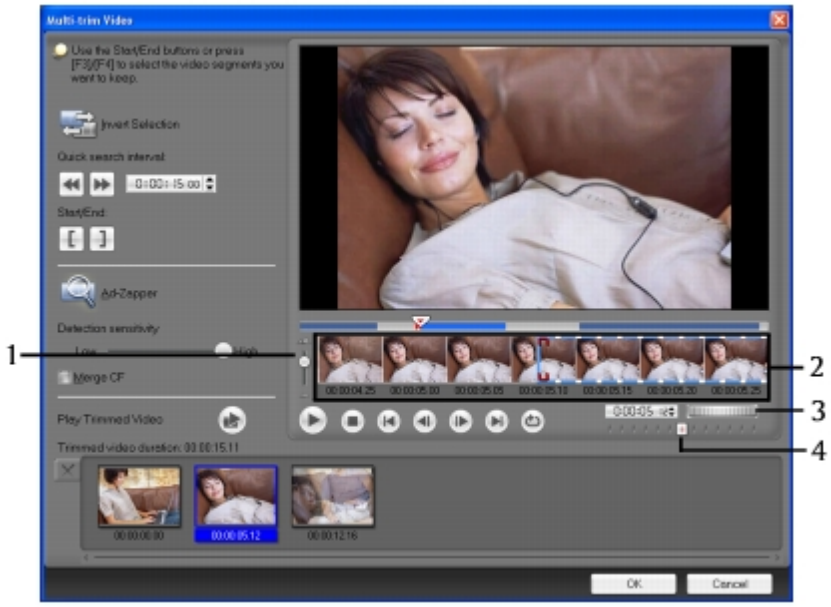
To use Split by Scene on a DV AVI or MPEG file:

1 Go to the
Edit Step and select a captured DV AVI file or an MPEG file on the Timeline.
2 Click Split by Scene in the Options Panel. This will open the
Scenes dialog box.
3 Choose your preferred scan method (DV Recording Time Scan or
Frame Content).
4 Click Options. In the Scene Scanning Sensitivity dialog box, drag the slider to set the Sensitivity level. A higher value means more precision in the scene detection.
5 Click
OK.
6 Click
Scan. VideoStudio then scans through the video file and lists all the detected scenes.

You may merge some of the detected scenes into a single clip. Simply select all the scenes that you want to join together then click Join. The plus sign (+) and a number indicates how many scenes are merged into that particular clip. Click Split
to undo any Join actions that you have done.
7 Click
OK to split the video.

Multi-trimming your video

The Multi-trim Video feature is another method for breaking down a clip into multiple segments. While Split by Scene is automatically done by the program,
Multi-trim Video gives you complete control over the clips you wish to extract, making it even easier for you to manage your project.



1 Timeline zoom
Drag up and down to sub-divide a video clip into frames per second.

2 AccuCut Timeline
Scan a video clip frame by frame for accurate mark-in and mark-out positions.

3 Jog Wheel
Use to scroll to different parts of the clip.

4 Shuttle Slider
Preview the clip at different playback speeds.

To trim a video file into multiple clips:

1 Go to the Edit Step and click Multi-trim Video in the **Options Panel**
.
2 View the whole clip first by clicking Play to determine how you want to mark segments in the Multi-trim Video dialog box.
3 Choose the number of frames to display by dragging the Timeline zoom. You can choose to display the smallest subdivision of one frame per second.
4 Drag the Jog Slider until you get to the part of the video that you want to use as the beginning frame of the first segment. Click
Start.
5 Drag the Jog Slider again, this time, to the point where you want the segment to end. Click
End.
6 Do steps 4 and 5 repeatedly until you have marked all the segments you want kept or removed.
Tips:

· To mark segments, you can also press [F3] and
[F4] while playing the video.
· Click Invert Selection
to toggle between marking segments that you want to retain or marking segments that you want taken out from the clip.
·
Quick search interval allows you to set a fixed interval between frames and browse through the movie using the set value.
7 Click
OK when finished. The video segments that you kept are then inserted onto the Timeline.

Navigation controls in the Multi-trim Video dialog box:



Reverses or advances through the video in fixed increments. By default, these buttons move up or down through the video in increments of 25 seconds.



Plays a preview of the final trimmed video.



Plays the video file. Hold [Shift] then click to play only the selected segments.



Moves to the start or end frame of a trimmed segment.



Moves to the previous/next frame in the video.

Using Ad-Zapper

VideoStudio lets you search your videos for commercial intervals. Clicking this feature extracts the commercials to the media list. Detection sensitivity allows you to control the rate of distinguishing between commercials. Merge CF merges all your extracted clips that are identified as commercials.

Saving trimmed clips

Frequently, when you make changes (i.e., after auto-splitting clips using Split by Scene, extracting clips using Multi-trim Video, or manually trimming clips), you may wish to make a permanent change to the clip and save the edited file. VideoStudio gives you a margin of safety in that it saves the trimmed video to a new file and does not alter the original file.
To save, select a trimmed clip in the Storyboard, Timeline or the Library and select
Clip: Save Trimmed Video.

Exporting a video file

VideoStudio provides you with a number of ways to export and share a video file. A video file can be exported to a Web page, converted to an executable greeting card, sent by e-mail, or set as a desktop screen saver.

Select a video file in the Library and click
. Choose the type of output for your video.

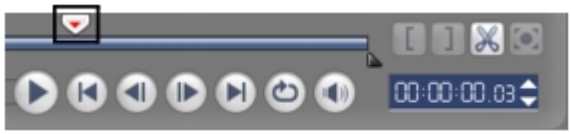
Capturing still images in the Edit Step

A still image can be captured in the Edit **Step** by selecting a specific frame on the Timeline and saving it as an image file. In this manner, possible distortions are avoided since the image is not acquired from a

running video, unlike in the
Capture Step.

To capture still images:

1 Select File: Preferences - Capture. Choose Bitmap or JPEG as the Captured still image save format. If you selected JPEG, also set the
Image quality.
2 Select a video clip in your project.
3 Drag the
Jog Slider to the frame you want to capture.



4 Switch to an image folder in the Library. The folder can be the default Image folder, or the one created by yourself.
5 Select
Clip: Save as Still Image. The new image file is saved to your working folder and is represented as a thumbnail in the image folder you assigned.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Working with clips

Clips, whether audio, video, images or effects, are the foundation of your project and manipulating them is the most important skill you can master.

Adding clips to the Video Track

You only work on the Video Track when you are in the Edit Step. On the Video Track, you can insert three types of clips: video, image and color clips.

Video clips

There are several ways of inserting video clips on the Video Track: Select a clip in the Library and drag and drop it to the Video Track. Multiple clips can be selected by pressing [Shift] or [Ctrl]. Right-click a clip in the Library then select Insert To: Video Track. Select one or more video files in Windows Explorer then drag and drop to the Video Track. To insert a clip from a file folder directly to the Video Track, click Insert Media Files located to the left of the Timeline.

Notes:

· Aside from video files, you can also add video from DVD or DVD-VR formatted discs.

· Use the Fade-in/out buttons

to make the audio of the video clips in your project smoothly fade from one clip to the next.

Images

The ways of adding still images to the Video Track are the same as when adding video clips.

Before you start adding images to your project, determine first the image size that you want for all your images. By default, VideoStudio adjusts the size to keep the image's aspect ratio.

To make the size of all inserted images the same as your project's frame size, select File: Preferences - Edit then change the Image resampling option default to

Fit to project size.

Color clips

Color clips are solid colored backgrounds that are useful for titles. For example, insert a black color clip as background for end credits. You can use the preset color clips or create new color clips in the Library.

To select a color clip in the Color Library:

1 Select

Color from the Library drop-down menu.

2 Choose your desired color displayed in the Library and drag to the Video or Overlay Track.

3 To load another color that is not in the Library, click the color box beside the Color Picker. Here, you can select a color either from Corel Color Picker or the Windows Color Picker.

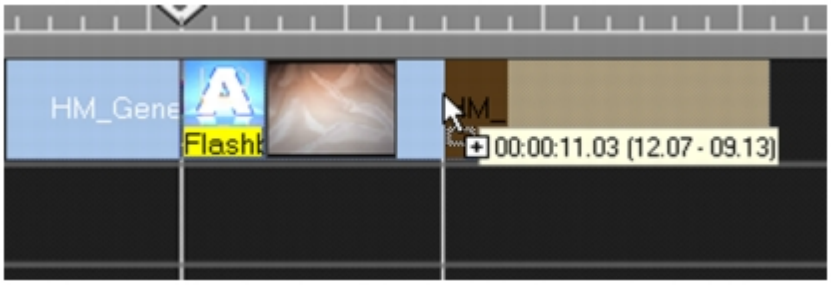


4 Set the
Duration of the color clip in the Options Panel.

Tips:

· Instant timecode tip is a feature of VideoStudio that allows you to add clips with a specific timecode. It appears while trimming and inserting overlapping clips on the timeline, enabling you to make adjustments based on the timecode shown.

· The instant timecode tip appears with the format 00:00:11.03 (12.07 - 09.13). 00:00:11.03 indicates the current timecode where the selected clip is located. 12.07 represents the duration overlapping with the previous clip while 09.13 is the duration overlapping with the next clip.



Sorting clips in the Library

To arrange clips in the Library, click in the Library to open the Options menu, then select Sort by Name or
Sort by Date.

The way video clips are sorted by date depends on the file format. DV AVI files (i.e., AVI files captured from DV camcorders) will be arranged by order of the shooting date and time of the footage. Other video file formats will be sorted by order of file date.

Notes:

· You can also right-click on the Library then select the desired sorting type in the
Sort By submenu.

· To toggle between ascending and descending order, select Sort by Name or
Sort by Date again.

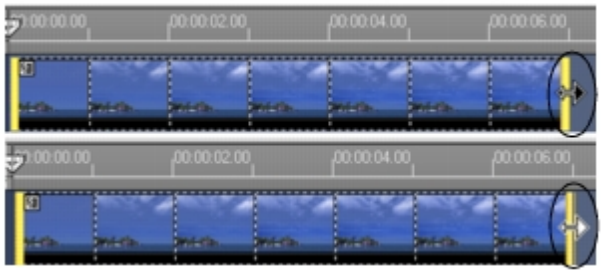
Playback speed

You can modify the playback speed of your videos. Set your video in slow motion to emphasize a movement, or set it to play at lightning speed and give your movie a comical air. Simply adjust the speed attributes for your video clip by clicking Playback Speed under the **Options Panel** of the Edit Step. Drag the slider according to your preferences (i.e., slow, normal or fast), or enter a value. The higher the value you set, the faster the playback of your clip. (Values range from 10-1000%). You can also specify a set duration for the clip in Time stretch. Click Preview to view the results of your settings then click OK when finished.

Tips:

· Hold [Shift]
then drag the end of the clip on the Timeline to change the playback speed.

· The black arrow means you are trimming or extending the clip, while the white arrow means that you are changing the playback speed.



Reversing video playback

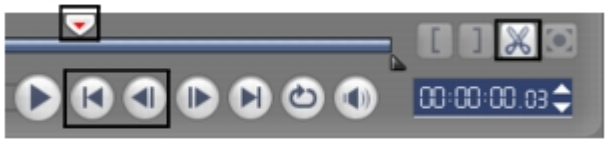
Reverse the playback of the video by selecting
Reverse video in the Options Panel.

Trimming a clip

The best part of editing your movie on your computer is the ease with which you can snip and trim your work with frame by frame accuracy. There are three ways of trimming a clip:

To split a clip into two:

1 Select the clip you want to split on the Storyboard or Timeline.
2 Drag the
Jog Slider to the point where you want to cut the clip.

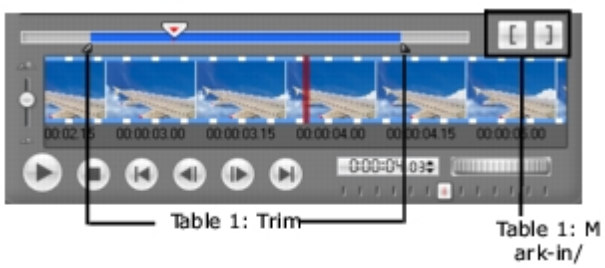


Tip: Click or
to set the cutting point more precisely.

3 Click to cut the clip into two clips. To remove one of these clips, select the unwanted clip and press
[Delete].

To trim a clip with the Trim Handles using Single Clip Trimmer:

1 Double-click a video clip in the Library or right-click on a video clip and choose Single Clip Trim to launch the
Trim Video dialog box.
2 Click and drag the Trim handles to set the Mark-in/Mark-out points on the clip.
For more precise trimming, click on a Trim handle, hold it, and use the left or right arrow keys on your keyboard to trim one frame at a time. The Mark-in/Mark-out points can also be set by pressing [F3] and
[F4], respectively.



3 Click Play Clip
to preview the trimmed clip.
Tip: You can also use Zoom controls to display each frame of your video on the Timeline and trim one frame at a time. The Scroll Bar makes navigating through your project quicker and easier. A wheel mouse can also be used to scroll, and to zoom by pressing
[Ctrl].

To trim a clip directly on the Timeline:

1 Click a clip on the **Timeline**
to select it.
2 Drag the yellow Trim handles
on either side of the clip to change its length. The Preview Window reflects the position of the Trim handle in the clip.
3 Or, click the timecode in the
Duration box in the Options Panel and enter the desired clip length.



4 Other clips in your project automatically reposition themselves according to changes made.
Note: Changes made in the video
Duration box only affect the Mark-out point. The Mark-in point remains unchanged.

Split by Scene

Use the Split by Scene feature in the Edit Step to detect different scenes in a video file and automatically break it down into several clip files.
The way VideoStudio detects scenes depends on the type of video file. In a captured DV AVI file, scenes can be detected in two ways: DV Recording Time Scan detects scenes according to their shooting date and time. Frame Content detects content changes, such as motion change, camera shifting, brightness change, etc., and splits them into separate files.
In an MPEG-1 or MPEG-2 file, scenes can only be detected based on content changes (i.e., by Frame Content).

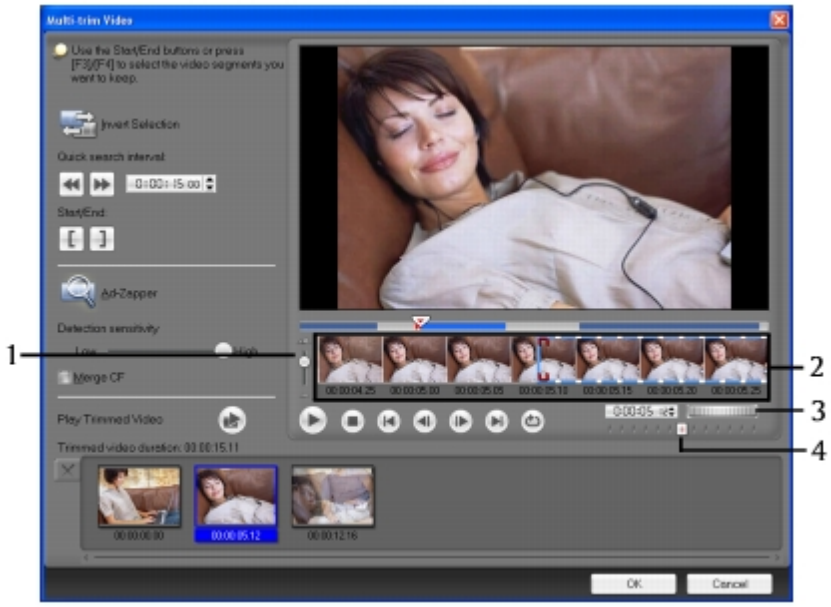
To use Split by Scene on a DV AVI or MPEG file:

1 Go to the
Edit Step and select a captured DV AVI file or an MPEG file on the Timeline.
2 Click Split by Scene in the Options Panel. This will open the
Scenes dialog box.
3 Choose your preferred scan method (DV Recording Time Scan or
Frame Content).
4 Click Options. In the Scene Scanning Sensitivity dialog box, drag the slider to set the Sensitivity level. A higher value means more precision in the scene detection.
5 Click
OK.
6 Click
Scan. VideoStudio then scans through the video file and lists all the detected scenes.

You may merge some of the detected scenes into a single clip. Simply select all the scenes that you want to join together then click Join. The plus sign (+) and a number indicates how many scenes are merged into that particular clip. Click Split
to undo any Join actions that you have done.
7 Click
OK to split the video.

Multi-trimming your video

The Multi-trim Video feature is another method for breaking down a clip into multiple segments. While Split by Scene is automatically done by the program,
Multi-trim Video gives you complete control over the clips you wish to extract, making it even easier for you to manage your project.



1 Timeline zoom
Drag up and down to sub-divide a video clip into frames per second.

2 AccuCut Timeline
Scan a video clip frame by frame for accurate mark-in and mark-out positions.

3 Jog Wheel
Use to scroll to different parts of the clip.

4 Shuttle Slider
Preview the clip at different playback speeds.

To trim a video file into multiple clips:

1 Go to the Edit Step and click Multi-trim Video in the **Options Panel**
.
2 View the whole clip first by clicking Play to determine how you want to mark segments in the Multi-trim Video dialog box.
3 Choose the number of frames to display by dragging the Timeline zoom. You can choose to display the smallest subdivision of one frame per second.
4 Drag the Jog Slider until you get to the part of the video that you want to use as the beginning frame of the first segment. Click
Start.
5 Drag the Jog Slider again, this time, to the point where you want the segment to end. Click
End.
6 Do steps 4 and 5 repeatedly until you have marked all the segments you want kept or removed.
Tips:

· To mark segments, you can also press [F3] and
[F4] while playing the video.
· Click Invert Selection
to toggle between marking segments that you want to retain or marking segments that you want taken out from the clip.
·
Quick search interval allows you to set a fixed interval between frames and browse through the movie using the set value.
7 Click
OK when finished. The video segments that you kept are then inserted onto the Timeline.

Navigation controls in the Multi-trim Video dialog box:



Reverses or advances through the video in fixed increments. By default, these buttons move up or down through the video in increments of 25 seconds.

Plays a preview of the final trimmed video.

Plays the video file. Hold [Shift] then click to play only the selected segments.

Moves to the start or end frame of a trimmed segment.

Moves to the previous/next frame in the video.

Using Ad-Zapper

VideoStudio lets you search your videos for commercial intervals. Clicking this feature extracts the commercials to the media list. Detection sensitivity allows you to control the rate of distinguishing between commercials. Merge CF merges all your extracted clips that are identified as commercials.

Saving trimmed clips

Frequently, when you make changes (i.e., after auto-splitting clips using Split by Scene, extracting clips using Multi-trim Video, or manually trimming clips), you may wish to make a permanent change to the clip and save the edited file. VideoStudio gives you a margin of safety in that it saves the trimmed video to a new file and does not alter the original file.
To save, select a trimmed clip in the Storyboard, Timeline or the Library and select
Clip: Save Trimmed Video.

Exporting a video file

VideoStudio provides you with a number of ways to export and share a video file. A video file can be exported to a Web page, converted to an executable greeting card, sent by e-mail, or set as a desktop screen saver.

Select a video file in the Library and click
. Choose the type of output for your video.

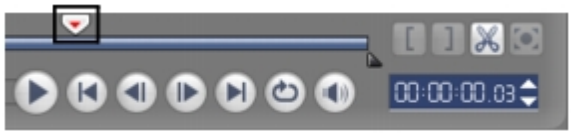
Capturing still images in the Edit Step

A still image can be captured in the Edit **Step** by selecting a specific frame on the Timeline and saving it as an image file. In this manner, possible distortions are avoided since the image is not acquired from a

running video, unlike in the
Capture Step.

To capture still images:

1 Select File: Preferences - Capture. Choose Bitmap or JPEG as the Captured still image save format. If you selected JPEG, also set the
Image quality.
2 Select a video clip in your project.
3 Drag the
Jog Slider to the frame you want to capture.



4 Switch to an image folder in the Library. The folder can be the default Image folder, or the one created by yourself.
5 Select
Clip: Save as Still Image. The new image file is saved to your working folder and is represented as a thumbnail in the image folder you assigned.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Working with clips

Clips, whether audio, video, images or effects, are the foundation of your project and manipulating them is the most important skill you can master.

Adding clips to the Video Track

You only work on the Video Track when you are in the Edit Step. On the Video Track, you can insert three types of clips: video, image and color clips.

Video clips

There are several ways of inserting video clips on the Video Track: Select a clip in the Library and drag and drop it to the Video Track. Multiple clips can be selected by pressing [Shift] or [Ctrl]. Right-click a clip in the Library then select Insert To: Video Track. Select one or more video files in Windows Explorer then drag and drop to the Video Track. To insert a clip from a file folder directly to the Video Track, click Insert Media Files located to the left of the Timeline.

Notes:

· Aside from video files, you can also add video from DVD or DVD-VR formatted discs.

· Use the Fade-in/out buttons

to make the audio of the video clips in your project smoothly fade from one clip to the next.

Images

The ways of adding still images to the Video Track are the same as when adding video clips.

Before you start adding images to your project, determine first the image size that you want for all your images. By default, VideoStudio adjusts the size to keep the image's aspect ratio.

To make the size of all inserted images the same as your project's frame size, select File: Preferences - Edit then change the Image resampling option default to

Fit to project size.

Color clips

Color clips are solid colored backgrounds that are useful for titles. For example, insert a black color clip as background for end credits. You can use the preset color clips or create new color clips in the Library.

To select a color clip in the Color Library:

1 Select

Color from the Library drop-down menu.

2 Choose your desired color displayed in the Library and drag to the Video or Overlay Track.

3 To load another color that is not in the Library, click the color box beside the Color Picker. Here, you can select a color either from Corel Color Picker or the Windows Color Picker.

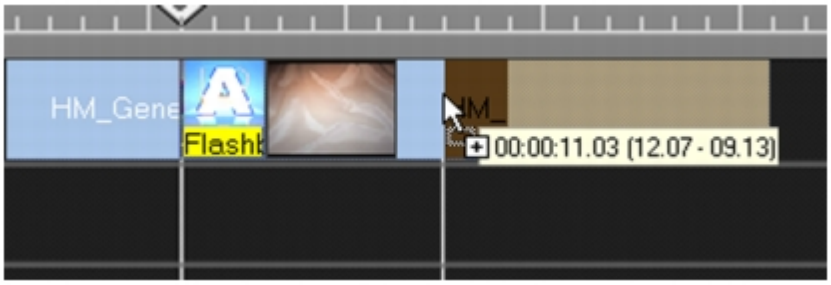


4 Set the
Duration of the color clip in the Options Panel.

Tips:

· Instant timecode tip is a feature of VideoStudio that allows you to add clips with a specific timecode. It appears while trimming and inserting overlapping clips on the timeline, enabling you to make adjustments based on the timecode shown.

· The instant timecode tip appears with the format 00:00:11.03 (12.07 - 09.13). 00:00:11.03 indicates the current timecode where the selected clip is located. 12.07 represents the duration overlapping with the previous clip while 09.13 is the duration overlapping with the next clip.



Sorting clips in the Library

To arrange clips in the Library, click in the Library to open the Options menu, then select Sort by Name or
Sort by Date.

The way video clips are sorted by date depends on the file format. DV AVI files (i.e., AVI files captured from DV camcorders) will be arranged by order of the shooting date and time of the footage. Other video file formats will be sorted by order of file date.

Notes:

· You can also right-click on the Library then select the desired sorting type in the
Sort By submenu.

· To toggle between ascending and descending order, select Sort by Name or
Sort by Date again.

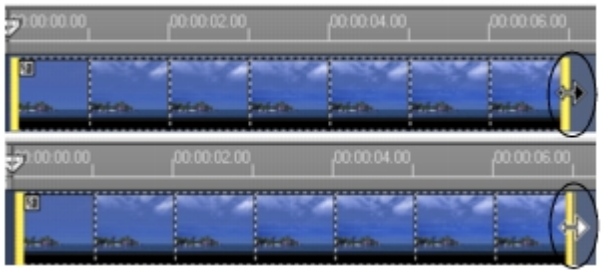
Playback speed

You can modify the playback speed of your videos. Set your video in slow motion to emphasize a movement, or set it to play at lightning speed and give your movie a comical air. Simply adjust the speed attributes for your video clip by clicking Playback Speed under the **Options Panel** of the Edit Step. Drag the slider according to your preferences (i.e., slow, normal or fast), or enter a value. The higher the value you set, the faster the playback of your clip. (Values range from 10-1000%). You can also specify a set duration for the clip in Time stretch. Click Preview to view the results of your settings then click OK when finished.

Tips:

· Hold [Shift]
then drag the end of the clip on the Timeline to change the playback speed.

· The black arrow means you are trimming or extending the clip, while the white arrow means that you are changing the playback speed.



Reversing video playback

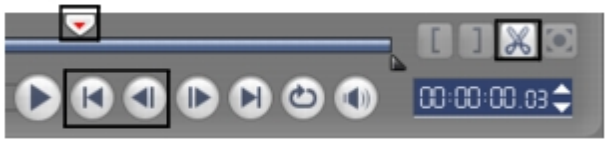
Reverse the playback of the video by selecting
Reverse video in the Options Panel.

Trimming a clip

The best part of editing your movie on your computer is the ease with which you can snip and trim your work with frame by frame accuracy. There are three ways of trimming a clip:

To split a clip into two:

1 Select the clip you want to split on the Storyboard or Timeline.
2 Drag the
Jog Slider to the point where you want to cut the clip.

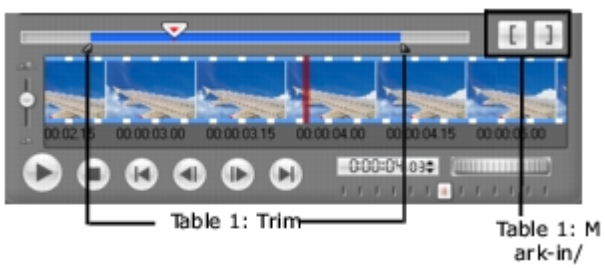


Tip: Click or
to set the cutting point more precisely.

3 Click to cut the clip into two clips. To remove one of these clips, select the unwanted clip and press
[Delete].

To trim a clip with the Trim Handles using Single Clip Trimmer:

1 Double-click a video clip in the Library or right-click on a video clip and choose Single Clip Trim to launch the
Trim Video dialog box.
2 Click and drag the Trim handles to set the Mark-in/Mark-out points on the clip.
For more precise trimming, click on a Trim handle, hold it, and use the left or right arrow keys on your keyboard to trim one frame at a time. The Mark-in/Mark-out points can also be set by pressing [F3] and
[F4], respectively.



3 Click Play Clip
to preview the trimmed clip.
Tip: You can also use Zoom controls to display each frame of your video on the Timeline and trim one frame at a time. The Scroll Bar makes navigating through your project quicker and easier. A wheel mouse can also be used to scroll, and to zoom by pressing
[Ctrl].

To trim a clip directly on the Timeline:

1 Click a clip on the **Timeline**
to select it.
2 Drag the yellow Trim handles
on either side of the clip to change its length. The Preview Window reflects the position of the Trim handle in the clip.
3 Or, click the timecode in the
Duration box in the Options Panel and enter the desired clip length.



4 Other clips in your project automatically reposition themselves according to changes made.
Note: Changes made in the video
Duration box only affect the Mark-out point. The Mark-in point remains unchanged.

Split by Scene

Use the Split by Scene feature in the Edit Step to detect different scenes in a video file and automatically break it down into several clip files.
The way VideoStudio detects scenes depends on the type of video file. In a captured DV AVI file, scenes can be detected in two ways: DV Recording Time Scan detects scenes according to their shooting date and time. Frame Content detects content changes, such as motion change, camera shifting, brightness change, etc., and splits them into separate files.
In an MPEG-1 or MPEG-2 file, scenes can only be detected based on content changes (i.e., by Frame Content).

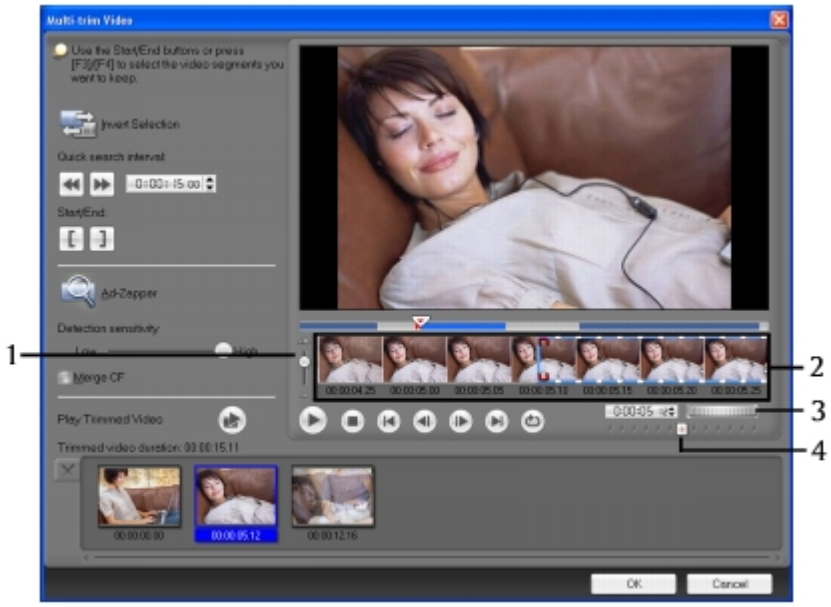
To use Split by Scene on a DV AVI or MPEG file:

1 Go to the
Edit Step and select a captured DV AVI file or an MPEG file on the Timeline.
2 Click Split by Scene in the Options Panel. This will open the
Scenes dialog box.
3 Choose your preferred scan method (DV Recording Time Scan or
Frame Content).
4 Click Options. In the Scene Scanning Sensitivity dialog box, drag the slider to set the Sensitivity level. A higher value means more precision in the scene detection.
5 Click
OK.
6 Click
Scan. VideoStudio then scans through the video file and lists all the detected scenes.

You may merge some of the detected scenes into a single clip. Simply select all the scenes that you want to join together then click Join. The plus sign (+) and a number indicates how many scenes are merged into that particular clip. Click Split
to undo any Join actions that you have done.
7 Click
OK to split the video.

Multi-trimming your video

The Multi-trim Video feature is another method for breaking down a clip into multiple segments. While Split by Scene is automatically done by the program,
Multi-trim Video gives you complete control over the clips you wish to extract, making it even easier for you to manage your project.



1 Timeline zoom
Drag up and down to sub-divide a video clip into frames per second.

2 AccuCut Timeline
Scan a video clip frame by frame for accurate mark-in and mark-out positions.

3 Jog Wheel
Use to scroll to different parts of the clip.

4 Shuttle Slider
Preview the clip at different playback speeds.

To trim a video file into multiple clips:

1 Go to the Edit Step and click Multi-trim Video in the **Options Panel**
.
2 View the whole clip first by clicking Play to determine how you want to mark segments in the Multi-trim Video dialog box.
3 Choose the number of frames to display by dragging the Timeline zoom. You can choose to display the smallest subdivision of one frame per second.
4 Drag the Jog Slider until you get to the part of the video that you want to use as the beginning frame of the first segment. Click
Start.
5 Drag the Jog Slider again, this time, to the point where you want the segment to end. Click
End.
6 Do steps 4 and 5 repeatedly until you have marked all the segments you want kept or removed.
Tips:

· To mark segments, you can also press [F3] and
[F4] while playing the video.
· Click Invert Selection
to toggle between marking segments that you want to retain or marking segments that you want taken out from the clip.
·
Quick search interval allows you to set a fixed interval between frames and browse through the movie using the set value.
7 Click
OK when finished. The video segments that you kept are then inserted onto the Timeline.

Navigation controls in the Multi-trim Video dialog box:



Reverses or advances through the video in fixed increments. By default, these buttons move up or down through the video in increments of 25 seconds.

Plays a preview of the final trimmed video.

Plays the video file. Hold [Shift] then click to play only the selected segments.

Moves to the start or end frame of a trimmed segment.

Moves to the previous/next frame in the video.

Using Ad-Zapper

VideoStudio lets you search your videos for commercial intervals. Clicking this feature extracts the commercials to the media list. Detection sensitivity allows you to control the rate of distinguishing between commercials. Merge CF merges all your extracted clips that are identified as commercials.

Saving trimmed clips

Frequently, when you make changes (i.e., after auto-splitting clips using Split by Scene, extracting clips using Multi-trim Video, or manually trimming clips), you may wish to make a permanent change to the clip and save the edited file. VideoStudio gives you a margin of safety in that it saves the trimmed video to a new file and does not alter the original file.
To save, select a trimmed clip in the Storyboard, Timeline or the Library and select
Clip: Save Trimmed Video.

Exporting a video file

VideoStudio provides you with a number of ways to export and share a video file. A video file can be exported to a Web page, converted to an executable greeting card, sent by e-mail, or set as a desktop screen saver.

Select a video file in the Library and click
. Choose the type of output for your video.

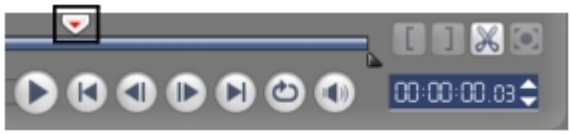
Capturing still images in the Edit Step

A still image can be captured in the Edit **Step** by selecting a specific frame on the Timeline and saving it as an image file. In this manner, possible distortions are avoided since the image is not acquired from a

running video, unlike in the
Capture Step.

To capture still images:

1 Select File: Preferences - Capture. Choose Bitmap or JPEG as the Captured still image save format. If you selected JPEG, also set the
Image quality.
2 Select a video clip in your project.
3 Drag the
Jog Slider to the frame you want to capture.



4 Switch to an image folder in the Library. The folder can be the default Image folder, or the one created by yourself.
5 Select
Clip: Save as Still Image. The new image file is saved to your working folder and is represented as a thumbnail in the image folder you assigned.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Working with clips

Clips, whether audio, video, images or effects, are the foundation of your project and manipulating them is the most important skill you can master.

Adding clips to the Video Track

You only work on the Video Track when you are in the Edit Step. On the Video Track, you can insert three types of clips: video, image and color clips.

Video clips

There are several ways of inserting video clips on the Video Track: Select a clip in the Library and drag and drop it to the Video Track. Multiple clips can be selected by pressing [Shift] or [Ctrl]. Right-click a clip in the Library then select Insert To: Video Track. Select one or more video files in Windows Explorer then drag and drop to the Video Track. To insert a clip from a file folder directly to the Video Track, click Insert Media Files located to the left of the Timeline.

Notes:

· Aside from video files, you can also add video from DVD or DVD-VR formatted discs.

· Use the Fade-in/out buttons

to make the audio of the video clips in your project smoothly fade from one clip to the next.

Images

The ways of adding still images to the Video Track are the same as when adding video clips.

Before you start adding images to your project, determine first the image size that you want for all your images. By default, VideoStudio adjusts the size to keep the image's aspect ratio.

To make the size of all inserted images the same as your project's frame size, select File: Preferences - Edit then change the Image resampling option default to

Fit to project size.

Color clips

Color clips are solid colored backgrounds that are useful for titles. For example, insert a black color clip as background for end credits. You can use the preset color clips or create new color clips in the Library.

To select a color clip in the Color Library:

1 Select

Color from the Library drop-down menu.

2 Choose your desired color displayed in the Library and drag to the Video or Overlay Track.

3 To load another color that is not in the Library, click the color box beside the Color Picker. Here, you can select a color either from Corel Color Picker or the Windows Color Picker.

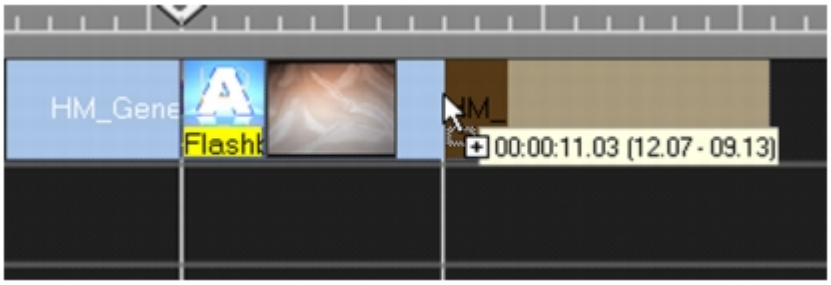


4 Set the
Duration of the color clip in the Options Panel.

Tips:

· Instant timecode tip is a feature of VideoStudio that allows you to add clips with a specific timecode. It appears while trimming and inserting overlapping clips on the timeline, enabling you to make adjustments based on the timecode shown.

· The instant timecode tip appears with the format 00:00:11.03 (12.07 - 09.13). 00:00:11.03 indicates the current timecode where the selected clip is located. 12.07 represents the duration overlapping with the previous clip while 09.13 is the duration overlapping with the next clip.



Sorting clips in the Library

To arrange clips in the Library, click in the Library to open the Options menu, then select Sort by Name or
Sort by Date.

The way video clips are sorted by date depends on the file format. DV AVI files (i.e., AVI files captured from DV camcorders) will be arranged by order of the shooting date and time of the footage. Other video file formats will be sorted by order of file date.

Notes:

· You can also right-click on the Library then select the desired sorting type in the
Sort By submenu.

· To toggle between ascending and descending order, select Sort by Name or
Sort by Date again.

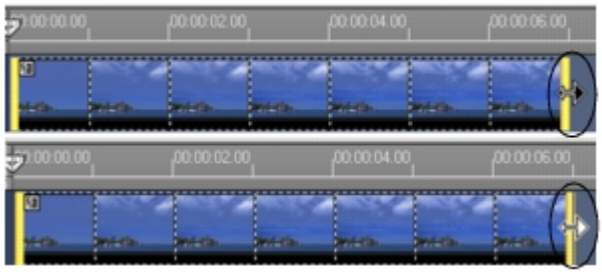
Playback speed

You can modify the playback speed of your videos. Set your video in slow motion to emphasize a movement, or set it to play at lightning speed and give your movie a comical air. Simply adjust the speed attributes for your video clip by clicking Playback Speed under the **Options Panel** of the Edit Step. Drag the slider according to your preferences (i.e., slow, normal or fast), or enter a value. The higher the value you set, the faster the playback of your clip. (Values range from 10-1000%). You can also specify a set duration for the clip in Time stretch. Click Preview to view the results of your settings then click OK when finished.

Tips:

· Hold [Shift]
then drag the end of the clip on the Timeline to change the playback speed.

· The black arrow means you are trimming or extending the clip, while the white arrow means that you are changing the playback speed.



Reversing video playback

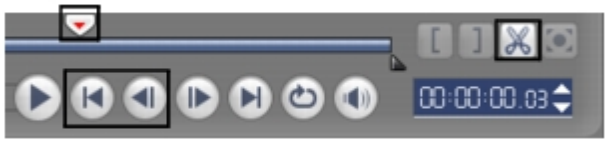
Reverse the playback of the video by selecting
Reverse video in the Options Panel.

Trimming a clip

The best part of editing your movie on your computer is the ease with which you can snip and trim your work with frame by frame accuracy. There are three ways of trimming a clip:

To split a clip into two:

1 Select the clip you want to split on the Storyboard or Timeline.
2 Drag the
Jog Slider to the point where you want to cut the clip.

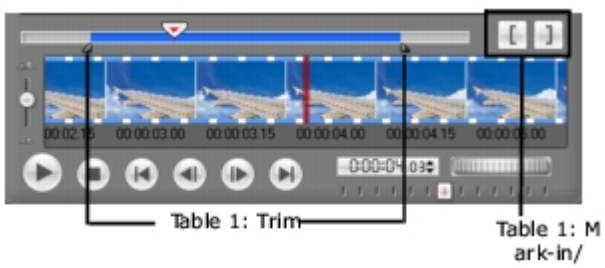


Tip: Click or
to set the cutting point more precisely.

3 Click to cut the clip into two clips. To remove one of these clips, select the unwanted clip and press
[Delete].

To trim a clip with the Trim Handles using Single Clip Trimmer:

1 Double-click a video clip in the Library or right-click on a video clip and choose Single Clip Trim to launch the
Trim Video dialog box.
2 Click and drag the Trim handles to set the Mark-in/Mark-out points on the clip.
For more precise trimming, click on a Trim handle, hold it, and use the left or right arrow keys on your keyboard to trim one frame at a time. The Mark-in/Mark-out points can also be set by pressing [F3] and
[F4], respectively.



3 Click Play Clip
to preview the trimmed clip.
Tip: You can also use Zoom controls to display each frame of your video on the Timeline and trim one frame at a time. The Scroll Bar makes navigating through your project quicker and easier. A wheel mouse can also be used to scroll, and to zoom by pressing
[Ctrl].

To trim a clip directly on the Timeline:

1 Click a clip on the **Timeline**
to select it.
2 Drag the yellow Trim handles
on either side of the clip to change its length. The Preview Window reflects the position of the Trim handle in the clip.
3 Or, click the timecode in the
Duration box in the Options Panel and enter the desired clip length.



4 Other clips in your project automatically reposition themselves according to changes made.
Note: Changes made in the video
Duration box only affect the Mark-out point. The Mark-in point remains unchanged.

Split by Scene

Use the Split by Scene feature in the Edit Step to detect different scenes in a video file and automatically break it down into several clip files.
The way VideoStudio detects scenes depends on the type of video file. In a captured DV AVI file, scenes can be detected in two ways: DV Recording Time Scan detects scenes according to their shooting date and time. Frame Content detects content changes, such as motion change, camera shifting, brightness change, etc., and splits them into separate files.
In an MPEG-1 or MPEG-2 file, scenes can only be detected based on content changes (i.e., by Frame Content).

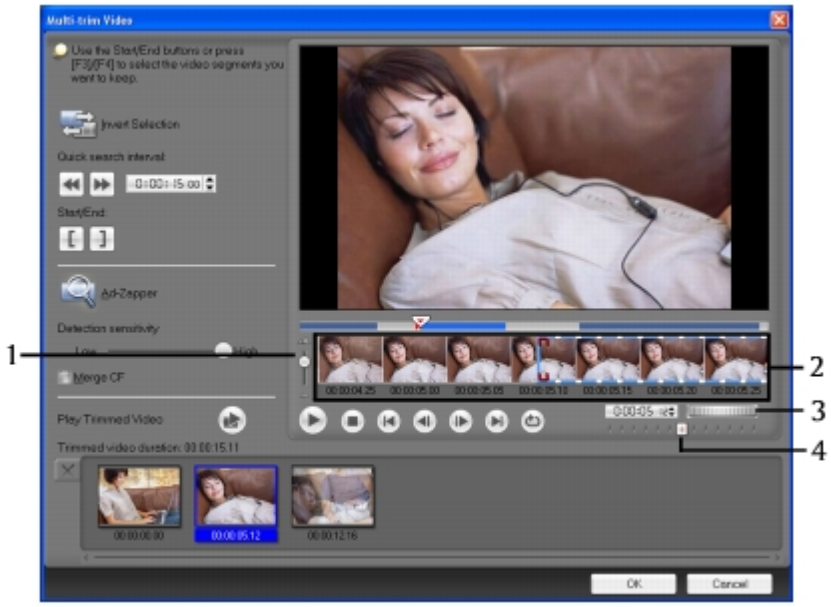
To use Split by Scene on a DV AVI or MPEG file:

1 Go to the
Edit Step and select a captured DV AVI file or an MPEG file on the Timeline.
2 Click Split by Scene in the Options Panel. This will open the
Scenes dialog box.
3 Choose your preferred scan method (DV Recording Time Scan or
Frame Content).
4 Click Options. In the Scene Scanning Sensitivity dialog box, drag the slider to set the Sensitivity level. A higher value means more precision in the scene detection.
5 Click
OK.
6 Click
Scan. VideoStudio then scans through the video file and lists all the detected scenes.

You may merge some of the detected scenes into a single clip. Simply select all the scenes that you want to join together then click Join. The plus sign (+) and a number indicates how many scenes are merged into that particular clip. Click Split
to undo any Join actions that you have done.
7 Click
OK to split the video.

Multi-trimming your video

The Multi-trim Video feature is another method for breaking down a clip into multiple segments. While Split by Scene is automatically done by the program,
Multi-trim Video gives you complete control over the clips you wish to extract, making it even easier for you to manage your project.



1 Timeline zoom
Drag up and down to sub-divide a video clip into frames per second.

2 AccuCut Timeline
Scan a video clip frame by frame for accurate mark-in and mark-out positions.

3 Jog Wheel
Use to scroll to different parts of the clip.

4 Shuttle Slider
Preview the clip at different playback speeds.

To trim a video file into multiple clips:

1 Go to the Edit Step and click Multi-trim Video in the **Options Panel**
.
2 View the whole clip first by clicking Play to determine how you want to mark segments in the Multi-trim Video dialog box.
3 Choose the number of frames to display by dragging the Timeline zoom. You can choose to display the smallest subdivision of one frame per second.
4 Drag the Jog Slider until you get to the part of the video that you want to use as the beginning frame of the first segment. Click
Start.
5 Drag the Jog Slider again, this time, to the point where you want the segment to end. Click
End.
6 Do steps 4 and 5 repeatedly until you have marked all the segments you want kept or removed.
Tips:

· To mark segments, you can also press [F3] and
[F4] while playing the video.
· Click Invert Selection
to toggle between marking segments that you want to retain or marking segments that you want taken out from the clip.
·
Quick search interval allows you to set a fixed interval between frames and browse through the movie using the set value.
7 Click
OK when finished. The video segments that you kept are then inserted onto the Timeline.

Navigation controls in the Multi-trim Video dialog box:



Reverses or advances through the video in fixed increments. By default, these buttons move up or down through the video in increments of 25 seconds.

Plays a preview of the final trimmed video.

Plays the video file. Hold [Shift] then click to play only the selected segments.

Moves to the start or end frame of a trimmed segment.

Moves to the previous/next frame in the video.

Using Ad-Zapper

VideoStudio lets you search your videos for commercial intervals. Clicking this feature extracts the commercials to the media list. Detection sensitivity allows you to control the rate of distinguishing between commercials. Merge CF merges all your extracted clips that are identified as commercials.

Saving trimmed clips

Frequently, when you make changes (i.e., after auto-splitting clips using Split by Scene, extracting clips using Multi-trim Video, or manually trimming clips), you may wish to make a permanent change to the clip and save the edited file. VideoStudio gives you a margin of safety in that it saves the trimmed video to a new file and does not alter the original file.
To save, select a trimmed clip in the Storyboard, Timeline or the Library and select
Clip: Save Trimmed Video.

Exporting a video file

VideoStudio provides you with a number of ways to export and share a video file. A video file can be exported to a Web page, converted to an executable greeting card, sent by e-mail, or set as a desktop screen saver.

Select a video file in the Library and click
. Choose the type of output for your video.

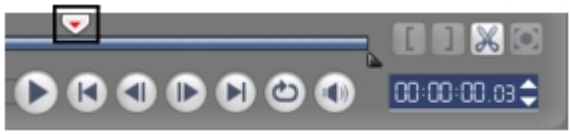
Capturing still images in the Edit Step

A still image can be captured in the Edit **Step** by selecting a specific frame on the Timeline and saving it as an image file. In this manner, possible distortions are avoided since the image is not acquired from a

running video, unlike in the
Capture Step.

To capture still images:

1 Select File: Preferences - Capture. Choose Bitmap or JPEG as the Captured still image save format. If you selected JPEG, also set the
Image quality.
2 Select a video clip in your project.
3 Drag the
Jog Slider to the frame you want to capture.



4 Switch to an image folder in the Library. The folder can be the default Image folder, or the one created by yourself.
5 Select
Clip: Save as Still Image. The new image file is saved to your working folder and is represented as a thumbnail in the image folder you assigned.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Working with clips

Clips, whether audio, video, images or effects, are the foundation of your project and manipulating them is the most important skill you can master.

Adding clips to the Video Track

You only work on the Video Track when you are in the Edit Step. On the Video Track, you can insert three types of clips: video, image and color clips.

Video clips

There are several ways of inserting video clips on the Video Track: Select a clip in the Library and drag and drop it to the Video Track. Multiple clips can be selected by pressing [Shift] or [Ctrl]. Right-click a clip in the Library then select Insert To: Video Track. Select one or more video files in Windows Explorer then drag and drop to the Video Track. To insert a clip from a file folder directly to the Video Track, click Insert Media Files located to the left of the Timeline.

Notes:

· Aside from video files, you can also add video from DVD or DVD-VR formatted discs.

· Use the Fade-in/out buttons to make the audio of the video clips in your project smoothly fade from one clip to the next.

Images

The ways of adding still images to the Video Track are the same as when adding video clips.

Before you start adding images to your project, determine first the image size that you want for all your images. By default, VideoStudio adjusts the size to keep the image's aspect ratio.

To make the size of all inserted images the same as your project's frame size, select File: Preferences - Edit then change the Image resampling option default to Fit to project size.

Color clips

Color clips are solid colored backgrounds that are useful for titles. For example, insert a black color clip as background for end credits. You can use the preset color clips or create new color clips in the Library.

To select a color clip in the Color Library:

1 Select Color from the Library drop-down menu.

2 Choose your desired color displayed in the Library and drag to the Video or Overlay Track.

3 To load another color that is not in the Library, click the color box beside the Color Picker. Here, you can select a color either from Corel Color Picker or the Windows Color Picker.

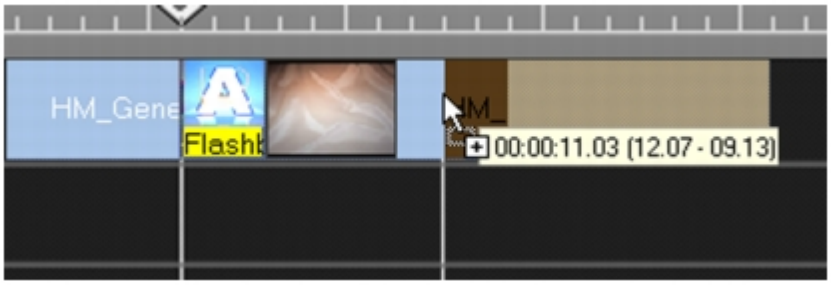


4 Set the
Duration of the color clip in the Options Panel.

Tips:

· Instant timecode tip is a feature of VideoStudio that allows you to add clips with a specific timecode. It appears while trimming and inserting overlapping clips on the timeline, enabling you to make adjustments based on the timecode shown.

· The instant timecode tip appears with the format 00:00:11.03 (12.07 - 09.13). 00:00:11.03 indicates the current timecode where the selected clip is located. 12.07 represents the duration overlapping with the previous clip while 09.13 is the duration overlapping with the next clip.



Sorting clips in the Library

To arrange clips in the Library, click in the Library to open the Options menu, then select Sort by Name or
Sort by Date.

The way video clips are sorted by date depends on the file format. DV AVI files (i.e., AVI files captured from DV camcorders) will be arranged by order of the shooting date and time of the footage. Other video file formats will be sorted by order of file date.

Notes:

· You can also right-click on the Library then select the desired sorting type in the
Sort By submenu.

· To toggle between ascending and descending order, select Sort by Name or
Sort by Date again.

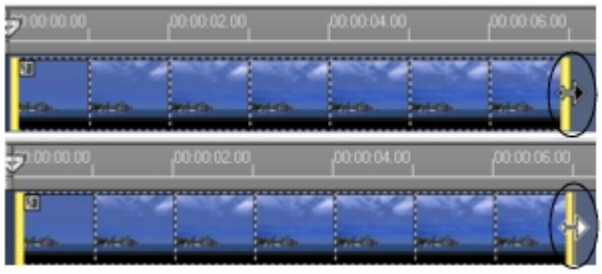
Playback speed

You can modify the playback speed of your videos. Set your video in slow motion to emphasize a movement, or set it to play at lightning speed and give your movie a comical air. Simply adjust the speed attributes for your video clip by clicking Playback Speed under the **Options Panel** of the Edit Step. Drag the slider according to your preferences (i.e., slow, normal or fast), or enter a value. The higher the value you set, the faster the playback of your clip. (Values range from 10-1000%). You can also specify a set duration for the clip in Time stretch. Click Preview to view the results of your settings then click OK when finished.

Tips:

· Hold [Shift]
then drag the end of the clip on the Timeline to change the playback speed.

· The black arrow means you are trimming or extending the clip, while the white arrow means that you are changing the playback speed.



Reversing video playback

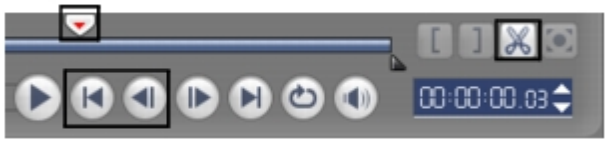
Reverse the playback of the video by selecting
Reverse video in the Options Panel.

Trimming a clip

The best part of editing your movie on your computer is the ease with which you can snip and trim your work with frame by frame accuracy. There are three ways of trimming a clip:

To split a clip into two:

1 Select the clip you want to split on the Storyboard or Timeline.
2 Drag the
Jog Slider to the point where you want to cut the clip.

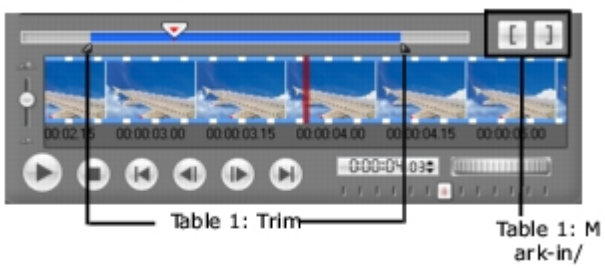


Tip: Click or
to set the cutting point more precisely.

3 Click to cut the clip into two clips. To remove one of these clips, select the unwanted clip and press
[Delete].

To trim a clip with the Trim Handles using Single Clip Trimmer:

1 Double-click a video clip in the Library or right-click on a video clip and choose Single Clip Trim to launch the
Trim Video dialog box.
2 Click and drag the Trim handles to set the Mark-in/Mark-out points on the clip.
For more precise trimming, click on a Trim handle, hold it, and use the left or right arrow keys on your keyboard to trim one frame at a time. The Mark-in/Mark-out points can also be set by pressing [F3] and
[F4], respectively.



3 Click Play Clip
to preview the trimmed clip.
Tip: You can also use Zoom controls to display each frame of your video on the Timeline and trim one frame at a time. The Scroll Bar makes navigating through your project quicker and easier. A wheel mouse can also be used to scroll, and to zoom by pressing
[Ctrl].

To trim a clip directly on the Timeline:

1 Click a clip on the **Timeline**
to select it.
2 Drag the yellow Trim handles
on either side of the clip to change its length. The Preview Window reflects the position of the Trim handle in the clip.
3 Or, click the timecode in the
Duration box in the Options Panel and enter the desired clip length.



4 Other clips in your project automatically reposition themselves according to changes made.
Note: Changes made in the video
Duration box only affect the Mark-out point. The Mark-in point remains unchanged.

Split by Scene

Use the Split by Scene feature in the Edit Step to detect different scenes in a video file and automatically break it down into several clip files.
The way VideoStudio detects scenes depends on the type of video file. In a captured DV AVI file, scenes can be detected in two ways: DV Recording Time Scan detects scenes according to their shooting date and time. Frame Content detects content changes, such as motion change, camera shifting, brightness change, etc., and splits them into separate files.
In an MPEG-1 or MPEG-2 file, scenes can only be detected based on content changes (i.e., by Frame Content).

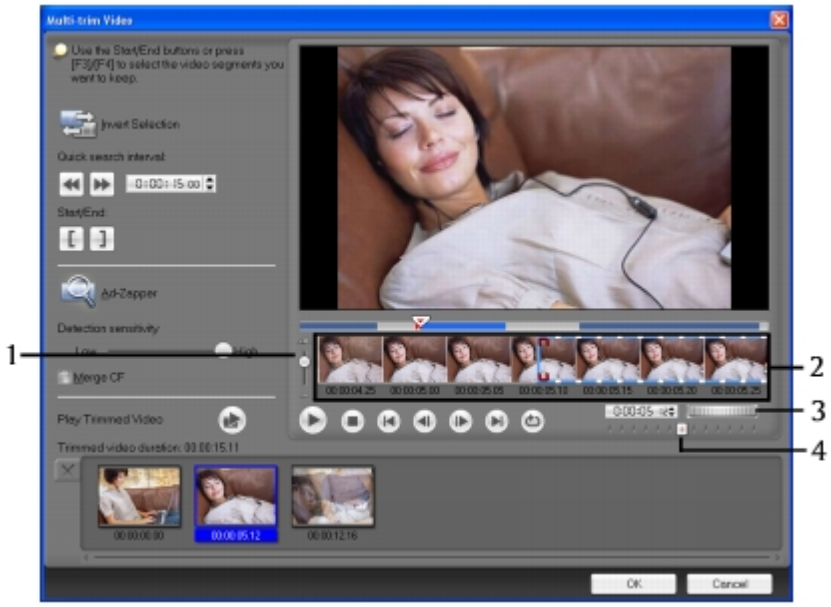
To use Split by Scene on a DV AVI or MPEG file:

1 Go to the
Edit Step and select a captured DV AVI file or an MPEG file on the Timeline.
2 Click Split by Scene in the Options Panel. This will open the
Scenes dialog box.
3 Choose your preferred scan method (DV Recording Time Scan or
Frame Content).
4 Click Options. In the Scene Scanning Sensitivity dialog box, drag the slider to set the Sensitivity level. A higher value means more precision in the scene detection.
5 Click
OK.
6 Click
Scan. VideoStudio then scans through the video file and lists all the detected scenes.

You may merge some of the detected scenes into a single clip. Simply select all the scenes that you want to join together then click Join. The plus sign (+) and a number indicates how many scenes are merged into that particular clip. Click Split
to undo any Join actions that you have done.
7 Click
OK to split the video.

Multi-trimming your video

The Multi-trim Video feature is another method for breaking down a clip into multiple segments. While Split by Scene is automatically done by the program,
Multi-trim Video gives you complete control over the clips you wish to extract, making it even easier for you to manage your project.



1 Timeline zoom
Drag up and down to sub-divide a video clip into frames per second.

2 AccuCut Timeline
Scan a video clip frame by frame for accurate mark-in and mark-out positions.

3 Jog Wheel
Use to scroll to different parts of the clip.

4 Shuttle Slider
Preview the clip at different playback speeds.

To trim a video file into multiple clips:

1 Go to the Edit Step and click Multi-trim Video in the **Options Panel**
.
2 View the whole clip first by clicking Play to determine how you want to mark segments in the Multi-trim Video dialog box.
3 Choose the number of frames to display by dragging the Timeline zoom. You can choose to display the smallest subdivision of one frame per second.
4 Drag the Jog Slider until you get to the part of the video that you want to use as the beginning frame of the first segment. Click
Start.
5 Drag the Jog Slider again, this time, to the point where you want the segment to end. Click
End.
6 Do steps 4 and 5 repeatedly until you have marked all the segments you want kept or removed.
Tips:

· To mark segments, you can also press [F3] and
[F4] while playing the video.
· Click Invert Selection
to toggle between marking segments that you want to retain or marking segments that you want taken out from the clip.
·
Quick search interval allows you to set a fixed interval between frames and browse through the movie using the set value.
7 Click
OK when finished. The video segments that you kept are then inserted onto the Timeline.

Navigation controls in the Multi-trim Video dialog box:



Reverses or advances through the video in fixed increments. By default, these buttons move up or down through the video in increments of 25 seconds.

Plays a preview of the final trimmed video.

Plays the video file. Hold [Shift] then click to play only the selected segments.

Moves to the start or end frame of a trimmed segment.

Moves to the previous/next frame in the video.

Using Ad-Zapper

VideoStudio lets you search your videos for commercial intervals. Clicking this feature extracts the commercials to the media list. Detection sensitivity allows you to control the rate of distinguishing between commercials. Merge CF merges all your extracted clips that are identified as commercials.

Saving trimmed clips

Frequently, when you make changes (i.e., after auto-splitting clips using Split by Scene, extracting clips using Multi-trim Video, or manually trimming clips), you may wish to make a permanent change to the clip and save the edited file. VideoStudio gives you a margin of safety in that it saves the trimmed video to a new file and does not alter the original file.
To save, select a trimmed clip in the Storyboard, Timeline or the Library and select
Clip: Save Trimmed Video.

Exporting a video file

VideoStudio provides you with a number of ways to export and share a video file. A video file can be exported to a Web page, converted to an executable greeting card, sent by e-mail, or set as a desktop screen saver.

Select a video file in the Library and click
. Choose the type of output for your video.

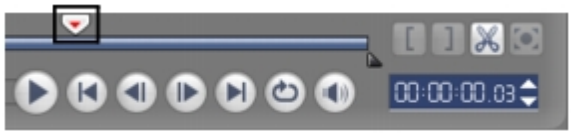
Capturing still images in the Edit Step

A still image can be captured in the Edit **Step** by selecting a specific frame on the Timeline and saving it as an image file. In this manner, possible distortions are avoided since the image is not acquired from a

running video, unlike in the
Capture Step.

To capture still images:

1 Select File: Preferences - Capture. Choose Bitmap or JPEG as the Captured still image save format. If you selected JPEG, also set the
Image quality.
2 Select a video clip in your project.
3 Drag the
Jog Slider to the frame you want to capture.



4 Switch to an image folder in the Library. The folder can be the default Image folder, or the one created by yourself.
5 Select
Clip: Save as Still Image. The new image file is saved to your working folder and is represented as a thumbnail in the image folder you assigned.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Working with clips

Clips, whether audio, video, images or effects, are the foundation of your project and manipulating them is the most important skill you can master.

Adding clips to the Video Track

You only work on the Video Track when you are in the Edit Step. On the Video Track, you can insert three types of clips: video, image and color clips.

Video clips

There are several ways of inserting video clips on the Video Track: Select a clip in the Library and drag and drop it to the Video Track. Multiple clips can be selected by pressing [Shift] or [Ctrl]. Right-click a clip in the Library then select Insert To: Video Track. Select one or more video files in Windows Explorer then drag and drop to the Video Track. To insert a clip from a file folder directly to the Video Track, click Insert Media Files located to the left of the Timeline.

Notes:

· Aside from video files, you can also add video from DVD or DVD-VR formatted discs.

· Use the Fade-in/out buttons

to make the audio of the video clips in your project smoothly fade from one clip to the next.

Images

The ways of adding still images to the Video Track are the same as when adding video clips.

Before you start adding images to your project, determine first the image size that you want for all your images. By default, VideoStudio adjusts the size to keep the image's aspect ratio.

To make the size of all inserted images the same as your project's frame size, select File: Preferences - Edit then change the Image resampling option default to

Fit to project size.

Color clips

Color clips are solid colored backgrounds that are useful for titles. For example, insert a black color clip as background for end credits. You can use the preset color clips or create new color clips in the Library.

To select a color clip in the Color Library:

1 Select

Color from the Library drop-down menu.

2 Choose your desired color displayed in the Library and drag to the Video or Overlay Track.

3 To load another color that is not in the Library, click the color box beside the Color Picker. Here, you can select a color either from Corel Color Picker or the Windows Color Picker.

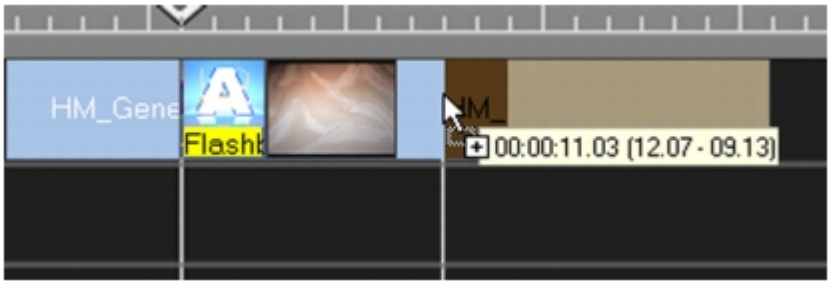


4 Set the
Duration of the color clip in the Options Panel.

Tips:

· Instant timecode tip is a feature of VideoStudio that allows you to add clips with a specific timecode. It appears while trimming and inserting overlapping clips on the timeline, enabling you to make adjustments based on the timecode shown.

· The instant timecode tip appears with the format 00:00:11.03 (12.07 - 09.13). 00:00:11.03 indicates the current timecode where the selected clip is located. 12.07 represents the duration overlapping with the previous clip while 09.13 is the duration overlapping with the next clip.



Sorting clips in the Library

To arrange clips in the Library, click in the Library to open the Options menu, then select Sort by Name or
Sort by Date.

The way video clips are sorted by date depends on the file format. DV AVI files (i.e., AVI files captured from DV camcorders) will be arranged by order of the shooting date and time of the footage. Other video file formats will be sorted by order of file date.

Notes:

· You can also right-click on the Library then select the desired sorting type in the
Sort By submenu.

· To toggle between ascending and descending order, select Sort by Name or
Sort by Date again.

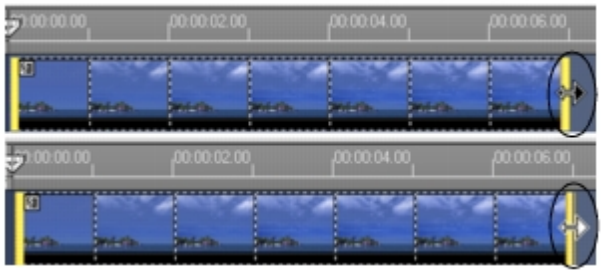
Playback speed

You can modify the playback speed of your videos. Set your video in slow motion to emphasize a movement, or set it to play at lightning speed and give your movie a comical air. Simply adjust the speed attributes for your video clip by clicking Playback Speed under the **Options Panel** of the Edit Step. Drag the slider according to your preferences (i.e., slow, normal or fast), or enter a value. The higher the value you set, the faster the playback of your clip. (Values range from 10-1000%). You can also specify a set duration for the clip in Time stretch. Click Preview to view the results of your settings then click OK when finished.

Tips:

· Hold [Shift]
then drag the end of the clip on the Timeline to change the playback speed.

· The black arrow means you are trimming or extending the clip, while the white arrow means that you are changing the playback speed.



Reversing video playback

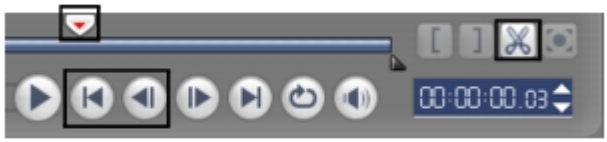
Reverse the playback of the video by selecting
Reverse video in the Options Panel.

Trimming a clip

The best part of editing your movie on your computer is the ease with which you can snip and trim your work with frame by frame accuracy. There are three ways of trimming a clip:

To split a clip into two:

1 Select the clip you want to split on the Storyboard or Timeline.
2 Drag the
Jog Slider to the point where you want to cut the clip.

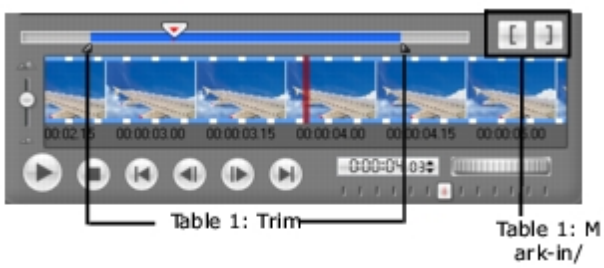


Tip: Click or
to set the cutting point more precisely.

3 Click to cut the clip into two clips. To remove one of these clips, select the unwanted clip and press
[Delete].

To trim a clip with the Trim Handles using Single Clip Trimmer:

1 Double-click a video clip in the Library or right-click on a video clip and choose Single Clip Trim to launch the
Trim Video dialog box.
2 Click and drag the Trim handles to set the Mark-in/Mark-out points on the clip.
For more precise trimming, click on a Trim handle, hold it, and use the left or right arrow keys on your keyboard to trim one frame at a time. The Mark-in/Mark-out points can also be set by pressing [F3] and
[F4], respectively.



3 Click Play Clip
to preview the trimmed clip.
Tip: You can also use Zoom controls to display each frame of your video on the Timeline and trim one frame at a time. The Scroll Bar makes navigating through your project quicker and easier. A wheel mouse can also be used to scroll, and to zoom by pressing
[Ctrl].

To trim a clip directly on the Timeline:

1 Click a clip on the **Timeline**
to select it.
2 Drag the yellow Trim handles
on either side of the clip to change its length. The Preview Window reflects the position of the Trim handle in the clip.
3 Or, click the timecode in the
Duration box in the Options Panel and enter the desired clip length.



4 Other clips in your project automatically reposition themselves according to changes made.
Note: Changes made in the video
Duration box only affect the Mark-out point. The Mark-in point remains unchanged.

Split by Scene

Use the Split by Scene feature in the Edit Step to detect different scenes in a video file and automatically break it down into several clip files.
The way VideoStudio detects scenes depends on the type of video file. In a captured DV AVI file, scenes can be detected in two ways: DV Recording Time Scan detects scenes according to their shooting date and time. Frame Content detects content changes, such as motion change, camera shifting, brightness change, etc., and splits them into separate files.
In an MPEG-1 or MPEG-2 file, scenes can only be detected based on content changes (i.e., by Frame Content).

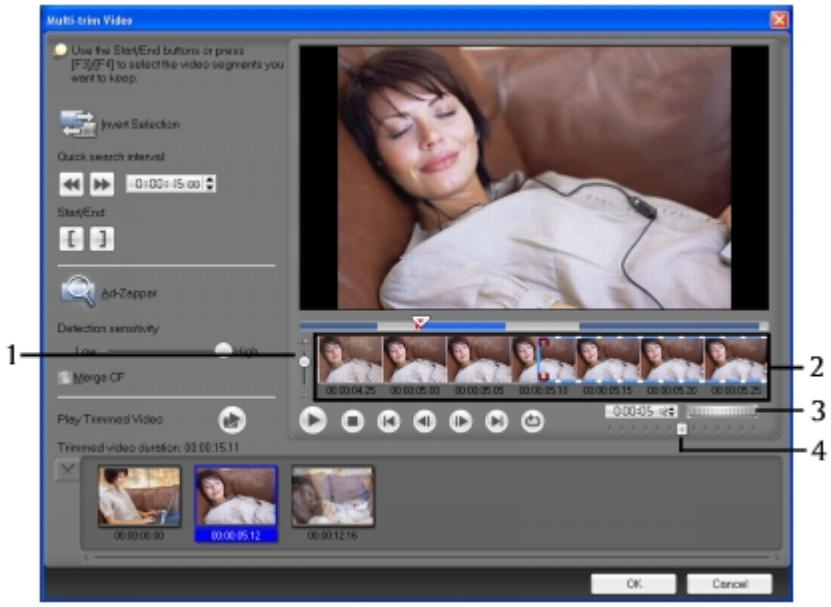
To use Split by Scene on a DV AVI or MPEG file:

1 Go to the
Edit Step and select a captured DV AVI file or an MPEG file on the Timeline.
2 Click Split by Scene in the Options Panel. This will open the
Scenes dialog box.
3 Choose your preferred scan method (DV Recording Time Scan or
Frame Content).
4 Click Options. In the Scene Scanning Sensitivity dialog box, drag the slider to set the Sensitivity level. A higher value means more precision in the scene detection.
5 Click
OK.
6 Click
Scan. VideoStudio then scans through the video file and lists all the detected scenes.

You may merge some of the detected scenes into a single clip. Simply select all the scenes that you want to join together then click Join. The plus sign (+) and a number indicates how many scenes are merged into that particular clip. Click Split
to undo any Join actions that you have done.
7 Click
OK to split the video.

Multi-trimming your video

The Multi-trim Video feature is another method for breaking down a clip into multiple segments. While Split by Scene is automatically done by the program,
Multi-trim Video gives you complete control over the clips you wish to extract, making it even easier for you to manage your project.



1 Timeline zoom
Drag up and down to sub-divide a video clip into frames per second.

2 AccuCut Timeline
Scan a video clip frame by frame for accurate mark-in and mark-out positions.

3 Jog Wheel
Use to scroll to different parts of the clip.

4 Shuttle Slider
Preview the clip at different playback speeds.

To trim a video file into multiple clips:

1 Go to the Edit Step and click Multi-trim Video in the **Options Panel**
.
2 View the whole clip first by clicking Play to determine how you want to mark segments in the Multi-trim Video dialog box.
3 Choose the number of frames to display by dragging the Timeline zoom. You can choose to display the smallest subdivision of one frame per second.
4 Drag the Jog Slider until you get to the part of the video that you want to use as the beginning frame of the first segment. Click
Start.
5 Drag the Jog Slider again, this time, to the point where you want the segment to end. Click
End.
6 Do steps 4 and 5 repeatedly until you have marked all the segments you want kept or removed.
Tips:

· To mark segments, you can also press [F3] and
[F4] while playing the video.
· Click Invert Selection
to toggle between marking segments that you want to retain or marking segments that you want taken out from the clip.
·
Quick search interval allows you to set a fixed interval between frames and browse through the movie using the set value.
7 Click
OK when finished. The video segments that you kept are then inserted onto the Timeline.

Navigation controls in the Multi-trim Video dialog box:



Reverses or advances through the video in fixed increments. By default, these buttons move up or down through the video in increments of 25 seconds.

Plays a preview of the final trimmed video.

Plays the video file. Hold [Shift] then click to play only the selected segments.

Moves to the start or end frame of a trimmed segment.

Moves to the previous/next frame in the video.

Using Ad-Zapper

VideoStudio lets you search your videos for commercial intervals. Clicking this feature extracts the commercials to the media list. Detection sensitivity allows you to control the rate of distinguishing between commercials. Merge CF merges all your extracted clips that are identified as commercials.

Saving trimmed clips

Frequently, when you make changes (i.e., after auto-splitting clips using Split by Scene, extracting clips using Multi-trim Video, or manually trimming clips), you may wish to make a permanent change to the clip and save the edited file. VideoStudio gives you a margin of safety in that it saves the trimmed video to a new file and does not alter the original file.
To save, select a trimmed clip in the Storyboard, Timeline or the Library and select
Clip: Save Trimmed Video.

Exporting a video file

VideoStudio provides you with a number of ways to export and share a video file. A video file can be exported to a Web page, converted to an executable greeting card, sent by e-mail, or set as a desktop screen saver.

Select a video file in the Library and click
. Choose the type of output for your video.

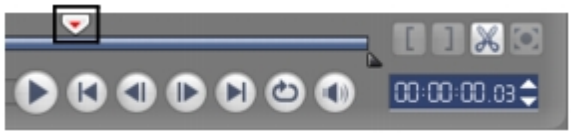
Capturing still images in the Edit Step

A still image can be captured in the Edit **Step** by selecting a specific frame on the Timeline and saving it as an image file. In this manner, possible distortions are avoided since the image is not acquired from a

running video, unlike in the
Capture Step.

To capture still images:

1 Select File: Preferences - Capture. Choose Bitmap or JPEG as the Captured still image save format. If you selected JPEG, also set the
Image quality.
2 Select a video clip in your project.
3 Drag the
Jog Slider to the frame you want to capture.



4 Switch to an image folder in the Library. The folder can be the default Image folder, or the one created by yourself.
5 Select
Clip: Save as Still Image. The new image file is saved to your working folder and is represented as a thumbnail in the image folder you assigned.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Working with clips

Clips, whether audio, video, images or effects, are the foundation of your project and manipulating them is the most important skill you can master.

Adding clips to the Video Track

You only work on the Video Track when you are in the Edit Step. On the Video Track, you can insert three types of clips: video, image and color clips.

Video clips

There are several ways of inserting video clips on the Video Track: Select a clip in the Library and drag and drop it to the Video Track. Multiple clips can be selected by pressing [Shift] or [Ctrl]. Right-click a clip in the Library then select Insert To: Video Track. Select one or more video files in Windows Explorer then drag and drop to the Video Track. To insert a clip from a file folder directly to the Video Track, click Insert Media Files located to the left of the Timeline.

Notes:

· Aside from video files, you can also add video from DVD or DVD-VR formatted discs.

· Use the Fade-in/out buttons

to make the audio of the video clips in your project smoothly fade from one clip to the next.

Images

The ways of adding still images to the Video Track are the same as when adding video clips.

Before you start adding images to your project, determine first the image size that you want for all your images. By default, VideoStudio adjusts the size to keep the image's aspect ratio.

To make the size of all inserted images the same as your project's frame size, select File: Preferences - Edit then change the Image resampling option default to

Fit to project size.

Color clips

Color clips are solid colored backgrounds that are useful for titles. For example, insert a black color clip as background for end credits. You can use the preset color clips or create new color clips in the Library.

To select a color clip in the Color Library:

1 Select

Color from the Library drop-down menu.

2 Choose your desired color displayed in the Library and drag to the Video or Overlay Track.

3 To load another color that is not in the Library, click the color box beside the Color Picker. Here, you can select a color either from Corel Color Picker or the Windows Color Picker.

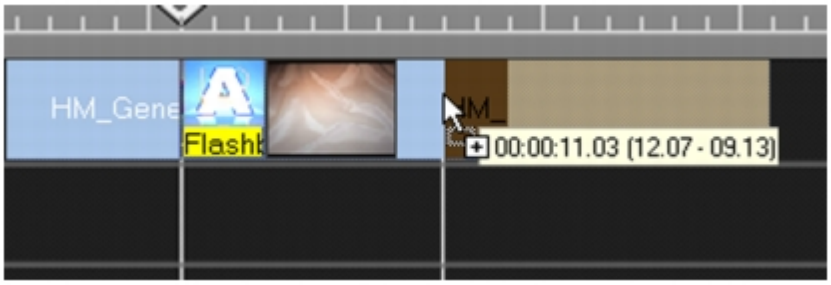


4 Set the
Duration of the color clip in the Options Panel.

Tips:

· Instant timecode tip is a feature of VideoStudio that allows you to add clips with a specific timecode. It appears while trimming and inserting overlapping clips on the timeline, enabling you to make adjustments based on the timecode shown.

· The instant timecode tip appears with the format 00:00:11.03 (12.07 - 09.13). 00:00:11.03 indicates the current timecode where the selected clip is located. 12.07 represents the duration overlapping with the previous clip while 09.13 is the duration overlapping with the next clip.



Sorting clips in the Library

To arrange clips in the Library, click in the Library to open the Options menu, then select Sort by Name or
Sort by Date.

The way video clips are sorted by date depends on the file format. DV AVI files (i.e., AVI files captured from DV camcorders) will be arranged by order of the shooting date and time of the footage. Other video file formats will be sorted by order of file date.

Notes:

· You can also right-click on the Library then select the desired sorting type in the
Sort By submenu.

· To toggle between ascending and descending order, select Sort by Name or
Sort by Date again.

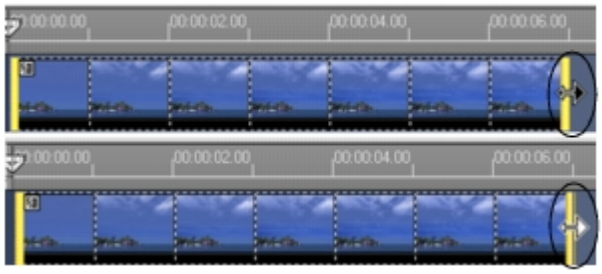
Playback speed

You can modify the playback speed of your videos. Set your video in slow motion to emphasize a movement, or set it to play at lightning speed and give your movie a comical air. Simply adjust the speed attributes for your video clip by clicking Playback Speed under the **Options Panel** of the Edit Step. Drag the slider according to your preferences (i.e., slow, normal or fast), or enter a value. The higher the value you set, the faster the playback of your clip. (Values range from 10-1000%). You can also specify a set duration for the clip in Time stretch. Click Preview to view the results of your settings then click OK when finished.

Tips:

· Hold [Shift]
then drag the end of the clip on the Timeline to change the playback speed.

· The black arrow means you are trimming or extending the clip, while the white arrow means that you are changing the playback speed.



Reversing video playback

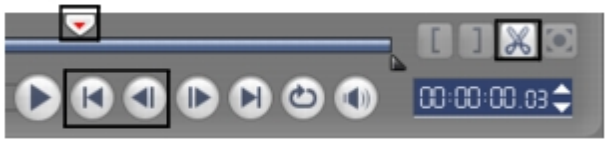
Reverse the playback of the video by selecting
Reverse video in the Options Panel.

Trimming a clip

The best part of editing your movie on your computer is the ease with which you can snip and trim your work with frame by frame accuracy. There are three ways of trimming a clip:

To split a clip into two:

1 Select the clip you want to split on the Storyboard or Timeline.
2 Drag the
Jog Slider to the point where you want to cut the clip.

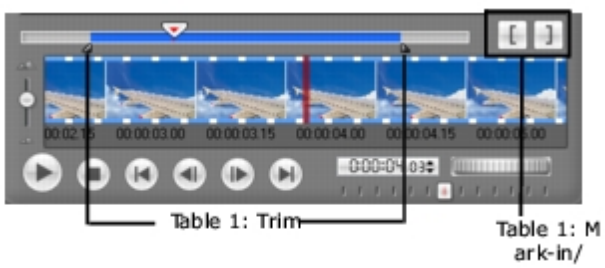


Tip: Click or
to set the cutting point more precisely.

3 Click to cut the clip into two clips. To remove one of these clips, select the unwanted clip and press
[Delete].

To trim a clip with the Trim Handles using Single Clip Trimmer:

1 Double-click a video clip in the Library or right-click on a video clip and choose Single Clip Trim to launch the
Trim Video dialog box.
2 Click and drag the Trim handles to set the Mark-in/Mark-out points on the clip.
For more precise trimming, click on a Trim handle, hold it, and use the left or right arrow keys on your keyboard to trim one frame at a time. The Mark-in/Mark-out points can also be set by pressing [F3] and
[F4], respectively.



3 Click Play Clip
to preview the trimmed clip.
Tip: You can also use Zoom controls to display each frame of your video on the Timeline and trim one frame at a time. The Scroll Bar makes navigating through your project quicker and easier. A wheel mouse can also be used to scroll, and to zoom by pressing
[Ctrl].

To trim a clip directly on the Timeline:

1 Click a clip on the **Timeline**
to select it.
2 Drag the yellow Trim handles
on either side of the clip to change its length. The Preview Window reflects the position of the Trim handle in the clip.
3 Or, click the timecode in the
Duration box in the Options Panel and enter the desired clip length.



4 Other clips in your project automatically reposition themselves according to changes made.
Note: Changes made in the video
Duration box only affect the Mark-out point. The Mark-in point remains unchanged.

Split by Scene

Use the Split by Scene feature in the Edit Step to detect different scenes in a video file and automatically break it down into several clip files.
The way VideoStudio detects scenes depends on the type of video file. In a captured DV AVI file, scenes can be detected in two ways: DV Recording Time Scan detects scenes according to their shooting date and time. Frame Content detects content changes, such as motion change, camera shifting, brightness change, etc., and splits them into separate files.
In an MPEG-1 or MPEG-2 file, scenes can only be detected based on content changes (i.e., by Frame Content).

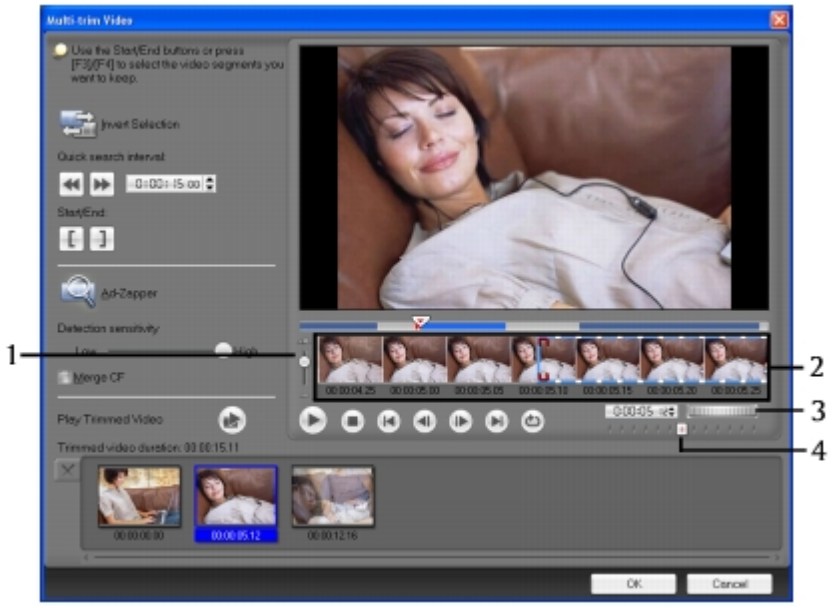
To use Split by Scene on a DV AVI or MPEG file:

1 Go to the
Edit Step and select a captured DV AVI file or an MPEG file on the Timeline.
2 Click Split by Scene in the Options Panel. This will open the
Scenes dialog box.
3 Choose your preferred scan method (DV Recording Time Scan or
Frame Content).
4 Click Options. In the Scene Scanning Sensitivity dialog box, drag the slider to set the Sensitivity level. A higher value means more precision in the scene detection.
5 Click
OK.
6 Click
Scan. VideoStudio then scans through the video file and lists all the detected scenes.

You may merge some of the detected scenes into a single clip. Simply select all the scenes that you want to join together then click Join. The plus sign (+) and a number indicates how many scenes are merged into that particular clip. Click Split
to undo any Join actions that you have done.
7 Click
OK to split the video.

Multi-trimming your video

The Multi-trim Video feature is another method for breaking down a clip into multiple segments. While Split by Scene is automatically done by the program,
Multi-trim Video gives you complete control over the clips you wish to extract, making it even easier for you to manage your project.



1 Timeline zoom
Drag up and down to sub-divide a video clip into frames per second.

2 AccuCut Timeline
Scan a video clip frame by frame for accurate mark-in and mark-out positions.

3 Jog Wheel
Use to scroll to different parts of the clip.

4 Shuttle Slider
Preview the clip at different playback speeds.

To trim a video file into multiple clips:

1 Go to the Edit Step and click Multi-trim Video in the **Options Panel**
.
2 View the whole clip first by clicking Play to determine how you want to mark segments in the Multi-trim Video dialog box.
3 Choose the number of frames to display by dragging the Timeline zoom. You can choose to display the smallest subdivision of one frame per second.
4 Drag the Jog Slider until you get to the part of the video that you want to use as the beginning frame of the first segment. Click
Start.
5 Drag the Jog Slider again, this time, to the point where you want the segment to end. Click
End.
6 Do steps 4 and 5 repeatedly until you have marked all the segments you want kept or removed.
Tips:

· To mark segments, you can also press [F3] and
[F4] while playing the video.
· Click Invert Selection
to toggle between marking segments that you want to retain or marking segments that you want taken out from the clip.
·
Quick search interval allows you to set a fixed interval between frames and browse through the movie using the set value.
7 Click
OK when finished. The video segments that you kept are then inserted onto the Timeline.

Navigation controls in the Multi-trim Video dialog box:



Reverses or advances through the video in fixed increments. By default, these buttons move up or down through the video in increments of 25 seconds.

Plays a preview of the final trimmed video.

Plays the video file. Hold [Shift] then click to play only the selected segments.

Moves to the start or end frame of a trimmed segment.

Moves to the previous/next frame in the video.

Using Ad-Zapper

VideoStudio lets you search your videos for commercial intervals. Clicking this feature extracts the commercials to the media list. Detection sensitivity allows you to control the rate of distinguishing between commercials. Merge CF merges all your extracted clips that are identified as commercials.

Saving trimmed clips

Frequently, when you make changes (i.e., after auto-splitting clips using Split by Scene, extracting clips using Multi-trim Video, or manually trimming clips), you may wish to make a permanent change to the clip and save the edited file. VideoStudio gives you a margin of safety in that it saves the trimmed video to a new file and does not alter the original file.
To save, select a trimmed clip in the Storyboard, Timeline or the Library and select
Clip: Save Trimmed Video.

Exporting a video file

VideoStudio provides you with a number of ways to export and share a video file. A video file can be exported to a Web page, converted to an executable greeting card, sent by e-mail, or set as a desktop screen saver.

Select a video file in the Library and click
. Choose the type of output for your video.

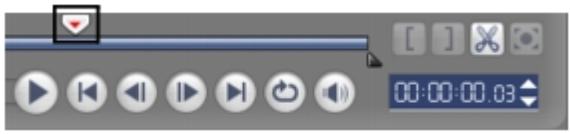
Capturing still images in the Edit Step

A still image can be captured in the Edit **Step** by selecting a specific frame on the Timeline and saving it as an image file. In this manner, possible distortions are avoided since the image is not acquired from a

running video, unlike in the
Capture Step.

To capture still images:

1 Select File: Preferences - Capture. Choose Bitmap or JPEG as the Captured still image save format. If you selected JPEG, also set the
Image quality.
2 Select a video clip in your project.
3 Drag the
Jog Slider to the frame you want to capture.



4 Switch to an image folder in the Library. The folder can be the default Image folder, or the one created by yourself.
5 Select
Clip: Save as Still Image. The new image file is saved to your working folder and is represented as a thumbnail in the image folder you assigned.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Working with clips

Clips, whether audio, video, images or effects, are the foundation of your project and manipulating them is the most important skill you can master.

Adding clips to the Video Track

You only work on the Video Track when you are in the Edit Step. On the Video Track, you can insert three types of clips: video, image and color clips.

Video clips

There are several ways of inserting video clips on the Video Track: Select a clip in the Library and drag and drop it to the Video Track. Multiple clips can be selected by pressing [Shift] or [Ctrl]. Right-click a clip in the Library then select Insert To: Video Track. Select one or more video files in Windows Explorer then drag and drop to the Video Track. To insert a clip from a file folder directly to the Video Track, click Insert Media Files located to the left of the Timeline.

Notes:

· Aside from video files, you can also add video from DVD or DVD-VR formatted discs.

· Use the Fade-in/out buttons

to make the audio of the video clips in your project smoothly fade from one clip to the next.

Images

The ways of adding still images to the Video Track are the same as when adding video clips.

Before you start adding images to your project, determine first the image size that you want for all your images. By default, VideoStudio adjusts the size to keep the image's aspect ratio.

To make the size of all inserted images the same as your project's frame size, select File: Preferences - Edit then change the Image resampling option default to

Fit to project size.

Color clips

Color clips are solid colored backgrounds that are useful for titles. For example, insert a black color clip as background for end credits. You can use the preset color clips or create new color clips in the Library.

To select a color clip in the Color Library:

1 Select

Color from the Library drop-down menu.

2 Choose your desired color displayed in the Library and drag to the Video or Overlay Track.

3 To load another color that is not in the Library, click the color box beside the Color Picker. Here, you can select a color either from Corel Color Picker or the Windows Color Picker.

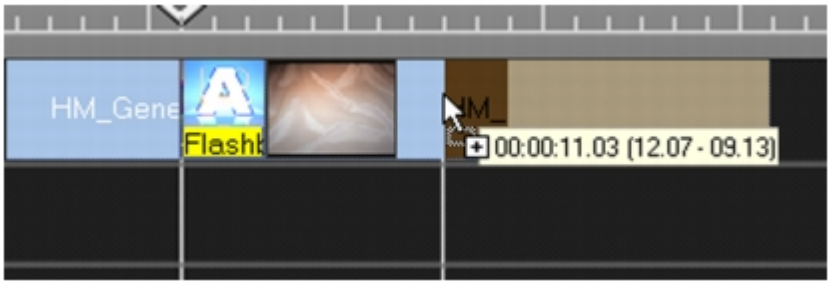


4 Set the
Duration of the color clip in the Options Panel.

Tips:

· Instant timecode tip is a feature of VideoStudio that allows you to add clips with a specific timecode. It appears while trimming and inserting overlapping clips on the timeline, enabling you to make adjustments based on the timecode shown.

· The instant timecode tip appears with the format 00:00:11.03 (12.07 - 09.13). 00:00:11.03 indicates the current timecode where the selected clip is located. 12.07 represents the duration overlapping with the previous clip while 09.13 is the duration overlapping with the next clip.



Sorting clips in the Library

To arrange clips in the Library, click in the Library to open the Options menu, then select Sort by Name or
Sort by Date.

The way video clips are sorted by date depends on the file format. DV AVI files (i.e., AVI files captured from DV camcorders) will be arranged by order of the shooting date and time of the footage. Other video file formats will be sorted by order of file date.

Notes:

· You can also right-click on the Library then select the desired sorting type in the
Sort By submenu.

· To toggle between ascending and descending order, select Sort by Name or
Sort by Date again.

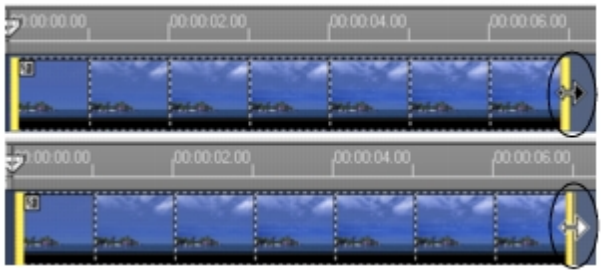
Playback speed

You can modify the playback speed of your videos. Set your video in slow motion to emphasize a movement, or set it to play at lightning speed and give your movie a comical air. Simply adjust the speed attributes for your video clip by clicking Playback Speed under the **Options Panel** of the Edit Step. Drag the slider according to your preferences (i.e., slow, normal or fast), or enter a value. The higher the value you set, the faster the playback of your clip. (Values range from 10-1000%). You can also specify a set duration for the clip in Time stretch. Click Preview to view the results of your settings then click OK when finished.

Tips:

· Hold [Shift]
then drag the end of the clip on the Timeline to change the playback speed.

· The black arrow means you are trimming or extending the clip, while the white arrow means that you are changing the playback speed.



Reversing video playback

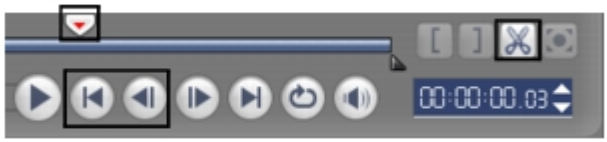
Reverse the playback of the video by selecting
Reverse video in the Options Panel.

Trimming a clip

The best part of editing your movie on your computer is the ease with which you can snip and trim your work with frame by frame accuracy. There are three ways of trimming a clip:

To split a clip into two:

1 Select the clip you want to split on the Storyboard or Timeline.
2 Drag the
Jog Slider to the point where you want to cut the clip.

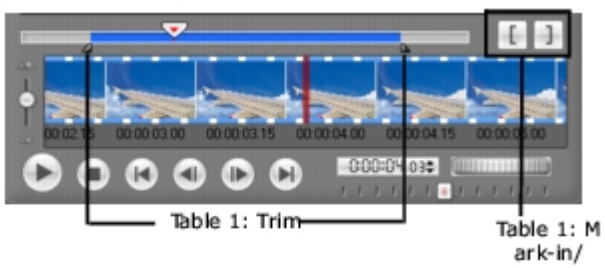


Tip: Click or
to set the cutting point more precisely.

3 Click to cut the clip into two clips. To remove one of these clips, select the unwanted clip and press
[Delete].

To trim a clip with the Trim Handles using Single Clip Trimmer:

1 Double-click a video clip in the Library or right-click on a video clip and choose Single Clip Trim to launch the
Trim Video dialog box.
2 Click and drag the Trim handles to set the Mark-in/Mark-out points on the clip.
For more precise trimming, click on a Trim handle, hold it, and use the left or right arrow keys on your keyboard to trim one frame at a time. The Mark-in/Mark-out points can also be set by pressing [F3] and
[F4], respectively.



3 Click Play Clip
to preview the trimmed clip.
Tip: You can also use Zoom controls to display each frame of your video on the Timeline and trim one frame at a time. The Scroll Bar makes navigating through your project quicker and easier. A wheel mouse can also be used to scroll, and to zoom by pressing
[Ctrl].

To trim a clip directly on the Timeline:

1 Click a clip on the **Timeline**
to select it.
2 Drag the yellow Trim handles
on either side of the clip to change its length. The Preview Window reflects the position of the Trim handle in the clip.
3 Or, click the timecode in the
Duration box in the Options Panel and enter the desired clip length.



4 Other clips in your project automatically reposition themselves according to changes made.
Note: Changes made in the video
Duration box only affect the Mark-out point. The Mark-in point remains unchanged.

Split by Scene

Use the Split by Scene feature in the Edit Step to detect different scenes in a video file and automatically break it down into several clip files.
The way VideoStudio detects scenes depends on the type of video file. In a captured DV AVI file, scenes can be detected in two ways: DV Recording Time Scan detects scenes according to their shooting date and time. Frame Content detects content changes, such as motion change, camera shifting, brightness change, etc., and splits them into separate files.
In an MPEG-1 or MPEG-2 file, scenes can only be detected based on content changes (i.e., by Frame Content).

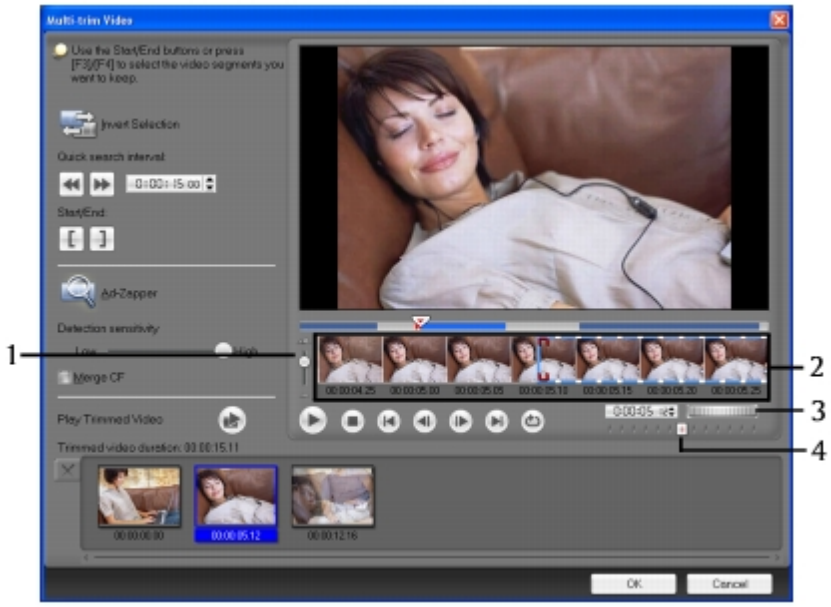
To use Split by Scene on a DV AVI or MPEG file:

1 Go to the
Edit Step and select a captured DV AVI file or an MPEG file on the Timeline.
2 Click Split by Scene in the Options Panel. This will open the
Scenes dialog box.
3 Choose your preferred scan method (DV Recording Time Scan or
Frame Content).
4 Click Options. In the Scene Scanning Sensitivity dialog box, drag the slider to set the Sensitivity level. A higher value means more precision in the scene detection.
5 Click
OK.
6 Click
Scan. VideoStudio then scans through the video file and lists all the detected scenes.

You may merge some of the detected scenes into a single clip. Simply select all the scenes that you want to join together then click Join. The plus sign (+) and a number indicates how many scenes are merged into that particular clip. Click Split
to undo any Join actions that you have done.
7 Click
OK to split the video.

Multi-trimming your video

The Multi-trim Video feature is another method for breaking down a clip into multiple segments. While Split by Scene is automatically done by the program,
Multi-trim Video gives you complete control over the clips you wish to extract, making it even easier for you to manage your project.



1 Timeline zoom
Drag up and down to sub-divide a video clip into frames per second.

2 AccuCut Timeline
Scan a video clip frame by frame for accurate mark-in and mark-out positions.

3 Jog Wheel
Use to scroll to different parts of the clip.

4 Shuttle Slider
Preview the clip at different playback speeds.

To trim a video file into multiple clips:

1 Go to the Edit Step and click Multi-trim Video in the **Options Panel**
.
2 View the whole clip first by clicking Play to determine how you want to mark segments in the Multi-trim Video dialog box.
3 Choose the number of frames to display by dragging the Timeline zoom. You can choose to display the smallest subdivision of one frame per second.
4 Drag the Jog Slider until you get to the part of the video that you want to use as the beginning frame of the first segment. Click
Start.
5 Drag the Jog Slider again, this time, to the point where you want the segment to end. Click
End.
6 Do steps 4 and 5 repeatedly until you have marked all the segments you want kept or removed.
Tips:

· To mark segments, you can also press [F3] and
[F4] while playing the video.
· Click Invert Selection
to toggle between marking segments that you want to retain or marking segments that you want taken out from the clip.
·
Quick search interval allows you to set a fixed interval between frames and browse through the movie using the set value.
7 Click
OK when finished. The video segments that you kept are then inserted onto the Timeline.

Navigation controls in the Multi-trim Video dialog box:



Reverses or advances through the video in fixed increments. By default, these buttons move up or down through the video in increments of 25 seconds.

Plays a preview of the final trimmed video.

Plays the video file. Hold [Shift] then click to play only the selected segments.

Moves to the start or end frame of a trimmed segment.

Moves to the previous/next frame in the video.

Using Ad-Zapper

VideoStudio lets you search your videos for commercial intervals. Clicking this feature extracts the commercials to the media list. Detection sensitivity allows you to control the rate of distinguishing between commercials. Merge CF merges all your extracted clips that are identified as commercials.

Saving trimmed clips

Frequently, when you make changes (i.e., after auto-splitting clips using Split by Scene, extracting clips using Multi-trim Video, or manually trimming clips), you may wish to make a permanent change to the clip and save the edited file. VideoStudio gives you a margin of safety in that it saves the trimmed video to a new file and does not alter the original file.
To save, select a trimmed clip in the Storyboard, Timeline or the Library and select
Clip: Save Trimmed Video.

Exporting a video file

VideoStudio provides you with a number of ways to export and share a video file. A video file can be exported to a Web page, converted to an executable greeting card, sent by e-mail, or set as a desktop screen saver.

Select a video file in the Library and click
. Choose the type of output for your video.

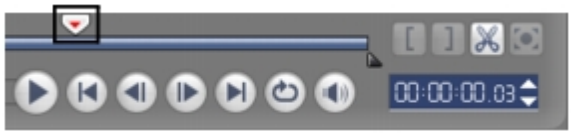
Capturing still images in the Edit Step

A still image can be captured in the Edit **Step** by selecting a specific frame on the Timeline and saving it as an image file. In this manner, possible distortions are avoided since the image is not acquired from a

running video, unlike in the
Capture Step.

To capture still images:

1 Select File: Preferences - Capture. Choose Bitmap or JPEG as the Captured still image save format. If you selected JPEG, also set the
Image quality.
2 Select a video clip in your project.
3 Drag the
Jog Slider to the frame you want to capture.



4 Switch to an image folder in the Library. The folder can be the default Image folder, or the one created by yourself.
5 Select
Clip: Save as Still Image. The new image file is saved to your working folder and is represented as a thumbnail in the image folder you assigned.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Working with clips

Clips, whether audio, video, images or effects, are the foundation of your project and manipulating them is the most important skill you can master.

Adding clips to the Video Track

You only work on the Video Track when you are in the Edit Step. On the Video Track, you can insert three types of clips: video, image and color clips.

Video clips

There are several ways of inserting video clips on the Video Track: Select a clip in the Library and drag and drop it to the Video Track. Multiple clips can be selected by pressing [Shift] or [Ctrl]. Right-click a clip in the Library then select Insert To: Video Track. Select one or more video files in Windows Explorer then drag and drop to the Video Track. To insert a clip from a file folder directly to the Video Track, click Insert Media Files located to the left of the Timeline.

Notes:

· Aside from video files, you can also add video from DVD or DVD-VR formatted discs.

· Use the Fade-in/out buttons

to make the audio of the video clips in your project smoothly fade from one clip to the next.

Images

The ways of adding still images to the Video Track are the same as when adding video clips.

Before you start adding images to your project, determine first the image size that you want for all your images. By default, VideoStudio adjusts the size to keep the image's aspect ratio.

To make the size of all inserted images the same as your project's frame size, select File: Preferences - Edit then change the Image resampling option default to

Fit to project size.

Color clips

Color clips are solid colored backgrounds that are useful for titles. For example, insert a black color clip as background for end credits. You can use the preset color clips or create new color clips in the Library.

To select a color clip in the Color Library:

1 Select

Color from the Library drop-down menu.

2 Choose your desired color displayed in the Library and drag to the Video or Overlay Track.

3 To load another color that is not in the Library, click the color box beside the Color Picker. Here, you can select a color either from Corel Color Picker or the Windows Color Picker.

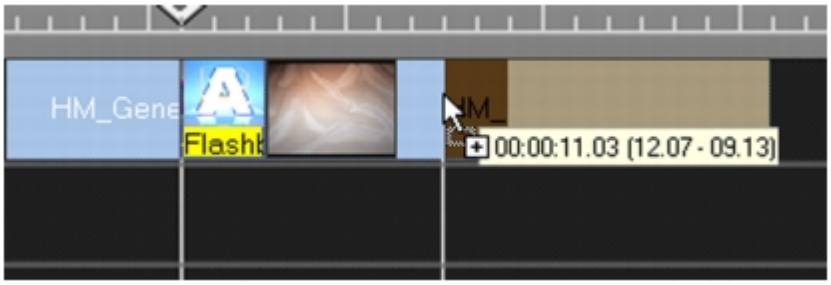


4 Set the
Duration of the color clip in the Options Panel.

Tips:

· Instant timecode tip is a feature of VideoStudio that allows you to add clips with a specific timecode. It appears while trimming and inserting overlapping clips on the timeline, enabling you to make adjustments based on the timecode shown.

· The instant timecode tip appears with the format 00:00:11.03 (12.07 - 09.13). 00:00:11.03 indicates the current timecode where the selected clip is located. 12.07 represents the duration overlapping with the previous clip while 09.13 is the duration overlapping with the next clip.



Sorting clips in the Library

To arrange clips in the Library, click in the Library to open the Options menu, then select Sort by Name or
Sort by Date.

The way video clips are sorted by date depends on the file format. DV AVI files (i.e., AVI files captured from DV camcorders) will be arranged by order of the shooting date and time of the footage. Other video file formats will be sorted by order of file date.

Notes:

· You can also right-click on the Library then select the desired sorting type in the
Sort By submenu.

· To toggle between ascending and descending order, select Sort by Name or
Sort by Date again.

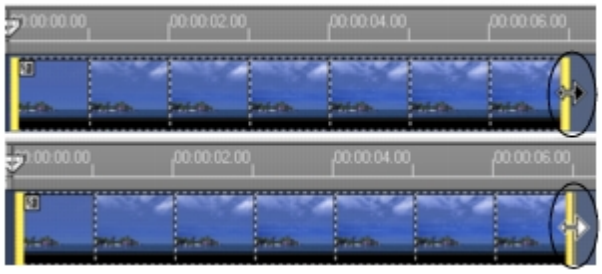
Playback speed

You can modify the playback speed of your videos. Set your video in slow motion to emphasize a movement, or set it to play at lightning speed and give your movie a comical air. Simply adjust the speed attributes for your video clip by clicking Playback Speed under the **Options Panel** of the Edit Step. Drag the slider according to your preferences (i.e., slow, normal or fast), or enter a value. The higher the value you set, the faster the playback of your clip. (Values range from 10-1000%). You can also specify a set duration for the clip in Time stretch. Click Preview to view the results of your settings then click OK when finished.

Tips:

· Hold [Shift]
then drag the end of the clip on the Timeline to change the playback speed.

· The black arrow means you are trimming or extending the clip, while the white arrow means that you are changing the playback speed.



Reversing video playback

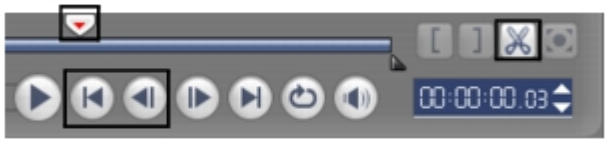
Reverse the playback of the video by selecting
Reverse video in the Options Panel.

Trimming a clip

The best part of editing your movie on your computer is the ease with which you can snip and trim your work with frame by frame accuracy. There are three ways of trimming a clip:

To split a clip into two:

1 Select the clip you want to split on the Storyboard or Timeline.
2 Drag the
Jog Slider to the point where you want to cut the clip.

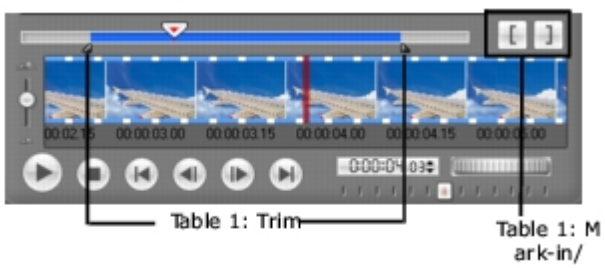


Tip: Click or
to set the cutting point more precisely.

3 Click to cut the clip into two clips. To remove one of these clips, select the unwanted clip and press
[Delete].

To trim a clip with the Trim Handles using Single Clip Trimmer:

1 Double-click a video clip in the Library or right-click on a video clip and choose Single Clip Trim to launch the
Trim Video dialog box.
2 Click and drag the Trim handles to set the Mark-in/Mark-out points on the clip.
For more precise trimming, click on a Trim handle, hold it, and use the left or right arrow keys on your keyboard to trim one frame at a time. The Mark-in/Mark-out points can also be set by pressing [F3] and
[F4], respectively.



3 Click Play Clip
to preview the trimmed clip.
Tip: You can also use Zoom controls to display each frame of your video on the Timeline and trim one frame at a time. The Scroll Bar makes navigating through your project quicker and easier. A wheel mouse can also be used to scroll, and to zoom by pressing
[Ctrl].

To trim a clip directly on the Timeline:

1 Click a clip on the **Timeline**
to select it.
2 Drag the yellow Trim handles
on either side of the clip to change its length. The Preview Window reflects the position of the Trim handle in the clip.
3 Or, click the timecode in the
Duration box in the Options Panel and enter the desired clip length.



4 Other clips in your project automatically reposition themselves according to changes made.
Note: Changes made in the video
Duration box only affect the Mark-out point. The Mark-in point remains unchanged.

Split by Scene

Use the Split by Scene feature in the Edit Step to detect different scenes in a video file and automatically break it down into several clip files.
The way VideoStudio detects scenes depends on the type of video file. In a captured DV AVI file, scenes can be detected in two ways: DV Recording Time Scan detects scenes according to their shooting date and time. Frame Content detects content changes, such as motion change, camera shifting, brightness change, etc., and splits them into separate files.
In an MPEG-1 or MPEG-2 file, scenes can only be detected based on content changes (i.e., by Frame Content).

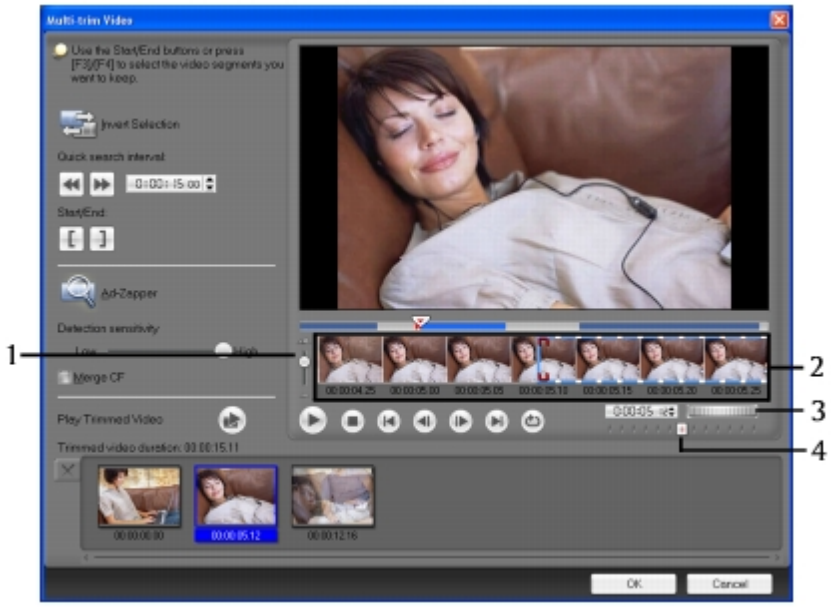
To use Split by Scene on a DV AVI or MPEG file:

1 Go to the
Edit Step and select a captured DV AVI file or an MPEG file on the Timeline.
2 Click Split by Scene in the Options Panel. This will open the
Scenes dialog box.
3 Choose your preferred scan method (DV Recording Time Scan or
Frame Content).
4 Click Options. In the Scene Scanning Sensitivity dialog box, drag the slider to set the Sensitivity level. A higher value means more precision in the scene detection.
5 Click
OK.
6 Click
Scan. VideoStudio then scans through the video file and lists all the detected scenes.

You may merge some of the detected scenes into a single clip. Simply select all the scenes that you want to join together then click Join. The plus sign (+) and a number indicates how many scenes are merged into that particular clip. Click Split
to undo any Join actions that you have done.
7 Click
OK to split the video.

Multi-trimming your video

The Multi-trim Video feature is another method for breaking down a clip into multiple segments. While Split by Scene is automatically done by the program,
Multi-trim Video gives you complete control over the clips you wish to extract, making it even easier for you to manage your project.



1 Timeline zoom
Drag up and down to sub-divide a video clip into frames per second.

2 AccuCut Timeline
Scan a video clip frame by frame for accurate mark-in and mark-out positions.

3 Jog Wheel
Use to scroll to different parts of the clip.

4 Shuttle Slider
Preview the clip at different playback speeds.

To trim a video file into multiple clips:

1 Go to the Edit Step and click Multi-trim Video in the **Options Panel**
.
2 View the whole clip first by clicking Play to determine how you want to mark segments in the Multi-trim Video dialog box.
3 Choose the number of frames to display by dragging the Timeline zoom. You can choose to display the smallest subdivision of one frame per second.
4 Drag the Jog Slider until you get to the part of the video that you want to use as the beginning frame of the first segment. Click
Start.
5 Drag the Jog Slider again, this time, to the point where you want the segment to end. Click
End.
6 Do steps 4 and 5 repeatedly until you have marked all the segments you want kept or removed.
Tips:

· To mark segments, you can also press [F3] and
[F4] while playing the video.
· Click Invert Selection
to toggle between marking segments that you want to retain or marking segments that you want taken out from the clip.
·
Quick search interval allows you to set a fixed interval between frames and browse through the movie using the set value.
7 Click
OK when finished. The video segments that you kept are then inserted onto the Timeline.

Navigation controls in the Multi-trim Video dialog box:



Reverses or advances through the video in fixed increments. By default, these buttons move up or down through the video in increments of 25 seconds.

Plays a preview of the final trimmed video.

Plays the video file. Hold [Shift] then click to play only the selected segments.

Moves to the start or end frame of a trimmed segment.

Moves to the previous/next frame in the video.

Using Ad-Zapper

VideoStudio lets you search your videos for commercial intervals. Clicking this feature extracts the commercials to the media list. Detection sensitivity allows you to control the rate of distinguishing between commercials. Merge CF merges all your extracted clips that are identified as commercials.

Saving trimmed clips

Frequently, when you make changes (i.e., after auto-splitting clips using Split by Scene, extracting clips using Multi-trim Video, or manually trimming clips), you may wish to make a permanent change to the clip and save the edited file. VideoStudio gives you a margin of safety in that it saves the trimmed video to a new file and does not alter the original file.
To save, select a trimmed clip in the Storyboard, Timeline or the Library and select
Clip: Save Trimmed Video.

Exporting a video file

VideoStudio provides you with a number of ways to export and share a video file. A video file can be exported to a Web page, converted to an executable greeting card, sent by e-mail, or set as a desktop screen saver.

Select a video file in the Library and click
. Choose the type of output for your video.

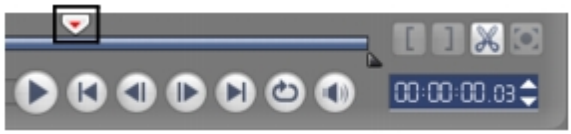
Capturing still images in the Edit Step

A still image can be captured in the Edit **Step** by selecting a specific frame on the Timeline and saving it as an image file. In this manner, possible distortions are avoided since the image is not acquired from a

running video, unlike in the
Capture Step.

To capture still images:

1 Select File: Preferences - Capture. Choose Bitmap or JPEG as the Captured still image save format. If you selected JPEG, also set the
Image quality.
2 Select a video clip in your project.
3 Drag the
Jog Slider to the frame you want to capture.



4 Switch to an image folder in the Library. The folder can be the default Image folder, or the one created by yourself.
5 Select
Clip: Save as Still Image. The new image file is saved to your working folder and is represented as a thumbnail in the image folder you assigned.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Working with clips

Clips, whether audio, video, images or effects, are the foundation of your project and manipulating them is the most important skill you can master.

Adding clips to the Video Track

You only work on the Video Track when you are in the Edit Step. On the Video Track, you can insert three types of clips: video, image and color clips.

Video clips

There are several ways of inserting video clips on the Video Track: Select a clip in the Library and drag and drop it to the Video Track. Multiple clips can be selected by pressing [Shift] or [Ctrl]. Right-click a clip in the Library then select Insert To: Video Track. Select one or more video files in Windows Explorer then drag and drop to the Video Track. To insert a clip from a file folder directly to the Video Track, click Insert Media Files located to the left of the Timeline.

Notes:

· Aside from video files, you can also add video from DVD or DVD-VR formatted discs.

· Use the Fade-in/out buttons

to make the audio of the video clips in your project smoothly fade from one clip to the next.

Images

The ways of adding still images to the Video Track are the same as when adding video clips.

Before you start adding images to your project, determine first the image size that you want for all your images. By default, VideoStudio adjusts the size to keep the image's aspect ratio.

To make the size of all inserted images the same as your project's frame size, select File: Preferences - Edit then change the Image resampling option default to

Fit to project size.

Color clips

Color clips are solid colored backgrounds that are useful for titles. For example, insert a black color clip as background for end credits. You can use the preset color clips or create new color clips in the Library.

To select a color clip in the Color Library:

1 Select

Color from the Library drop-down menu.

2 Choose your desired color displayed in the Library and drag to the Video or Overlay Track.

3 To load another color that is not in the Library, click the color box beside the Color Picker. Here, you can select a color either from Corel Color Picker or the Windows Color Picker.

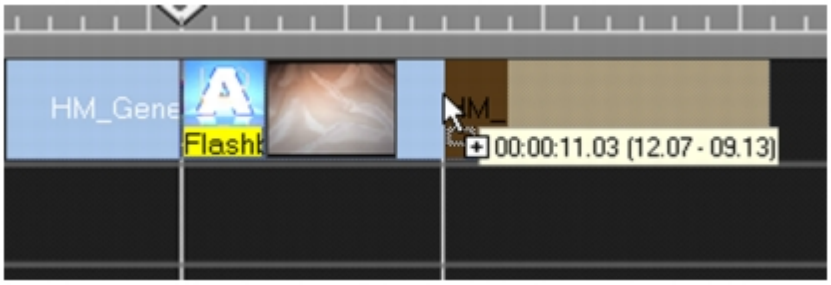


4 Set the
Duration of the color clip in the Options Panel.

Tips:

· Instant timecode tip is a feature of VideoStudio that allows you to add clips with a specific timecode. It appears while trimming and inserting overlapping clips on the timeline, enabling you to make adjustments based on the timecode shown.

· The instant timecode tip appears with the format 00:00:11.03 (12.07 - 09.13). 00:00:11.03 indicates the current timecode where the selected clip is located. 12.07 represents the duration overlapping with the previous clip while 09.13 is the duration overlapping with the next clip.



Sorting clips in the Library

To arrange clips in the Library, click in the Library to open the Options menu, then select Sort by Name or
Sort by Date.

The way video clips are sorted by date depends on the file format. DV AVI files (i.e., AVI files captured from DV camcorders) will be arranged by order of the shooting date and time of the footage. Other video file formats will be sorted by order of file date.

Notes:

· You can also right-click on the Library then select the desired sorting type in the
Sort By submenu.

· To toggle between ascending and descending order, select Sort by Name or
Sort by Date again.

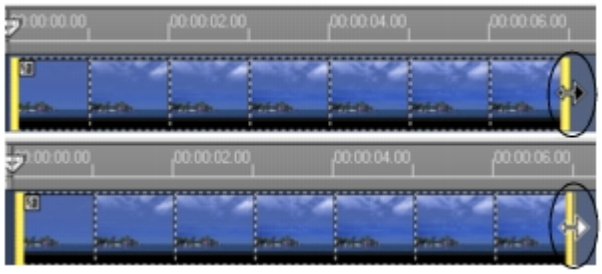
Playback speed

You can modify the playback speed of your videos. Set your video in slow motion to emphasize a movement, or set it to play at lightning speed and give your movie a comical air. Simply adjust the speed attributes for your video clip by clicking Playback Speed under the **Options Panel** of the Edit Step. Drag the slider according to your preferences (i.e., slow, normal or fast), or enter a value. The higher the value you set, the faster the playback of your clip. (Values range from 10-1000%). You can also specify a set duration for the clip in Time stretch. Click Preview to view the results of your settings then click OK when finished.

Tips:

· Hold [Shift]
then drag the end of the clip on the Timeline to change the playback speed.

· The black arrow means you are trimming or extending the clip, while the white arrow means that you are changing the playback speed.



Reversing video playback

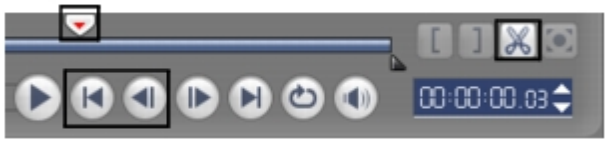
Reverse the playback of the video by selecting
Reverse video in the Options Panel.

Trimming a clip

The best part of editing your movie on your computer is the ease with which you can snip and trim your work with frame by frame accuracy. There are three ways of trimming a clip:

To split a clip into two:

1 Select the clip you want to split on the Storyboard or Timeline.
2 Drag the
Jog Slider to the point where you want to cut the clip.

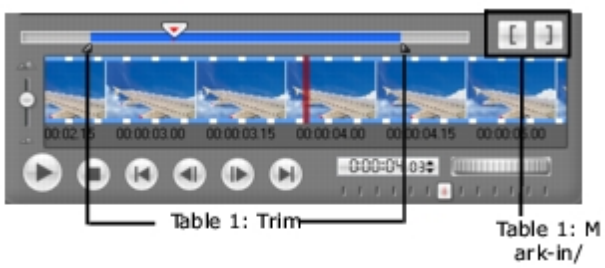


Tip: Click  or 
to set the cutting point more precisely.

3 Click  to cut the clip into two clips. To remove one of these clips, select the unwanted clip and press
[Delete].

To trim a clip with the Trim Handles using Single Clip Trimmer:

1 Double-click a video clip in the Library or right-click on a video clip and choose Single Clip Trim to launch the
Trim Video dialog box.
2 Click and drag the Trim handles to set the Mark-in/Mark-out points on the clip.
For more precise trimming, click on a Trim handle, hold it, and use the left or right arrow keys on your keyboard to trim one frame at a time. The Mark-in/Mark-out points can also be set by pressing [F3] and
[F4], respectively.



3 Click Play Clip
to preview the trimmed clip.
Tip: You can also use Zoom controls to display each frame of your video on the Timeline and trim one frame at a time. The Scroll Bar makes navigating through your project quicker and easier. A wheel mouse can also be used to scroll, and to zoom by pressing
[Ctrl].

To trim a clip directly on the Timeline:

1 Click a clip on the **Timeline**
to select it.
2 Drag the yellow Trim handles
on either side of the clip to change its length. The Preview Window reflects the position of the Trim handle in the clip.
3 Or, click the timecode in the
Duration box in the Options Panel and enter the desired clip length.



4 Other clips in your project automatically reposition themselves according to changes made.
Note: Changes made in the video
Duration box only affect the Mark-out point. The Mark-in point remains unchanged.

Split by Scene

Use the Split by Scene feature in the Edit Step to detect different scenes in a video file and automatically break it down into several clip files.
The way VideoStudio detects scenes depends on the type of video file. In a captured DV AVI file, scenes can be detected in two ways: DV Recording Time Scan detects scenes according to their shooting date and time. Frame Content detects content changes, such as motion change, camera shifting, brightness change, etc., and splits them into separate files.
In an MPEG-1 or MPEG-2 file, scenes can only be detected based on content changes (i.e., by Frame Content).

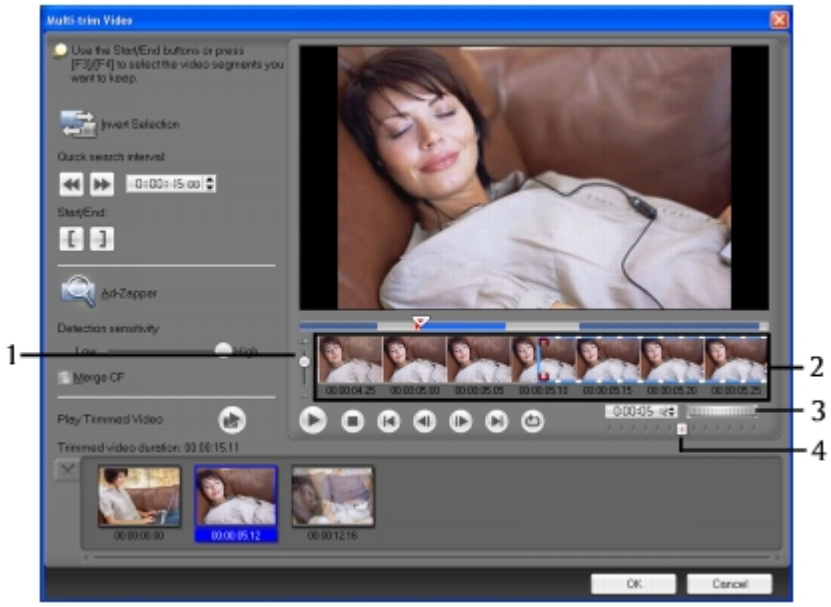
To use Split by Scene on a DV AVI or MPEG file:

1 Go to the
Edit Step and select a captured DV AVI file or an MPEG file on the Timeline.
2 Click Split by Scene in the Options Panel. This will open the
Scenes dialog box.
3 Choose your preferred scan method (DV Recording Time Scan or
Frame Content).
4 Click Options. In the Scene Scanning Sensitivity dialog box, drag the slider to set the Sensitivity level. A higher value means more precision in the scene detection.
5 Click
OK.
6 Click
Scan. VideoStudio then scans through the video file and lists all the detected scenes.

You may merge some of the detected scenes into a single clip. Simply select all the scenes that you want to join together then click Join. The plus sign (+) and a number indicates how many scenes are merged into that particular clip. Click Split
to undo any Join actions that you have done.
7 Click
OK to split the video.

Multi-trimming your video

The Multi-trim Video feature is another method for breaking down a clip into multiple segments. While Split by Scene is automatically done by the program,
Multi-trim Video gives you complete control over the clips you wish to extract, making it even easier for you to manage your project.



1 Timeline zoom
Drag up and down to sub-divide a video clip into frames per second.

2 AccuCut Timeline
Scan a video clip frame by frame for accurate mark-in and mark-out positions.

3 Jog Wheel
Use to scroll to different parts of the clip.

4 Shuttle Slider
Preview the clip at different playback speeds.

To trim a video file into multiple clips:

1 Go to the Edit Step and click Multi-trim Video in the **Options Panel**
.
2 View the whole clip first by clicking Play to determine how you want to mark segments in the Multi-trim Video dialog box.
3 Choose the number of frames to display by dragging the Timeline zoom. You can choose to display the smallest subdivision of one frame per second.
4 Drag the Jog Slider until you get to the part of the video that you want to use as the beginning frame of the first segment. Click
Start.
5 Drag the Jog Slider again, this time, to the point where you want the segment to end. Click
End.
6 Do steps 4 and 5 repeatedly until you have marked all the segments you want kept or removed.
Tips:

· To mark segments, you can also press [F3] and
[F4] while playing the video.
· Click Invert Selection
to toggle between marking segments that you want to retain or marking segments that you want taken out from the clip.
·
Quick search interval allows you to set a fixed interval between frames and browse through the movie using the set value.
7 Click
OK when finished. The video segments that you kept are then inserted onto the Timeline.

Navigation controls in the Multi-trim Video dialog box:



Reverses or advances through the video in fixed increments. By default, these buttons move up or down through the video in increments of 25 seconds.

Plays a preview of the final trimmed video.

Plays the video file. Hold [Shift] then click to play only the selected segments.

Moves to the start or end frame of a trimmed segment.

Moves to the previous/next frame in the video.

Using Ad-Zapper

VideoStudio lets you search your videos for commercial intervals. Clicking this feature extracts the commercials to the media list. Detection sensitivity allows you to control the rate of distinguishing between commercials. Merge CF merges all your extracted clips that are identified as commercials.

Saving trimmed clips

Frequently, when you make changes (i.e., after auto-splitting clips using Split by Scene, extracting clips using Multi-trim Video, or manually trimming clips), you may wish to make a permanent change to the clip and save the edited file. VideoStudio gives you a margin of safety in that it saves the trimmed video to a new file and does not alter the original file.
To save, select a trimmed clip in the Storyboard, Timeline or the Library and select
Clip: Save Trimmed Video.

Exporting a video file

VideoStudio provides you with a number of ways to export and share a video file. A video file can be exported to a Web page, converted to an executable greeting card, sent by e-mail, or set as a desktop screen saver.

Select a video file in the Library and click
. Choose the type of output for your video.

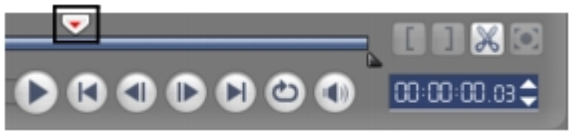
Capturing still images in the Edit Step

A still image can be captured in the Edit **Step** by selecting a specific frame on the Timeline and saving it as an image file. In this manner, possible distortions are avoided since the image is not acquired from a

running video, unlike in the
Capture Step.

To capture still images:

1 Select File: Preferences - Capture. Choose Bitmap or JPEG as the Captured still image save format. If you selected JPEG, also set the
Image quality.
2 Select a video clip in your project.
3 Drag the
Jog Slider to the frame you want to capture.



4 Switch to an image folder in the Library. The folder can be the default Image folder, or the one created by yourself.
5 Select
Clip: Save as Still Image. The new image file is saved to your working folder and is represented as a thumbnail in the image folder you assigned.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Ripple Editing

Ripple Editing
allows you to insert clips while automatically moving other clips (including empty spaces) aside, to make room for it on the Timeline. Use this mode to maintain the original track synchronizations when inserting additional clips. This feature is very useful in using overlay and audio tracks that you intend to play along with a particular moment in the video. This also makes editing more efficient by keeping all tracks intact, using the video track as reference.



Ripple Editing not enabled. Only the video track will move when a video clip is inserted into the timeline. No other tracks will move when the feature is not enabled.



Ripple Editing enabled. The tracks with Ripple Editing enabled will move accordingly when a video clip is inserted into the timeline, maintaining their position as they are originally arranged.

To insert clips in Ripple Editing mode:

1 Click Ripple Editing
to activate the panel, then select the corresponding box for each track where you want to apply Ripple Editing.
2 Drag the clip to insert from the Library to the desired position on the Timeline. As soon as the new clip is in place, all clips where Ripple Editing
is applied will shift accordingly while maintaining their track positions relative to one another.
Note:
Ripple Editing also works in removing clips.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Enabling Smart Proxy

Proxy files are lower resolution working copies of video files. They are reduced in resolution or compression bit rate for only one reason -- to speed up editing of high definition files such as HDV, AVCHD, etc. Proxy files are source-dependent rather than project-dependent. In other words, proxy files can be shared among different projects. Smart Proxy can also be used in other video file formats and is not limited to HDV files only. The main purpose of this feature is to have a more efficient editing experience by making smaller proxy files out of large videos.

When you edit and preview your project in
Instant Play mode, proxy files will be used as substitutes for their large video source counterparts. Whereas when you preview your project in high-quality playback mode or when you render a video file, the original video source files will be used.

To enable the creation of proxy files, go to File: Preferences - Smart Proxy, then select the Enable Smart Proxy option. In the Smart Proxy tab of the Preferences dialog box, you can set the condition when proxy files need to be generated and choose a proxy file format. Or you can also click  in the Toolbar and select Enable Smart Proxy. Select
Settings to customize Smart Proxy settings.

Notes:

· The Smart Proxy feature is enabled in VideoStudio program startup.

· The
Smart Proxy File Manager contains files that have been applied with Smart Proxy.

· The
Smart Proxy Queue Manager contains files waiting in queue to be applied with the Smart Proxy feature.

In the case of HDV files, Smart Proxy is automatically activated during capture and use of HDV files in your project.

Once Smart Proxy is enabled, proxy files will automatically be created and used in your project whenever you insert video files into the Timeline.

In the Toolbar, click  and select Smart Proxy Queue Manager to see the list of video files to be generated as proxy files. Select the files you want to include in your queue and then click
OK.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Converting multiple files

Batch Convert allows you to simultaneously convert a large number of files to another format.

To do Batch Convert:

1 Click 
.
2 Click
Add and then choose the files you want to convert.
3 Select an output folder in
Save in folder.
4 In
Save as type, choose your desired output type.
5 Click
Convert.
The result is shown in the Task Report dialog box. Click
OK to finish.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Enhancing clips

VideoStudio lets you improve the quality of a video or image clip by adjusting its current properties such as its color settings in
Color Correction.

Adjusting color and brightness

Adjust color and brightness settings of images and video on the Timeline by clicking
Color Correction in the Options Panel.

To adjust color and brightness:

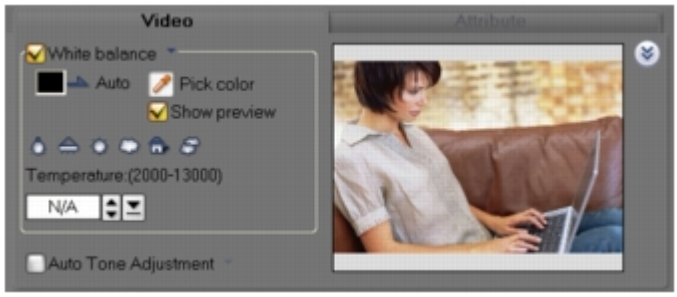
1 Select the video or image clip to enhance on the Timeline.
2 Drag the sliders to the right to intensify the Hue, Saturation, Brightness, Contrast or Gamma of the clip.
3 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.
Note: Click
Reset to restore the original color settings of the clip.

Adjusting white balance

White balance restores the natural color temperature of an image by removing wrong color casts due to conflicting light source and incorrect camera settings.
For example, an object illuminated with incandescent lights may turn out too reddish or yellowish in an image or video clip. To successfully achieve its natural effect, you need to identify a reference point in your image which represents the color white. VideoStudio gives you different options in selecting the white point: Auto: Gives you automatic calculation of the fitted white point that is well-matched with the overall color of your image. Pick Color: Allows you to manually select the white point in the image. Use the Eyedropper Tool to pick a reference area that should be white or neutral gray. White balance presets: Automatically selects white point by matching specific light conditions or scenarios. Temperature: Allows you to specify color temperature of light sources in Kelvin (K). Lower values indicate Tungsten, Fluorescent and Daylight scenarios while Cloudy, Shade and Overcast fall under high color temperature.

To adjust White balance:

1 Select an image or video clip on the Timeline or the Library.
2 In the Edit Step Options Panel, click
Color Correction.
3 Select
White balance.
4 Determine how you want to identify the white point. Choose among the different options (Auto, Pick color, White balance presets or
Temperature).



5 If you have selected Pick color, choose
Show preview to display a preview area in the Options Panel.
6 When you drag your cursor to the Preview area, it will change to an eyedropper icon.
7 Click to identify a reference point in your image which represents the color white.
8 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.
Tip: Click the White balance drop-down arrow to display more color adjustments you can use. Select Vivid Color or Normal Color for the color intensity. The Weaker, Normal and
Stronger options specify the level of sensitivity of White balance.

Adjusting tones

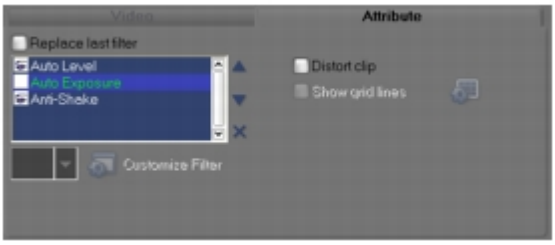
To adjust the tone quality of your video or image clips, click Color Correction in the Edit Step Options Panel and select Auto Tone Adjustment. You can indicate if you want the clip as Brightest, Brighter, Normal, Darker or Darkest by clicking the
Auto Tone Adjustment drop-down menu.

Applying video filters

Video filters are effects that you can apply to clips in order to change their style or appearance. For example, you can improve the color balance of a clip, or make it look like a painting.
Video filter samples: DeBlock: Smoothens uneven areas in a clip and reduces noise like block artifacts or mosquito effect that are usually found in some highly compressed videos. DeSnow: Removes visible and dynamic "snowy" noise patterns in videos captured from sources with poor TV signals or video clips usually taken under low lighting conditions or by cameras with high ISO values. Anti-shake: Allows you to correct or stabilize sub-standard videos due to camera shake.

To apply a video filter to a clip (video or image) in the Video Track:

1 Select a clip on the Timeline.
2 Click the Attribute tab in the Edit Step **Options Panel**
.
3 Choose a video filter from the Video Filter folder in the **Library**
to apply to your clip (by clicking the thumbnail).
4 Drag and drop the video filter onto your clip in the Video Track.
Note: By default, the filter applied to a clip is always replaced with the new filter dragged onto the clip. Clear
Replace last filter to apply multiple filters to a single clip. VideoStudio allows you to apply a maximum of five filters to a single clip. You can also choose the filter to be previewed through the selection in the view toggle. In the event that you choose to render your project, only enabled filters will be included in your movie.



5 Click Customize Filter in the Options Panel
to customize the attributes of the video filter. Available options depend on the selected filter.
6 Preview how your clip looks with the video filter applied to it using the Navigator.
Note: When there is more than one video filter applied to a clip, you can change the order of filters by clicking or
. Changing the order of the video filters will have drastic effects on your clip.

Key frame settings

VideoStudio allows you to customize video filters in a variety of ways. One way is by adding key frames to your clips. Key frames are frames in a clip where you can specify a different attribute or behavior for your video filter. This gives you the flexibility to determine how your video filter will look like at any point in a clip.

To set key frames for your clips:

1 Drag and drop a video filter from the Library onto a clip on the Timeline.
2 Click
Customize Filter. The dialog box for the video filter opens.
Note:
Settings available in the dialog box are different for each video filter.
3 In the Key frame controls, drag the
Jog Slider or use the arrows to go to the frame where you'd like to change the attributes of your video filter.



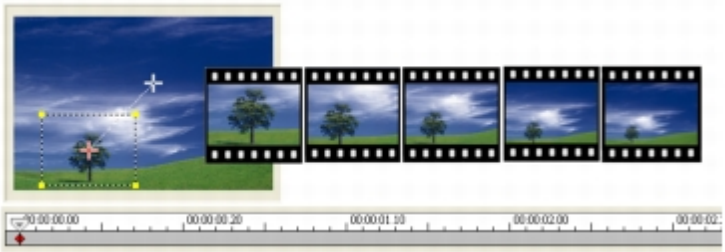
Note: You can use the mouse wheel to zoom in or out of the Timeline Control bar for precise placement of key frames.

4 Click Add key frame
to set that frame as a key frame in the clip. You can adjust the video filter settings for that particular frame.
Note: A diamond-shaped mark
on the Timeline Control bar will appear. This indicates the frame is a key frame in the clip.
5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to add more key frames to your clip.
6 Use the Timeline controls to edit or to go to a key frame in the clip.
· To delete a key frame, click Remove key frame

.
· Click Reverse key frames
to reverse the sequence of key frames on the Timeline such that the sequence starts with the last key frame and ends with the first key frame.
· To move to the succeeding key frame, click Go to next key frame
.
· To move to the key frame prior to the one selected, click Go to previous key frame
.
7 Adjust the video filter settings according to your preferences.
8 Preview the changes you've made by clicking Play
in the Preview Window of the dialog box.
9 Click
OK when finished.
Tip: You can preview the clip with applied video filter on VideoStudio's Preview Window or an external device such as a TV monitor or DV camcorder.
Click , then click to open the
Preview Playback Options dialog box where you can choose the display medium.

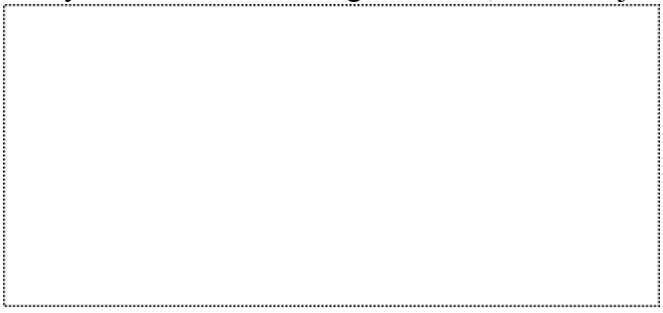
Panning & Zooming

Pan & Zoom is applied to still images, and it emulates the pan and zoom effect of a video camera. To apply this effect to an image, select an image clip on the Timeline, then select Pan & Zoom and click Customize Pan & Zoom.
Note: Pan & Zoom cannot be applied to masked images.
In the Pan & Zoom dialog box, the crosshairs
in the Image Window represent the key frames in the image clip where settings can be customized to produce the pan and zoom effect. When customizing each key frame, use the Image Window to focus on an area or to pan the image; use the Options tab settings to customize the zooming effect.
The procedure below shows an example of how to first zoom in on a subject, then pan and zoom out to show the whole image.



To apply Pan & Zoom:

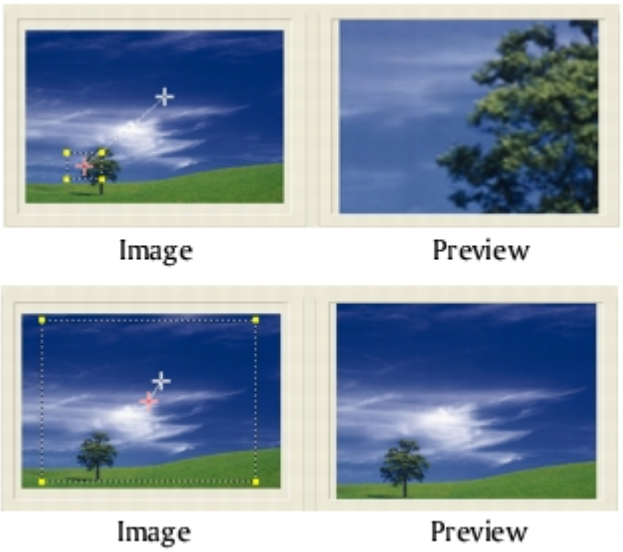
1 Drag the
Start key frame, represented by a crosshair in the Image Window, to the subject that you want to focus.



2 Zoom in on the subject by minimizing the marquee box or by increasing the Zoom ratio.



3 Drag the crosshair of the End key frame to your desired final point.



4 Click to preview the effect.

5 Click OK to apply the effect to the image.

Tips:

· Click the Anchor boxes to move the marquee box at fixed positions in the Image Window.

· To zoom in or out of a fixed area without panning the image, select No panning.

· To include a fade-in/out effect, increase the Transparency. The image will fade to the Background color. Click the color box to choose a background color, or click to select a color on the Image Window.



Resizing and distorting clips

To resize or distort a clip:

1 Select a clip in the Video Track then select the Attribute tab under the Options Panel.

2 Select
Distort clip then drag any of the following handles:
· Yellow handles at the corners to resize the clip proportionally (
A).
· Yellow handles at the sides to resize without maintaining proportions (
B).
· Green handles at the corners to skew the clip (
C).



Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Enhancing clips

VideoStudio lets you improve the quality of a video or image clip by adjusting its current properties such as its color settings in
Color Correction.

Adjusting color and brightness

Adjust color and brightness settings of images and video on the Timeline by clicking
Color Correction in the Options Panel.

To adjust color and brightness:

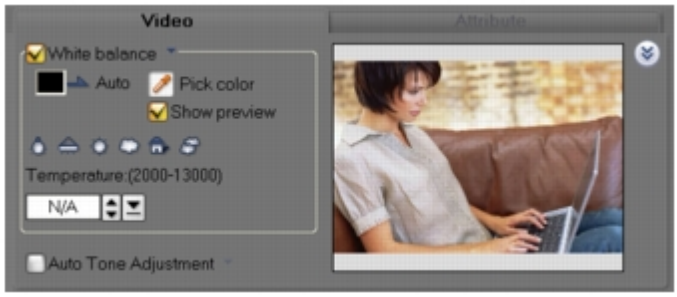
1 Select the video or image clip to enhance on the Timeline.
2 Drag the sliders to the right to intensify the Hue, Saturation, Brightness, Contrast or Gamma of the clip.
3 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.
Note: Click
Reset to restore the original color settings of the clip.

Adjusting white balance

White balance restores the natural color temperature of an image by removing wrong color casts due to conflicting light source and incorrect camera settings.
For example, an object illuminated with incandescent lights may turn out too reddish or yellowish in an image or video clip. To successfully achieve its natural effect, you need to identify a reference point in your image which represents the color white. VideoStudio gives you different options in selecting the white point: Auto: Gives you automatic calculation of the fitted white point that is well-matched with the overall color of your image. Pick Color: Allows you to manually select the white point in the image. Use the Eyedropper Tool to pick a reference area that should be white or neutral gray. White balance presets: Automatically selects white point by matching specific light conditions or scenarios. Temperature: Allows you to specify color temperature of light sources in Kelvin (K). Lower values indicate Tungsten, Fluorescent and Daylight scenarios while Cloudy, Shade and Overcast fall under high color temperature.

To adjust White balance:

1 Select an image or video clip on the Timeline or the Library.
2 In the Edit Step Options Panel, click
Color Correction.
3 Select
White balance.
4 Determine how you want to identify the white point. Choose among the different options (Auto, Pick color, White balance presets or
Temperature).



5 If you have selected Pick color, choose
Show preview to display a preview area in the Options Panel.
6 When you drag your cursor to the Preview area, it will change to an eyedropper icon.
7 Click to identify a reference point in your image which represents the color white.
8 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.
Tip: Click the White balance drop-down arrow to display more color adjustments you can use. Select Vivid Color or Normal Color for the color intensity. The Weaker, Normal and
Stronger options specify the level of sensitivity of White balance.

Adjusting tones

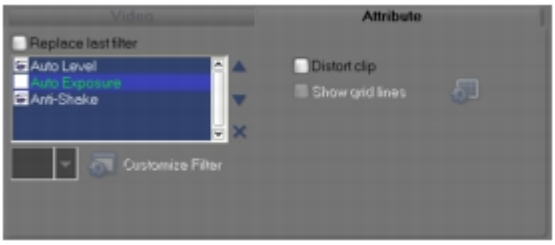
To adjust the tone quality of your video or image clips, click Color Correction in the Edit Step Options Panel and select Auto Tone Adjustment. You can indicate if you want the clip as Brightest, Brighter, Normal, Darker or Darkest by clicking the
Auto Tone Adjustment drop-down menu.

Applying video filters

Video filters are effects that you can apply to clips in order to change their style or appearance. For example, you can improve the color balance of a clip, or make it look like a painting.
Video filter samples: DeBlock: Smoothens uneven areas in a clip and reduces noise like block artifacts or mosquito effect that are usually found in some highly compressed videos. DeSnow: Removes visible and dynamic "snowy" noise patterns in videos captured from sources with poor TV signals or video clips usually taken under low lighting conditions or by cameras with high ISO values. Anti-shake: Allows you to correct or stabilize sub-standard videos due to camera shake.

To apply a video filter to a clip (video or image) in the Video Track:

1 Select a clip on the Timeline.
2 Click the Attribute tab in the Edit Step **Options Panel**
.
3 Choose a video filter from the Video Filter folder in the **Library**
to apply to your clip (by clicking the thumbnail).
4 Drag and drop the video filter onto your clip in the Video Track.
Note: By default, the filter applied to a clip is always replaced with the new filter dragged onto the clip. Clear
Replace last filter to apply multiple filters to a single clip. VideoStudio allows you to apply a maximum of five filters to a single clip. You can also choose the filter to be previewed through the selection in the view toggle. In the event that you choose to render your project, only enabled filters will be included in your movie.



5 Click Customize Filter in the Options Panel
to customize the attributes of the video filter. Available options depend on the selected filter.
6 Preview how your clip looks with the video filter applied to it using the Navigator.
Note: When there is more than one video filter applied to a clip, you can change the order of filters by clicking or
. Changing the order of the video filters will have drastic effects on your clip.

Key frame settings

VideoStudio allows you to customize video filters in a variety of ways. One way is by adding key frames to your clips. Key frames are frames in a clip where you can specify a different attribute or behavior for your video filter. This gives you the flexibility to determine how your video filter will look like at any point in a clip.

To set key frames for your clips:

1 Drag and drop a video filter from the Library onto a clip on the Timeline.
2 Click
Customize Filter. The dialog box for the video filter opens.
Note:
Settings available in the dialog box are different for each video filter.
3 In the Key frame controls, drag the
Jog Slider or use the arrows to go to the frame where you'd like to change the attributes of your video filter.



Note: You can use the mouse wheel to zoom in or out of the Timeline Control bar for precise placement of key frames.

4 Click Add key frame
to set that frame as a key frame in the clip. You can adjust the video filter settings for that particular frame.
Note: A diamond-shaped mark
on the Timeline Control bar will appear. This indicates the frame is a key frame in the clip.
5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to add more key frames to your clip.
6 Use the Timeline controls to edit or to go to a key frame in the clip.
· To delete a key frame, click Remove key frame

.

· Click Reverse key frames
to reverse the sequence of key frames on the Timeline such that the sequence starts with the last key frame and ends with the first key frame.

· To move to the succeeding key frame, click Go to next key frame

.

· To move to the key frame prior to the one selected, click Go to previous key frame

.

7 Adjust the video filter settings according to your preferences.

8 Preview the changes you've made by clicking Play
in the Preview Window of the dialog box.

9 Click
OK when finished.

Tip: You can preview the clip with applied video filter on VideoStudio's Preview Window or an external device such as a TV monitor or DV camcorder.

Click , then click to open the
Preview Playback Options dialog box where you can choose the display medium.

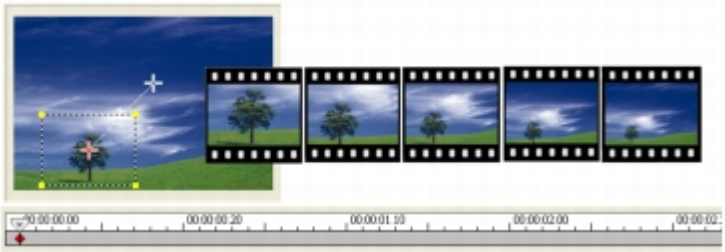
Panning & Zooming

Pan & Zoom is applied to still images, and it emulates the pan and zoom effect of a video camera. To apply this effect to an image, select an image clip on the Timeline, then select Pan & Zoom and click Customize Pan & Zoom.

Note: Pan & Zoom cannot be applied to masked images.

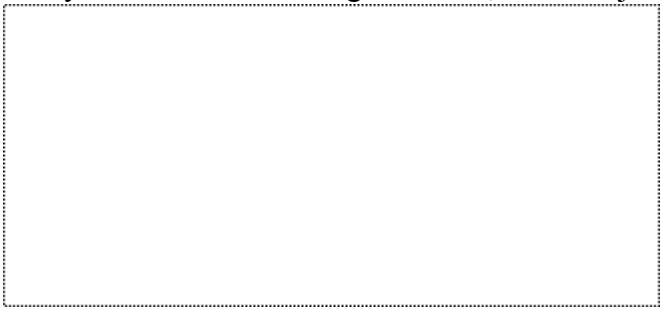
In the Pan & Zoom dialog box, the crosshairs
in the Image Window represent the key frames in the image clip where settings can be customized to produce the pan and zoom effect. When customizing each key frame, use the Image Window to focus on an area or to pan the image; use the Options tab settings to customize the zooming effect.

The procedure below shows an example of how to first zoom in on a subject, then pan and zoom out to show the whole image.



To apply Pan & Zoom:

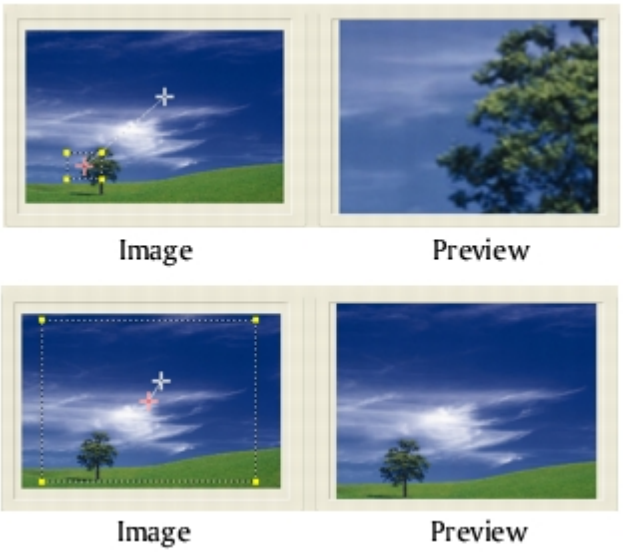
1 Drag the
Start key frame, represented by a crosshair in the Image Window, to the subject that you want to focus.



2 Zoom in on the subject by minimizing the marquee box or by increasing the Zoom ratio.



3 Drag the crosshair of the End key frame to your desired final point.



4 Click to preview the effect.

5 Click OK to apply the effect to the image.

Tips:

· Click the Anchor boxes to move the marquee box at fixed positions in the Image Window.

· To zoom in or out of a fixed area without panning the image, select No panning.

· To include a fade-in/out effect, increase the Transparency. The image will fade to the Background color. Click the color box to choose a background color, or click to select a color on the Image Window.



Resizing and distorting clips

To resize or distort a clip:

1 Select a clip in the Video Track then select the Attribute tab under the Options Panel.

2 Select
Distort clip then drag any of the following handles:
· Yellow handles at the corners to resize the clip proportionally (
A).
· Yellow handles at the sides to resize without maintaining proportions (
B).
· Green handles at the corners to skew the clip (
C).



Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Enhancing clips

VideoStudio lets you improve the quality of a video or image clip by adjusting its current properties such as its color settings in
Color Correction.

Adjusting color and brightness

Adjust color and brightness settings of images and video on the Timeline by clicking
Color Correction in the Options Panel.

To adjust color and brightness:

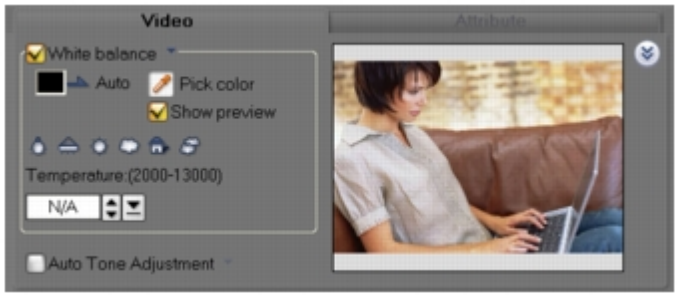
1 Select the video or image clip to enhance on the Timeline.
2 Drag the sliders to the right to intensify the Hue, Saturation, Brightness, Contrast or Gamma of the clip.
3 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.
Note: Click
Reset to restore the original color settings of the clip.

Adjusting white balance

White balance restores the natural color temperature of an image by removing wrong color casts due to conflicting light source and incorrect camera settings.
For example, an object illuminated with incandescent lights may turn out too reddish or yellowish in an image or video clip. To successfully achieve its natural effect, you need to identify a reference point in your image which represents the color white. VideoStudio gives you different options in selecting the white point: Auto: Gives you automatic calculation of the fitted white point that is well-matched with the overall color of your image. Pick Color: Allows you to manually select the white point in the image. Use the Eyedropper Tool to pick a reference area that should be white or neutral gray. White balance presets: Automatically selects white point by matching specific light conditions or scenarios. Temperature: Allows you to specify color temperature of light sources in Kelvin (K). Lower values indicate Tungsten, Fluorescent and Daylight scenarios while Cloudy, Shade and Overcast fall under high color temperature.

To adjust White balance:

1 Select an image or video clip on the Timeline or the Library.
2 In the Edit Step Options Panel, click
Color Correction.
3 Select
White balance.
4 Determine how you want to identify the white point. Choose among the different options (Auto, Pick color, White balance presets or
Temperature).



5 If you have selected Pick color, choose
Show preview to display a preview area in the Options Panel.
6 When you drag your cursor to the Preview area, it will change to an eyedropper icon.
7 Click to identify a reference point in your image which represents the color white.
8 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.
Tip: Click the White balance drop-down arrow to display more color adjustments you can use. Select Vivid Color or Normal Color for the color intensity. The Weaker, Normal and
Stronger options specify the level of sensitivity of White balance.

Adjusting tones

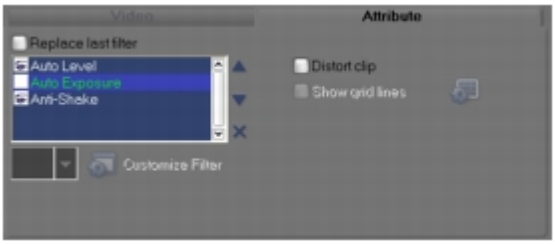
To adjust the tone quality of your video or image clips, click Color Correction in the Edit Step Options Panel and select Auto Tone Adjustment. You can indicate if you want the clip as Brightest, Brighter, Normal, Darker or Darkest by clicking the
Auto Tone Adjustment drop-down menu.

Applying video filters

Video filters are effects that you can apply to clips in order to change their style or appearance. For example, you can improve the color balance of a clip, or make it look like a painting.
Video filter samples: DeBlock: Smoothens uneven areas in a clip and reduces noise like block artifacts or mosquito effect that are usually found in some highly compressed videos. DeSnow: Removes visible and dynamic "snowy" noise patterns in videos captured from sources with poor TV signals or video clips usually taken under low lighting conditions or by cameras with high ISO values. Anti-shake: Allows you to correct or stabilize sub-standard videos due to camera shake.

To apply a video filter to a clip (video or image) in the Video Track:

1 Select a clip on the Timeline.
2 Click the Attribute tab in the Edit Step **Options Panel**
.
3 Choose a video filter from the Video Filter folder in the **Library**
to apply to your clip (by clicking the thumbnail).
4 Drag and drop the video filter onto your clip in the Video Track.
Note: By default, the filter applied to a clip is always replaced with the new filter dragged onto the clip. Clear
Replace last filter to apply multiple filters to a single clip. VideoStudio allows you to apply a maximum of five filters to a single clip. You can also choose the filter to be previewed through the selection in the view toggle. In the event that you choose to render your project, only enabled filters will be included in your movie.



5 Click Customize Filter in the Options Panel
to customize the attributes of the video filter. Available options depend on the selected filter.
6 Preview how your clip looks with the video filter applied to it using the Navigator.
Note: When there is more than one video filter applied to a clip, you can change the order of filters by clicking or
. Changing the order of the video filters will have drastic effects on your clip.

Key frame settings

VideoStudio allows you to customize video filters in a variety of ways. One way is by adding key frames to your clips. Key frames are frames in a clip where you can specify a different attribute or behavior for your video filter. This gives you the flexibility to determine how your video filter will look like at any point in a clip.

To set key frames for your clips:

1 Drag and drop a video filter from the Library onto a clip on the Timeline.
2 Click
Customize Filter. The dialog box for the video filter opens.
Note:
Settings available in the dialog box are different for each video filter.
3 In the Key frame controls, drag the
Jog Slider or use the arrows to go to the frame where you'd like to change the attributes of your video filter.



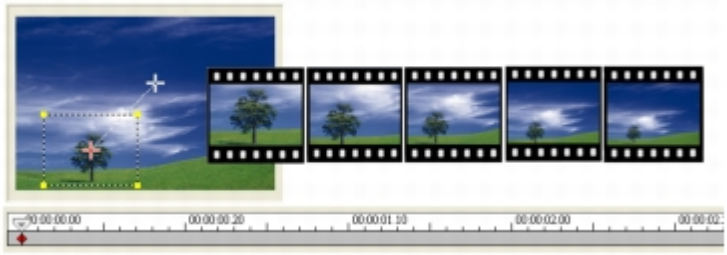
Note: You can use the mouse wheel to zoom in or out of the Timeline Control bar for precise placement of key frames.

4 Click Add key frame
to set that frame as a key frame in the clip. You can adjust the video filter settings for that particular frame.
Note: A diamond-shaped mark
on the Timeline Control bar will appear. This indicates the frame is a key frame in the clip.
5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to add more key frames to your clip.
6 Use the Timeline controls to edit or to go to a key frame in the clip.
· To delete a key frame, click Remove key frame

.
· Click Reverse key frames
to reverse the sequence of key frames on the Timeline such that the sequence starts with the last key frame and ends with the first key frame.
· To move to the succeeding key frame, click Go to next key frame
.
· To move to the key frame prior to the one selected, click Go to previous key frame
.
7 Adjust the video filter settings according to your preferences.
8 Preview the changes you've made by clicking Play
in the Preview Window of the dialog box.
9 Click
OK when finished.
Tip: You can preview the clip with applied video filter on VideoStudio's Preview Window or an external device such as a TV monitor or DV camcorder.
Click , then click to open the
Preview Playback Options dialog box where you can choose the display medium.

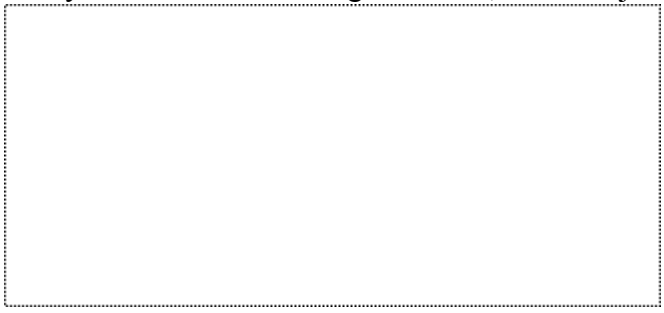
Panning & Zooming

Pan & Zoom is applied to still images, and it emulates the pan and zoom effect of a video camera. To apply this effect to an image, select an image clip on the Timeline, then select Pan & Zoom and click Customize Pan & Zoom.
Note: Pan & Zoom cannot be applied to masked images.
In the Pan & Zoom dialog box, the crosshairs
in the Image Window represent the key frames in the image clip where settings can be customized to produce the pan and zoom effect. When customizing each key frame, use the Image Window to focus on an area or to pan the image; use the Options tab settings to customize the zooming effect.
The procedure below shows an example of how to first zoom in on a subject, then pan and zoom out to show the whole image.



To apply Pan & Zoom:

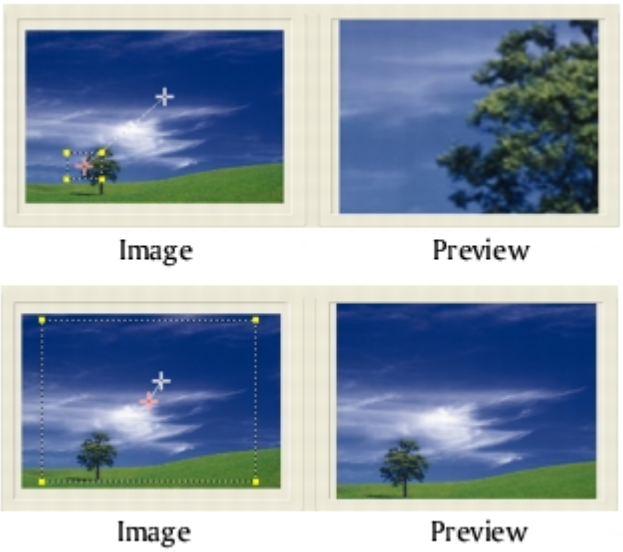
1 Drag the
Start key frame, represented by a crosshair in the Image Window, to the subject that you want to focus.



2 Zoom in on the subject by minimizing the marquee box or by increasing the Zoom ratio.



3 Drag the crosshair of the End key frame to your desired final point.



4 Click to preview the effect.

5 Click OK to apply the effect to the image.

Tips:

· Click the Anchor boxes to move the marquee box at fixed positions in the Image Window.

· To zoom in or out of a fixed area without panning the image, select No panning.

· To include a fade-in/out effect, increase the Transparency. The image will fade to the Background color. Click the color box to choose a background color, or click to select a color on the Image Window.



Resizing and distorting clips

To resize or distort a clip:

1 Select a clip in the Video Track then select the Attribute tab under the Options Panel.

2 Select
Distort clip then drag any of the following handles:
· Yellow handles at the corners to resize the clip proportionally (
A).
· Yellow handles at the sides to resize without maintaining proportions (
B).
· Green handles at the corners to skew the clip (
C).



Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Enhancing clips

VideoStudio lets you improve the quality of a video or image clip by adjusting its current properties such as its color settings in
Color Correction.

Adjusting color and brightness

Adjust color and brightness settings of images and video on the Timeline by clicking
Color Correction in the Options Panel.

To adjust color and brightness:

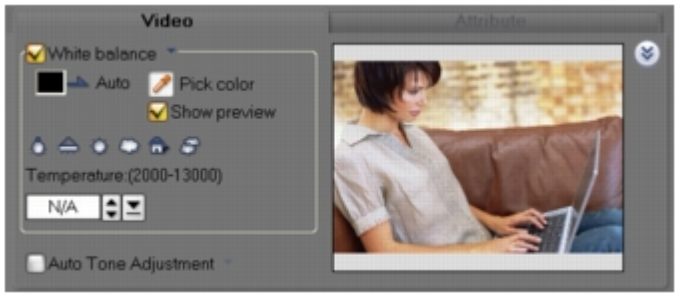
1 Select the video or image clip to enhance on the Timeline.
2 Drag the sliders to the right to intensify the Hue, Saturation, Brightness, Contrast or Gamma of the clip.
3 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.
Note: Click
Reset to restore the original color settings of the clip.

Adjusting white balance

White balance restores the natural color temperature of an image by removing wrong color casts due to conflicting light source and incorrect camera settings.
For example, an object illuminated with incandescent lights may turn out too reddish or yellowish in an image or video clip. To successfully achieve its natural effect, you need to identify a reference point in your image which represents the color white. VideoStudio gives you different options in selecting the white point: Auto: Gives you automatic calculation of the fitted white point that is well-matched with the overall color of your image. Pick Color: Allows you to manually select the white point in the image. Use the Eyedropper Tool to pick a reference area that should be white or neutral gray. White balance presets: Automatically selects white point by matching specific light conditions or scenarios. Temperature: Allows you to specify color temperature of light sources in Kelvin (K). Lower values indicate Tungsten, Fluorescent and Daylight scenarios while Cloudy, Shade and Overcast fall under high color temperature.

To adjust White balance:

1 Select an image or video clip on the Timeline or the Library.
2 In the Edit Step Options Panel, click
Color Correction.
3 Select
White balance.
4 Determine how you want to identify the white point. Choose among the different options (Auto, Pick color, White balance presets or
Temperature).



5 If you have selected Pick color, choose
Show preview to display a preview area in the Options Panel.
6 When you drag your cursor to the Preview area, it will change to an eyedropper icon.
7 Click to identify a reference point in your image which represents the color white.
8 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.
Tip: Click the White balance drop-down arrow to display more color adjustments you can use. Select Vivid Color or Normal Color for the color intensity. The Weaker, Normal and
Stronger options specify the level of sensitivity of White balance.

Adjusting tones

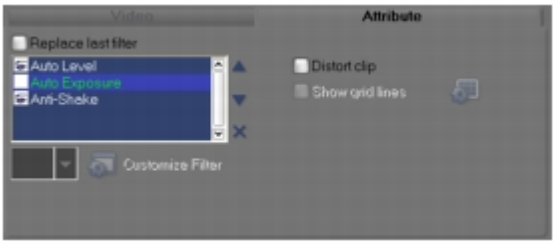
To adjust the tone quality of your video or image clips, click Color Correction in the Edit Step Options Panel and select Auto Tone Adjustment. You can indicate if you want the clip as Brightest, Brighter, Normal, Darker or Darkest by clicking the
Auto Tone Adjustment drop-down menu.

Applying video filters

Video filters are effects that you can apply to clips in order to change their style or appearance. For example, you can improve the color balance of a clip, or make it look like a painting.
Video filter samples: DeBlock: Smoothens uneven areas in a clip and reduces noise like block artifacts or mosquito effect that are usually found in some highly compressed videos. DeSnow: Removes visible and dynamic "snowy" noise patterns in videos captured from sources with poor TV signals or video clips usually taken under low lighting conditions or by cameras with high ISO values. Anti-shake: Allows you to correct or stabilize sub-standard videos due to camera shake.

To apply a video filter to a clip (video or image) in the Video Track:

1 Select a clip on the Timeline.
2 Click the Attribute tab in the Edit Step **Options Panel**
.
3 Choose a video filter from the Video Filter folder in the **Library**
to apply to your clip (by clicking the thumbnail).
4 Drag and drop the video filter onto your clip in the Video Track.
Note: By default, the filter applied to a clip is always replaced with the new filter dragged onto the clip. Clear
Replace last filter to apply multiple filters to a single clip. VideoStudio allows you to apply a maximum of five filters to a single clip. You can also choose the filter to be previewed through the selection in the view toggle. In the event that you choose to render your project, only enabled filters will be included in your movie.



5 Click Customize Filter in the Options Panel
to customize the attributes of the video filter. Available options depend on the selected filter.
6 Preview how your clip looks with the video filter applied to it using the Navigator.
Note: When there is more than one video filter applied to a clip, you can change the order of filters by clicking or
. Changing the order of the video filters will have drastic effects on your clip.

Key frame settings

VideoStudio allows you to customize video filters in a variety of ways. One way is by adding key frames to your clips. Key frames are frames in a clip where you can specify a different attribute or behavior for your video filter. This gives you the flexibility to determine how your video filter will look like at any point in a clip.

To set key frames for your clips:

1 Drag and drop a video filter from the Library onto a clip on the Timeline.
2 Click
Customize Filter. The dialog box for the video filter opens.
Note:
Settings available in the dialog box are different for each video filter.
3 In the Key frame controls, drag the
Jog Slider or use the arrows to go to the frame where you'd like to change the attributes of your video filter.



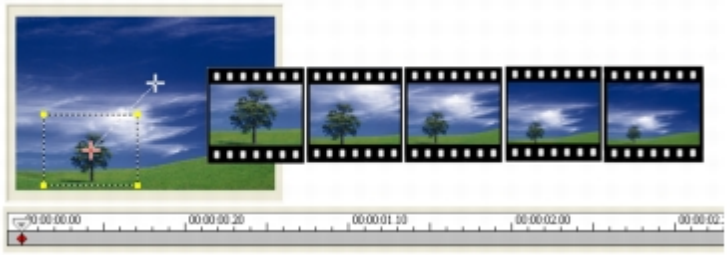
Note: You can use the mouse wheel to zoom in or out of the Timeline Control bar for precise placement of key frames.

4 Click Add key frame
to set that frame as a key frame in the clip. You can adjust the video filter settings for that particular frame.
Note: A diamond-shaped mark
on the Timeline Control bar will appear. This indicates the frame is a key frame in the clip.
5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to add more key frames to your clip.
6 Use the Timeline controls to edit or to go to a key frame in the clip.
· To delete a key frame, click Remove key frame

.
· Click Reverse key frames
to reverse the sequence of key frames on the Timeline such that the sequence starts with the last key frame and ends with the first key frame.
· To move to the succeeding key frame, click Go to next key frame
.
· To move to the key frame prior to the one selected, click Go to previous key frame
.
7 Adjust the video filter settings according to your preferences.
8 Preview the changes you've made by clicking Play
in the Preview Window of the dialog box.
9 Click
OK when finished.
Tip: You can preview the clip with applied video filter on VideoStudio's Preview Window or an external device such as a TV monitor or DV camcorder.
Click , then click to open the
Preview Playback Options dialog box where you can choose the display medium.

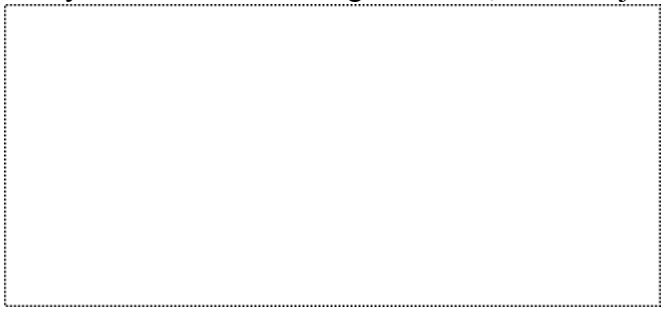
Panning & Zooming

Pan & Zoom is applied to still images, and it emulates the pan and zoom effect of a video camera. To apply this effect to an image, select an image clip on the Timeline, then select Pan & Zoom and click Customize Pan & Zoom.
Note: Pan & Zoom cannot be applied to masked images.
In the Pan & Zoom dialog box, the crosshairs
in the Image Window represent the key frames in the image clip where settings can be customized to produce the pan and zoom effect. When customizing each key frame, use the Image Window to focus on an area or to pan the image; use the Options tab settings to customize the zooming effect.
The procedure below shows an example of how to first zoom in on a subject, then pan and zoom out to show the whole image.



To apply Pan & Zoom:

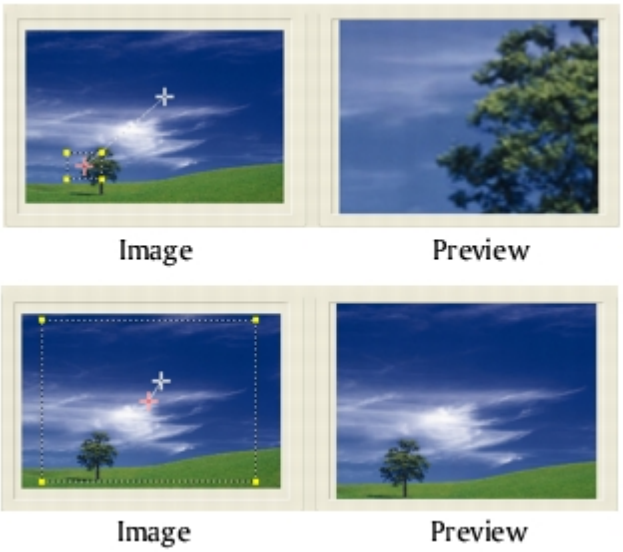
1 Drag the
Start key frame, represented by a crosshair in the Image Window, to the subject that you want to focus.



2 Zoom in on the subject by minimizing the marquee box or by increasing the Zoom ratio.



3 Drag the crosshair of the End key frame to your desired final point.



4 Click to preview the effect.

5 Click OK to apply the effect to the image.

Tips:

· Click the Anchor boxes to move the marquee box at fixed positions in the Image Window.

· To zoom in or out of a fixed area without panning the image, select No panning.

· To include a fade-in/out effect, increase the Transparency. The image will fade to the Background color. Click the color box to choose a background color, or click to select a color on the Image Window.



Resizing and distorting clips

To resize or distort a clip:

1 Select a clip in the Video Track then select the Attribute tab under the Options Panel.

2 Select
Distort clip then drag any of the following handles:
· Yellow handles at the corners to resize the clip proportionally (
A).
· Yellow handles at the sides to resize without maintaining proportions (
B).
· Green handles at the corners to skew the clip (
C).



Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Enhancing clips

VideoStudio lets you improve the quality of a video or image clip by adjusting its current properties such as its color settings in
Color Correction.

Adjusting color and brightness

Adjust color and brightness settings of images and video on the Timeline by clicking
Color Correction in the Options Panel.

To adjust color and brightness:

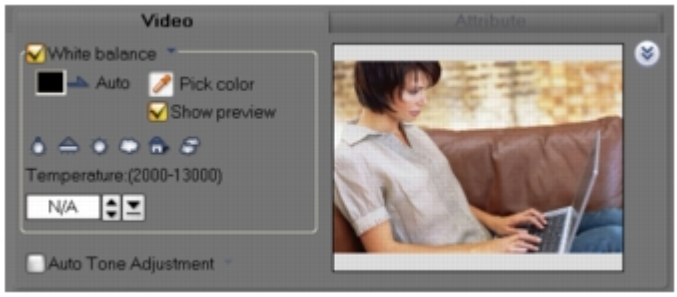
1 Select the video or image clip to enhance on the Timeline.
2 Drag the sliders to the right to intensify the Hue, Saturation, Brightness, Contrast or Gamma of the clip.
3 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.
Note: Click
Reset to restore the original color settings of the clip.

Adjusting white balance

White balance restores the natural color temperature of an image by removing wrong color casts due to conflicting light source and incorrect camera settings.
For example, an object illuminated with incandescent lights may turn out too reddish or yellowish in an image or video clip. To successfully achieve its natural effect, you need to identify a reference point in your image which represents the color white. VideoStudio gives you different options in selecting the white point: Auto: Gives you automatic calculation of the fitted white point that is well-matched with the overall color of your image. Pick Color: Allows you to manually select the white point in the image. Use the Eyedropper Tool to pick a reference area that should be white or neutral gray. White balance presets: Automatically selects white point by matching specific light conditions or scenarios. Temperature: Allows you to specify color temperature of light sources in Kelvin (K). Lower values indicate Tungsten, Fluorescent and Daylight scenarios while Cloudy, Shade and Overcast fall under high color temperature.

To adjust White balance:

1 Select an image or video clip on the Timeline or the Library.
2 In the Edit Step Options Panel, click
Color Correction.
3 Select
White balance.
4 Determine how you want to identify the white point. Choose among the different options (Auto, Pick color, White balance presets or
Temperature).



5 If you have selected Pick color, choose
Show preview to display a preview area in the Options Panel.
6 When you drag your cursor to the Preview area, it will change to an eyedropper icon.
7 Click to identify a reference point in your image which represents the color white.
8 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.
Tip: Click the White balance drop-down arrow to display more color adjustments you can use. Select Vivid Color or Normal Color for the color intensity. The Weaker, Normal and
Stronger options specify the level of sensitivity of White balance.

Adjusting tones

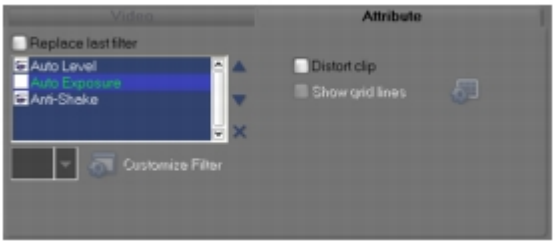
To adjust the tone quality of your video or image clips, click Color Correction in the Edit Step Options Panel and select Auto Tone Adjustment. You can indicate if you want the clip as Brightest, Brighter, Normal, Darker or Darkest by clicking the
Auto Tone Adjustment drop-down menu.

Applying video filters

Video filters are effects that you can apply to clips in order to change their style or appearance. For example, you can improve the color balance of a clip, or make it look like a painting.
Video filter samples: DeBlock: Smoothens uneven areas in a clip and reduces noise like block artifacts or mosquito effect that are usually found in some highly compressed videos. DeSnow: Removes visible and dynamic "snowy" noise patterns in videos captured from sources with poor TV signals or video clips usually taken under low lighting conditions or by cameras with high ISO values. Anti-shake: Allows you to correct or stabilize sub-standard videos due to camera shake.

To apply a video filter to a clip (video or image) in the Video Track:

1 Select a clip on the Timeline.
2 Click the Attribute tab in the Edit Step **Options Panel**
.
3 Choose a video filter from the Video Filter folder in the **Library**
to apply to your clip (by clicking the thumbnail).
4 Drag and drop the video filter onto your clip in the Video Track.
Note: By default, the filter applied to a clip is always replaced with the new filter dragged onto the clip. Clear
Replace last filter to apply multiple filters to a single clip. VideoStudio allows you to apply a maximum of five filters to a single clip. You can also choose the filter to be previewed through the selection in the view toggle. In the event that you choose to render your project, only enabled filters will be included in your movie.



5 Click Customize Filter in the Options Panel
to customize the attributes of the video filter. Available options depend on the selected filter.
6 Preview how your clip looks with the video filter applied to it using the Navigator.
Note: When there is more than one video filter applied to a clip, you can change the order of filters by clicking or
. Changing the order of the video filters will have drastic effects on your clip.

Key frame settings

VideoStudio allows you to customize video filters in a variety of ways. One way is by adding key frames to your clips. Key frames are frames in a clip where you can specify a different attribute or behavior for your video filter. This gives you the flexibility to determine how your video filter will look like at any point in a clip.

To set key frames for your clips:

1 Drag and drop a video filter from the Library onto a clip on the Timeline.
2 Click
Customize Filter. The dialog box for the video filter opens.
Note:
Settings available in the dialog box are different for each video filter.
3 In the Key frame controls, drag the
Jog Slider or use the arrows to go to the frame where you'd like to change the attributes of your video filter.



Note: You can use the mouse wheel to zoom in or out of the Timeline Control bar for precise placement of key frames.

4 Click Add key frame
to set that frame as a key frame in the clip. You can adjust the video filter settings for that particular frame.
Note: A diamond-shaped mark
on the Timeline Control bar will appear. This indicates the frame is a key frame in the clip.
5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to add more key frames to your clip.
6 Use the Timeline controls to edit or to go to a key frame in the clip.
· To delete a key frame, click Remove key frame

.

· Click Reverse key frames
to reverse the sequence of key frames on the Timeline such that the sequence starts with the last key frame and ends with the first key frame.

· To move to the succeeding key frame, click Go to next key frame

.

· To move to the key frame prior to the one selected, click Go to previous key frame

.

7 Adjust the video filter settings according to your preferences.

8 Preview the changes you've made by clicking Play
in the Preview Window of the dialog box.

9 Click
OK when finished.

Tip: You can preview the clip with applied video filter on VideoStudio's Preview Window or an external device such as a TV monitor or DV camcorder.

Click , then click to open the
Preview Playback Options dialog box where you can choose the display medium.

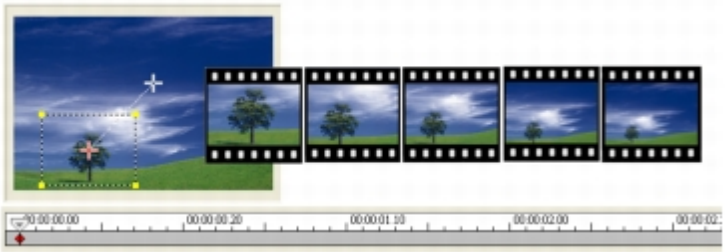
Panning & Zooming

Pan & Zoom is applied to still images, and it emulates the pan and zoom effect of a video camera. To apply this effect to an image, select an image clip on the Timeline, then select Pan & Zoom and click Customize Pan & Zoom.

Note: Pan & Zoom cannot be applied to masked images.

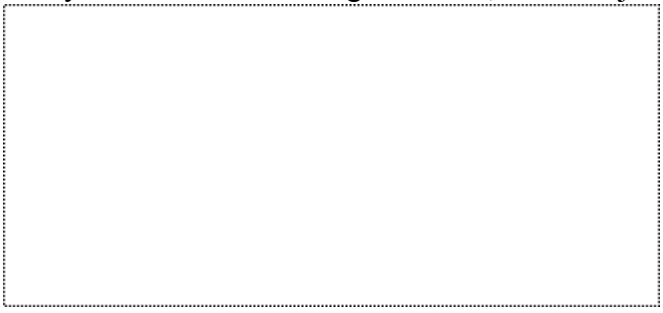
In the Pan & Zoom dialog box, the crosshairs
in the Image Window represent the key frames in the image clip where settings can be customized to produce the pan and zoom effect. When customizing each key frame, use the Image Window to focus on an area or to pan the image; use the Options tab settings to customize the zooming effect.

The procedure below shows an example of how to first zoom in on a subject, then pan and zoom out to show the whole image.



To apply Pan & Zoom:

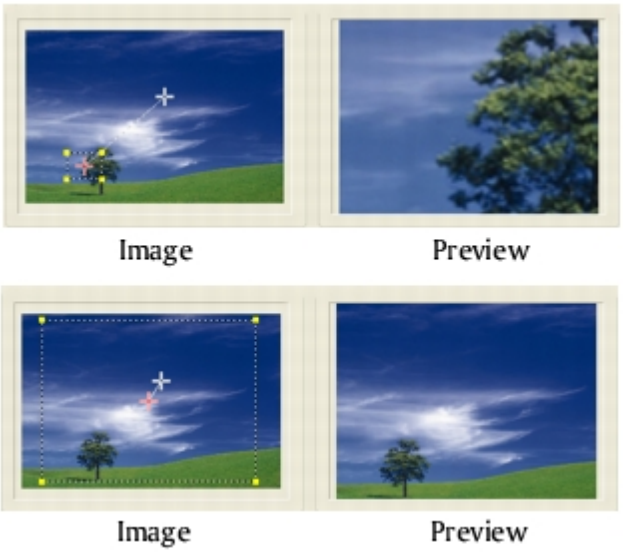
1 Drag the
Start key frame, represented by a crosshair in the Image Window, to the subject that you want to focus.



2 Zoom in on the subject by minimizing the marquee box or by increasing the Zoom ratio.



3 Drag the crosshair of the End key frame to your desired final point.



4 Click to preview the effect.

5 Click OK to apply the effect to the image.

Tips:

· Click the Anchor boxes to move the marquee box at fixed positions in the Image Window.

· To zoom in or out of a fixed area without panning the image, select No panning.

· To include a fade-in/out effect, increase the Transparency. The image will fade to the Background color. Click the color box to choose a background color, or click to select a color on the Image Window.



Resizing and distorting clips

To resize or distort a clip:

1 Select a clip in the Video Track then select the Attribute tab under the Options Panel.

2 Select
Distort clip then drag any of the following handles:
· Yellow handles at the corners to resize the clip proportionally (
A).
· Yellow handles at the sides to resize without maintaining proportions (
B).
· Green handles at the corners to skew the clip (
C).



Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Enhancing clips

VideoStudio lets you improve the quality of a video or image clip by adjusting its current properties such as its color settings in
Color Correction.

Adjusting color and brightness

Adjust color and brightness settings of images and video on the Timeline by clicking
Color Correction in the Options Panel.

To adjust color and brightness:

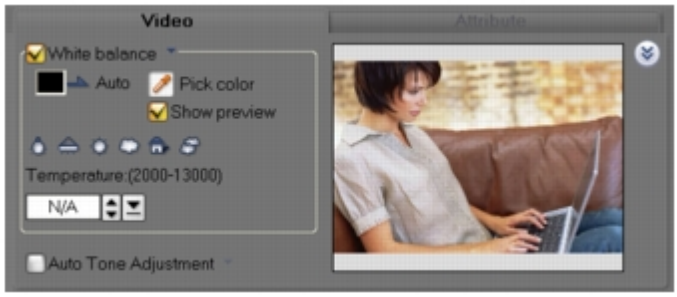
1 Select the video or image clip to enhance on the Timeline.
2 Drag the sliders to the right to intensify the Hue, Saturation, Brightness, Contrast or Gamma of the clip.
3 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.
Note: Click
Reset to restore the original color settings of the clip.

Adjusting white balance

White balance restores the natural color temperature of an image by removing wrong color casts due to conflicting light source and incorrect camera settings.
For example, an object illuminated with incandescent lights may turn out too reddish or yellowish in an image or video clip. To successfully achieve its natural effect, you need to identify a reference point in your image which represents the color white. VideoStudio gives you different options in selecting the white point: Auto: Gives you automatic calculation of the fitted white point that is well-matched with the overall color of your image. Pick Color: Allows you to manually select the white point in the image. Use the Eyedropper Tool to pick a reference area that should be white or neutral gray. White balance presets: Automatically selects white point by matching specific light conditions or scenarios. Temperature: Allows you to specify color temperature of light sources in Kelvin (K). Lower values indicate Tungsten, Fluorescent and Daylight scenarios while Cloudy, Shade and Overcast fall under high color temperature.

To adjust White balance:

1 Select an image or video clip on the Timeline or the Library.
2 In the Edit Step Options Panel, click
Color Correction.
3 Select
White balance.
4 Determine how you want to identify the white point. Choose among the different options (Auto, Pick color, White balance presets or
Temperature).



5 If you have selected Pick color, choose
Show preview to display a preview area in the Options Panel.
6 When you drag your cursor to the Preview area, it will change to an eyedropper icon.
7 Click to identify a reference point in your image which represents the color white.
8 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.
Tip: Click the White balance drop-down arrow to display more color adjustments you can use. Select Vivid Color or Normal Color for the color intensity. The Weaker, Normal and
Stronger options specify the level of sensitivity of White balance.

Adjusting tones

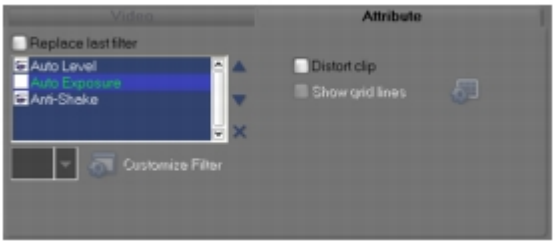
To adjust the tone quality of your video or image clips, click Color Correction in the Edit Step Options Panel and select Auto Tone Adjustment. You can indicate if you want the clip as Brightest, Brighter, Normal, Darker or Darkest by clicking the
Auto Tone Adjustment drop-down menu.

Applying video filters

Video filters are effects that you can apply to clips in order to change their style or appearance. For example, you can improve the color balance of a clip, or make it look like a painting.
Video filter samples: DeBlock: Smoothens uneven areas in a clip and reduces noise like block artifacts or mosquito effect that are usually found in some highly compressed videos. DeSnow: Removes visible and dynamic "snowy" noise patterns in videos captured from sources with poor TV signals or video clips usually taken under low lighting conditions or by cameras with high ISO values. Anti-shake: Allows you to correct or stabilize sub-standard videos due to camera shake.

To apply a video filter to a clip (video or image) in the Video Track:

1 Select a clip on the Timeline.
2 Click the Attribute tab in the Edit Step **Options Panel**
.
3 Choose a video filter from the Video Filter folder in the **Library**
to apply to your clip (by clicking the thumbnail).
4 Drag and drop the video filter onto your clip in the Video Track.
Note: By default, the filter applied to a clip is always replaced with the new filter dragged onto the clip. Clear
Replace last filter to apply multiple filters to a single clip. VideoStudio allows you to apply a maximum of five filters to a single clip. You can also choose the filter to be previewed through the selection in the view toggle. In the event that you choose to render your project, only enabled filters will be included in your movie.



5 Click Customize Filter in the Options Panel
to customize the attributes of the video filter. Available options depend on the selected filter.
6 Preview how your clip looks with the video filter applied to it using the Navigator.
Note: When there is more than one video filter applied to a clip, you can change the order of filters by clicking or
. Changing the order of the video filters will have drastic effects on your clip.

Key frame settings

VideoStudio allows you to customize video filters in a variety of ways. One way is by adding key frames to your clips. Key frames are frames in a clip where you can specify a different attribute or behavior for your video filter. This gives you the flexibility to determine how your video filter will look like at any point in a clip.

To set key frames for your clips:

1 Drag and drop a video filter from the Library onto a clip on the Timeline.
2 Click
Customize Filter. The dialog box for the video filter opens.
Note:
Settings available in the dialog box are different for each video filter.
3 In the Key frame controls, drag the
Jog Slider or use the arrows to go to the frame where you'd like to change the attributes of your video filter.



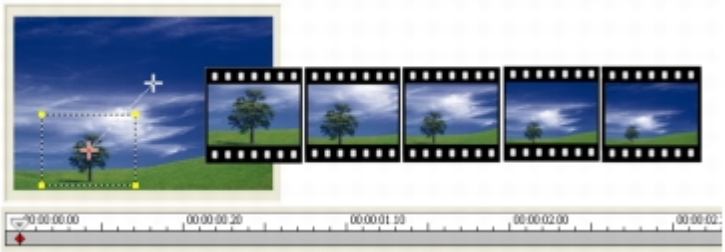
Note: You can use the mouse wheel to zoom in or out of the Timeline Control bar for precise placement of key frames.

4 Click Add key frame
to set that frame as a key frame in the clip. You can adjust the video filter settings for that particular frame.
Note: A diamond-shaped mark
on the Timeline Control bar will appear. This indicates the frame is a key frame in the clip.
5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to add more key frames to your clip.
6 Use the Timeline controls to edit or to go to a key frame in the clip.
· To delete a key frame, click Remove key frame

.
· Click Reverse key frames
to reverse the sequence of key frames on the Timeline such that the sequence starts with the last key frame and ends with the first key frame.
· To move to the succeeding key frame, click Go to next key frame
.
· To move to the key frame prior to the one selected, click Go to previous key frame
.
7 Adjust the video filter settings according to your preferences.
8 Preview the changes you've made by clicking Play
in the Preview Window of the dialog box.
9 Click
OK when finished.
Tip: You can preview the clip with applied video filter on VideoStudio's Preview Window or an external device such as a TV monitor or DV camcorder.
Click , then click to open the
Preview Playback Options dialog box where you can choose the display medium.

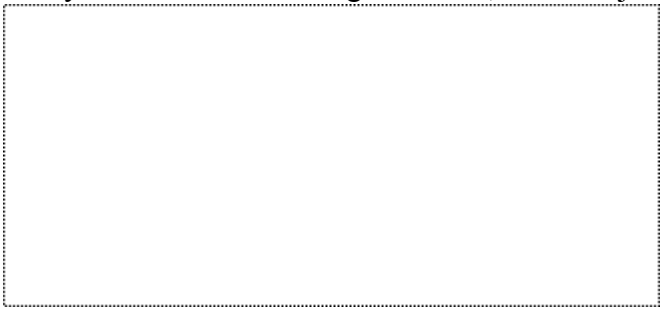
Panning & Zooming

Pan & Zoom is applied to still images, and it emulates the pan and zoom effect of a video camera. To apply this effect to an image, select an image clip on the Timeline, then select Pan & Zoom and click Customize Pan & Zoom.
Note: Pan & Zoom cannot be applied to masked images.
In the Pan & Zoom dialog box, the crosshairs
in the Image Window represent the key frames in the image clip where settings can be customized to produce the pan and zoom effect. When customizing each key frame, use the Image Window to focus on an area or to pan the image; use the Options tab settings to customize the zooming effect.
The procedure below shows an example of how to first zoom in on a subject, then pan and zoom out to show the whole image.



To apply Pan & Zoom:

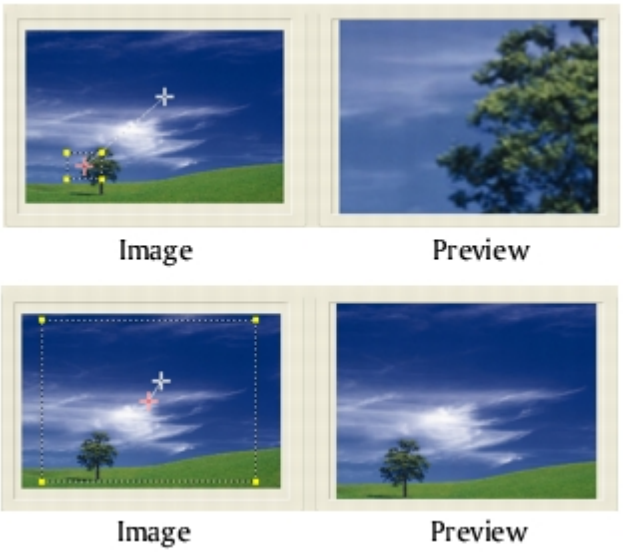
1 Drag the
Start key frame, represented by a crosshair in the Image Window, to the subject that you want to focus.



2 Zoom in on the subject by minimizing the marquee box or by increasing the Zoom ratio.



3 Drag the crosshair of the End key frame to your desired final point.



4 Click to preview the effect.

5 Click OK to apply the effect to the image.

Tips:

· Click the Anchor boxes to move the marquee box at fixed positions in the Image Window.

· To zoom in or out of a fixed area without panning the image, select No panning.

· To include a fade-in/out effect, increase the Transparency. The image will fade to the Background color. Click the color box to choose a background color, or click to select a color on the Image Window.



Resizing and distorting clips

To resize or distort a clip:

1 Select a clip in the Video Track then select the Attribute tab under the Options Panel.

2 Select
Distort clip then drag any of the following handles:
· Yellow handles at the corners to resize the clip proportionally (
A).
· Yellow handles at the sides to resize without maintaining proportions (
B).
· Green handles at the corners to skew the clip (
C).



Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Enhancing clips

VideoStudio lets you improve the quality of a video or image clip by adjusting its current properties such as its color settings in
Color Correction.

Adjusting color and brightness

Adjust color and brightness settings of images and video on the Timeline by clicking
Color Correction in the Options Panel.

To adjust color and brightness:

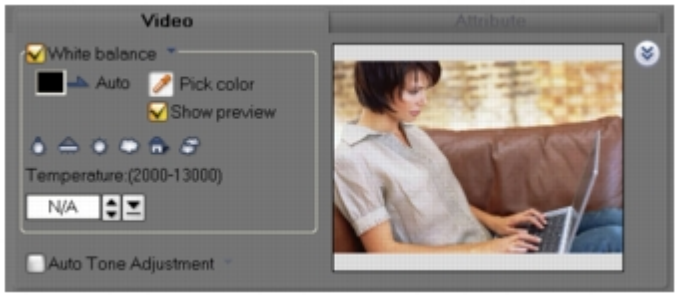
1 Select the video or image clip to enhance on the Timeline.
2 Drag the sliders to the right to intensify the Hue, Saturation, Brightness, Contrast or Gamma of the clip.
3 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.
Note: Click
Reset to restore the original color settings of the clip.

Adjusting white balance

White balance restores the natural color temperature of an image by removing wrong color casts due to conflicting light source and incorrect camera settings.
For example, an object illuminated with incandescent lights may turn out too reddish or yellowish in an image or video clip. To successfully achieve its natural effect, you need to identify a reference point in your image which represents the color white. VideoStudio gives you different options in selecting the white point: Auto: Gives you automatic calculation of the fitted white point that is well-matched with the overall color of your image. Pick Color: Allows you to manually select the white point in the image. Use the Eyedropper Tool to pick a reference area that should be white or neutral gray. White balance presets: Automatically selects white point by matching specific light conditions or scenarios. Temperature: Allows you to specify color temperature of light sources in Kelvin (K). Lower values indicate Tungsten, Fluorescent and Daylight scenarios while Cloudy, Shade and Overcast fall under high color temperature.

To adjust White balance:

1 Select an image or video clip on the Timeline or the Library.
2 In the Edit Step Options Panel, click
Color Correction.
3 Select
White balance.
4 Determine how you want to identify the white point. Choose among the different options (Auto, Pick color, White balance presets or
Temperature).



5 If you have selected Pick color, choose
Show preview to display a preview area in the Options Panel.
6 When you drag your cursor to the Preview area, it will change to an eyedropper icon.
7 Click to identify a reference point in your image which represents the color white.
8 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.
Tip: Click the White balance drop-down arrow to display more color adjustments you can use. Select Vivid Color or Normal Color for the color intensity. The Weaker, Normal and
Stronger options specify the level of sensitivity of White balance.

Adjusting tones

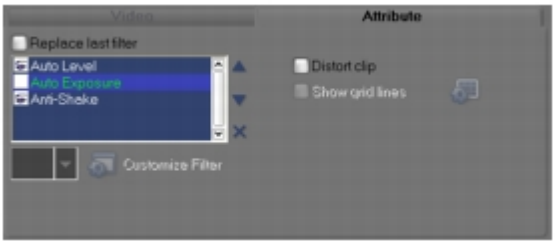
To adjust the tone quality of your video or image clips, click Color Correction in the Edit Step Options Panel and select Auto Tone Adjustment. You can indicate if you want the clip as Brightest, Brighter, Normal, Darker or Darkest by clicking the
Auto Tone Adjustment drop-down menu.

Applying video filters

Video filters are effects that you can apply to clips in order to change their style or appearance. For example, you can improve the color balance of a clip, or make it look like a painting.
Video filter samples: DeBlock: Smoothens uneven areas in a clip and reduces noise like block artifacts or mosquito effect that are usually found in some highly compressed videos. DeSnow: Removes visible and dynamic "snowy" noise patterns in videos captured from sources with poor TV signals or video clips usually taken under low lighting conditions or by cameras with high ISO values. Anti-shake: Allows you to correct or stabilize sub-standard videos due to camera shake.

To apply a video filter to a clip (video or image) in the Video Track:

1 Select a clip on the Timeline.
2 Click the Attribute tab in the Edit Step **Options Panel**
.
3 Choose a video filter from the Video Filter folder in the **Library**
to apply to your clip (by clicking the thumbnail).
4 Drag and drop the video filter onto your clip in the Video Track.
Note: By default, the filter applied to a clip is always replaced with the new filter dragged onto the clip. Clear
Replace last filter to apply multiple filters to a single clip. VideoStudio allows you to apply a maximum of five filters to a single clip. You can also choose the filter to be previewed through the selection in the view toggle. In the event that you choose to render your project, only enabled filters will be included in your movie.



5 Click Customize Filter in the Options Panel
to customize the attributes of the video filter. Available options depend on the selected filter.
6 Preview how your clip looks with the video filter applied to it using the Navigator.
Note: When there is more than one video filter applied to a clip, you can change the order of filters by clicking or
. Changing the order of the video filters will have drastic effects on your clip.

Key frame settings

VideoStudio allows you to customize video filters in a variety of ways. One way is by adding key frames to your clips. Key frames are frames in a clip where you can specify a different attribute or behavior for your video filter. This gives you the flexibility to determine how your video filter will look like at any point in a clip.

To set key frames for your clips:

1 Drag and drop a video filter from the Library onto a clip on the Timeline.
2 Click
Customize Filter. The dialog box for the video filter opens.
Note:
Settings available in the dialog box are different for each video filter.
3 In the Key frame controls, drag the
Jog Slider or use the arrows to go to the frame where you'd like to change the attributes of your video filter.



Note: You can use the mouse wheel to zoom in or out of the Timeline Control bar for precise placement of key frames.

4 Click Add key frame
to set that frame as a key frame in the clip. You can adjust the video filter settings for that particular frame.
Note: A diamond-shaped mark
on the Timeline Control bar will appear. This indicates the frame is a key frame in the clip.
5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to add more key frames to your clip.
6 Use the Timeline controls to edit or to go to a key frame in the clip.
· To delete a key frame, click Remove key frame

.

· Click Reverse key frames
to reverse the sequence of key frames on the Timeline such that the sequence starts with the last key frame and ends with the first key frame.

· To move to the succeeding key frame, click Go to next key frame

.

· To move to the key frame prior to the one selected, click Go to previous key frame

.

7 Adjust the video filter settings according to your preferences.

8 Preview the changes you've made by clicking Play
in the Preview Window of the dialog box.

9 Click
OK when finished.

Tip: You can preview the clip with applied video filter on VideoStudio's Preview Window or an external device such as a TV monitor or DV camcorder.

Click , then click to open the
Preview Playback Options dialog box where you can choose the display medium.

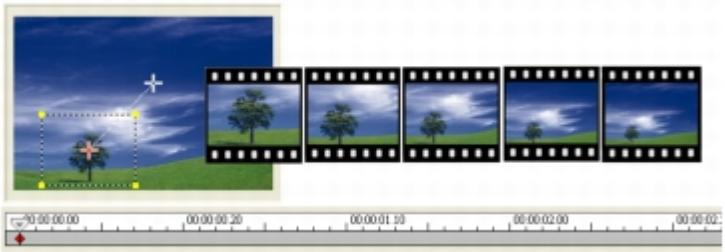
Panning & Zooming

Pan & Zoom is applied to still images, and it emulates the pan and zoom effect of a video camera. To apply this effect to an image, select an image clip on the Timeline, then select Pan & Zoom and click Customize Pan & Zoom.

Note: Pan & Zoom cannot be applied to masked images.

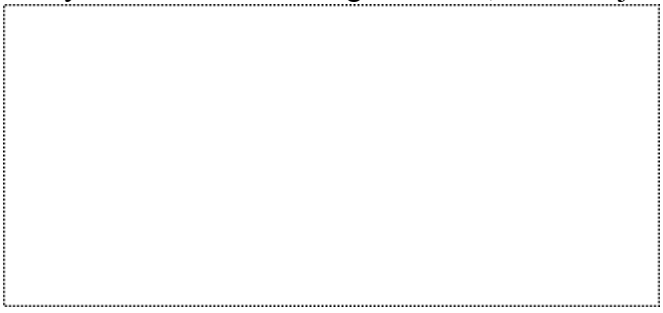
In the Pan & Zoom dialog box, the crosshairs
in the Image Window represent the key frames in the image clip where settings can be customized to produce the pan and zoom effect. When customizing each key frame, use the Image Window to focus on an area or to pan the image; use the Options tab settings to customize the zooming effect.

The procedure below shows an example of how to first zoom in on a subject, then pan and zoom out to show the whole image.



To apply Pan & Zoom:

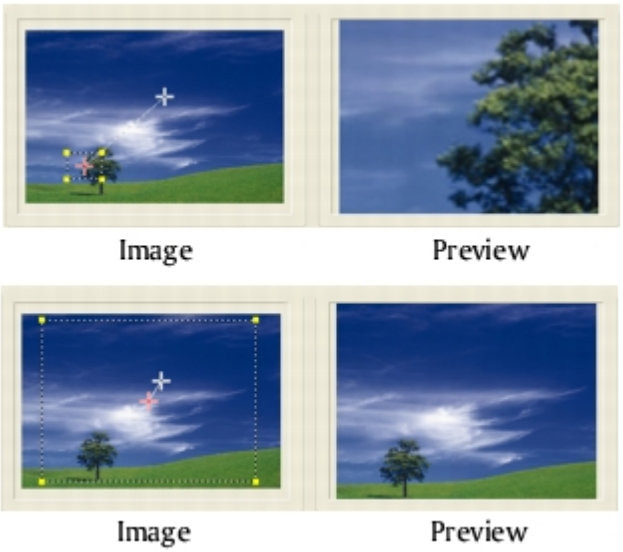
1 Drag the
Start key frame, represented by a crosshair in the Image Window, to the subject that you want to focus.



2 Zoom in on the subject by minimizing the marquee box or by increasing the Zoom ratio.



3 Drag the crosshair of the End key frame to your desired final point.



4 Click to preview the effect.

5 Click OK to apply the effect to the image.

Tips:

· Click the Anchor boxes to move the marquee box at fixed positions in the Image Window.

· To zoom in or out of a fixed area without panning the image, select No panning.

· To include a fade-in/out effect, increase the Transparency. The image will fade to the Background color. Click the color box to choose a background color, or click to select a color on the Image Window.



Resizing and distorting clips

To resize or distort a clip:

1 Select a clip in the Video Track then select the Attribute tab under the Options Panel.

2 Select
Distort clip then drag any of the following handles:
· Yellow handles at the corners to resize the clip proportionally (
A).
· Yellow handles at the sides to resize without maintaining proportions (
B).
· Green handles at the corners to skew the clip (
C).



Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Enhancing clips

VideoStudio lets you improve the quality of a video or image clip by adjusting its current properties such as its color settings in
Color Correction.

Adjusting color and brightness

Adjust color and brightness settings of images and video on the Timeline by clicking
Color Correction in the Options Panel.

To adjust color and brightness:

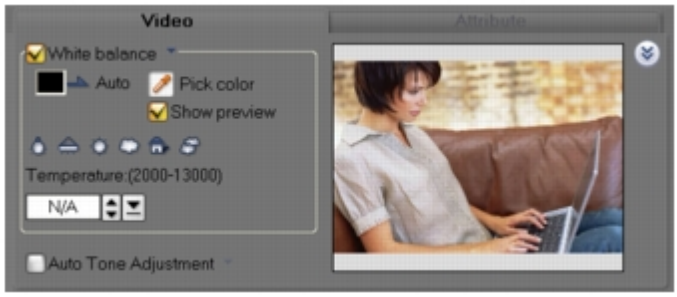
1 Select the video or image clip to enhance on the Timeline.
2 Drag the sliders to the right to intensify the Hue, Saturation, Brightness, Contrast or Gamma of the clip.
3 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.
Note: Click
Reset to restore the original color settings of the clip.

Adjusting white balance

White balance restores the natural color temperature of an image by removing wrong color casts due to conflicting light source and incorrect camera settings.
For example, an object illuminated with incandescent lights may turn out too reddish or yellowish in an image or video clip. To successfully achieve its natural effect, you need to identify a reference point in your image which represents the color white. VideoStudio gives you different options in selecting the white point: Auto: Gives you automatic calculation of the fitted white point that is well-matched with the overall color of your image. Pick Color: Allows you to manually select the white point in the image. Use the Eyedropper Tool to pick a reference area that should be white or neutral gray. White balance presets: Automatically selects white point by matching specific light conditions or scenarios. Temperature: Allows you to specify color temperature of light sources in Kelvin (K). Lower values indicate Tungsten, Fluorescent and Daylight scenarios while Cloudy, Shade and Overcast fall under high color temperature.

To adjust White balance:

1 Select an image or video clip on the Timeline or the Library.
2 In the Edit Step Options Panel, click
Color Correction.
3 Select
White balance.
4 Determine how you want to identify the white point. Choose among the different options (Auto, Pick color, White balance presets or
Temperature).



5 If you have selected Pick color, choose
Show preview to display a preview area in the Options Panel.
6 When you drag your cursor to the Preview area, it will change to an eyedropper icon.
7 Click to identify a reference point in your image which represents the color white.
8 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.
Tip: Click the White balance drop-down arrow to display more color adjustments you can use. Select Vivid Color or Normal Color for the color intensity. The Weaker, Normal and
Stronger options specify the level of sensitivity of White balance.

Adjusting tones

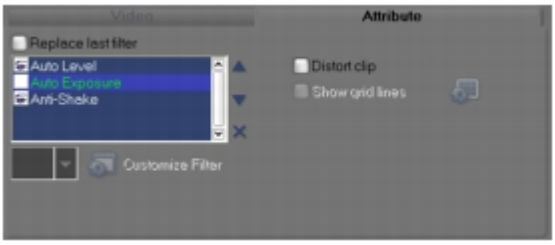
To adjust the tone quality of your video or image clips, click Color Correction in the Edit Step Options Panel and select Auto Tone Adjustment. You can indicate if you want the clip as Brightest, Brighter, Normal, Darker or Darkest by clicking the
Auto Tone Adjustment drop-down menu.

Applying video filters

Video filters are effects that you can apply to clips in order to change their style or appearance. For example, you can improve the color balance of a clip, or make it look like a painting.
Video filter samples: DeBlock: Smoothens uneven areas in a clip and reduces noise like block artifacts or mosquito effect that are usually found in some highly compressed videos. DeSnow: Removes visible and dynamic "snowy" noise patterns in videos captured from sources with poor TV signals or video clips usually taken under low lighting conditions or by cameras with high ISO values. Anti-shake: Allows you to correct or stabilize sub-standard videos due to camera shake.

To apply a video filter to a clip (video or image) in the Video Track:

1 Select a clip on the Timeline.
2 Click the Attribute tab in the Edit Step **Options Panel**
.
3 Choose a video filter from the Video Filter folder in the **Library**
to apply to your clip (by clicking the thumbnail).
4 Drag and drop the video filter onto your clip in the Video Track.
Note: By default, the filter applied to a clip is always replaced with the new filter dragged onto the clip. Clear
Replace last filter to apply multiple filters to a single clip. VideoStudio allows you to apply a maximum of five filters to a single clip. You can also choose the filter to be previewed through the selection in the view toggle. In the event that you choose to render your project, only enabled filters will be included in your movie.



5 Click Customize Filter in the Options Panel
to customize the attributes of the video filter. Available options depend on the selected filter.
6 Preview how your clip looks with the video filter applied to it using the Navigator.
Note: When there is more than one video filter applied to a clip, you can change the order of filters by clicking or
. Changing the order of the video filters will have drastic effects on your clip.

Key frame settings

VideoStudio allows you to customize video filters in a variety of ways. One way is by adding key frames to your clips. Key frames are frames in a clip where you can specify a different attribute or behavior for your video filter. This gives you the flexibility to determine how your video filter will look like at any point in a clip.

To set key frames for your clips:

1 Drag and drop a video filter from the Library onto a clip on the Timeline.
2 Click
Customize Filter. The dialog box for the video filter opens.
Note:
Settings available in the dialog box are different for each video filter.
3 In the Key frame controls, drag the
Jog Slider or use the arrows to go to the frame where you'd like to change the attributes of your video filter.



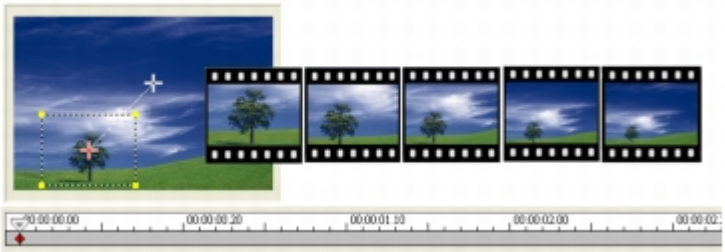
Note: You can use the mouse wheel to zoom in or out of the Timeline Control bar for precise placement of key frames.

4 Click Add key frame
to set that frame as a key frame in the clip. You can adjust the video filter settings for that particular frame.
Note: A diamond-shaped mark
on the Timeline Control bar will appear. This indicates the frame is a key frame in the clip.
5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to add more key frames to your clip.
6 Use the Timeline controls to edit or to go to a key frame in the clip.
· To delete a key frame, click Remove key frame

.
· Click Reverse key frames
to reverse the sequence of key frames on the Timeline such that the sequence starts with the last key frame and ends with the first key frame.
· To move to the succeeding key frame, click Go to next key frame
.
· To move to the key frame prior to the one selected, click Go to previous key frame
.
7 Adjust the video filter settings according to your preferences.
8 Preview the changes you've made by clicking Play
in the Preview Window of the dialog box.
9 Click
OK when finished.
Tip: You can preview the clip with applied video filter on VideoStudio's Preview Window or an external device such as a TV monitor or DV camcorder.
Click , then click to open the
Preview Playback Options dialog box where you can choose the display medium.

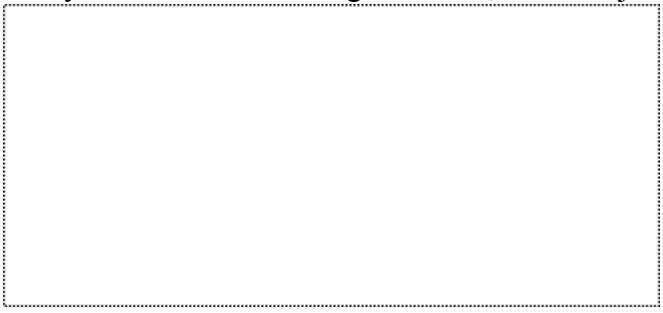
Panning & Zooming

Pan & Zoom is applied to still images, and it emulates the pan and zoom effect of a video camera. To apply this effect to an image, select an image clip on the Timeline, then select Pan & Zoom and click Customize Pan & Zoom.
Note: Pan & Zoom cannot be applied to masked images.
In the Pan & Zoom dialog box, the crosshairs
in the Image Window represent the key frames in the image clip where settings can be customized to produce the pan and zoom effect. When customizing each key frame, use the Image Window to focus on an area or to pan the image; use the Options tab settings to customize the zooming effect.
The procedure below shows an example of how to first zoom in on a subject, then pan and zoom out to show the whole image.



To apply Pan & Zoom:

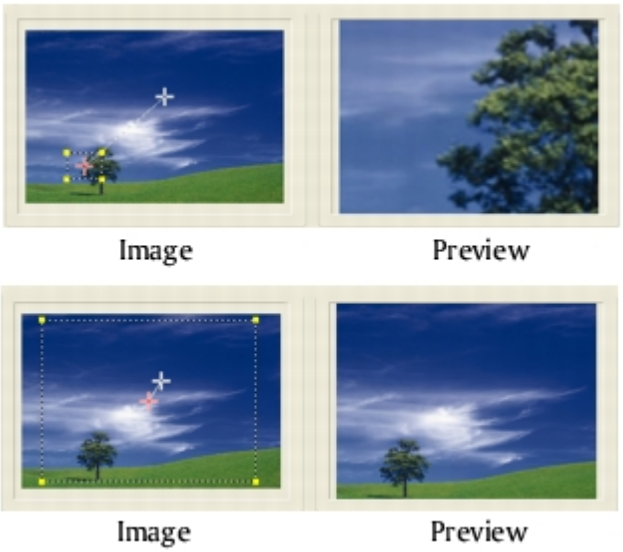
1 Drag the
Start key frame, represented by a crosshair in the Image Window, to the subject that you want to focus.



2 Zoom in on the subject by minimizing the marquee box or by increasing the Zoom ratio.



3 Drag the crosshair of the End key frame to your desired final point.



4 Click to preview the effect.

5 Click OK to apply the effect to the image.

Tips:

· Click the Anchor boxes to move the marquee box at fixed positions in the Image Window.

· To zoom in or out of a fixed area without panning the image, select No panning.

· To include a fade-in/out effect, increase the Transparency. The image will fade to the Background color. Click the color box to choose a background color, or click to select a color on the Image Window.



Resizing and distorting clips

To resize or distort a clip:

1 Select a clip in the Video Track then select the Attribute tab under the Options Panel.

2 Select
Distort clip then drag any of the following handles:
· Yellow handles at the corners to resize the clip proportionally (
A).
· Yellow handles at the sides to resize without maintaining proportions (
B).
· Green handles at the corners to skew the clip (
C).



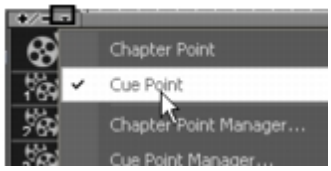
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Adding cues and chapters

Adding cues and chapters helps you to navigate through your project once you have recorded them onto a disc.

To add project cues:

1 Click the
Chapter/Cue Menu.

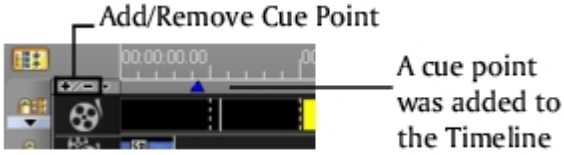


2 Select
Cue Point.

3 Drag the cursor to the part of the project you want to add cues and click the bar below the Timeline ruler. Notice that a blue arrow icon was added.



Another step of adding cue points is to drag the Timeline slider to the desired cue point position in your project. Click the
Add/Remove Cue Point.

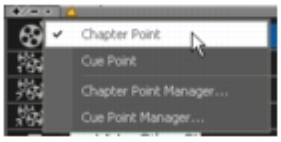


4 Repeat Step 3 to add more cue points.

Tip: You can also use the Cue Point Manager when adding cue points. Select Add and specify the timecode and name of cue for easy identification. Click OK and then
Close.

To add chapters:

1 Make sure that the Chapter Point is selected in the
Chapter/Cue Menu.



2 Drag the cursor to the part of the project you want to assign as chapters and click the bar below the Timeline ruler. Notice that, below your Timeline ruler, yellow chapter points are set as markers in your movie.



You can also drag the Timeline slider to the desired chapter point position in your project. Click the Add/Remove Chapter Point.

3 To edit a chapter, click on a chapter point you want to edit and drag to a new position.

4 To rename, double click a chapter point and then enter a new chapter name. Click OK.

Note: To remove chapters and cues, simply drag the markers outside the Timeline ruler and then drop. Or you can also drag the Timeline ruler to the chapter or cue point you want to remove and then click Add/Remove Chapter Point or
Add/Remove Cue Point.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Effect

Transition effects make your movie smoothly change from one scene to the next. They are applied between clips in the Video Track and their attributes can be modified in the Options Panel. Effective use of this feature can add a professional touch to your movie.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

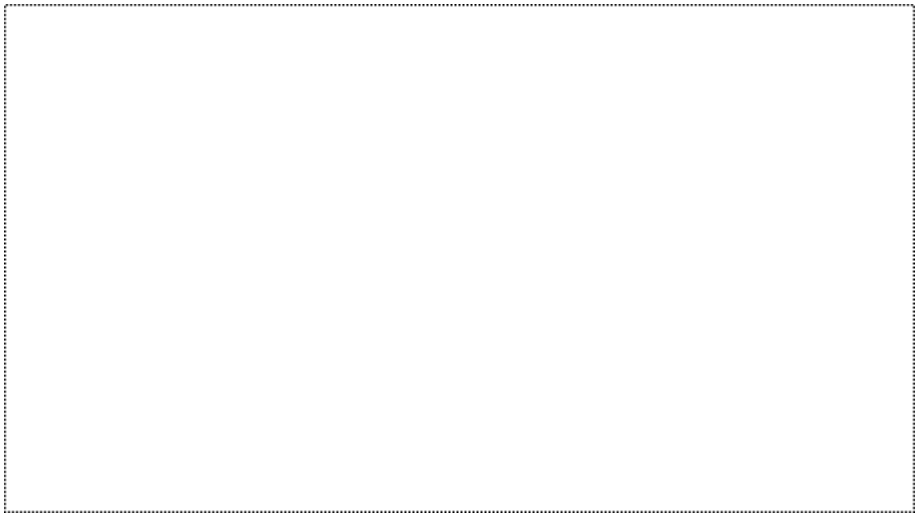
The Effect Step Options Panel

VideoStudio takes care of all the details to make your transitions smooth and professional. You can further customize your transitions after adding them to your project. The
Effect Step Options Panel displays the settings of your selected transition so that you can change their various attributes. This gives you complete control of exactly how your transitions will behave and look like in your movie.
Note: The attributes in the Options Panel vary depending on the type of transition effect that is selected and applied to your project. Duration: Shows the duration of the applied effect on the selected clip in hours:minutes:seconds:frames. You can adjust the duration by changing the timecode values. Border: Determines the thickness of the border. Enter 0 to remove the border. Color: Determines the hue of the transition effect's border or flap. Soft edge: Specifies how well you want the transition effect to blend with the clips. A Strong soft edge results in a less pronounced transition, thus creating a smooth progression from one clip to another. This option works best for irregular shapes and angles. Direction: Specifies the direction of a transition effect. (This is only applicable to some of the transition effects.)

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Adding transitions

The **Library** provides a wide range of preset transitions from crossfades to explosions that you can add to your project.



Note: By default, you need to manually add transitions to your project. But when two clips overlap each other on the timeline, a default transition effect is added between the overlapping clips. If you want VideoStudio to automatically add transitions between clips, select File: Preferences - Edit then select Automatically add transition effect and choose a transition effect from the Default transition effect drop-down menu. This saves you time in adding transitions, especially when you are creating a slideshow project that contains images only, since transitions are applied and automatically added between images based on the transition effect you specified as the default transition.

To add a transition:

1 Click the Effect Step, then select one of the categories of transitions from the Folders list.

2 Scroll through the effects thumbnails in the **Library**. Select and drag an effect to the **Timeline**, roughly between two video clips. Drop your effect and it will snap into place. You can only drag and drop one clip at a time.

Tip: Double-clicking a transition in the Library automatically inserts it into the first empty transition slot between two clips. Repeating this process will insert a transition into the next empty transition slot.

To replace a transition in your project, drag the new transition from the Library onto the transition thumbnail to be replaced on the Storyboard or Timeline.

The Album transition

One of the transitions you will find in the **Library** is the Album transition. Album simulates the turning pages similar to that of flipping photo album pages. You can choose from a variety of album layouts, change the album cover, background, size, and position, and more.

To apply the Album transition:

1 Click the Effect Step then select
Album from the Library.
Apply by dragging a transition thumbnail in between two clips on the Video Track.
2 In the Options Panel, click Customize to open the
Flip-Album dialog box.
3 In the
Layout section, choose the desired look for the album.
4 In the Album tab, set the album's Size, Position and
Orientation.
To change the album cover, select a preset from Album cover templates, or select
Custom album cover then import your own cover image.
5 Click the
Background and Shadow tab.
To change the background of the album, select a preset from Background templates, or select
Custom background then import your own background image.
To add a shadow, select Shadow. Set the shadow position by adjusting the X and Y-offset values. To make the shadow look softer, increase
Soft edge.
Note: To change the shadow color, click the color box and choose the desired color.
6 Click the
Page A tab. Customize the first page of the album.
To change the image on the page, select a preset from Album page templates, or select
Custom album page then import your own image.
To adjust the size and position of the clip on the page, adjust the Size, X, and
Y values.
7 Click the
Page B tab. Customize the second page of the album.
Follow step 6 to make adjustments.
8 Use the slider and buttons below the **Preview**
Window in the dialog box to preview the results.
9 Click
OK to apply the adjustments.

The Flashback transition

You can use the Flashback transition to simulate a flashback or introduce a dream sequence for the next scene. Light is added to the dissolving scenes to create a dreamy effect.



The Flashback transition contains the following options: Fade level: Set the thickness of the soft edge of the mask. Halo brightness: Set the intensity of the light. Halo size: Set the coverage of the light. Contrast: Set the color contrast between the two clips. Middle flash: Adds an element of light to the dissolving mask. Inverse: Reverses the effect of the mask.

The Mask transitions

Different patterns or objects such as shapes, leaves, balls, and more can be used in transition effects by rendering them as masks. You can select from preset masks or import a BMP file and use it as a mask for your transition.

MaskA



MaskB



MaskC



MaskD



MaskE



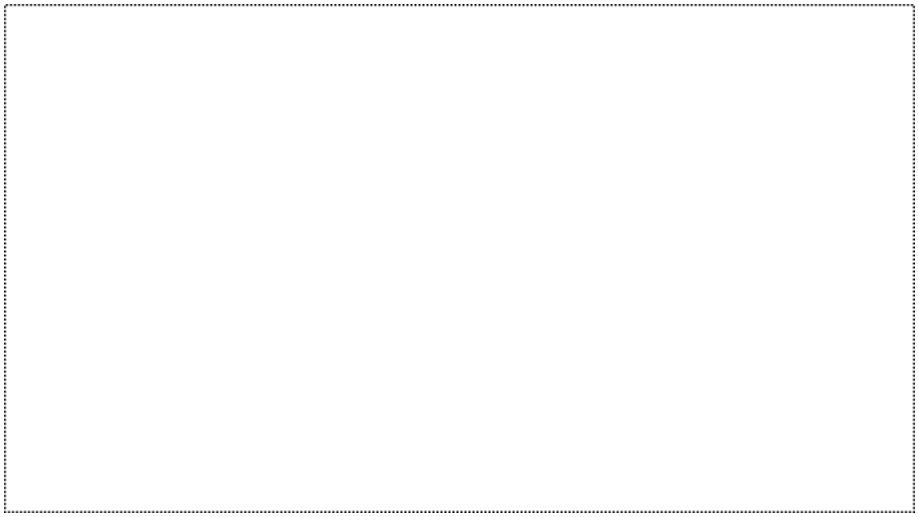
MaskF



Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Adding transitions

The **Library** provides a wide range of preset transitions from crossfades to explosions that you can add to your project.



Note: By default, you need to manually add transitions to your project. But when two clips overlap each other on the timeline, a default transition effect is added between the overlapping clips. If you want VideoStudio to automatically add transitions between clips, select File: Preferences - Edit then select Automatically add transition effect and choose a transition effect from the Default transition effect drop-down menu. This saves you time in adding transitions, especially when you are creating a slideshow project that contains images only, since transitions are applied and automatically added between images based on the transition effect you specified as the default transition.

To add a transition:

1 Click the Effect Step, then select one of the categories of transitions from the Folders list.

2 Scroll through the effects thumbnails in the **Library**. Select and drag an effect to the **Timeline**, roughly between two video clips. Drop your effect and it will snap into place. You can only drag and drop one clip at a time.

Tip: Double-clicking a transition in the Library automatically inserts it into the first empty transition slot between two clips. Repeating this process will insert a transition into the next empty transition slot.

To replace a transition in your project, drag the new transition from the Library onto the transition thumbnail to be replaced on the Storyboard or Timeline.

The Album transition

One of the transitions you will find in the **Library** is the Album transition. Album simulates the turning pages similar to that of flipping photo album pages. You can choose from a variety of album layouts, change the album cover, background, size, and position, and more.

To apply the Album transition:

1 Click the Effect Step then select
Album from the Library.
Apply by dragging a transition thumbnail in between two clips on the Video Track.
2 In the Options Panel, click Customize to open the
Flip-Album dialog box.
3 In the
Layout section, choose the desired look for the album.
4 In the Album tab, set the album's Size, Position and
Orientation.
To change the album cover, select a preset from Album cover templates, or select
Custom album cover then import your own cover image.
5 Click the
Background and Shadow tab.
To change the background of the album, select a preset from Background templates, or select
Custom background then import your own background image.
To add a shadow, select Shadow. Set the shadow position by adjusting the X and Y-offset values. To make the shadow look softer, increase
Soft edge.
Note: To change the shadow color, click the color box and choose the desired color.
6 Click the
Page A tab. Customize the first page of the album.
To change the image on the page, select a preset from Album page templates, or select
Custom album page then import your own image.
To adjust the size and position of the clip on the page, adjust the Size, X, and
Y values.
7 Click the
Page B tab. Customize the second page of the album.
Follow step 6 to make adjustments.
8 Use the slider and buttons below the **Preview**
Window in the dialog box to preview the results.
9 Click
OK to apply the adjustments.

The Flashback transition

You can use the Flashback transition to simulate a flashback or introduce a dream sequence for the next scene. Light is added to the dissolving scenes to create a dreamy effect.



The Flashback transition contains the following options: Fade level: Set the thickness of the soft edge of the mask. Halo brightness: Set the intensity of the light. Halo size: Set the coverage of the light. Contrast: Set the color contrast between the two clips. Middle flash: Adds an element of light to the dissolving mask. Inverse: Reverses the effect of the mask.

The Mask transitions

Different patterns or objects such as shapes, leaves, balls, and more can be used in transition effects by rendering them as masks. You can select from preset masks or import a BMP file and use it as a mask for your transition.

MaskA



MaskB



MaskC



MaskD



MaskE



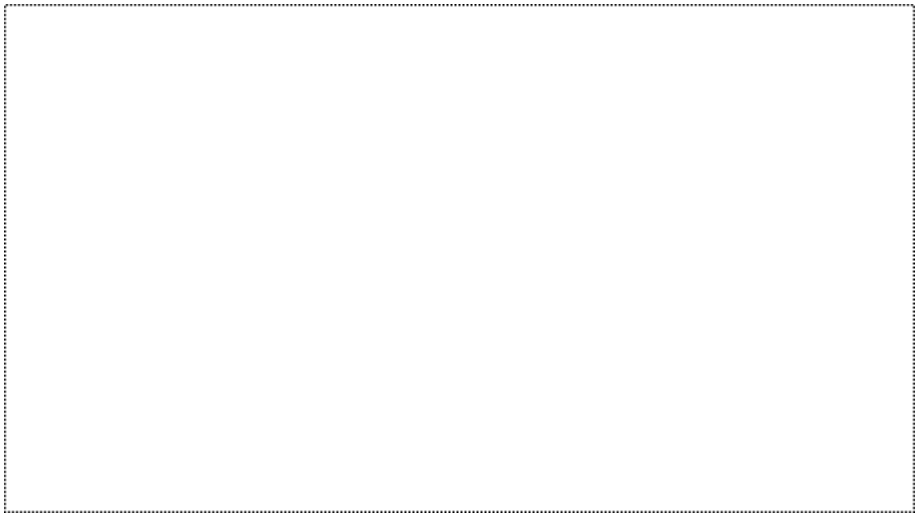
MaskF



Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Adding transitions

The **Library** provides a wide range of preset transitions from crossfades to explosions that you can add to your project.



Note: By default, you need to manually add transitions to your project. But when two clips overlap each other on the timeline, a default transition effect is added between the overlapping clips. If you want VideoStudio to automatically add transitions between clips, select File: Preferences - Edit then select Automatically add transition effect and choose a transition effect from the Default transition effect drop-down menu. This saves you time in adding transitions, especially when you are creating a slideshow project that contains images only, since transitions are applied and automatically added between images based on the transition effect you specified as the default transition.

To add a transition:

1 Click the Effect Step, then select one of the categories of transitions from the Folders list.

2 Scroll through the effects thumbnails in the **Library**. Select and drag an effect to the **Timeline**, roughly between two video clips. Drop your effect and it will snap into place. You can only drag and drop one clip at a time.

Tip: Double-clicking a transition in the Library automatically inserts it into the first empty transition slot between two clips. Repeating this process will insert a transition into the next empty transition slot.

To replace a transition in your project, drag the new transition from the Library onto the transition thumbnail to be replaced on the Storyboard or Timeline.

The Album transition

One of the transitions you will find in the **Library** is the Album transition. Album simulates the turning pages similar to that of flipping photo album pages. You can choose from a variety of album layouts, change the album cover, background, size, and position, and more.

To apply the Album transition:

1 Click the Effect Step then select
Album from the Library.
Apply by dragging a transition thumbnail in between two clips on the Video Track.
2 In the Options Panel, click Customize to open the
Flip-Album dialog box.
3 In the
Layout section, choose the desired look for the album.
4 In the Album tab, set the album's Size, Position and
Orientation.
To change the album cover, select a preset from Album cover templates, or select
Custom album cover then import your own cover image.
5 Click the
Background and Shadow tab.
To change the background of the album, select a preset from Background templates, or select
Custom background then import your own background image.
To add a shadow, select Shadow. Set the shadow position by adjusting the X and Y-offset values. To make the shadow look softer, increase
Soft edge.
Note: To change the shadow color, click the color box and choose the desired color.
6 Click the
Page A tab. Customize the first page of the album.
To change the image on the page, select a preset from Album page templates, or select
Custom album page then import your own image.
To adjust the size and position of the clip on the page, adjust the Size, X, and
Y values.
7 Click the
Page B tab. Customize the second page of the album.
Follow step 6 to make adjustments.
8 Use the slider and buttons below the **Preview**
Window in the dialog box to preview the results.
9 Click
OK to apply the adjustments.

The Flashback transition

You can use the Flashback transition to simulate a flashback or introduce a dream sequence for the next scene. Light is added to the dissolving scenes to create a dreamy effect.



The Flashback transition contains the following options: Fade level: Set the thickness of the soft edge of the mask. Halo brightness: Set the intensity of the light. Halo size: Set the coverage of the light. Contrast: Set the color contrast between the two clips. Middle flash: Adds an element of light to the dissolving mask. Inverse: Reverses the effect of the mask.

The Mask transitions

Different patterns or objects such as shapes, leaves, balls, and more can be used in transition effects by rendering them as masks. You can select from preset masks or import a BMP file and use it as a mask for your transition.

MaskA



MaskB



MaskC



MaskD



MaskE



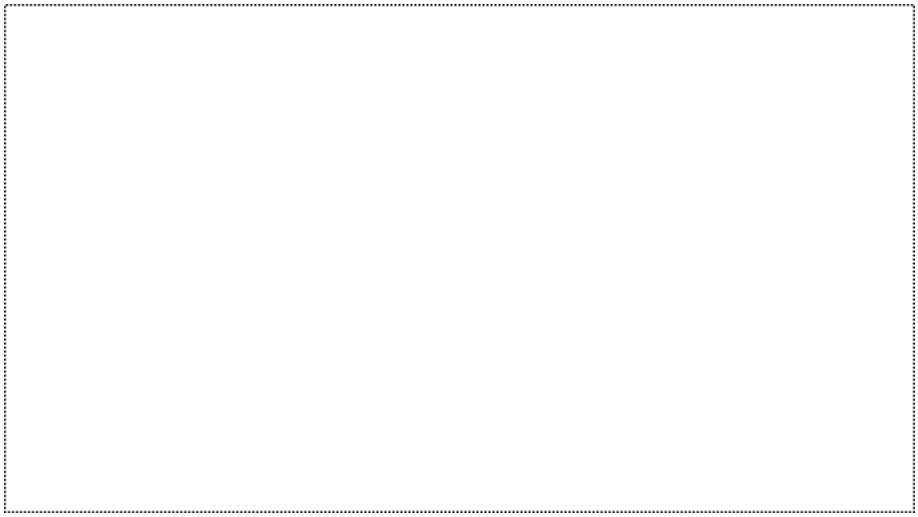
MaskF



Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Adding transitions

The **Library** provides a wide range of preset transitions from crossfades to explosions that you can add to your project.



Note: By default, you need to manually add transitions to your project. But when two clips overlap each other on the timeline, a default transition effect is added between the overlapping clips. If you want VideoStudio to automatically add transitions between clips, select File: Preferences - Edit then select Automatically add transition effect and choose a transition effect from the Default transition effect drop-down menu. This saves you time in adding transitions, especially when you are creating a slideshow project that contains images only, since transitions are applied and automatically added between images based on the transition effect you specified as the default transition.

To add a transition:

1 Click the Effect Step, then select one of the categories of transitions from the Folders list.

2 Scroll through the effects thumbnails in the **Library**. Select and drag an effect to the **Timeline**, roughly between two video clips. Drop your effect and it will snap into place. You can only drag and drop one clip at a time.

Tip: Double-clicking a transition in the Library automatically inserts it into the first empty transition slot between two clips. Repeating this process will insert a transition into the next empty transition slot.

To replace a transition in your project, drag the new transition from the Library onto the transition thumbnail to be replaced on the Storyboard or Timeline.

The Album transition

One of the transitions you will find in the **Library** is the Album transition. Album simulates the turning pages similar to that of flipping photo album pages. You can choose from a variety of album layouts, change the album cover, background, size, and position, and more.

To apply the Album transition:

1 Click the Effect Step then select
Album from the Library.
Apply by dragging a transition thumbnail in between two clips on the Video Track.
2 In the Options Panel, click Customize to open the
Flip-Album dialog box.
3 In the
Layout section, choose the desired look for the album.
4 In the Album tab, set the album's Size, Position and
Orientation.
To change the album cover, select a preset from Album cover templates, or select
Custom album cover then import your own cover image.
5 Click the
Background and Shadow tab.
To change the background of the album, select a preset from Background templates, or select
Custom background then import your own background image.
To add a shadow, select Shadow. Set the shadow position by adjusting the X and Y-offset values. To make the shadow look softer, increase
Soft edge.
Note: To change the shadow color, click the color box and choose the desired color.
6 Click the
Page A tab. Customize the first page of the album.
To change the image on the page, select a preset from Album page templates, or select
Custom album page then import your own image.
To adjust the size and position of the clip on the page, adjust the Size, X, and
Y values.
7 Click the
Page B tab. Customize the second page of the album.
Follow step 6 to make adjustments.
8 Use the slider and buttons below the **Preview**
Window in the dialog box to preview the results.
9 Click
OK to apply the adjustments.

The Flashback transition

You can use the Flashback transition to simulate a flashback or introduce a dream sequence for the next scene. Light is added to the dissolving scenes to create a dreamy effect.



The Flashback transition contains the following options: Fade level: Set the thickness of the soft edge of the mask. Halo brightness: Set the intensity of the light. Halo size: Set the coverage of the light. Contrast: Set the color contrast between the two clips. Middle flash: Adds an element of light to the dissolving mask. Inverse: Reverses the effect of the mask.

The Mask transitions

Different patterns or objects such as shapes, leaves, balls, and more can be used in transition effects by rendering them as masks. You can select from preset masks or import a BMP file and use it as a mask for your transition.

MaskA



MaskB



MaskC



MaskD



MaskE



MaskF



Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Mask transition options

The Mask transitions contain the following options. The availability of the option depends on the type of mask selected. Masks: Select a preset template to use as mask for the transition. Current: Click to open a dialog box where you can browse BMP files to use as the transition's mask. Middle flash: Adds an element of light to the dissolving mask. X/Y Opposite: Reverses the path direction of the Mask. Sync Clip: Matches the motion of the clip to the motion of the mask. Inverse: Reverses the effect of the mask. Rotation: Specifies how many degrees the mask will rotate. Fade level: Sets the thickness of the soft edge of the mask. Size: Sets the size of the mask.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Adding transitions to My Favorites

You can collect your favorite transitions from different categories and compile it in My Favorites folder. This way, you can easily search the transition effects you use more often.

To save a transition in My Favorites:

1 Right-click a transition effect in the Library.
2 Select
Add to My Favorites.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Applying selected transition effect to all clips

You can apply a transition effect to all clips without having to manually drag the effect to the Timeline.

Select a transition effect in the Library and click  . Select
Apply current effect to video track or you can right-click on the transition effect and select the same option.

To insert randomly selected transition effects, select
Apply random effect(s) to video track.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Overlay

The
Overlay Step allows you to add overlay clips to combine with your videos in the Video Track. Use an Overlay clip to create a picture-in-picture effect or add a lower-third to create more professional-looking movie productions.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

The Overlay Step Options Panel

There are two tabs in the Overlay Step Options Panel: Edit tab and Attribute tab.

Edit tab

The Edit tab allows you to customize properties such as clip duration, playback speed, and audio properties of the Overlay clip. The available options in this tab will depend on the selected Overlay clip.

Attribute tab

The Attribute tab allows you to apply motion, transparency, filters and border to the Overlay clip. Mask & Chroma Key: Opens the Overlay Options Panel where you can specify the transparency and Overlay options to be applied to the Overlay clip. Attribute Options: Displays various commands you can apply to the Overlay clip. Replace last filter: Allows the last filter applied to a clip to be replaced when you drag a new filter onto the clip. Clear this option if you want to add multiple filters to your clips. Applied filters: Lists the video filters that were applied to a clip. Click  or  to arrange the order of the filters. Delete filter: Removes the selected filter from the Overlay clip. Click  to remove a filter. Presets: Opens a menu where you can select a preset for the selected filter to apply to the Overlay clip. Customize filter: Opens a dialog box where you can define settings and options for the selected filter. Direction/Style: Sets the type of movement to be applied to the Overlay clip. Enter/Exit: Sets the directions in which the clip will enter and leave the screen. Rotate before/after pause duration: Select to rotate the clip before or after pause duration. Fade-in/Fade-out motion effect: Select to gradually increase or decrease the transparency of the clip when it enters or leaves the screen. Show grid lines: Select to display the grid lines. Click  to open a dialog box where you can specify settings for the grid lines.

Mask & Chroma Key Options Panel Transparency: Sets the opacity of the clip. Drag the slider or enter a value to adjust the transparency. Border: Enter a value to set the thickness of the border. Click the Color Box to select the border color. Apply Overlay options: Select to specify how transparent section of the Overlay clip will be rendered. Type: Select to apply preset or imported masks on an Overlay clip or specify a color to be rendered as transparent. Similarity: Specifies the color range of a selected color's pixels that will be rendered as transparent. Click the Color Box then select the color that will be rendered as transparent. Click  to select a color in the Overlay clip.  : Goes back to the previous Options Panel.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Adding clips to the Overlay Track

Drag media files to the Overlay Track on the Timeline to add them as overlay clips for your project.

To add a clip to the Overlay Track:

1 In the Library, select the media folder that contains the Overlay clip that you want to add to your project.

Tip: To load media files into the Library, click . In the dialog box that opens, locate the media file and click
Open.

2 Drag the media file from the **Library** to the **Overlay Track** on the **Timeline**
.



Tips:

· To insert a media file directly to the Overlay Track, right-click the Overlay Track and select the type of file you want to add. The file will not be added into the Library.

· You can also use color clips as Overlay clips.

3 Customize the Overlay clip using the options available in the
Edit tab.

4 Click the
Attribute tab. The Overlay clip is then resized to a preset size and positioned at the center. Use the options in the Attribute tab to apply motion to the Overlay clip, add filters, resize and reposition the clip, and more.

Tips
:

· To make Overlay clips with transparent backgrounds, you can create a 32-bit alpha channel AVI video file or an image file with an alpha channel. You can use an animation program such as Ulead COOL 3D Production Studio or an image editing program such as Ulead PhotoImpact to create these video and image files.

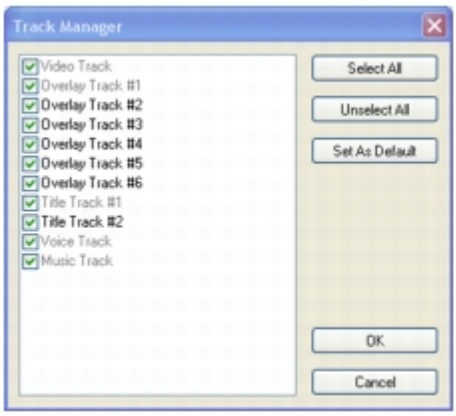
· Another alternative is to use VideoStudio's Mask & Chroma Key function to mask a specific color on an image.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some

features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Adding Multiple Tracks

You can also insert media files on another Overlay Track for added impact for your movie. You can either show or hide these Overlay Tracks in your project. Click
Track Manager in the Toolbar to open the Track Manager dialog box. Select the Overlay Tracks to display.



Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Working with Overlay clips

Adding multiple Overlay Tracks gives you more creative possibilities for your movie. You can superimpose clips over a background video with portions of the overlay being transparent or add objects and frames to your video. Achieving different effects for your projects can be easy when you know how to use Overlay clips and tracks.

Trimming Overlay clips

You can trim a clip in the Overlay Track like the way you trim a clip in the Video Track. To cut clips in the Video and Overlay Tracks all at once, select Project as the Play mode and then drag the slider to the part you want to cut. Click 
.

Repositioning the current Overlay clip

Click to select the Overlay clip on the Timeline.



After clicking the Attribute tab, drag the Overlay clip to the desired area on the Preview Window. It is recommended that you keep the Overlay clip within the title safe area.
You can also click
Alignment Options in the Attribute tab to open a menu where you can automatically place the Overlay clip in a preset position on the video. Here, you can also resize the Overlay clip to keep the aspect ratio, revert it to the default size, use the original size of the Overlay clip, or resize it to occupy the entire screen.

Resizing an Overlay clip

After clicking the Attribute tab, drag a handle on the Overlay clip on the Preview Window to resize it. If you drag a yellow corner handle, it will keep the aspect ratio when you resize the clip.



It is recommended that you keep the Overlay clip within the title safe area.
The Keep Aspect Ratio in
Attribute Options resizes the Overlay clip based on the width or height, depending on which is longer in length, of the Overlay clip.



Note: When you resize or distort the Overlay clip then go back to the Edit
tab, the clip will appear to have resized back to its original size. This is only for editing purposes, the Overlay clip retains its properties.

Distorting an Overlay clip

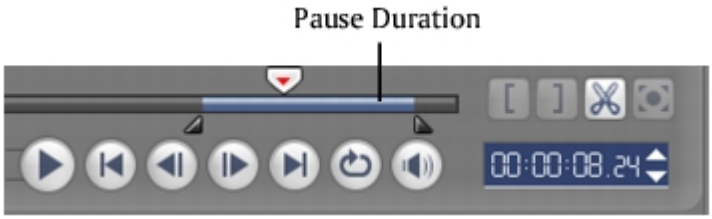
Each corner of the marquee of the Overlay clip have green nodes which you can use to distort the Overlay clip. Drag the green nodes to distort the Overlay clip.



Tip: Hold [Shift]
while dragging the green nodes to keep the distortion within the current clip's marquee.

Applying motion to the Overlay clip

After clicking the Attribute tab, select where the Overlay clip will Enter and Exit the screen under Direction/Style. Click a specific arrow as to where you want your clip to enter and exit in your movie.
Tip: Pause Duration determines how long your pause will be in the designated area before the clip exits the screen. If you applied motion to the Overlay clip, drag the Trim handles to set the
Pause Duration.



Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Working with Overlay clips

Adding multiple Overlay Tracks gives you more creative possibilities for your movie. You can superimpose clips over a background video with portions of the overlay being transparent or add objects and frames to your video. Achieving different effects for your projects can be easy when you know how to use Overlay clips and tracks.

Trimming Overlay clips

You can trim a clip in the Overlay Track like the way you trim a clip in the Video Track. To cut clips in the Video and Overlay Tracks all at once, select Project as the Play mode and then drag the slider to the part you want to cut. Click 
.

Repositioning the current Overlay clip

Click to select the Overlay clip on the Timeline.



After clicking the Attribute tab, drag the Overlay clip to the desired area on the Preview Window. It is recommended that you keep the Overlay clip within the title safe area.
You can also click
Alignment Options in the Attribute tab to open a menu where you can automatically place the Overlay clip in a preset position on the video. Here, you can also resize the Overlay clip to keep the aspect ratio, revert it to the default size, use the original size of the Overlay clip, or resize it to occupy the entire screen.

Resizing an Overlay clip

After clicking the Attribute tab, drag a handle on the Overlay clip on the Preview Window to resize it. If you drag a yellow corner handle, it will keep the aspect ratio when you resize the clip.



It is recommended that you keep the Overlay clip within the title safe area.
The Keep Aspect Ratio in
Attribute Options resizes the Overlay clip based on the width or height, depending on which is longer in length, of the Overlay clip.



Note: When you resize or distort the Overlay clip then go back to the Edit
tab, the clip will appear to have resized back to its original size. This is only for editing purposes, the Overlay clip retains its properties.

Distorting an Overlay clip

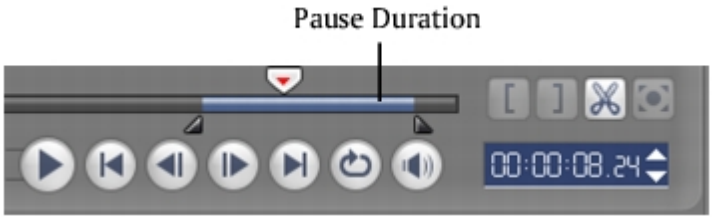
Each corner of the marquee of the Overlay clip have green nodes which you can use to distort the Overlay clip. Drag the green nodes to distort the Overlay clip.



Tip: Hold [Shift]
while dragging the green nodes to keep the distortion within the current clip's marquee.

Applying motion to the Overlay clip

After clicking the Attribute tab, select where the Overlay clip will Enter and Exit the screen under Direction/Style. Click a specific arrow as to where you want your clip to enter and exit in your movie.
Tip: Pause Duration determines how long your pause will be in the designated area before the clip exits the screen. If you applied motion to the Overlay clip, drag the Trim handles to set the
Pause Duration.



Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Working with Overlay clips

Adding multiple Overlay Tracks gives you more creative possibilities for your movie. You can superimpose clips over a background video with portions of the overlay being transparent or add objects and frames to your video. Achieving different effects for your projects can be easy when you know how to use Overlay clips and tracks.

Trimming Overlay clips

You can trim a clip in the Overlay Track like the way you trim a clip in the Video Track. To cut clips in the Video and Overlay Tracks all at once, select Project as the Play mode and then drag the slider to the part you want to cut. Click 
.

Repositioning the current Overlay clip

Click to select the Overlay clip on the Timeline.



After clicking the Attribute tab, drag the Overlay clip to the desired area on the Preview Window. It is recommended that you keep the Overlay clip within the title safe area.
You can also click
Alignment Options in the Attribute tab to open a menu where you can automatically place the Overlay clip in a preset position on the video. Here, you can also resize the Overlay clip to keep the aspect ratio, revert it to the default size, use the original size of the Overlay clip, or resize it to occupy the entire screen.

Resizing an Overlay clip

After clicking the Attribute tab, drag a handle on the Overlay clip on the Preview Window to resize it. If you drag a yellow corner handle, it will keep the aspect ratio when you resize the clip.



It is recommended that you keep the Overlay clip within the title safe area.
The Keep Aspect Ratio in
Attribute Options resizes the Overlay clip based on the width or height, depending on which is longer in length, of the Overlay clip.



Note: When you resize or distort the Overlay clip then go back to the Edit
tab, the clip will appear to have resized back to its original size. This is only for editing purposes, the Overlay clip retains its properties.

Distorting an Overlay clip

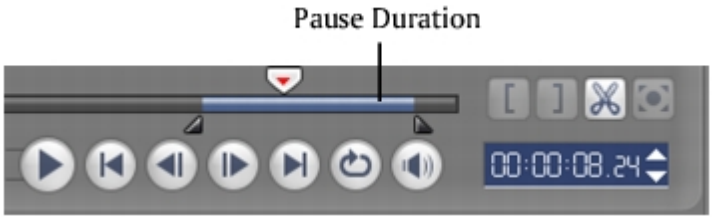
Each corner of the marquee of the Overlay clip have green nodes which you can use to distort the Overlay clip. Drag the green nodes to distort the Overlay clip.



Tip: Hold [Shift]
while dragging the green nodes to keep the distortion within the current clip's marquee.

Applying motion to the Overlay clip

After clicking the Attribute tab, select where the Overlay clip will Enter and Exit the screen under Direction/Style. Click a specific arrow as to where you want your clip to enter and exit in your movie.
Tip: Pause Duration determines how long your pause will be in the designated area before the clip exits the screen. If you applied motion to the Overlay clip, drag the Trim handles to set the
Pause Duration.



Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Working with Overlay clips

Adding multiple Overlay Tracks gives you more creative possibilities for your movie. You can superimpose clips over a background video with portions of the overlay being transparent or add objects and frames to your video. Achieving different effects for your projects can be easy when you know how to use Overlay clips and tracks.

Trimming Overlay clips

You can trim a clip in the Overlay Track like the way you trim a clip in the Video Track. To cut clips in the Video and Overlay Tracks all at once, select Project as the Play mode and then drag the slider to the part you want to cut. Click 
.

Repositioning the current Overlay clip

Click to select the Overlay clip on the Timeline.



After clicking the Attribute tab, drag the Overlay clip to the desired area on the Preview Window. It is recommended that you keep the Overlay clip within the title safe area.
You can also click
Alignment Options in the Attribute tab to open a menu where you can automatically place the Overlay clip in a preset position on the video. Here, you can also resize the Overlay clip to keep the aspect ratio, revert it to the default size, use the original size of the Overlay clip, or resize it to occupy the entire screen.

Resizing an Overlay clip

After clicking the Attribute tab, drag a handle on the Overlay clip on the Preview Window to resize it. If you drag a yellow corner handle, it will keep the aspect ratio when you resize the clip.



It is recommended that you keep the Overlay clip within the title safe area.
The Keep Aspect Ratio in
Attribute Options resizes the Overlay clip based on the width or height, depending on which is longer in length, of the Overlay clip.



Note: When you resize or distort the Overlay clip then go back to the Edit
tab, the clip will appear to have resized back to its original size. This is only for editing purposes, the Overlay clip retains its properties.

Distorting an Overlay clip

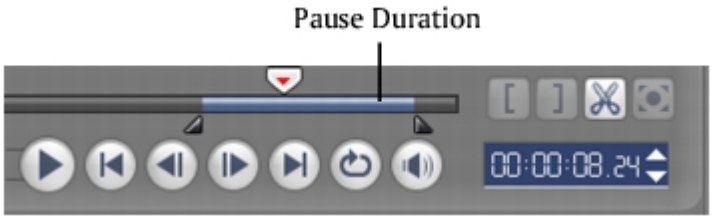
Each corner of the marquee of the Overlay clip have green nodes which you can use to distort the Overlay clip. Drag the green nodes to distort the Overlay clip.



Tip: Hold [Shift]
while dragging the green nodes to keep the distortion within the current clip's marquee.

Applying motion to the Overlay clip

After clicking the Attribute tab, select where the Overlay clip will Enter and Exit the screen under Direction/Style. Click a specific arrow as to where you want your clip to enter and exit in your movie.
Tip: Pause Duration determines how long your pause will be in the designated area before the clip exits the screen. If you applied motion to the Overlay clip, drag the Trim handles to set the
Pause Duration.



Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Working with Overlay clips

Adding multiple Overlay Tracks gives you more creative possibilities for your movie. You can superimpose clips over a background video with portions of the overlay being transparent or add objects and frames to your video. Achieving different effects for your projects can be easy when you know how to use Overlay clips and tracks.

Trimming Overlay clips

You can trim a clip in the Overlay Track like the way you trim a clip in the Video Track. To cut clips in the Video and Overlay Tracks all at once, select Project as the Play mode and then drag the slider to the part you want to cut. Click 
.

Repositioning the current Overlay clip

Click to select the Overlay clip on the Timeline.



After clicking the Attribute tab, drag the Overlay clip to the desired area on the Preview Window. It is recommended that you keep the Overlay clip within the title safe area.
You can also click
Alignment Options in the Attribute tab to open a menu where you can automatically place the Overlay clip in a preset position on the video. Here, you can also resize the Overlay clip to keep the aspect ratio, revert it to the default size, use the original size of the Overlay clip, or resize it to occupy the entire screen.

Resizing an Overlay clip

After clicking the Attribute tab, drag a handle on the Overlay clip on the Preview Window to resize it. If you drag a yellow corner handle, it will keep the aspect ratio when you resize the clip.



It is recommended that you keep the Overlay clip within the title safe area.
The Keep Aspect Ratio in
Attribute Options resizes the Overlay clip based on the width or height, depending on which is longer in length, of the Overlay clip.



Note: When you resize or distort the Overlay clip then go back to the Edit
tab, the clip will appear to have resized back to its original size. This is only for editing purposes, the Overlay clip retains its properties.

Distorting an Overlay clip

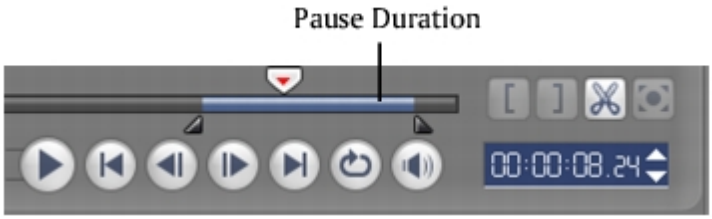
Each corner of the marquee of the Overlay clip have green nodes which you can use to distort the Overlay clip. Drag the green nodes to distort the Overlay clip.



Tip: Hold [Shift]
while dragging the green nodes to keep the distortion within the current clip's marquee.

Applying motion to the Overlay clip

After clicking the Attribute tab, select where the Overlay clip will Enter and Exit the screen under Direction/Style. Click a specific arrow as to where you want your clip to enter and exit in your movie.
Tip: Pause Duration determines how long your pause will be in the designated area before the clip exits the screen. If you applied motion to the Overlay clip, drag the Trim handles to set the
Pause Duration.



Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Working with Overlay clips

Adding multiple Overlay Tracks gives you more creative possibilities for your movie. You can superimpose clips over a background video with portions of the overlay being transparent or add objects and frames to your video. Achieving different effects for your projects can be easy when you know how to use Overlay clips and tracks.

Trimming Overlay clips

You can trim a clip in the Overlay Track like the way you trim a clip in the Video Track. To cut clips in the Video and Overlay Tracks all at once, select Project as the Play mode and then drag the slider to the part you want to cut. Click 
.

Repositioning the current Overlay clip

Click to select the Overlay clip on the Timeline.



After clicking the Attribute tab, drag the Overlay clip to the desired area on the Preview Window. It is recommended that you keep the Overlay clip within the title safe area.
You can also click
Alignment Options in the Attribute tab to open a menu where you can automatically place the Overlay clip in a preset position on the video. Here, you can also resize the Overlay clip to keep the aspect ratio, revert it to the default size, use the original size of the Overlay clip, or resize it to occupy the entire screen.

Resizing an Overlay clip

After clicking the Attribute tab, drag a handle on the Overlay clip on the Preview Window to resize it. If you drag a yellow corner handle, it will keep the aspect ratio when you resize the clip.



It is recommended that you keep the Overlay clip within the title safe area.
The Keep Aspect Ratio in
Attribute Options resizes the Overlay clip based on the width or height, depending on which is longer in length, of the Overlay clip.



Note: When you resize or distort the Overlay clip then go back to the Edit
tab, the clip will appear to have resized back to its original size. This is only for editing purposes, the Overlay clip retains its properties.

Distorting an Overlay clip

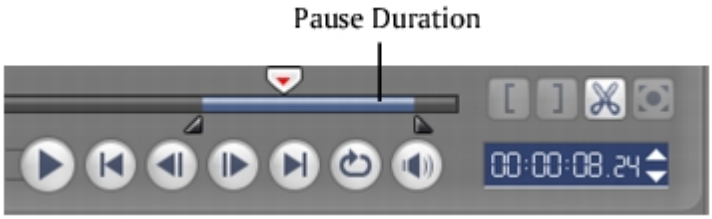
Each corner of the marquee of the Overlay clip have green nodes which you can use to distort the Overlay clip. Drag the green nodes to distort the Overlay clip.



Tip: Hold [Shift]
while dragging the green nodes to keep the distortion within the current clip's marquee.

Applying motion to the Overlay clip

After clicking the Attribute tab, select where the Overlay clip will Enter and Exit the screen under Direction/Style. Click a specific arrow as to where you want your clip to enter and exit in your movie.
Tip: Pause Duration determines how long your pause will be in the designated area before the clip exits the screen. If you applied motion to the Overlay clip, drag the Trim handles to set the
Pause Duration.



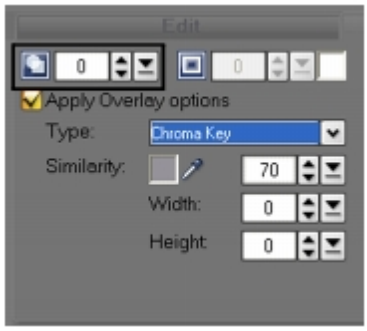
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Enhancing Overlay clips

Applying transparency, border and filters are some of the ways you can enhance your Overlay clips. You can also chroma key the Overlay clip to remove its background color and show the clip in the Video Track as the new background.

Applying transparency to the Overlay clip

In the Attribute tab, click Mask & Chroma Key to go to the Overlay Options Panel. Drag the Transparency slider to set the opacity of the Overlay clip.



Chroma keying an Overlay clip

Chroma key is a popular technique that makes a particular color in a clip transparent to be able to show underlying clips, objects or layers. Usually, Chroma Key is used as special effects in movies or a TV program's weather forecast.

To specify Chroma Key settings to the current Overlay clip:

1 Click
Mask & Chroma Key in the Attribute tab to go to the Overlay Options Panel.
2 Select Apply Overlay options then Chroma Key in
Type.

3 Click the color box and select the color to be rendered as transparent. Or select 
and then click a color in the preview area of the Options Panel that will be rendered as transparent.



4 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.



Without Chroma Key | With Chroma Key

Tip: Drag the **Similarity slider**
to specify the color range of the selected color that will be rendered as transparent.

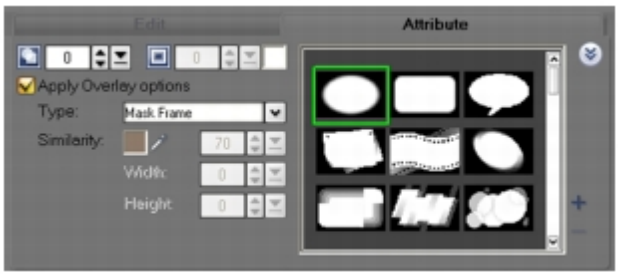
Adding a mask frame

Masking is a powerful method to control your clip's transparency. A mask or a matte, as it is also called, is simply a black and white image you can use in your projects to define which areas of your video become transparent and which remain opaque.



To add a mask frame:

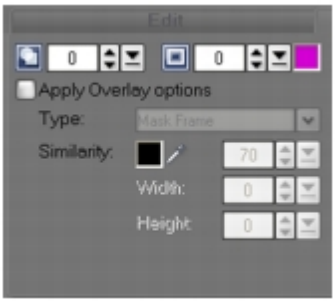
1 Click Mask & Chroma Key in the Attribute tab to go to the Overlay Options Panel.
2 Select Apply Overlay options then Mask Frame in Type.
3 Select a mask frame.



4 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.
5 To import a mask frame, first create a mask for your project. Click  and browse for the image file.

Adding a border

In the Attribute tab, click Mask & Chroma Key to go to the Overlay Options Panel. Drag the Border slider to set the thickness of the border of the Overlay clip. Set the color of the border by clicking the color box beside the slider.



Applying a filter to the Overlay clip

You can apply video filters to your Overlay clips. For more details on how to apply, you can refer to Edit: Applying video filters.

Using the same attributes for different Overlay clips

You can use the attributes (size and position) of one Overlay clip and apply it to a different Overlay clip on your movie project. To apply the same attributes, first right-click the source Overlay clip then select Copy Attributes. Next, right-click the target Overlay clip then select
Paste Attributes.

_____

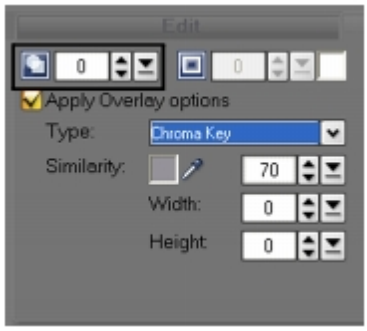
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Enhancing Overlay clips

Applying transparency, border and filters are some of the ways you can enhance your Overlay clips. You can also chroma key the Overlay clip to remove its background color and show the clip in the Video Track as the new background.

Applying transparency to the Overlay clip

In the Attribute tab, click Mask & Chroma Key to go to the Overlay Options Panel. Drag the Transparency slider to set the opacity of the Overlay clip.



Chroma keying an Overlay clip

Chroma key is a popular technique that makes a particular color in a clip transparent to be able to show underlying clips, objects or layers. Usually, Chroma Key is used as special effects in movies or a TV program's weather forecast.

To specify Chroma Key settings to the current Overlay clip:

1 Click
Mask & Chroma Key in the Attribute tab to go to the Overlay Options Panel.
2 Select Apply Overlay options then Chroma Key in
Type.

3 Click the color box and select the color to be rendered as transparent. Or select 
and then click a color in the preview area of the Options Panel that will be rendered as transparent.



4 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.



Without Chroma Key | With Chroma Key

Tip: Drag the **Similarity slider**
to specify the color range of the selected color that will be rendered as transparent.

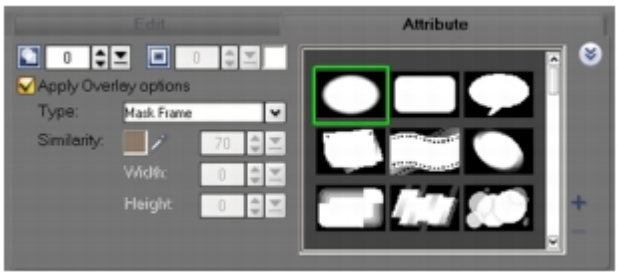
Adding a mask frame

Masking is a powerful method to control your clip's transparency. A mask or a matte, as it is also called, is simply a black and white image you can use in your projects to define which areas of your video become transparent and which remain opaque.



To add a mask frame:

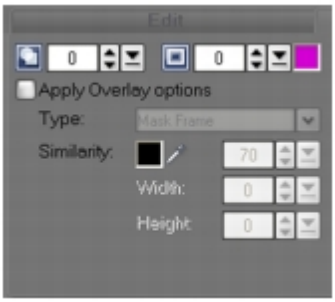
1 Click Mask & Chroma Key in the Attribute tab to go to the Overlay Options Panel.
2 Select Apply Overlay options then Mask Frame in Type.
3 Select a mask frame.



4 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.
5 To import a mask frame, first create a mask for your project. Click  and browse for the image file.

Adding a border

In the Attribute tab, click Mask & Chroma Key to go to the Overlay Options Panel. Drag the Border slider to set the thickness of the border of the Overlay clip. Set the color of the border by clicking the color box beside the slider.



Applying a filter to the Overlay clip

You can apply video filters to your Overlay clips. For more details on how to apply, you can refer to Edit: Applying video filters.

Using the same attributes for different Overlay clips

You can use the attributes (size and position) of one Overlay clip and apply it to a different Overlay clip on your movie project. To apply the same attributes, first right-click the source Overlay clip then select Copy Attributes. Next, right-click the target Overlay clip then select
Paste Attributes.

_____

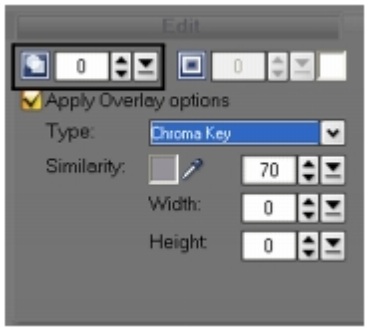
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Enhancing Overlay clips

Applying transparency, border and filters are some of the ways you can enhance your Overlay clips. You can also chroma key the Overlay clip to remove its background color and show the clip in the Video Track as the new background.

Applying transparency to the Overlay clip

In the Attribute tab, click Mask & Chroma Key to go to the Overlay Options Panel. Drag the Transparency slider to set the opacity of the Overlay clip.



Chroma keying an Overlay clip

Chroma key is a popular technique that makes a particular color in a clip transparent to be able to show underlying clips, objects or layers. Usually, Chroma Key is used as special effects in movies or a TV program's weather forecast.

To specify Chroma Key settings to the current Overlay clip:

1 Click
Mask & Chroma Key in the Attribute tab to go to the Overlay Options Panel.
2 Select Apply Overlay options then Chroma Key in
Type.

3 Click the color box and select the color to be rendered as transparent. Or select 
and then click a color in the preview area of the Options Panel that will be rendered as transparent.



4 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.



Without Chroma Key | With Chroma Key

Tip: Drag the **Similarity slider**
to specify the color range of the selected color that will be rendered as transparent.

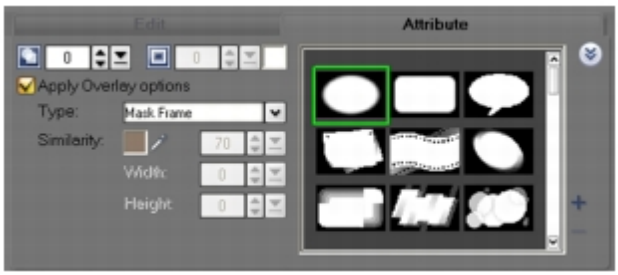
Adding a mask frame

Masking is a powerful method to control your clip's transparency. A mask or a matte, as it is also called, is simply a black and white image you can use in your projects to define which areas of your video become transparent and which remain opaque.



To add a mask frame:

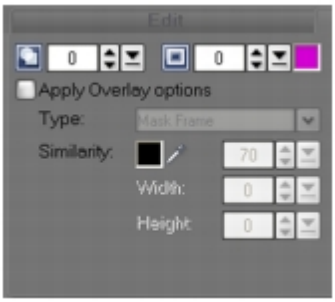
1 Click Mask & Chroma Key in the Attribute tab to go to the Overlay Options Panel.
2 Select Apply Overlay options then Mask Frame in Type.
3 Select a mask frame.



4 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.
5 To import a mask frame, first create a mask for your project. Click  and browse for the image file.

Adding a border

In the Attribute tab, click Mask & Chroma Key to go to the Overlay Options Panel. Drag the Border slider to set the thickness of the border of the Overlay clip. Set the color of the border by clicking the color box beside the slider.



Applying a filter to the Overlay clip

You can apply video filters to your Overlay clips. For more details on how to apply, you can refer to Edit: Applying video filters.

Using the same attributes for different Overlay clips

You can use the attributes (size and position) of one Overlay clip and apply it to a different Overlay clip on your movie project. To apply the same attributes, first right-click the source Overlay clip then select Copy Attributes. Next, right-click the target Overlay clip then select
Paste Attributes.

_____

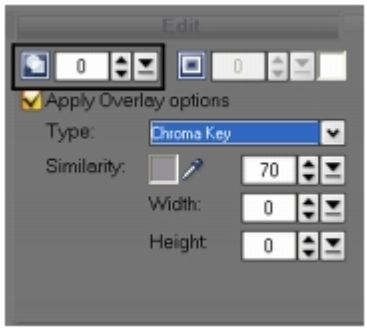
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Enhancing Overlay clips

Applying transparency, border and filters are some of the ways you can enhance your Overlay clips. You can also chroma key the Overlay clip to remove its background color and show the clip in the Video Track as the new background.

Applying transparency to the Overlay clip

In the Attribute tab, click Mask & Chroma Key to go to the Overlay Options Panel. Drag the Transparency slider to set the opacity of the Overlay clip.



Chroma keying an Overlay clip

Chroma key is a popular technique that makes a particular color in a clip transparent to be able to show underlying clips, objects or layers. Usually, Chroma Key is used as special effects in movies or a TV program's weather forecast.

To specify Chroma Key settings to the current Overlay clip:

1 Click
Mask & Chroma Key in the Attribute tab to go to the Overlay Options Panel.
2 Select Apply Overlay options then Chroma Key in
Type.

3 Click the color box and select the color to be rendered as transparent. Or select 
and then click a color in the preview area of the Options Panel that will be rendered as transparent.



4 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.



Without Chroma Key | With Chroma Key

Tip: Drag the **Similarity slider**
to specify the color range of the selected color that will be rendered as transparent.

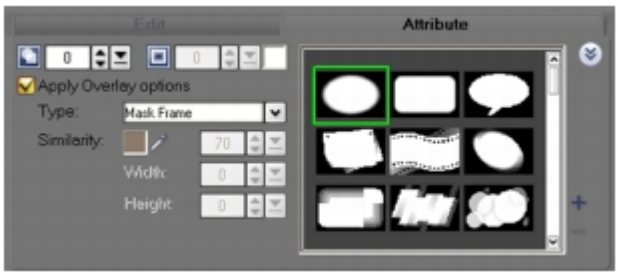
Adding a mask frame

Masking is a powerful method to control your clip's transparency. A mask or a matte, as it is also called, is simply a black and white image you can use in your projects to define which areas of your video become transparent and which remain opaque.



To add a mask frame:

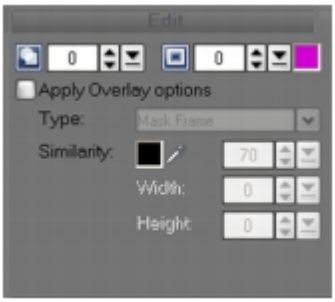
1 Click Mask & Chroma Key in the Attribute tab to go to the Overlay Options Panel.
2 Select Apply Overlay options then Mask Frame in Type.
3 Select a mask frame.



4 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.
5 To import a mask frame, first create a mask for your project. Click  and browse for the image file.

Adding a border

In the Attribute tab, click Mask & Chroma Key to go to the Overlay Options Panel. Drag the Border slider to set the thickness of the border of the Overlay clip. Set the color of the border by clicking the color box beside the slider.



Applying a filter to the Overlay clip

You can apply video filters to your Overlay clips. For more details on how to apply, you can refer to Edit: Applying video filters.

Using the same attributes for different Overlay clips

You can use the attributes (size and position) of one Overlay clip and apply it to a different Overlay clip on your movie project. To apply the same attributes, first right-click the source Overlay clip then select Copy Attributes. Next, right-click the target Overlay clip then select
Paste Attributes.

_____

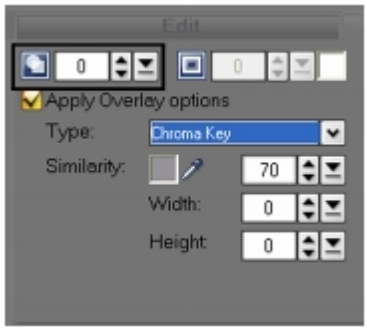
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Enhancing Overlay clips

Applying transparency, border and filters are some of the ways you can enhance your Overlay clips. You can also chroma key the Overlay clip to remove its background color and show the clip in the Video Track as the new background.

Applying transparency to the Overlay clip

In the Attribute tab, click Mask & Chroma Key to go to the Overlay Options Panel. Drag the Transparency slider to set the opacity of the Overlay clip.



Chroma keying an Overlay clip

Chroma key is a popular technique that makes a particular color in a clip transparent to be able to show underlying clips, objects or layers. Usually, Chroma Key is used as special effects in movies or a TV program's weather forecast.

To specify Chroma Key settings to the current Overlay clip:

1 Click
Mask & Chroma Key in the Attribute tab to go to the Overlay Options Panel.
2 Select Apply Overlay options then Chroma Key in
Type.

3 Click the color box and select the color to be rendered as transparent. Or select 
and then click a color in the preview area of the Options Panel that will be rendered as transparent.



4 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.



Without Chroma Key | With Chroma Key

Tip: Drag the **Similarity slider**
to specify the color range of the selected color that will be rendered as transparent.

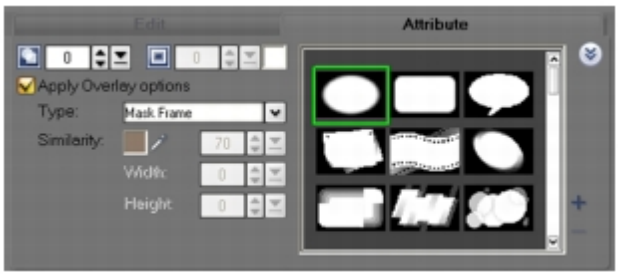
Adding a mask frame

Masking is a powerful method to control your clip's transparency. A mask or a matte, as it is also called, is simply a black and white image you can use in your projects to define which areas of your video become transparent and which remain opaque.



To add a mask frame:

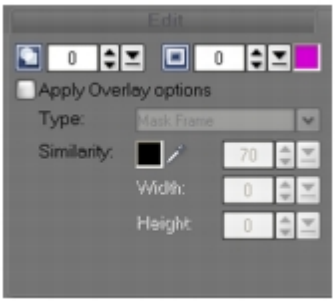
1 Click Mask & Chroma Key in the Attribute tab to go to the Overlay Options Panel.
2 Select Apply Overlay options then Mask Frame in Type.
3 Select a mask frame.



4 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.
5 To import a mask frame, first create a mask for your project. Click  and browse for the image file.

Adding a border

In the Attribute tab, click Mask & Chroma Key to go to the Overlay Options Panel. Drag the Border slider to set the thickness of the border of the Overlay clip. Set the color of the border by clicking the color box beside the slider.



Applying a filter to the Overlay clip

You can apply video filters to your Overlay clips. For more details on how to apply, you can refer to Edit: Applying video filters.

Using the same attributes for different Overlay clips

You can use the attributes (size and position) of one Overlay clip and apply it to a different Overlay clip on your movie project. To apply the same attributes, first right-click the source Overlay clip then select Copy Attributes. Next, right-click the target Overlay clip then select
Paste Attributes.

_____

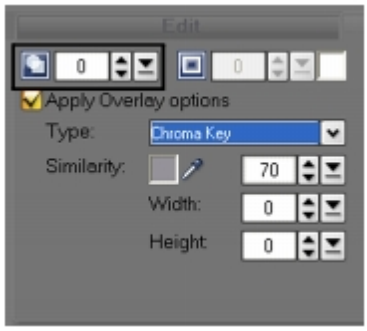
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Enhancing Overlay clips

Applying transparency, border and filters are some of the ways you can enhance your Overlay clips. You can also chroma key the Overlay clip to remove its background color and show the clip in the Video Track as the new background.

Applying transparency to the Overlay clip

In the Attribute tab, click Mask & Chroma Key to go to the Overlay Options Panel. Drag the Transparency slider to set the opacity of the Overlay clip.



Chroma keying an Overlay clip

Chroma key is a popular technique that makes a particular color in a clip transparent to be able to show underlying clips, objects or layers. Usually, Chroma Key is used as special effects in movies or a TV program's weather forecast.

To specify Chroma Key settings to the current Overlay clip:

1 Click
Mask & Chroma Key in the Attribute tab to go to the Overlay Options Panel.
2 Select Apply Overlay options then Chroma Key in
Type.

3 Click the color box and select the color to be rendered as transparent. Or select 
and then click a color in the preview area of the Options Panel that will be rendered as transparent.



4 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.



Without Chroma Key | With Chroma Key

Tip: Drag the **Similarity slider**
to specify the color range of the selected color that will be rendered as transparent.

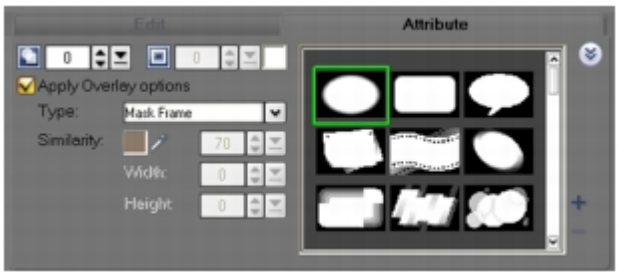
Adding a mask frame

Masking is a powerful method to control your clip's transparency. A mask or a matte, as it is also called, is simply a black and white image you can use in your projects to define which areas of your video become transparent and which remain opaque.



To add a mask frame:

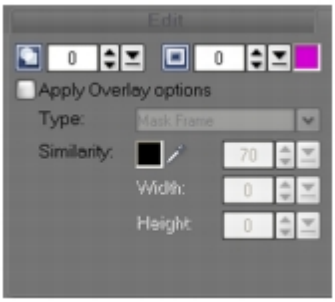
1 Click Mask & Chroma Key in the Attribute tab to go to the Overlay Options Panel.
2 Select Apply Overlay options then Mask Frame in Type.
3 Select a mask frame.



4 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.
5 To import a mask frame, first create a mask for your project. Click  and browse for the image file.

Adding a border

In the Attribute tab, click Mask & Chroma Key to go to the Overlay Options Panel. Drag the Border slider to set the thickness of the border of the Overlay clip. Set the color of the border by clicking the color box beside the slider.



Applying a filter to the Overlay clip

You can apply video filters to your Overlay clips. For more details on how to apply, you can refer to Edit: Applying video filters.

Using the same attributes for different Overlay clips

You can use the attributes (size and position) of one Overlay clip and apply it to a different Overlay clip on your movie project. To apply the same attributes, first right-click the source Overlay clip then select Copy Attributes. Next, right-click the target Overlay clip then select
Paste Attributes.

_____

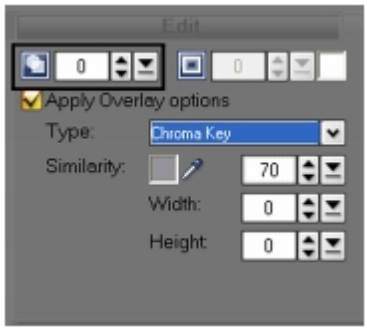
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Enhancing Overlay clips

Applying transparency, border and filters are some of the ways you can enhance your Overlay clips. You can also chroma key the Overlay clip to remove its background color and show the clip in the Video Track as the new background.

Applying transparency to the Overlay clip

In the Attribute tab, click Mask & Chroma Key to go to the Overlay Options Panel. Drag the Transparency slider to set the opacity of the Overlay clip.



Chroma keying an Overlay clip

Chroma key is a popular technique that makes a particular color in a clip transparent to be able to show underlying clips, objects or layers. Usually, Chroma Key is used as special effects in movies or a TV program's weather forecast.

To specify Chroma Key settings to the current Overlay clip:

1 Click
Mask & Chroma Key in the Attribute tab to go to the Overlay Options Panel.
2 Select Apply Overlay options then Chroma Key in
Type.

3 Click the color box and select the color to be rendered as transparent. Or select 
and then click a color in the preview area of the Options Panel that will be rendered as transparent.



4 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.



Without Chroma Key | With Chroma Key

Tip: Drag the **Similarity slider**
to specify the color range of the selected color that will be rendered as transparent.

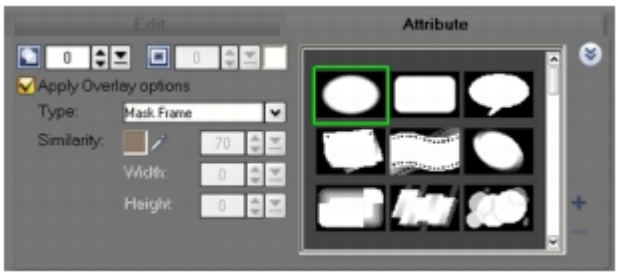
Adding a mask frame

Masking is a powerful method to control your clip's transparency. A mask or a matte, as it is also called, is simply a black and white image you can use in your projects to define which areas of your video become transparent and which remain opaque.



To add a mask frame:

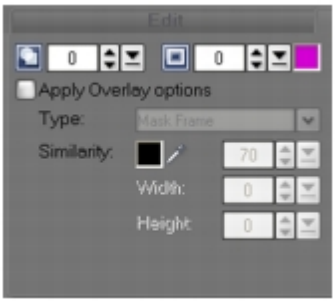
1 Click Mask & Chroma Key in the Attribute tab to go to the Overlay Options Panel.
2 Select Apply Overlay options then Mask Frame in Type.
3 Select a mask frame.



4 Watch the Preview Window to see how the new settings are affecting the image.
5 To import a mask frame, first create a mask for your project. Click  and browse for the image file.

Adding a border

In the Attribute tab, click Mask & Chroma Key to go to the Overlay Options Panel. Drag the Border slider to set the thickness of the border of the Overlay clip. Set the color of the border by clicking the color box beside the slider.



Applying a filter to the Overlay clip

You can apply video filters to your Overlay clips. For more details on how to apply, you can refer to Edit: Applying video filters.

Using the same attributes for different Overlay clips

You can use the attributes (size and position) of one Overlay clip and apply it to a different Overlay clip on your movie project. To apply the same attributes, first right-click the source Overlay clip then select Copy Attributes. Next, right-click the target Overlay clip then select
Paste Attributes.

_____

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Adding Objects or Frames

Add decorative objects or frames to your videos as Overlay clips.

To add an object or frame:

1 In the **Library**, select Decoration: Object/Frame in the Gallery list.
2 Select an object/frame then drag it onto the **Overlay Track** on the **Timeline**.
3 Click the Attribute tab to resize and reposition the object/frame.



Object Frame

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Adding Flash animations

Give more life to your videos by adding Flash animations as Overlay clips.

To add a Flash animation:

1 In the **Library**, select Flash Animation in the Gallery list.
2 Select a Flash animation then drag it onto the **Overlay Track**.
3 Click the Attribute tab to resize and reposition the Flash Animation.



Customizing current objects, frames and animations

Use the various options available in the **Edit** and **Attribute** tabs to customize your object and frame. You can add animation, apply transparency, resize the object or frame, and more.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Adding Flash animations

Give more life to your videos by adding Flash animations as Overlay clips.

To add a Flash animation:

1 In the **Library**, select Flash Animation in the Gallery list.
2 Select a Flash animation then drag it onto the **Overlay Track**.
3 Click the Attribute tab to resize and reposition the Flash Animation.



Customizing current objects, frames and animations

Use the various options available in the **Edit** and **Attribute** tabs to customize your object and frame. You can add animation, apply transparency, resize the object or frame, and more.

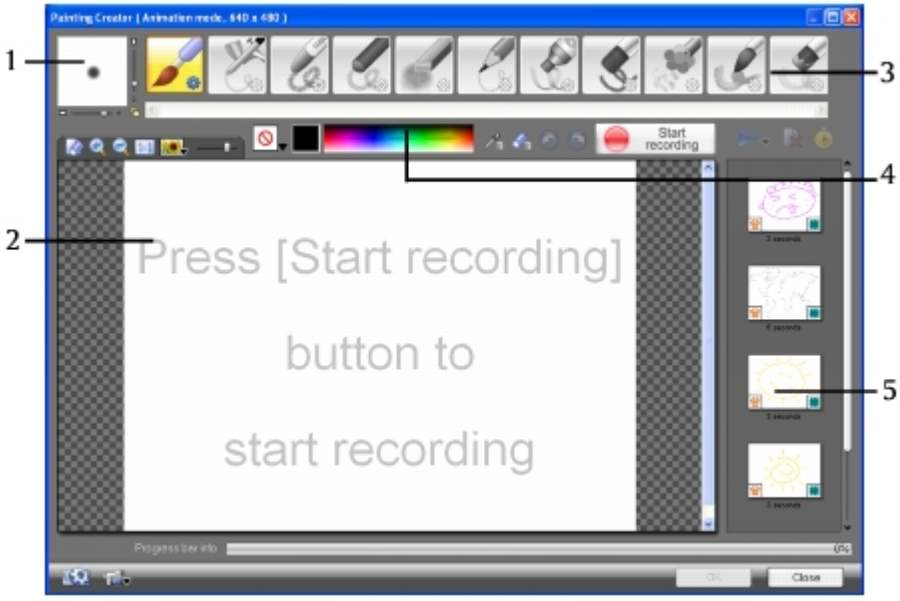
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Painting images and animations using Painting Creator

Painting Creator is a feature of VideoStudio that allows you to draw and paint an image to enhance your project. Through different sets of brushes and colors, this allows you to record painting sessions or paint images to serve as overlays to your project and achieve a variety of special effects and enhancements.

To launch the Painting Creator dialog box, click on 
in the VideoStudio main window.

Painting Creator interface basics

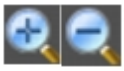


1 Brush Thickness
Defines the thickness and opacity of your brush tip through a set of sliders and a preview box.
2 Canvas / Preview Window
The painting area.
3 Brush Panel
Choose from a wide array of brush types and control your brush thickness and transparency.
4 Color Palette
Allows you to choose or specify RGB values of your desired color.
5 Macro / Static Painting Library
Contains previously made recorded painting animations and still images.

Painting Creator control buttons and sliders



New / Clear Button - Launches a new canvas or preview window.



Zoom In and Zoom Out buttons - Allows you to zoom in and zoom out your view of the painting.



Actual Size - Reverts your canvas / preview window to its actual size.



Background image button and slider - Clicking on the Background Image button allows you to embed or use images as reference for your painting and control its transparency through the slider.



Texture Option Button - Allows you to choose and apply textures to your brush tips.



Eyedropper Tool - Allows you to select a color from the color palette or surrounding objects.



Eraser mode button - Enables you to write or erase your painting / animation.



Undo Button - Allows you to undo and redo actions in Still Mode.



Redo button - Allows you to undo and redo actions in Still Mode.



Record / Add Image buttons - Records your painting session or adds your painting to the Painting Library.



Play / Stop buttons - Plays or stops the current painting animation. Enabled only in Animation Mode.



Delete button - Deletes an animation or image from the library.



Change duration button - changes the duration of the selected clip.

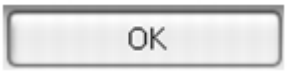


Preference Control button - Launches the Preferences dialog box.

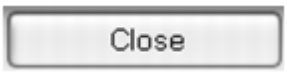


Change Mode Control buttons - Allows you to switch between Animation Mode

and Still Mode.



OK button - Closes Painting Creator and inserts the animations and images in the Video Library and saves the files in *.uvp format in the VideoStudio Library.



Close button - Closes the Painting Creator module dialog box.

Painting Creator modes

There are two modes of Painting Creator for you to choose from - the Animation Mode and the Still Mode.
In
Animation Mode, you can record entire painting sessions and embed your output in the Timeline of VideoStudio. In this mode, you can create a variety of painting animations to create special effects or to enhance your video projects.
Still Mode allows you to create image files with the different sets of colors and brushes just like any other digital imaging programs with a painting atmosphere incorporated with your projects.

To choose between the two modes, click on  found at the bottom of the Painting Creator dialog box to work on Animation Mode and the 
button for the Still Mode. By default, Painting Creator will launch using the Animation Mode.

Changing default clip duration

1 Click on the
Preferences icon. The Preferences dialog box appears.
2 In the
General tab, increase or decrease default macro duration.
3 Click
OK.

Using a reference image

Click on the
Background Image button and the Background Image Option dialog box appears. Refer to the default background color: Allows you to select a solid background color for your painting or animation. Current timeline image: Uses the video frame currently being displayed on the timeline. Customize image: Allows you to open an image and use it as the background for your painting or animation.

Painting a still image

Using the different sets of brushes and colors, paint your still image on the canvas / preview window and press the
Add Image button when finished. Your painting will automatically be saved in the Painting Creator Library.

Recording a painting animation

Using the different sets of brushes and colors, press the Start Recording Button and paint your still image on the canvas / preview window. After finishing all your desired painting steps, press the
Stop Recording button and your painting animation will automatically be saved in the Painting Creator

Library.

Playing your painting animations

Choose your desired animations in the Macro/Static Library and select the Play button.

Importing animations and images in the VideoStudio Library

Choose your desired animations and images in the Macro/Static Library and choose OK. VideoStudio will automatically insert your animations in the Library's Video folder and images in the Images folder both in *.uvp format.

Setting your brush preferences

Click on  and make adjustments to your brush stroke according to your preferences. Move the sliders and click OK to keep your settings. Options vary from one tool to another.

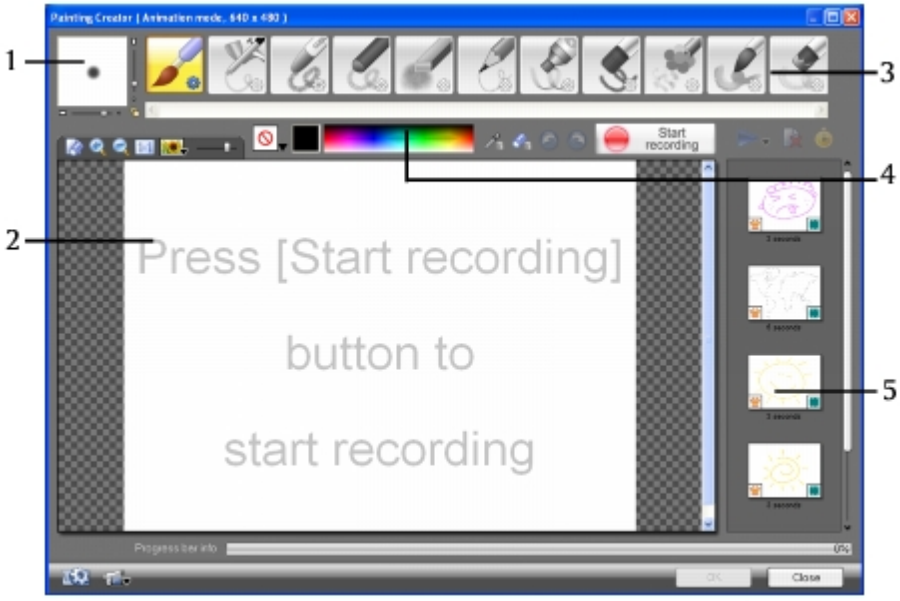
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Painting images and animations using Painting Creator

Painting Creator is a feature of VideoStudio that allows you to draw and paint an image to enhance your project. Through different sets of brushes and colors, this allows you to record painting sessions or paint images to serve as overlays to your project and achieve a variety of special effects and enhancements.

To launch the Painting Creator dialog box, click on 
in the VideoStudio main window.

Painting Creator interface basics

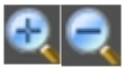


1 Brush Thickness
Defines the thickness and opacity of your brush tip through a set of sliders and a preview box.
2 Canvas / Preview Window
The painting area.
3 Brush Panel
Choose from a wide array of brush types and control your brush thickness and transparency.
4 Color Palette
Allows you to choose or specify RGB values of your desired color.
5 Macro / Static Painting Library
Contains previously made recorded painting animations and still images.

Painting Creator control buttons and sliders



New / Clear Button - Launches a new canvas or preview window.



Zoom In and Zoom Out buttons - Allows you to zoom in and zoom out your view of the painting.



Actual Size - Reverts your canvas / preview window to its actual size.



Background image button and slider - Clicking on the Background Image button allows you to embed or use images as reference for your painting and control its transparency through the slider.



Texture Option Button - Allows you to choose and apply textures to your brush tips.



Eyedropper Tool - Allows you to select a color from the color palette or surrounding objects.



Eraser mode button - Enables you to write or erase your painting / animation.



Undo Button - Allows you to undo and redo actions in Still Mode.



Redo button - Allows you to undo and redo actions in Still Mode.



Record / Add Image buttons - Records your painting session or adds your painting to the Painting Library.



Play / Stop buttons - Plays or stops the current painting animation. Enabled only in Animation Mode.



Delete button - Deletes an animation or image from the library.



Change duration button - changes the duration of the selected clip.

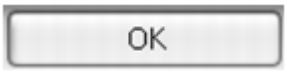


Preference Control button - Launches the Preferences dialog box.

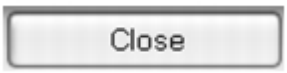


Change Mode Control buttons - Allows you to switch between Animation Mode

and Still Mode.



OK button - Closes Painting Creator and inserts the animations and images in the Video Library and saves the files in *.uvp format in the VideoStudio Library.



Close button - Closes the Painting Creator module dialog box.

Painting Creator modes

There are two modes of Painting Creator for you to choose from - the Animation Mode and the Still Mode.
In
Animation Mode, you can record entire painting sessions and embed your output in the Timeline of VideoStudio. In this mode, you can create a variety of painting animations to create special effects or to enhance your video projects.
Still Mode allows you to create image files with the different sets of colors and brushes just like any other digital imaging programs with a painting atmosphere incorporated with your projects.

To choose between the two modes, click on  found at the bottom of the Painting Creator dialog box to work on Animation Mode and the 
button for the Still Mode. By default, Painting Creator will launch using the Animation Mode.

Changing default clip duration

1 Click on the
Preferences icon. The Preferences dialog box appears.
2 In the
General tab, increase or decrease default macro duration.
3 Click
OK.

Using a reference image

Click on the
Background Image button and the Background Image Option dialog box appears. Refer to the default background color: Allows you to select a solid background color for your painting or animation. Current timeline image: Uses the video frame currently being displayed on the timeline. Customize image: Allows you to open an image and use it as the background for your painting or animation.

Painting a still image

Using the different sets of brushes and colors, paint your still image on the canvas / preview window and press the
Add Image button when finished. Your painting will automatically be saved in the Painting Creator Library.

Recording a painting animation

Using the different sets of brushes and colors, press the Start Recording Button and paint your still image on the canvas / preview window. After finishing all your desired painting steps, press the
Stop Recording button and your painting animation will automatically be saved in the Painting Creator

Library.

Playing your painting animations

Choose your desired animations in the Macro/Static Library and select the Play button.

Importing animations and images in the VideoStudio Library

Choose your desired animations and images in the Macro/Static Library and choose OK. VideoStudio will automatically insert your animations in the Library's Video folder and images in the Images folder both in *.uvp format.

Setting your brush preferences

Click on  and make adjustments to your brush stroke according to your preferences. Move the sliders and click OK to keep your settings. Options vary from one tool to another.

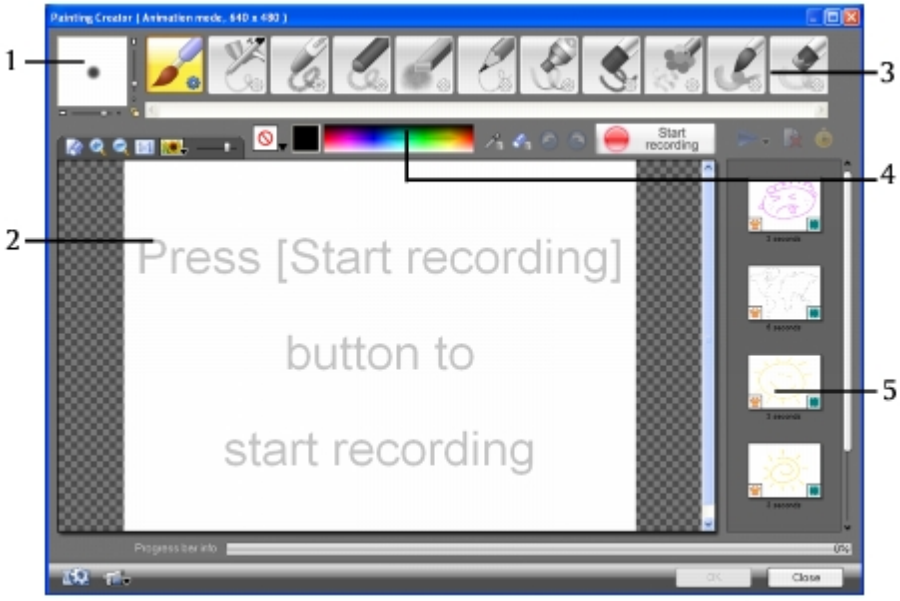
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Painting images and animations using Painting Creator

Painting Creator is a feature of VideoStudio that allows you to draw and paint an image to enhance your project. Through different sets of brushes and colors, this allows you to record painting sessions or paint images to serve as overlays to your project and achieve a variety of special effects and enhancements.

To launch the Painting Creator dialog box, click on 
in the VideoStudio main window.

Painting Creator interface basics

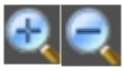


1 Brush Thickness
Defines the thickness and opacity of your brush tip through a set of sliders and a preview box.
2 Canvas / Preview Window
The painting area.
3 Brush Panel
Choose from a wide array of brush types and control your brush thickness and transparency.
4 Color Palette
Allows you to choose or specify RGB values of your desired color.
5 Macro / Static Painting Library
Contains previously made recorded painting animations and still images.

Painting Creator control buttons and sliders



New / Clear Button - Launches a new canvas or preview window.



Zoom In and Zoom Out buttons - Allows you to zoom in and zoom out your view of the painting.



Actual Size - Reverts your canvas / preview window to its actual size.



Background image button and slider - Clicking on the Background Image button allows you to embed or use images as reference for your painting and control its transparency through the slider.



Texture Option Button - Allows you to choose and apply textures to your brush tips.



Eyedropper Tool - Allows you to select a color from the color palette or surrounding objects.



Eraser mode button - Enables you to write or erase your painting / animation.



Undo Button - Allows you to undo and redo actions in Still Mode.



Redo button - Allows you to undo and redo actions in Still Mode.



Record / Add Image buttons - Records your painting session or adds your painting to the Painting Library.



Play / Stop buttons - Plays or stops the current painting animation. Enabled only in Animation Mode.



Delete button - Deletes an animation or image from the library.



Change duration button - changes the duration of the selected clip.

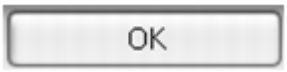


Preference Control button - Launches the Preferences dialog box.

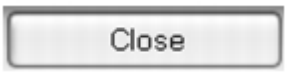


Change Mode Control buttons - Allows you to switch between Animation Mode

and Still Mode.



OK button - Closes Painting Creator and inserts the animations and images in the Video Library and saves the files in *.uvp format in the VideoStudio Library.



Close button - Closes the Painting Creator module dialog box.

Painting Creator modes

There are two modes of Painting Creator for you to choose from - the Animation Mode and the Still Mode.
In
Animation Mode, you can record entire painting sessions and embed your output in the Timeline of VideoStudio. In this mode, you can create a variety of painting animations to create special effects or to enhance your video projects.
Still Mode allows you to create image files with the different sets of colors and brushes just like any other digital imaging programs with a painting atmosphere incorporated with your projects.

To choose between the two modes, click on  found at the bottom of the Painting Creator dialog box to work on Animation Mode and the 
button for the Still Mode. By default, Painting Creator will launch using the Animation Mode.

Changing default clip duration

1 Click on the
Preferences icon. The Preferences dialog box appears.
2 In the
General tab, increase or decrease default macro duration.
3 Click
OK.

Using a reference image

Click on the
Background Image button and the Background Image Option dialog box appears. Refer to the default background color: Allows you to select a solid background color for your painting or animation. Current timeline image: Uses the video frame currently being displayed on the timeline. Customize image: Allows you to open an image and use it as the background for your painting or animation.

Painting a still image

Using the different sets of brushes and colors, paint your still image on the canvas / preview window and press the
Add Image button when finished. Your painting will automatically be saved in the Painting Creator Library.

Recording a painting animation

Using the different sets of brushes and colors, press the Start Recording Button and paint your still image on the canvas / preview window. After finishing all your desired painting steps, press the
Stop Recording button and your painting animation will automatically be saved in the Painting Creator

Library.

Playing your painting animations

Choose your desired animations in the Macro/Static Library and select the Play button.

Importing animations and images in the VideoStudio Library

Choose your desired animations and images in the Macro/Static Library and choose OK. VideoStudio will automatically insert your animations in the Library's Video folder and images in the Images folder both in *.uvp format.

Setting your brush preferences

Click on  and make adjustments to your brush stroke according to your preferences. Move the sliders and click OK to keep your settings. Options vary from one tool to another.

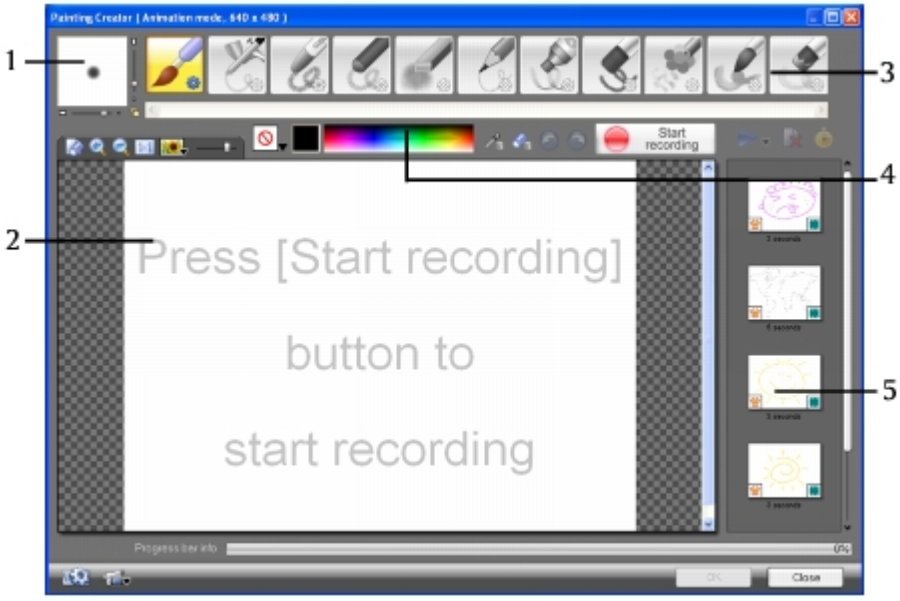
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Painting images and animations using Painting Creator

Painting Creator is a feature of VideoStudio that allows you to draw and paint an image to enhance your project. Through different sets of brushes and colors, this allows you to record painting sessions or paint images to serve as overlays to your project and achieve a variety of special effects and enhancements.

To launch the Painting Creator dialog box, click on 
in the VideoStudio main window.

Painting Creator interface basics

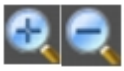


1 Brush Thickness
Defines the thickness and opacity of your brush tip through a set of sliders and a preview box.
2 Canvas / Preview Window
The painting area.
3 Brush Panel
Choose from a wide array of brush types and control your brush thickness and transparency.
4 Color Palette
Allows you to choose or specify RGB values of your desired color.
5 Macro / Static Painting Library
Contains previously made recorded painting animations and still images.

Painting Creator control buttons and sliders



New / Clear Button - Launches a new canvas or preview window.



Zoom In and Zoom Out buttons - Allows you to zoom in and zoom out your view of the painting.



Actual Size - Reverts your canvas / preview window to its actual size.



Background image button and slider - Clicking on the Background Image button allows you to embed or use images as reference for your painting and control its transparency through the slider.



Texture Option Button - Allows you to choose and apply textures to your brush tips.



Eyedropper Tool - Allows you to select a color from the color palette or surrounding objects.



Eraser mode button - Enables you to write or erase your painting / animation.



Undo Button - Allows you to undo and redo actions in Still Mode.



Redo button - Allows you to undo and redo actions in Still Mode.



Record / Add Image buttons - Records your painting session or adds your painting to the Painting Library.



Play / Stop buttons - Plays or stops the current painting animation. Enabled only in Animation Mode.



Delete button - Deletes an animation or image from the library.



Change duration button - changes the duration of the selected clip.

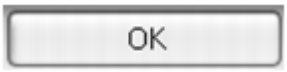


Preference Control button - Launches the Preferences dialog box.

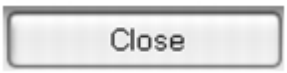


Change Mode Control buttons - Allows you to switch between Animation Mode

and Still Mode.



OK button - Closes Painting Creator and inserts the animations and images in the Video Library and saves the files in *.uvp format in the VideoStudio Library.



Close button - Closes the Painting Creator module dialog box.

Painting Creator modes

There are two modes of Painting Creator for you to choose from - the Animation Mode and the Still Mode.
In
Animation Mode, you can record entire painting sessions and embed your output in the Timeline of VideoStudio. In this mode, you can create a variety of painting animations to create special effects or to enhance your video projects.
Still Mode allows you to create image files with the different sets of colors and brushes just like any other digital imaging programs with a painting atmosphere incorporated with your projects.

To choose between the two modes, click on  found at the bottom of the Painting Creator dialog box to work on Animation Mode and the 
button for the Still Mode. By default, Painting Creator will launch using the Animation Mode.

Changing default clip duration

1 Click on the
Preferences icon. The Preferences dialog box appears.
2 In the
General tab, increase or decrease default macro duration.
3 Click
OK.

Using a reference image

Click on the
Background Image button and the Background Image Option dialog box appears. Refer to the default background color: Allows you to select a solid background color for your painting or animation. Current timeline image: Uses the video frame currently being displayed on the timeline. Customize image: Allows you to open an image and use it as the background for your painting or animation.

Painting a still image

Using the different sets of brushes and colors, paint your still image on the canvas / preview window and press the
Add Image button when finished. Your painting will automatically be saved in the Painting Creator Library.

Recording a painting animation

Using the different sets of brushes and colors, press the Start Recording Button and paint your still image on the canvas / preview window. After finishing all your desired painting steps, press the
Stop Recording button and your painting animation will automatically be saved in the Painting Creator

Library.

Playing your painting animations

Choose your desired animations in the Macro/Static Library and select the Play button.

Importing animations and images in the VideoStudio Library

Choose your desired animations and images in the Macro/Static Library and choose OK. VideoStudio will automatically insert your animations in the Library's Video folder and images in the Images folder both in *.uvp format.

Setting your brush preferences

Click on  and make adjustments to your brush stroke according to your preferences. Move the sliders and click OK to keep your settings. Options vary from one tool to another.

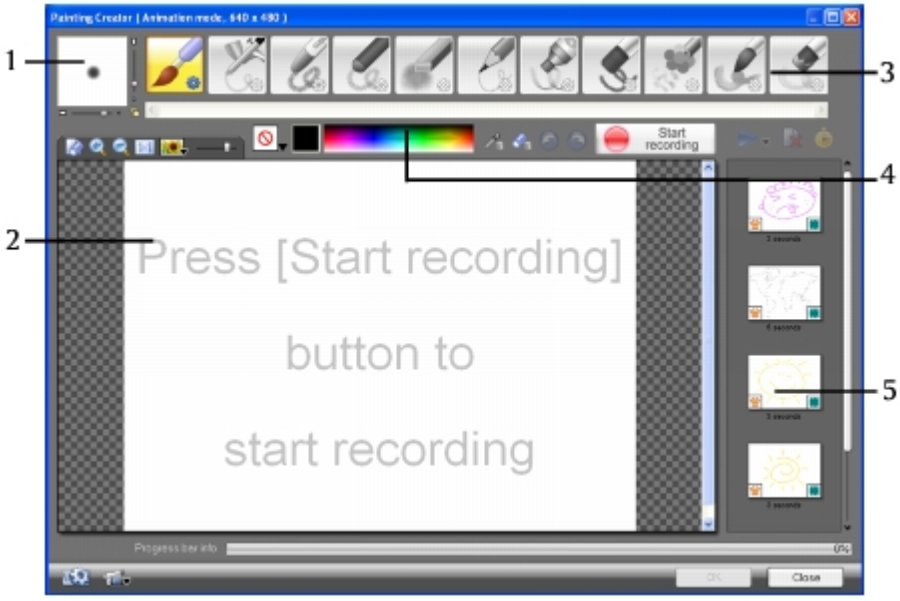
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Painting images and animations using Painting Creator

Painting Creator is a feature of VideoStudio that allows you to draw and paint an image to enhance your project. Through different sets of brushes and colors, this allows you to record painting sessions or paint images to serve as overlays to your project and achieve a variety of special effects and enhancements.

To launch the Painting Creator dialog box, click on 
in the VideoStudio main window.

Painting Creator interface basics

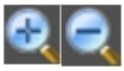


1 Brush Thickness
Defines the thickness and opacity of your brush tip through a set of sliders and a preview box.
2 Canvas / Preview Window
The painting area.
3 Brush Panel
Choose from a wide array of brush types and control your brush thickness and transparency.
4 Color Palette
Allows you to choose or specify RGB values of your desired color.
5 Macro / Static Painting Library
Contains previously made recorded painting animations and still images.

Painting Creator control buttons and sliders



New / Clear Button - Launches a new canvas or preview window.



Zoom In and Zoom Out buttons - Allows you to zoom in and zoom out your view of the painting.



Actual Size - Reverts your canvas / preview window to its actual size.



Background image button and slider - Clicking on the Background Image button allows you to embed or use images as reference for your painting and control its transparency through the slider.



Texture Option Button - Allows you to choose and apply textures to your brush tips.



Eyedropper Tool - Allows you to select a color from the color palette or surrounding objects.



Eraser mode button - Enables you to write or erase your painting / animation.



Undo Button - Allows you to undo and redo actions in Still Mode.



Redo button - Allows you to undo and redo actions in Still Mode.



Record / Add Image buttons - Records your painting session or adds your painting to the Painting Library.



Play / Stop buttons - Plays or stops the current painting animation. Enabled only in Animation Mode.



Delete button - Deletes an animation or image from the library.



Change duration button - changes the duration of the selected clip.

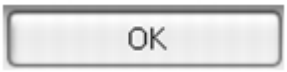


Preference Control button - Launches the Preferences dialog box.

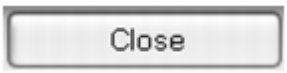


Change Mode Control buttons - Allows you to switch between Animation Mode

and Still Mode.



OK button - Closes Painting Creator and inserts the animations and images in the Video Library and saves the files in *.uvp format in the VideoStudio Library.



Close button - Closes the Painting Creator module dialog box.

Painting Creator modes

There are two modes of Painting Creator for you to choose from - the Animation Mode and the Still Mode.
In
Animation Mode, you can record entire painting sessions and embed your output in the Timeline of VideoStudio. In this mode, you can create a variety of painting animations to create special effects or to enhance your video projects.
Still Mode allows you to create image files with the different sets of colors and brushes just like any other digital imaging programs with a painting atmosphere incorporated with your projects.

To choose between the two modes, click on  found at the bottom of the Painting Creator dialog box to work on Animation Mode and the 
button for the Still Mode. By default, Painting Creator will launch using the Animation Mode.

Changing default clip duration

1 Click on the
Preferences icon. The Preferences dialog box appears.
2 In the
General tab, increase or decrease default macro duration.
3 Click
OK.

Using a reference image

Click on the
Background Image button and the Background Image Option dialog box appears. Refer to the default background color: Allows you to select a solid background color for your painting or animation. Current timeline image: Uses the video frame currently being displayed on the timeline. Customize image: Allows you to open an image and use it as the background for your painting or animation.

Painting a still image

Using the different sets of brushes and colors, paint your still image on the canvas / preview window and press the
Add Image button when finished. Your painting will automatically be saved in the Painting Creator Library.

Recording a painting animation

Using the different sets of brushes and colors, press the Start Recording Button and paint your still image on the canvas / preview window. After finishing all your desired painting steps, press the
Stop Recording button and your painting animation will automatically be saved in the Painting Creator

Library.

Playing your painting animations

Choose your desired animations in the Macro/Static Library and select the Play button.

Importing animations and images in the VideoStudio Library

Choose your desired animations and images in the Macro/Static Library and choose OK. VideoStudio will automatically insert your animations in the Library's Video folder and images in the Images folder both in *.uvp format.

Setting your brush preferences

Click on  and make adjustments to your brush stroke according to your preferences. Move the sliders and click OK to keep your settings. Options vary from one tool to another.

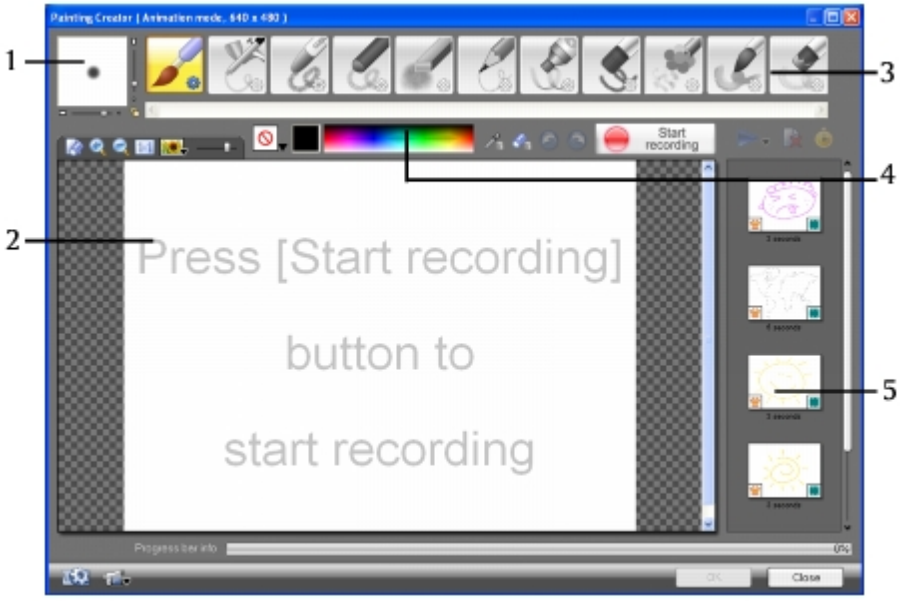
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Painting images and animations using Painting Creator

Painting Creator is a feature of VideoStudio that allows you to draw and paint an image to enhance your project. Through different sets of brushes and colors, this allows you to record painting sessions or paint images to serve as overlays to your project and achieve a variety of special effects and enhancements.

To launch the Painting Creator dialog box, click on 
in the VideoStudio main window.

Painting Creator interface basics

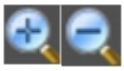


1 Brush Thickness
Defines the thickness and opacity of your brush tip through a set of sliders and a preview box.
2 Canvas / Preview Window
The painting area.
3 Brush Panel
Choose from a wide array of brush types and control your brush thickness and transparency.
4 Color Palette
Allows you to choose or specify RGB values of your desired color.
5 Macro / Static Painting Library
Contains previously made recorded painting animations and still images.

Painting Creator control buttons and sliders



New / Clear Button - Launches a new canvas or preview window.



Zoom In and Zoom Out buttons - Allows you to zoom in and zoom out your view of the painting.



Actual Size - Reverts your canvas / preview window to its actual size.



Background image button and slider - Clicking on the Background Image button allows you to embed or use images as reference for your painting and control its transparency through the slider.



Texture Option Button - Allows you to choose and apply textures to your brush tips.



Eyedropper Tool - Allows you to select a color from the color palette or surrounding objects.



Eraser mode button - Enables you to write or erase your painting / animation.



Undo Button - Allows you to undo and redo actions in Still Mode.



Redo button - Allows you to undo and redo actions in Still Mode.



Record / Add Image buttons - Records your painting session or adds your painting to the Painting Library.



Play / Stop buttons - Plays or stops the current painting animation. Enabled only in Animation Mode.



Delete button - Deletes an animation or image from the library.



Change duration button - changes the duration of the selected clip.

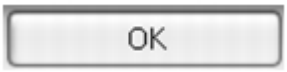


Preference Control button - Launches the Preferences dialog box.

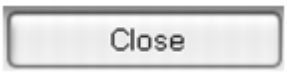


Change Mode Control buttons - Allows you to switch between Animation Mode

and Still Mode.



OK button - Closes Painting Creator and inserts the animations and images in the Video Library and saves the files in *.uvp format in the VideoStudio Library.



Close button - Closes the Painting Creator module dialog box.

Painting Creator modes

There are two modes of Painting Creator for you to choose from - the Animation Mode and the Still Mode.
In
Animation Mode, you can record entire painting sessions and embed your output in the Timeline of VideoStudio. In this mode, you can create a variety of painting animations to create special effects or to enhance your video projects.
Still Mode allows you to create image files with the different sets of colors and brushes just like any other digital imaging programs with a painting atmosphere incorporated with your projects.

To choose between the two modes, click on  found at the bottom of the Painting Creator dialog box to work on Animation Mode and the 
button for the Still Mode. By default, Painting Creator will launch using the Animation Mode.

Changing default clip duration

1 Click on the
Preferences icon. The Preferences dialog box appears.
2 In the
General tab, increase or decrease default macro duration.
3 Click
OK.

Using a reference image

Click on the
Background Image button and the Background Image Option dialog box appears. Refer to the default background color: Allows you to select a solid background color for your painting or animation. Current timeline image: Uses the video frame currently being displayed on the timeline. Customize image: Allows you to open an image and use it as the background for your painting or animation.

Painting a still image

Using the different sets of brushes and colors, paint your still image on the canvas / preview window and press the
Add Image button when finished. Your painting will automatically be saved in the Painting Creator Library.

Recording a painting animation

Using the different sets of brushes and colors, press the Start Recording Button and paint your still image on the canvas / preview window. After finishing all your desired painting steps, press the
Stop Recording button and your painting animation will automatically be saved in the Painting Creator

Library.

Playing your painting animations

Choose your desired animations in the Macro/Static Library and select the Play button.

Importing animations and images in the VideoStudio Library

Choose your desired animations and images in the Macro/Static Library and choose OK. VideoStudio will automatically insert your animations in the Library's Video folder and images in the Images folder both in *.uvp format.

Setting your brush preferences

Click on  and make adjustments to your brush stroke according to your preferences. Move the sliders and click OK to keep your settings. Options vary from one tool to another.

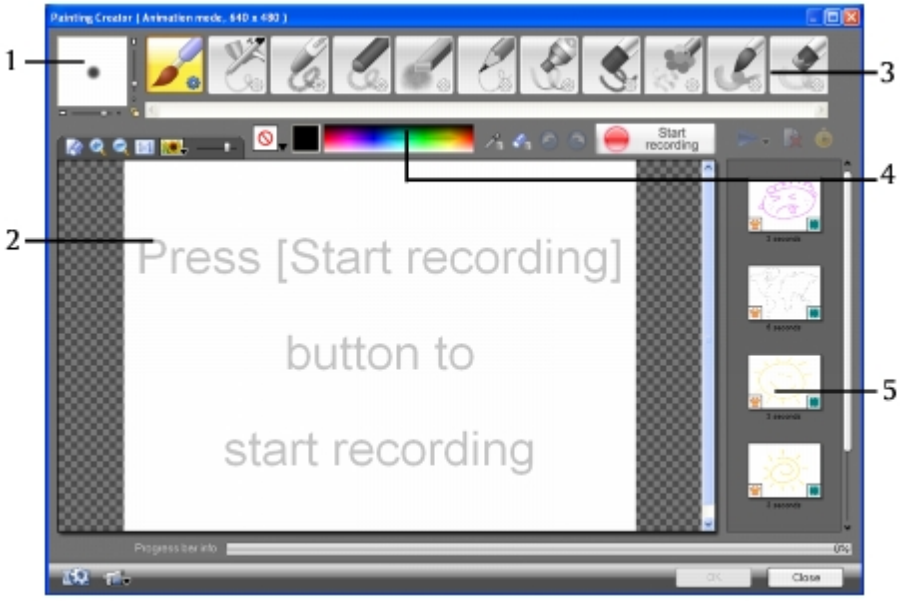
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Painting images and animations using Painting Creator

Painting Creator is a feature of VideoStudio that allows you to draw and paint an image to enhance your project. Through different sets of brushes and colors, this allows you to record painting sessions or paint images to serve as overlays to your project and achieve a variety of special effects and enhancements.

To launch the Painting Creator dialog box, click on 
in the VideoStudio main window.

Painting Creator interface basics

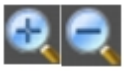


1 Brush Thickness
Defines the thickness and opacity of your brush tip through a set of sliders and a preview box.
2 Canvas / Preview Window
The painting area.
3 Brush Panel
Choose from a wide array of brush types and control your brush thickness and transparency.
4 Color Palette
Allows you to choose or specify RGB values of your desired color.
5 Macro / Static Painting Library
Contains previously made recorded painting animations and still images.

Painting Creator control buttons and sliders



New / Clear Button - Launches a new canvas or preview window.



Zoom In and Zoom Out buttons - Allows you to zoom in and zoom out your view of the painting.



Actual Size - Reverts your canvas / preview window to its actual size.



Background image button and slider - Clicking on the Background Image button allows you to embed or use images as reference for your painting and control its transparency through the slider.



Texture Option Button - Allows you to choose and apply textures to your brush tips.



Eyedropper Tool - Allows you to select a color from the color palette or surrounding objects.



Eraser mode button - Enables you to write or erase your painting / animation.



Undo Button - Allows you to undo and redo actions in Still Mode.



Redo button - Allows you to undo and redo actions in Still Mode.



Record / Add Image buttons - Records your painting session or adds your painting to the Painting Library.



Play / Stop buttons - Plays or stops the current painting animation. Enabled only in Animation Mode.



Delete button - Deletes an animation or image from the library.



Change duration button - changes the duration of the selected clip.

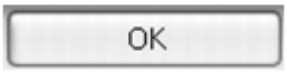


Preference Control button - Launches the Preferences dialog box.

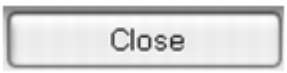


Change Mode Control buttons - Allows you to switch between Animation Mode

and Still Mode.



OK button - Closes Painting Creator and inserts the animations and images in the Video Library and saves the files in *.uvp format in the VideoStudio Library.



Close button - Closes the Painting Creator module dialog box.

Painting Creator modes

There are two modes of Painting Creator for you to choose from - the Animation Mode and the Still Mode.
In
Animation Mode, you can record entire painting sessions and embed your output in the Timeline of VideoStudio. In this mode, you can create a variety of painting animations to create special effects or to enhance your video projects.
Still Mode allows you to create image files with the different sets of colors and brushes just like any other digital imaging programs with a painting atmosphere incorporated with your projects.

To choose between the two modes, click on  found at the bottom of the Painting Creator dialog box to work on Animation Mode and the 
button for the Still Mode. By default, Painting Creator will launch using the Animation Mode.

Changing default clip duration

1 Click on the
Preferences icon. The Preferences dialog box appears.
2 In the
General tab, increase or decrease default macro duration.
3 Click
OK.

Using a reference image

Click on the
Background Image button and the Background Image Option dialog box appears. Refer to the default background color: Allows you to select a solid background color for your painting or animation. Current timeline image: Uses the video frame currently being displayed on the timeline. Customize image: Allows you to open an image and use it as the background for your painting or animation.

Painting a still image

Using the different sets of brushes and colors, paint your still image on the canvas / preview window and press the
Add Image button when finished. Your painting will automatically be saved in the Painting Creator Library.

Recording a painting animation

Using the different sets of brushes and colors, press the Start Recording Button and paint your still image on the canvas / preview window. After finishing all your desired painting steps, press the
Stop Recording button and your painting animation will automatically be saved in the Painting Creator

Library.

Playing your painting animations

Choose your desired animations in the Macro/Static Library and select the Play button.

Importing animations and images in the VideoStudio Library

Choose your desired animations and images in the Macro/Static Library and choose OK. VideoStudio will automatically insert your animations in the Library's Video folder and images in the Images folder both in *.uvp format.

Setting your brush preferences

Click on  and make adjustments to your brush stroke according to your preferences. Move the sliders and click OK to keep your settings. Options vary from one tool to another.

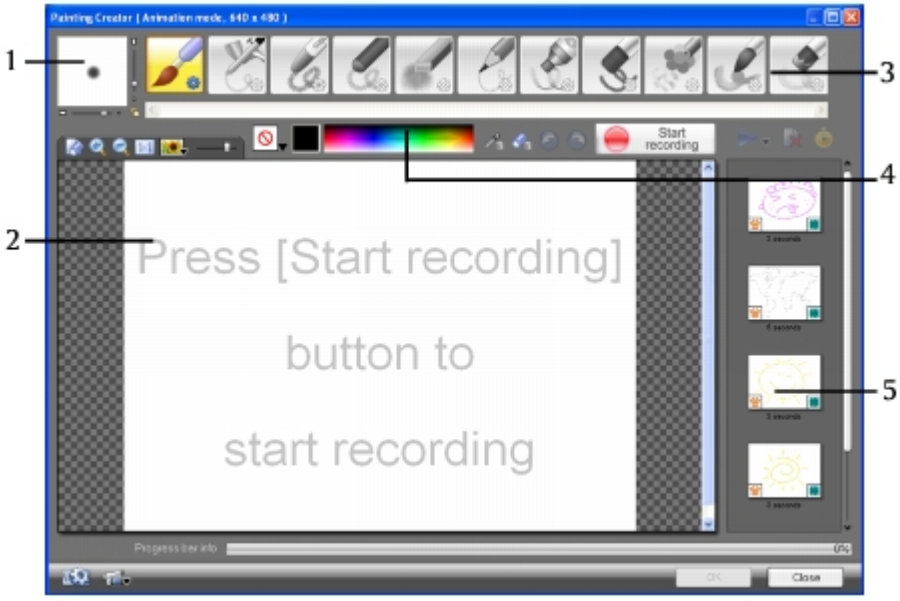
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Painting images and animations using Painting Creator

Painting Creator is a feature of VideoStudio that allows you to draw and paint an image to enhance your project. Through different sets of brushes and colors, this allows you to record painting sessions or paint images to serve as overlays to your project and achieve a variety of special effects and enhancements.

To launch the Painting Creator dialog box, click on 
in the VideoStudio main window.

Painting Creator interface basics

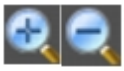


1 Brush Thickness
Defines the thickness and opacity of your brush tip through a set of sliders and a preview box.
2 Canvas / Preview Window
The painting area.
3 Brush Panel
Choose from a wide array of brush types and control your brush thickness and transparency.
4 Color Palette
Allows you to choose or specify RGB values of your desired color.
5 Macro / Static Painting Library
Contains previously made recorded painting animations and still images.

Painting Creator control buttons and sliders



New / Clear Button - Launches a new canvas or preview window.



Zoom In and Zoom Out buttons - Allows you to zoom in and zoom out your view of the painting.



Actual Size - Reverts your canvas / preview window to its actual size.



Background image button and slider - Clicking on the Background Image button allows you to embed or use images as reference for your painting and control its transparency through the slider.



Texture Option Button - Allows you to choose and apply textures to your brush tips.



Eyedropper Tool - Allows you to select a color from the color palette or surrounding objects.



Eraser mode button - Enables you to write or erase your painting / animation.



Undo Button - Allows you to undo and redo actions in Still Mode.



Redo button - Allows you to undo and redo actions in Still Mode.



Record / Add Image buttons - Records your painting session or adds your painting to the Painting Library.



Play / Stop buttons - Plays or stops the current painting animation. Enabled only in Animation Mode.



Delete button - Deletes an animation or image from the library.



Change duration button - changes the duration of the selected clip.

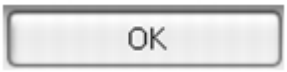


Preference Control button - Launches the Preferences dialog box.

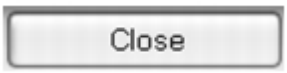


Change Mode Control buttons - Allows you to switch between Animation Mode

and Still Mode.



OK button - Closes Painting Creator and inserts the animations and images in the Video Library and saves the files in *.uvp format in the VideoStudio Library.



Close button - Closes the Painting Creator module dialog box.

Painting Creator modes

There are two modes of Painting Creator for you to choose from - the Animation Mode and the Still Mode.
In
Animation Mode, you can record entire painting sessions and embed your output in the Timeline of VideoStudio. In this mode, you can create a variety of painting animations to create special effects or to enhance your video projects.
Still Mode allows you to create image files with the different sets of colors and brushes just like any other digital imaging programs with a painting atmosphere incorporated with your projects.

To choose between the two modes, click on  found at the bottom of the Painting Creator dialog box to work on Animation Mode and the 
button for the Still Mode. By default, Painting Creator will launch using the Animation Mode.

Changing default clip duration

1 Click on the
Preferences icon. The Preferences dialog box appears.
2 In the
General tab, increase or decrease default macro duration.
3 Click
OK.

Using a reference image

Click on the
Background Image button and the Background Image Option dialog box appears. Refer to the default background color: Allows you to select a solid background color for your painting or animation. Current timeline image: Uses the video frame currently being displayed on the timeline. Customize image: Allows you to open an image and use it as the background for your painting or animation.

Painting a still image

Using the different sets of brushes and colors, paint your still image on the canvas / preview window and press the
Add Image button when finished. Your painting will automatically be saved in the Painting Creator Library.

Recording a painting animation

Using the different sets of brushes and colors, press the Start Recording Button and paint your still image on the canvas / preview window. After finishing all your desired painting steps, press the
Stop Recording button and your painting animation will automatically be saved in the Painting Creator

Library.

Playing your painting animations

Choose your desired animations in the Macro/Static Library and select the Play button.

Importing animations and images in the VideoStudio Library

Choose your desired animations and images in the Macro/Static Library and choose OK. VideoStudio will automatically insert your animations in the Library's Video folder and images in the Images folder both in *.uvp format.

Setting your brush preferences

Click on  and make adjustments to your brush stroke according to your preferences. Move the sliders and click OK to keep your settings. Options vary from one tool to another.

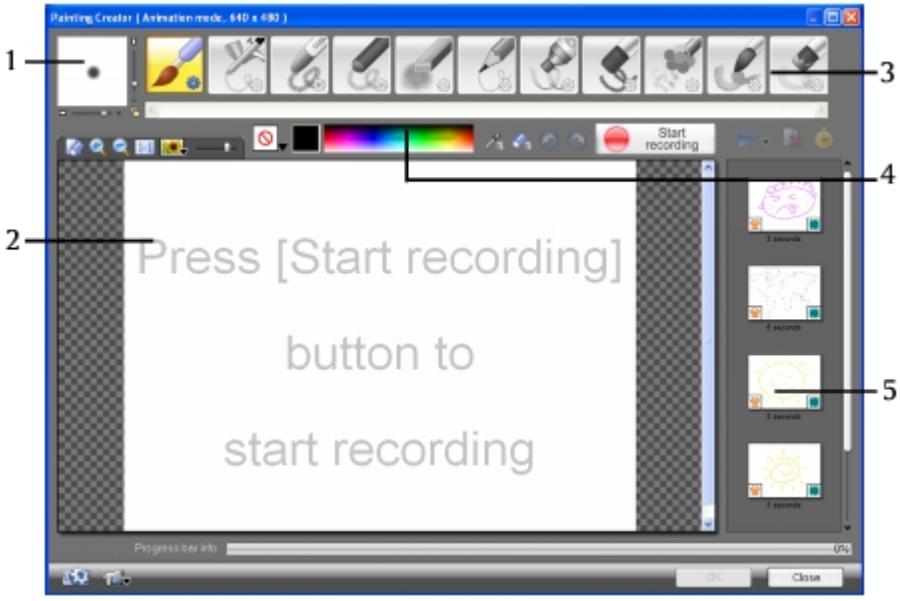
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Painting images and animations using Painting Creator

Painting Creator is a feature of VideoStudio that allows you to draw and paint an image to enhance your project. Through different sets of brushes and colors, this allows you to record painting sessions or paint images to serve as overlays to your project and achieve a variety of special effects and enhancements.

To launch the Painting Creator dialog box, click on 
in the VideoStudio main window.

Painting Creator interface basics

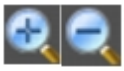


1 Brush Thickness
Defines the thickness and opacity of your brush tip through a set of sliders and a preview box.
2 Canvas / Preview Window
The painting area.
3 Brush Panel
Choose from a wide array of brush types and control your brush thickness and transparency.
4 Color Palette
Allows you to choose or specify RGB values of your desired color.
5 Macro / Static Painting Library
Contains previously made recorded painting animations and still images.

Painting Creator control buttons and sliders



New / Clear Button - Launches a new canvas or preview window.



Zoom In and Zoom Out buttons - Allows you to zoom in and zoom out your view of the painting.



Actual Size - Reverts your canvas / preview window to its actual size.



Background image button and slider - Clicking on the Background Image button allows you to embed or use images as reference for your painting and control its transparency through the slider.



Texture Option Button - Allows you to choose and apply textures to your brush tips.



Eyedropper Tool - Allows you to select a color from the color palette or surrounding objects.



Eraser mode button - Enables you to write or erase your painting / animation.



Undo Button - Allows you to undo and redo actions in Still Mode.



Redo button - Allows you to undo and redo actions in Still Mode.



Record / Add Image buttons - Records your painting session or adds your painting to the Painting Library.



Play / Stop buttons - Plays or stops the current painting animation. Enabled only in Animation Mode.



Delete button - Deletes an animation or image from the library.



Change duration button - changes the duration of the selected clip.

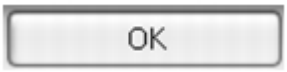


Preference Control button - Launches the Preferences dialog box.

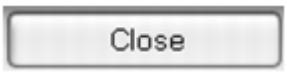


Change Mode Control buttons - Allows you to switch between Animation Mode

and Still Mode.



OK button - Closes Painting Creator and inserts the animations and images in the Video Library and saves the files in *.uvp format in the VideoStudio Library.



Close button - Closes the Painting Creator module dialog box.

Painting Creator modes

There are two modes of Painting Creator for you to choose from - the Animation Mode and the Still Mode.
In
Animation Mode, you can record entire painting sessions and embed your output in the Timeline of VideoStudio. In this mode, you can create a variety of painting animations to create special effects or to enhance your video projects.
Still Mode allows you to create image files with the different sets of colors and brushes just like any other digital imaging programs with a painting atmosphere incorporated with your projects.

To choose between the two modes, click on  found at the bottom of the Painting Creator dialog box to work on Animation Mode and the 
button for the Still Mode. By default, Painting Creator will launch using the Animation Mode.

Changing default clip duration

1 Click on the
Preferences icon. The Preferences dialog box appears.
2 In the
General tab, increase or decrease default macro duration.
3 Click
OK.

Using a reference image

Click on the
Background Image button and the Background Image Option dialog box appears. Refer to the default background color: Allows you to select a solid background color for your painting or animation. Current timeline image: Uses the video frame currently being displayed on the timeline. Customize image: Allows you to open an image and use it as the background for your painting or animation.

Painting a still image

Using the different sets of brushes and colors, paint your still image on the canvas / preview window and press the
Add Image button when finished. Your painting will automatically be saved in the Painting Creator Library.

Recording a painting animation

Using the different sets of brushes and colors, press the Start Recording Button and paint your still image on the canvas / preview window. After finishing all your desired painting steps, press the
Stop Recording button and your painting animation will automatically be saved in the Painting Creator

Library.

Playing your painting animations

Choose your desired animations in the Macro/Static Library and select the Play button.

Importing animations and images in the VideoStudio Library

Choose your desired animations and images in the Macro/Static Library and choose OK. VideoStudio will automatically insert your animations in the Library's Video folder and images in the Images folder both in *.uvp format.

Setting your brush preferences

Click on  and make adjustments to your brush stroke according to your preferences. Move the sliders and click OK to keep your settings. Options vary from one tool to another.

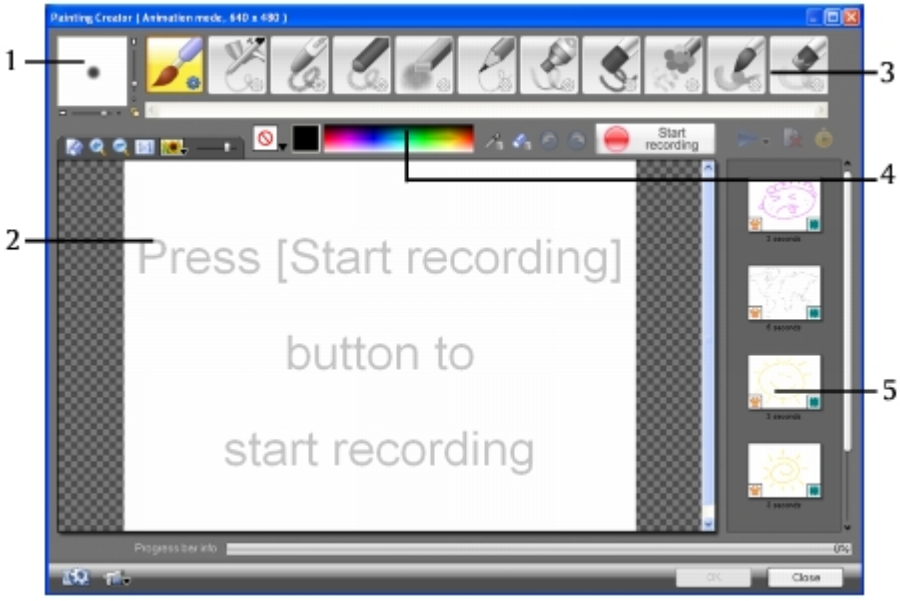
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Painting images and animations using Painting Creator

Painting Creator is a feature of VideoStudio that allows you to draw and paint an image to enhance your project. Through different sets of brushes and colors, this allows you to record painting sessions or paint images to serve as overlays to your project and achieve a variety of special effects and enhancements.

To launch the Painting Creator dialog box, click on 
in the VideoStudio main window.

Painting Creator interface basics

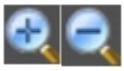


1 Brush Thickness
Defines the thickness and opacity of your brush tip through a set of sliders and a preview box.
2 Canvas / Preview Window
The painting area.
3 Brush Panel
Choose from a wide array of brush types and control your brush thickness and transparency.
4 Color Palette
Allows you to choose or specify RGB values of your desired color.
5 Macro / Static Painting Library
Contains previously made recorded painting animations and still images.

Painting Creator control buttons and sliders



New / Clear Button - Launches a new canvas or preview window.



Zoom In and Zoom Out buttons - Allows you to zoom in and zoom out your view of the painting.



Actual Size - Reverts your canvas / preview window to its actual size.



Background image button and slider - Clicking on the Background Image button allows you to embed or use images as reference for your painting and control its transparency through the slider.



Texture Option Button - Allows you to choose and apply textures to your brush tips.



Eyedropper Tool - Allows you to select a color from the color palette or surrounding objects.



Eraser mode button - Enables you to write or erase your painting / animation.



Undo Button - Allows you to undo and redo actions in Still Mode.



Redo button - Allows you to undo and redo actions in Still Mode.



Record / Add Image buttons - Records your painting session or adds your painting to the Painting Library.



Play / Stop buttons - Plays or stops the current painting animation. Enabled only in Animation Mode.



Delete button - Deletes an animation or image from the library.



Change duration button - changes the duration of the selected clip.

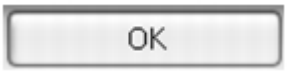


Preference Control button - Launches the Preferences dialog box.

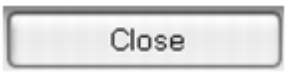


Change Mode Control buttons - Allows you to switch between Animation Mode

and Still Mode.



OK button - Closes Painting Creator and inserts the animations and images in the Video Library and saves the files in *.uvp format in the VideoStudio Library.



Close button - Closes the Painting Creator module dialog box.

Painting Creator modes

There are two modes of Painting Creator for you to choose from - the Animation Mode and the Still Mode.
In
Animation Mode, you can record entire painting sessions and embed your output in the Timeline of VideoStudio. In this mode, you can create a variety of painting animations to create special effects or to enhance your video projects.
Still Mode allows you to create image files with the different sets of colors and brushes just like any other digital imaging programs with a painting atmosphere incorporated with your projects.

To choose between the two modes, click on  found at the bottom of the Painting Creator dialog box to work on Animation Mode and the 
button for the Still Mode. By default, Painting Creator will launch using the Animation Mode.

Changing default clip duration

1 Click on the
Preferences icon. The Preferences dialog box appears.
2 In the
General tab, increase or decrease default macro duration.
3 Click
OK.

Using a reference image

Click on the
Background Image button and the Background Image Option dialog box appears. Refer to the default background color: Allows you to select a solid background color for your painting or animation. Current timeline image: Uses the video frame currently being displayed on the timeline. Customize image: Allows you to open an image and use it as the background for your painting or animation.

Painting a still image

Using the different sets of brushes and colors, paint your still image on the canvas / preview window and press the
Add Image button when finished. Your painting will automatically be saved in the Painting Creator Library.

Recording a painting animation

Using the different sets of brushes and colors, press the Start Recording Button and paint your still image on the canvas / preview window. After finishing all your desired painting steps, press the
Stop Recording button and your painting animation will automatically be saved in the Painting Creator

Library.

Playing your painting animations

Choose your desired animations in the Macro/Static Library and select the Play button.

Importing animations and images in the VideoStudio Library

Choose your desired animations and images in the Macro/Static Library and choose OK. VideoStudio will automatically insert your animations in the Library's Video folder and images in the Images folder both in *.uvp format.

Setting your brush preferences

Click on  and make adjustments to your brush stroke according to your preferences. Move the sliders and click OK to keep your settings. Options vary from one tool to another.

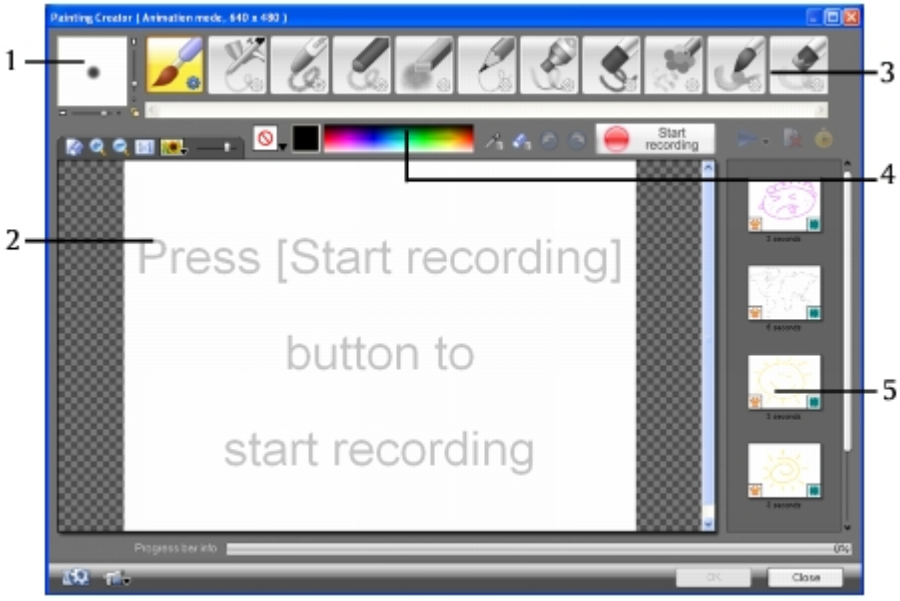
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Painting images and animations using Painting Creator

Painting Creator is a feature of VideoStudio that allows you to draw and paint an image to enhance your project. Through different sets of brushes and colors, this allows you to record painting sessions or paint images to serve as overlays to your project and achieve a variety of special effects and enhancements.

To launch the Painting Creator dialog box, click on 
in the VideoStudio main window.

Painting Creator interface basics

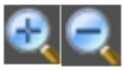


1 Brush Thickness
Defines the thickness and opacity of your brush tip through a set of sliders and a preview box.
2 Canvas / Preview Window
The painting area.
3 Brush Panel
Choose from a wide array of brush types and control your brush thickness and transparency.
4 Color Palette
Allows you to choose or specify RGB values of your desired color.
5 Macro / Static Painting Library
Contains previously made recorded painting animations and still images.

Painting Creator control buttons and sliders



New / Clear Button - Launches a new canvas or preview window.



Zoom In and Zoom Out buttons - Allows you to zoom in and zoom out your view of the painting.



Actual Size - Reverts your canvas / preview window to its actual size.



Background image button and slider - Clicking on the Background Image button allows you to embed or use images as reference for your painting and control its transparency through the slider.



Texture Option Button - Allows you to choose and apply textures to your brush tips.



Eyedropper Tool - Allows you to select a color from the color palette or surrounding objects.



Eraser mode button - Enables you to write or erase your painting / animation.



Undo Button - Allows you to undo and redo actions in Still Mode.



Redo button - Allows you to undo and redo actions in Still Mode.



Record / Add Image buttons - Records your painting session or adds your painting to the Painting Library.



Play / Stop buttons - Plays or stops the current painting animation. Enabled only in Animation Mode.



Delete button - Deletes an animation or image from the library.



Change duration button - changes the duration of the selected clip.

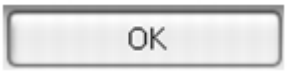


Preference Control button - Launches the Preferences dialog box.

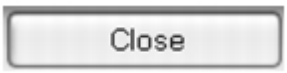


Change Mode Control buttons - Allows you to switch between Animation Mode

and Still Mode.



OK button - Closes Painting Creator and inserts the animations and images in the Video Library and saves the files in *.uvp format in the VideoStudio Library.



Close button - Closes the Painting Creator module dialog box.

Painting Creator modes

There are two modes of Painting Creator for you to choose from - the Animation Mode and the Still Mode.
In
Animation Mode, you can record entire painting sessions and embed your output in the Timeline of VideoStudio. In this mode, you can create a variety of painting animations to create special effects or to enhance your video projects.
Still Mode allows you to create image files with the different sets of colors and brushes just like any other digital imaging programs with a painting atmosphere incorporated with your projects.

To choose between the two modes, click on  found at the bottom of the Painting Creator dialog box to work on Animation Mode and the 
button for the Still Mode. By default, Painting Creator will launch using the Animation Mode.

Changing default clip duration

1 Click on the
Preferences icon. The Preferences dialog box appears.
2 In the
General tab, increase or decrease default macro duration.
3 Click
OK.

Using a reference image

Click on the
Background Image button and the Background Image Option dialog box appears. Refer to the default background color: Allows you to select a solid background color for your painting or animation. Current timeline image: Uses the video frame currently being displayed on the timeline. Customize image: Allows you to open an image and use it as the background for your painting or animation.

Painting a still image

Using the different sets of brushes and colors, paint your still image on the canvas / preview window and press the
Add Image button when finished. Your painting will automatically be saved in the Painting Creator Library.

Recording a painting animation

Using the different sets of brushes and colors, press the Start Recording Button and paint your still image on the canvas / preview window. After finishing all your desired painting steps, press the
Stop Recording button and your painting animation will automatically be saved in the Painting Creator

Library.

Playing your painting animations

Choose your desired animations in the Macro/Static Library and select the Play button.

Importing animations and images in the VideoStudio Library

Choose your desired animations and images in the Macro/Static Library and choose OK. VideoStudio will automatically insert your animations in the Library's Video folder and images in the Images folder both in *.uvp format.

Setting your brush preferences

Click on  and make adjustments to your brush stroke according to your preferences. Move the sliders and click OK to keep your settings. Options vary from one tool to another.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Title

While a picture may be worth a thousand words, the text in your video production (i.e., subtitles, opening and closing credits, etc.) adds to the clarity and comprehensibility of your movie. In VideoStudio's Title Step, create professional-looking titles, complete with special effects, in minutes.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

The Title Step Options Panel

The
Title Step Options Panel allows you to modify text properties such as font, size, and color.
Edit tab Duration: Displays the duration of the selected clip in hours:minutes:seconds:frames. You can adjust the duration by changing the timecode values. Vertical text: Click  to make the orientation of the title vertical. Font face: Selects your desired font style. Font size: Sets your desired font size. Color: Specifies your preferred font color. Line spacing: Sets the spacing, or leading, between lines of text. Rotate by degree: Sets the specified angle and direction (clockwise or counter clockwise) of the text. Multiple titles: Select to use multiple text boxes for your text. Single title: Select to use a single text box for your text. This is automatically selected when opening a project file from older versions of VideoStudio. Text backdrop: Select to apply a solid background bar, ellipse, rectangle, curve-edged rectangle or a rounded rectangle as background for your text. Click  to use a solid or gradient color and to set the transparency of the text backdrop. Border/Shadow/Transparency: Sets the border and intensity of the shadow and transparency of the text. Open subtitle file: Inserts a previously saved movie subtitle. Save subtitle file: Saves the movie subtitle to a file for future use. Show grid lines: Select to display the grid lines. Click  to open a dialog box where you can specify grid line settings.
Animation tab Apply Animation: Enables or disables animation of the title clip. Type: Where you can select your preferred animation effect for your title. Presets: Select a preset for the selected animation type to apply to your text. Customize animation attributes: Opens a dialog box where you can specify animation settings.

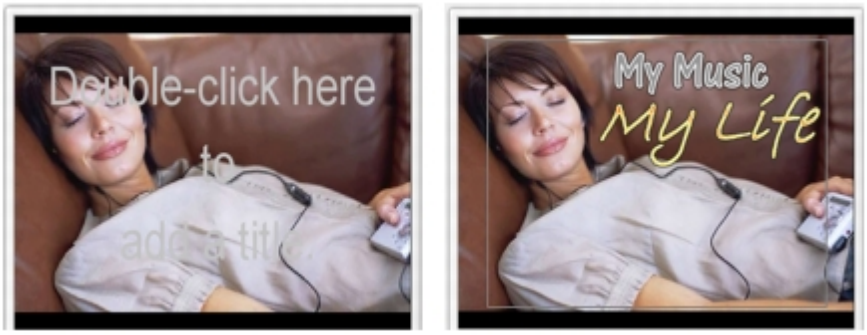
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Adding text

Corel VideoStudio allows you to add text either in multiple text boxes or in a single text box. Using multiple text boxes gives you the flexibility to position the different words of your text anywhere on the video frame and allows you to arrange the stacking order of the text. Use a single text box when you are creating opening titles and end credits for your projects.

To add multiple titles:

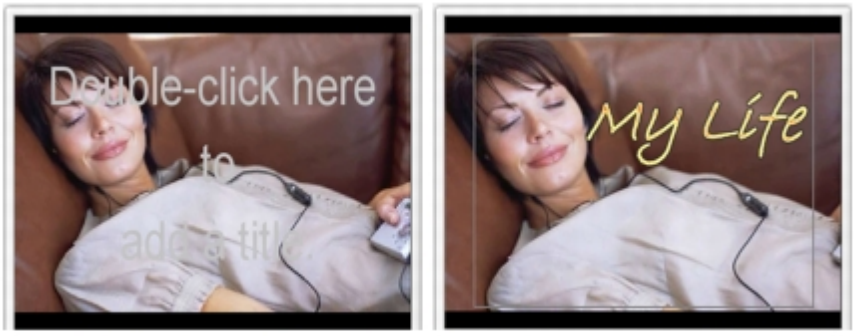
1 In the **Options Panel**, select
Multiple titles.
2 Use the buttons in the
Navigation Panel to scan your movie and select the frame where you want to add the title.
3 Double-click the Preview Window and type in your text.
Click outside the text box when you are done typing. To add another set of text, double-click again on the Preview Window.



4 Repeat step
3 to add more sets of text.
If you switch to Single title before adding to the Timeline the multiple text that you entered, only the selected text or the first text that you typed in (when no text box is selected) will be retained. The other text boxes will be removed and the Text backdrop and Rotate by degree
options will be reset and disabled.

To add a single title:

1 In the **Options Panel**, select
Single title.
2 Use the buttons in the
Navigation Panel to scan your movie and select the frame where you want to add the title.
Double-click the Preview Window and type in your text.



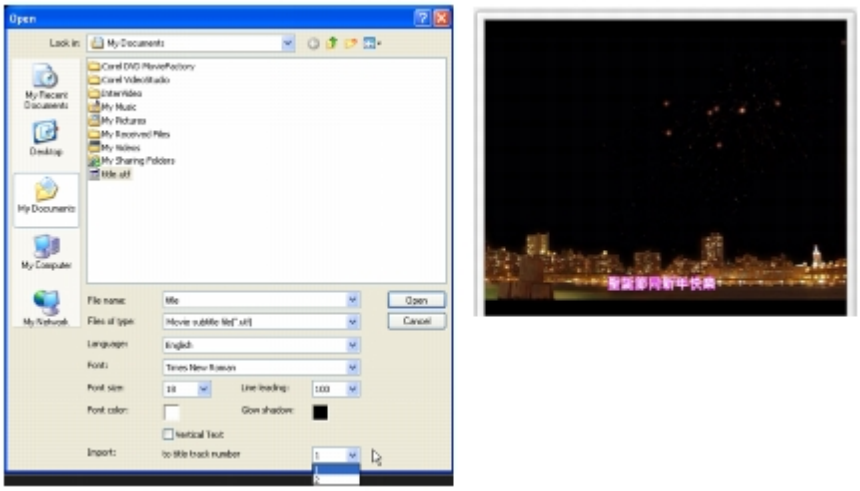
3 In the Options Panel, set the
Line spacing.
4 When you are done typing the text, click the **Timeline**
to add the text to your project.
It is recommended to keep your text within the title safe area. The title safe area is the rectangular box on the Preview Window. By keeping the text within the bounds of the title safe area, the whole text will not be truncated when viewed on a TV screen. You can display or hide the title safe area by selecting
File: Preferences - General tab - Display title safe area on Preview Window.

Adding preset text to your project

The Library contains various preset text that you can use for your projects. To use these preset text, select Title in the
Gallery list then drag the preset text onto the Title Track.

Inserting subtitles to your project

You can use your own movie subtitle files for your project. To insert your own, click Open Subtitle File. In the Open dialog box, locate the file you want to use and the target track and click
Open.



Note: To open subtitles with non-English characters, select the appropriate option in
Language.
You may choose to place your titles on separate title tracks by selecting from the Import: to title track number drop-down menu. To edit its text attributes, select the Font, Font size, Font color, Line leading and Glow shadow for your subtitles. You can also choose
Vertical text to set the text orientation to vertical.

Saving subtitle files

Saving movie subtitles allows you to reuse them in the future. Click Save Subtitle File to open the Save As dialog box. Locate where to save your movie subtitle and the source track and click Save.

Notes:

· Movie subtitles will automatically be saved as *.utf files.

· To save subtitles in foreign languages like Chinese, Japanese or Greek, click Open Subtitle File in the Options Panel and browse for the particular file. Before you open the file, however, make sure you select the corresponding language in Language.

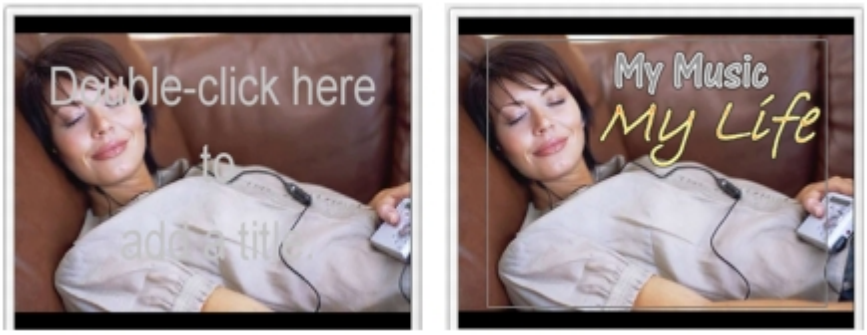
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Adding text

Corel VideoStudio allows you to add text either in multiple text boxes or in a single text box. Using multiple text boxes gives you the flexibility to position the different words of your text anywhere on the video frame and allows you to arrange the stacking order of the text. Use a single text box when you are creating opening titles and end credits for your projects.

To add multiple titles:

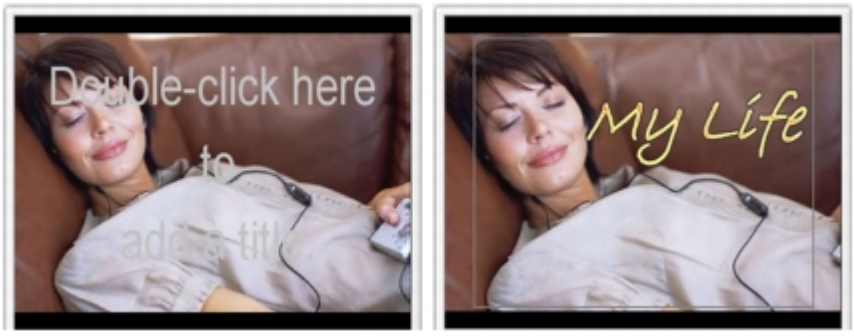
1 In the **Options Panel**, select
Multiple titles.
2 Use the buttons in the
Navigation Panel to scan your movie and select the frame where you want to add the title.
3 Double-click the Preview Window and type in your text.
Click outside the text box when you are done typing. To add another set of text, double-click again on the Preview Window.



4 Repeat step
3 to add more sets of text.
If you switch to Single title before adding to the Timeline the multiple text that you entered, only the selected text or the first text that you typed in (when no text box is selected) will be retained. The other text boxes will be removed and the Text backdrop and Rotate by degree
options will be reset and disabled.

To add a single title:

1 In the **Options Panel**, select
Single title.
2 Use the buttons in the
Navigation Panel to scan your movie and select the frame where you want to add the title.
Double-click the Preview Window and type in your text.



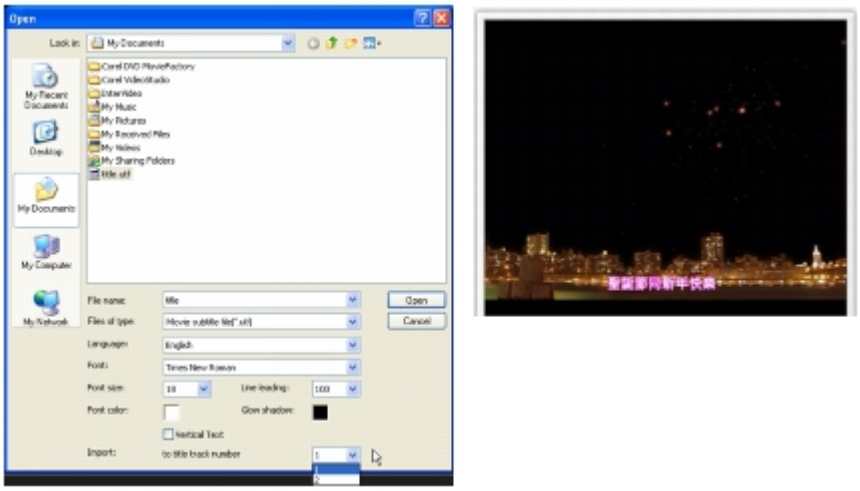
3 In the Options Panel, set the
Line spacing.
4 When you are done typing the text, click the **Timeline**
to add the text to your project.
It is recommended to keep your text within the title safe area. The title safe area is the rectangular box on the Preview Window. By keeping the text within the bounds of the title safe area, the whole text will not be truncated when viewed on a TV screen. You can display or hide the title safe area by selecting
File: Preferences - General tab - Display title safe area on Preview Window.

Adding preset text to your project

The Library contains various preset text that you can use for your projects. To use these preset text, select Title in the
Gallery list then drag the preset text onto the Title Track.

Inserting subtitles to your project

You can use your own movie subtitle files for your project. To insert your own, click Open Subtitle File. In the Open dialog box, locate the file you want to use and the target track and click
Open.



Note: To open subtitles with non-English characters, select the appropriate option in
Language.
You may choose to place your titles on separate title tracks by selecting from the Import: to title track number drop-down menu. To edit its text attributes, select the Font, Font size, Font color, Line leading and Glow shadow for your subtitles. You can also choose
Vertical text to set the text orientation to vertical.

Saving subtitle files

Saving movie subtitles allows you to reuse them in the future. Click Save Subtitle File to open the Save As dialog box. Locate where to save your movie subtitle and the source track and click Save.

Notes:

· Movie subtitles will automatically be saved as *.utf files.

· To save subtitles in foreign languages like Chinese, Japanese or Greek, click Open Subtitle File in the Options Panel and browse for the particular file. Before you open the file, however, make sure you select the corresponding language in Language.

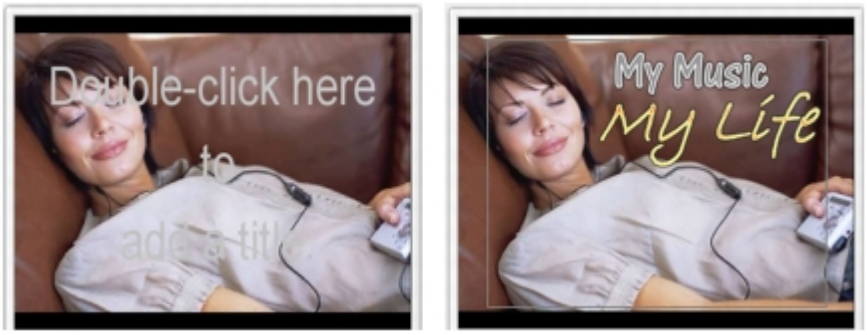
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Adding text

Corel VideoStudio allows you to add text either in multiple text boxes or in a single text box. Using multiple text boxes gives you the flexibility to position the different words of your text anywhere on the video frame and allows you to arrange the stacking order of the text. Use a single text box when you are creating opening titles and end credits for your projects.

To add multiple titles:

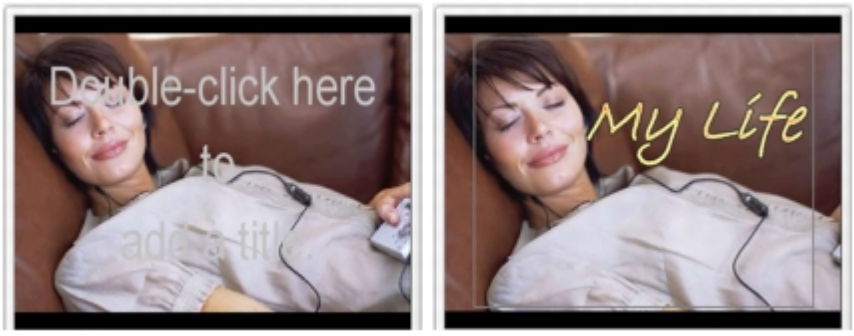
1 In the **Options Panel**, select
Multiple titles.
2 Use the buttons in the
Navigation Panel to scan your movie and select the frame where you want to add the title.
3 Double-click the Preview Window and type in your text.
Click outside the text box when you are done typing. To add another set of text, double-click again on the Preview Window.



4 Repeat step
3 to add more sets of text.
If you switch to Single title before adding to the Timeline the multiple text that you entered, only the selected text or the first text that you typed in (when no text box is selected) will be retained. The other text boxes will be removed and the Text backdrop and Rotate by degree
options will be reset and disabled.

To add a single title:

1 In the **Options Panel**, select
Single title.
2 Use the buttons in the
Navigation Panel to scan your movie and select the frame where you want to add the title.
Double-click the Preview Window and type in your text.



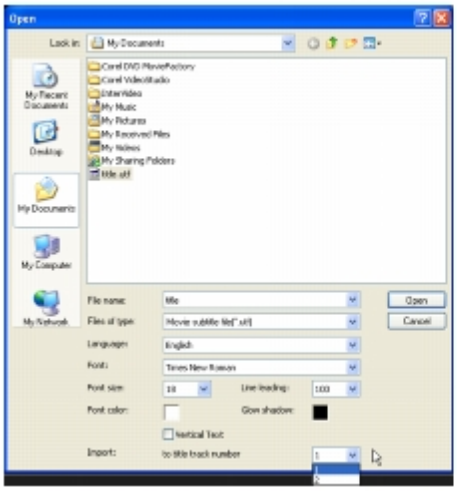
3 In the Options Panel, set the
Line spacing.
4 When you are done typing the text, click the **Timeline**
to add the text to your project.
It is recommended to keep your text within the title safe area. The title safe area is the rectangular box on the Preview Window. By keeping the text within the bounds of the title safe area, the whole text will not be truncated when viewed on a TV screen. You can display or hide the title safe area by selecting
File: Preferences - General tab - Display title safe area on Preview Window.

Adding preset text to your project

The Library contains various preset text that you can use for your projects. To use these preset text, select Title in the
Gallery list then drag the preset text onto the Title Track.

Inserting subtitles to your project

You can use your own movie subtitle files for your project. To insert your own, click Open Subtitle File. In the Open dialog box, locate the file you want to use and the target track and click
Open.





Note: To open subtitles with non-English characters, select the appropriate option in
Language.
You may choose to place your titles on separate title tracks by selecting from the Import: to title track number drop-down menu. To edit its text attributes, select the Font, Font size, Font color, Line leading and Glow shadow for your subtitles. You can also choose
Vertical text to set the text orientation to vertical.

Saving subtitle files

Saving movie subtitles allows you to reuse them in the future. Click Save Subtitle File to open the Save As dialog box. Locate where to save your movie subtitle and the source track and click Save.

Notes:

· Movie subtitles will automatically be saved as *.utf files.

· To save subtitles in foreign languages like Chinese, Japanese or Greek, click Open Subtitle File in the Options Panel and browse for the particular file. Before you open the file, however, make sure you select the corresponding language in Language.

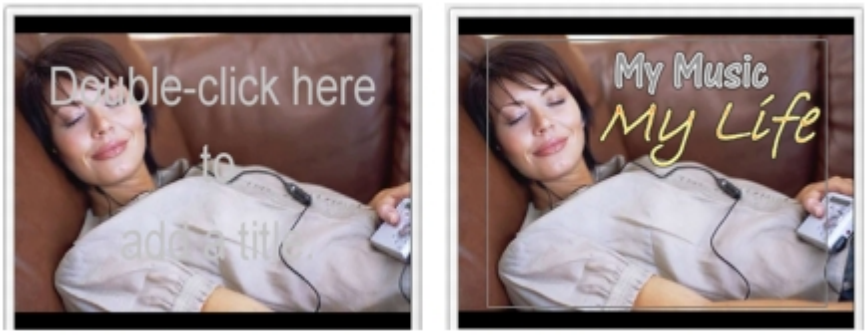
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Adding text

Corel VideoStudio allows you to add text either in multiple text boxes or in a single text box. Using multiple text boxes gives you the flexibility to position the different words of your text anywhere on the video frame and allows you to arrange the stacking order of the text. Use a single text box when you are creating opening titles and end credits for your projects.

To add multiple titles:

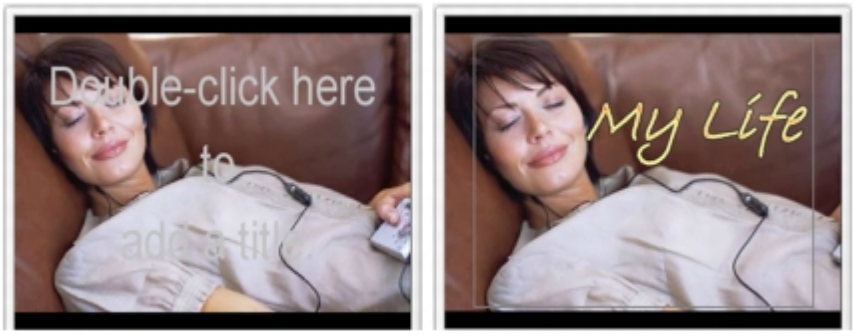
1 In the **Options Panel**, select
Multiple titles.
2 Use the buttons in the
Navigation Panel to scan your movie and select the frame where you want to add the title.
3 Double-click the Preview Window and type in your text.
Click outside the text box when you are done typing. To add another set of text, double-click again on the Preview Window.



4 Repeat step
3 to add more sets of text.
If you switch to Single title before adding to the Timeline the multiple text that you entered, only the selected text or the first text that you typed in (when no text box is selected) will be retained. The other text boxes will be removed and the Text backdrop and Rotate by degree
options will be reset and disabled.

To add a single title:

1 In the **Options Panel**, select
Single title.
2 Use the buttons in the
Navigation Panel to scan your movie and select the frame where you want to add the title.
Double-click the Preview Window and type in your text.



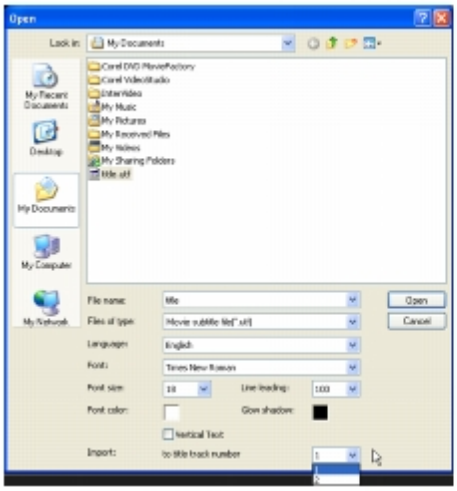
3 In the Options Panel, set the
Line spacing.
4 When you are done typing the text, click the **Timeline**
to add the text to your project.
It is recommended to keep your text within the title safe area. The title safe area is the rectangular box on the Preview Window. By keeping the text within the bounds of the title safe area, the whole text will not be truncated when viewed on a TV screen. You can display or hide the title safe area by selecting
File: Preferences - General tab - Display title safe area on Preview Window.

Adding preset text to your project

The Library contains various preset text that you can use for your projects. To use these preset text, select Title in the
Gallery list then drag the preset text onto the Title Track.

Inserting subtitles to your project

You can use your own movie subtitle files for your project. To insert your own, click Open Subtitle File. In the Open dialog box, locate the file you want to use and the target track and click
Open.





Note: To open subtitles with non-English characters, select the appropriate option in
Language.
You may choose to place your titles on separate title tracks by selecting from the Import: to title track number drop-down menu. To edit its text attributes, select the Font, Font size, Font color, Line leading and Glow shadow for your subtitles. You can also choose
Vertical text to set the text orientation to vertical.

Saving subtitle files

Saving movie subtitles allows you to reuse them in the future. Click Save Subtitle File to open the Save As dialog box. Locate where to save your movie subtitle and the source track and click Save.

Notes:

· Movie subtitles will automatically be saved as *.utf files.

· To save subtitles in foreign languages like Chinese, Japanese or Greek, click Open Subtitle File in the Options Panel and browse for the particular file. Before you open the file, however, make sure you select the corresponding language in Language.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Editing text

For single titles, select the title clip on the Title Track and click the Preview Window.
For multiple titles, select the title clip on the Title Track and click the Preview Window, then click the text that you want to edit.

Notes:

· Once a title clip has been inserted onto the Timeline, you can adjust its duration by either dragging the handles of the clip, or entering a
Duration value in the Options Panel.

· To see how the title appears on the underlying video clip, select the title clip and then click Play Trimmed Clip or drag the
Jog Slider.

Tip: When you are creating multiple title clips that share the same attributes such as font type and style, it is a good rule of thumb to store one copy of your title clip in the Library. (Just drag and drop the title clip from the Timeline into the Library.) This way, you can easily duplicate the title clip (by dragging it from the Library back onto the Title Track) and then change the title.

Modifying text attributes

Modify the attributes of your text, such as font face, style, size, and more, by using the available settings in the Options Panel.

More options allow you to set the style and alignment, apply a Border, Shadow and Transparency and add a
Text backdrop to your text.

A text backdrop superimposes your text on an ellipse, rounded rectangle, curve-edged rectangle and a rectangle color bar. Click  to open the
Text Backdrop dialog box to select whether to use a solid or gradient color and to set the transparency of the text backdrop.



In the Preview Window, click the text box you want to rearrange. After selecting, right-click it then on the menu that opens, select how you want to restack the text.

Repositioning a text in a multiple-title clip



Drag the text box to the new position.

Rotating text

Using the purple handles, you can rotate a text towards the position of your cursor in the Preview Window. To rotate a text, make sure that you have selected a text to display the yellow and purple handles. In the Preview Window, click and drag a purple handle to the position you want.

You can also specify a value in

Rotate by degree of the Options Panel to apply a more precise angle of rotation.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Editing text

For single titles, select the title clip on the Title Track and click the Preview Window.
For multiple titles, select the title clip on the Title Track and click the Preview Window, then click the text that you want to edit.

Notes:

· Once a title clip has been inserted onto the Timeline, you can adjust its duration by either dragging the handles of the clip, or entering a
Duration value in the Options Panel.

· To see how the title appears on the underlying video clip, select the title clip and then click Play Trimmed Clip or drag the
Jog Slider.

Tip: When you are creating multiple title clips that share the same attributes such as font type and style, it is a good rule of thumb to store one copy of your title clip in the Library. (Just drag and drop the title clip from the Timeline into the Library.) This way, you can easily duplicate the title clip (by dragging it from the Library back onto the Title Track) and then change the title.

Modifying text attributes

Modify the attributes of your text, such as font face, style, size, and more, by using the available settings in the Options Panel.

More options allow you to set the style and alignment, apply a Border, Shadow and Transparency and add a
Text backdrop to your text.

A text backdrop superimposes your text on an ellipse, rounded rectangle, curve-edged rectangle and a rectangle color bar. Click  to open the
Text Backdrop dialog box to select whether to use a solid or gradient color and to set the transparency of the text backdrop.



In the Preview Window, click the text box you want to rearrange. After selecting, right-click it then on the menu that opens, select how you want to restack the text.

Repositioning a text in a multiple-title clip



Drag the text box to the new position.

Rotating text

Using the purple handles, you can rotate a text towards the position of your cursor in the Preview Window. To rotate a text, make sure that you have selected a text to display the yellow and purple handles. In the Preview Window, click and drag a purple handle to the position you want.
You can also specify a value in
Rotate by degree of the Options Panel to apply a more precise angle of rotation.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Editing text

For single titles, select the title clip on the Title Track and click the Preview Window.
For multiple titles, select the title clip on the Title Track and click the Preview Window, then click the text that you want to edit.

Notes:

· Once a title clip has been inserted onto the Timeline, you can adjust its duration by either dragging the handles of the clip, or entering a
Duration value in the Options Panel.

· To see how the title appears on the underlying video clip, select the title clip and then click Play Trimmed Clip or drag the
Jog Slider.

Tip: When you are creating multiple title clips that share the same attributes such as font type and style, it is a good rule of thumb to store one copy of your title clip in the Library. (Just drag and drop the title clip from the Timeline into the Library.) This way, you can easily duplicate the title clip (by dragging it from the Library back onto the Title Track) and then change the title.

Modifying text attributes

Modify the attributes of your text, such as font face, style, size, and more, by using the available settings in the Options Panel.

More options allow you to set the style and alignment, apply a Border, Shadow and Transparency and add a
Text backdrop to your text.

A text backdrop superimposes your text on an ellipse, rounded rectangle, curve-edged rectangle and a rectangle color bar. Click  to open the
Text Backdrop dialog box to select whether to use a solid or gradient color and to set the transparency of the text backdrop.



In the Preview Window, click the text box you want to rearrange. After selecting, right-click it then on the menu that opens, select how you want to restack the text.

Repositioning a text in a multiple-title clip



Drag the text box to the new position.

Rotating text

Using the purple handles, you can rotate a text towards the position of your cursor in the Preview Window. To rotate a text, make sure that you have selected a text to display the yellow and purple handles. In the Preview Window, click and drag a purple handle to the position you want.
You can also specify a value in
Rotate by degree of the Options Panel to apply a more precise angle of rotation.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Editing text

For single titles, select the title clip on the Title Track and click the Preview Window.
For multiple titles, select the title clip on the Title Track and click the Preview Window, then click the text that you want to edit.

Notes:

· Once a title clip has been inserted onto the Timeline, you can adjust its duration by either dragging the handles of the clip, or entering a
Duration value in the Options Panel.

· To see how the title appears on the underlying video clip, select the title clip and then click Play Trimmed Clip or drag the
Jog Slider.

Tip: When you are creating multiple title clips that share the same attributes such as font type and style, it is a good rule of thumb to store one copy of your title clip in the Library. (Just drag and drop the title clip from the Timeline into the Library.) This way, you can easily duplicate the title clip (by dragging it from the Library back onto the Title Track) and then change the title.

Modifying text attributes

Modify the attributes of your text, such as font face, style, size, and more, by using the available settings in the Options Panel.

More options allow you to set the style and alignment, apply a Border, Shadow and Transparency and add a
Text backdrop to your text.

A text backdrop superimposes your text on an ellipse, rounded rectangle, curve-edged rectangle and a rectangle color bar. Click  to open the
Text Backdrop dialog box to select whether to use a solid or gradient color and to set the transparency of the text backdrop.



In the Preview Window, click the text box you want to rearrange. After selecting, right-click it then on the menu that opens, select how you want to restack the text.

Repositioning a text in a multiple-title clip



Drag the text box to the new position.

Rotating text

Using the purple handles, you can rotate a text towards the position of your cursor in the Preview Window. To rotate a text, make sure that you have selected a text to display the yellow and purple handles. In the Preview Window, click and drag a purple handle to the position you want.

You can also specify a value in

Rotate by degree of the Options Panel to apply a more precise angle of rotation.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Applying animation

Apply motion to your text with VideoStudio's text animation tools such as Fade, Moving Path, and Drop.

To apply animation to the current text:

1 In the Animation tab, select
Apply animation.
2 Select the animation category to use in
Type.
3 Select a preset animation from the box under
Type.

Tip: Click 
to open a dialog box where you can specify animation attributes.
4 Drag the
Pause duration handles to specify how long the text will pause after it enters and before it exits the screen.



Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Saving your titles to the Library

If you still intend to use the title you have created for other projects, it is recommended that you save it in the Library. Simply select a title on the Timeline and drag it to the Library.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Audio

Sounds are one of the elements that determine the success of your video production. VideoStudio's Audio Step allows you to add both narration and music to your project.

The Audio Step consists of two tracks: Voice and Music. Insert your narrations on the **Voice Track** and your background music or sound effects on the **Music Track**

.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

The Audio Step Options Panel

The Audio Step Options Panel consists of two tabs: Music & Voice tab and Auto Music tab. The Music & Voice tab allows you to copy music from your audio CD, record your voice and apply audio filters to your audio tracks. The Auto Music tab allows you to use third-party music tracks for your project.

Music & Voice tab Duration: Displays the duration of the audio track in hours:minutes:seconds:frames. You can also pre-set the length of the recording by entering the desired duration. Clip volume: Adjusts the volume level of the recorded clip. Fade-in: Gradually increases the volume of the clip. Fade-out: Gradually decreases the volume of the clip. Record Voice: Opens the Adjust Volume dialog box where you can first test the volume of your microphone. Click Start to begin recording. VideoStudio creates a new clip to the right of the existing audio in the **Voice Track** on the Timeline. This changes into Stop during the recording process. Import from Audio CD: Opens a dialog box where you can import music tracks from an audio CD. Click  to update your CD information either from the CD-text in the audio CD or from the Internet. Playback Speed: Opens a dialog box where you can change the speed and duration of an audio clip. Audio Filter: Opens the Audio Filter dialog box where you can apply audio filters to the selected audio clip. Audio View: Changes your Timeline into an audio waveform. When clicked, the Surround Sound Mixer tab is displayed.

Auto Music tab Duration: Displays the total duration of the selected music. Clip volume: Adjusts the volume level of the selected music. A value of 100 retains the music's original volume level. Fade-in: Gradually increases the volume of the music. Fade-out: Gradually decreases the volume of the music. Scope: Specify how the program will search for SmartSound files. Local: Searches for SmartSound files stored in the hard drive. Mounted: Searches for SmartSound files stored in the hard drive and CD-ROM drives. Owned: Searches for SmartSound files that you own including those stored in CDs. All: Searches for all SmartSound files available in your desktop computer and the Internet. Library: Lists the available libraries from which music can be imported. Music: Select the desired music to add to your project. Variation: Select from a variety of musical instruments and tempo to apply to the selected music. Play Selected Music: Plays back the music with the selected Variation. Add to Timeline: Inserts the selected track to the Music Track of the Timeline. Auto trim: Automatically trims the audio clip to fit the empty space based on the Jog Slider position. SmartSound Quicktracks: Opens a dialog box where you can view information and manage the SmartSound Library.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Adding audio files

VideoStudio provides a separate Voice Track and Music Track but you may interchangeably insert voice and music files on either track. To insert, click and select
Insert Audio. Choose which track to insert your audio file.
Tip: Click
Audio View for easier editing of your audio clips.

The VideoStudio DVD also comes with several audio clips ready for your use. Click Load audio to add them to the Library for easy access.

Adding voiceover narration

Documentaries and news features often use narrations to help the audience understand what is going on in the video. VideoStudio allows you to record your own narration with crisp and clear results.

To add voiceover narration:

1 Click the
Music & Voice tab.
2 Move to the section of the video where you want to insert your narration by using the
Jog Slider.
Note:
You cannot record over an existing clip. When a clip is selected, recording is disabled. Make sure that a clip is not selected by clicking on an empty area on the Timeline.
3 Click Record Voice. The Adjust Volume
dialog box appears.
4 Speak into the microphone and check if the meter responds accordingly. Use the
Windows audio mixer to adjust the volume of the microphone.
5 Click
Start and begin speaking into the microphone.
6 Press [Esc] or click
Stop to end recording.
Tip: The best way to record narrations is to do the recording in 10 to 15-second sessions. This makes it easier to remove a badly recorded narration and redo it. To remove, just select the clip on the Timeline and press
[Delete].

Adding background music

Set the feel of your movie with the background music of your choice. VideoStudio can record and convert song tracks from your CD into WAV files and then insert them onto the Timeline.
VideoStudio also supports WMA, AVI, and other popular audio file formats which you can directly insert onto the Music Track.

Importing music from an audio CD

Capture music by importing from an audio CD. VideoStudio copies the CDA audio file then saves it in your hard drive as a WAV file.

To import music from an audio CD:

1 Click Import from Audio CD in the Music & Voice tab to open the Rip CD Audio dialog box. To check if the disc is detected, see to it that
Audio drive is enabled.
2 Select the tracks to be imported in the
Track List.
3 Click
Browse and select the destination folder where the imported files will be saved.
4 Click
Rip to start importing the audio tracks.

Adding third-party music

VideoStudio's
Auto Music feature lets you easily create composer-quality sound tracks from royalty-free music and use them as background music in your project. You can have different tempos or musical instrument variations per music.
Note: Auto Music Maker utilizes the patented SmartSound Quicktracks technology in sound track creation and features a variety of SmartSound royalty-free music.

To add third-party music:

1 Click the
Auto Music tab.
2 Select how the program will search for music files in
Scope.
3 Select the **Library**
from where to import the music.
4 Under
Music, select the music you want to use.
5 Select a Variation of the selected music. Click
Play Selected Music to play back the music with the variation applied.
6 Set the Volume level then click
Add to Timeline.
Tip: Select Auto trim
to automatically trim the audio clip to fit the empty space based on the Jog Slider position.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Adding audio files

VideoStudio provides a separate Voice Track and Music Track but you may interchangeably insert voice and music files on either track. To insert, click  and select
Insert Audio. Choose which track to insert your audio file.
Tip: Click
Audio View for easier editing of your audio clips.

The VideoStudio DVD also comes with several audio clips ready for your use. Click Load audio  to add them to the Library for easy access.

Adding voiceover narration

Documentaries and news features often use narrations to help the audience understand what is going on in the video. VideoStudio allows you to record your own narration with crisp and clear results.

To add voiceover narration:

1 Click the
Music & Voice tab.
2 Move to the section of the video where you want to insert your narration by using the
Jog Slider.
Note:
You cannot record over an existing clip. When a clip is selected, recording is disabled. Make sure that a clip is not selected by clicking on an empty area on the Timeline.
3 Click Record Voice. The Adjust Volume
dialog box appears.
4 Speak into the microphone and check if the meter responds accordingly. Use the
Windows audio mixer to adjust the volume of the microphone.
5 Click
Start and begin speaking into the microphone.
6 Press [Esc] or click
Stop to end recording.
Tip: The best way to record narrations is to do the recording in 10 to 15-second sessions. This makes it easier to remove a badly recorded narration and redo it. To remove, just select the clip on the Timeline and press
[Delete].

Adding background music

Set the feel of your movie with the background music of your choice. VideoStudio can record and convert song tracks from your CD into WAV files and then insert them onto the Timeline.
VideoStudio also supports WMA, AVI, and other popular audio file formats which you can directly insert onto the Music Track.

Importing music from an audio CD

Capture music by importing from an audio CD. VideoStudio copies the CDA audio file then saves it in your hard drive as a WAV file.

To import music from an audio CD:

1 Click Import from Audio CD in the Music & Voice tab to open the Rip CD Audio dialog box. To check if the disc is detected, see to it that
Audio drive is enabled.
2 Select the tracks to be imported in the
Track List.
3 Click
Browse and select the destination folder where the imported files will be saved.
4 Click
Rip to start importing the audio tracks.

Adding third-party music

VideoStudio's
Auto Music feature lets you easily create composer-quality sound tracks from royalty-free music and use them as background music in your project. You can have different tempos or musical instrument variations per music.
Note: Auto Music Maker utilizes the patented SmartSound Quicktracks technology in sound track creation and features a variety of SmartSound royalty-free music.

To add third-party music:

1 Click the
Auto Music tab.
2 Select how the program will search for music files in
Scope.
3 Select the **Library**
from where to import the music.
4 Under
Music, select the music you want to use.
5 Select a Variation of the selected music. Click
Play Selected Music to play back the music with the variation applied.
6 Set the Volume level then click
Add to Timeline.
Tip: Select Auto trim
to automatically trim the audio clip to fit the empty space based on the Jog Slider position.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Adding audio files

VideoStudio provides a separate Voice Track and Music Track but you may interchangeably insert voice and music files on either track. To insert, click and select
Insert Audio. Choose which track to insert your audio file.
Tip: Click
Audio View for easier editing of your audio clips.

The VideoStudio DVD also comes with several audio clips ready for your use. Click Load audio to add them to the Library for easy access.

Adding voiceover narration

Documentaries and news features often use narrations to help the audience understand what is going on in the video. VideoStudio allows you to record your own narration with crisp and clear results.

To add voiceover narration:

1 Click the
Music & Voice tab.
2 Move to the section of the video where you want to insert your narration by using the
Jog Slider.
Note:
You cannot record over an existing clip. When a clip is selected, recording is disabled. Make sure that a clip is not selected by clicking on an empty area on the Timeline.
3 Click Record Voice. The Adjust Volume
dialog box appears.
4 Speak into the microphone and check if the meter responds accordingly. Use the
Windows audio mixer to adjust the volume of the microphone.
5 Click
Start and begin speaking into the microphone.
6 Press [Esc] or click
Stop to end recording.
Tip: The best way to record narrations is to do the recording in 10 to 15-second sessions. This makes it easier to remove a badly recorded narration and redo it. To remove, just select the clip on the Timeline and press
[Delete].

Adding background music

Set the feel of your movie with the background music of your choice. VideoStudio can record and convert song tracks from your CD into WAV files and then insert them onto the Timeline.
VideoStudio also supports WMA, AVI, and other popular audio file formats which you can directly insert onto the Music Track.

Importing music from an audio CD

Capture music by importing from an audio CD. VideoStudio copies the CDA audio file then saves it in your hard drive as a WAV file.

To import music from an audio CD:

1 Click Import from Audio CD in the Music & Voice tab to open the Rip CD Audio dialog box. To check if the disc is detected, see to it that
Audio drive is enabled.
2 Select the tracks to be imported in the
Track List.
3 Click
Browse and select the destination folder where the imported files will be saved.
4 Click
Rip to start importing the audio tracks.

Adding third-party music

VideoStudio's
Auto Music feature lets you easily create composer-quality sound tracks from royalty-free music and use them as background music in your project. You can have different tempos or musical instrument variations per music.
Note: Auto Music Maker utilizes the patented SmartSound Quicktracks technology in sound track creation and features a variety of SmartSound royalty-free music.

To add third-party music:

1 Click the
Auto Music tab.
2 Select how the program will search for music files in
Scope.
3 Select the **Library**
from where to import the music.
4 Under
Music, select the music you want to use.
5 Select a Variation of the selected music. Click
Play Selected Music to play back the music with the variation applied.
6 Set the Volume level then click
Add to Timeline.
Tip: Select Auto trim
to automatically trim the audio clip to fit the empty space based on the Jog Slider position.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Adding audio files

VideoStudio provides a separate Voice Track and Music Track but you may interchangeably insert voice and music files on either track. To insert, click  and select
Insert Audio. Choose which track to insert your audio file.
Tip: Click
Audio View for easier editing of your audio clips.

The VideoStudio DVD also comes with several audio clips ready for your use. Click Load audio  to add them to the Library for easy access.

Adding voiceover narration

Documentaries and news features often use narrations to help the audience understand what is going on in the video. VideoStudio allows you to record your own narration with crisp and clear results.

To add voiceover narration:

1 Click the
Music & Voice tab.
2 Move to the section of the video where you want to insert your narration by using the
Jog Slider.
Note:
You cannot record over an existing clip. When a clip is selected, recording is disabled. Make sure that a clip is not selected by clicking on an empty area on the Timeline.
3 Click Record Voice. The Adjust Volume
dialog box appears.
4 Speak into the microphone and check if the meter responds accordingly. Use the
Windows audio mixer to adjust the volume of the microphone.
5 Click
Start and begin speaking into the microphone.
6 Press [Esc] or click
Stop to end recording.
Tip: The best way to record narrations is to do the recording in 10 to 15-second sessions. This makes it easier to remove a badly recorded narration and redo it. To remove, just select the clip on the Timeline and press
[Delete].

Adding background music

Set the feel of your movie with the background music of your choice. VideoStudio can record and convert song tracks from your CD into WAV files and then insert them onto the Timeline.
VideoStudio also supports WMA, AVI, and other popular audio file formats which you can directly insert onto the Music Track.

Importing music from an audio CD

Capture music by importing from an audio CD. VideoStudio copies the CDA audio file then saves it in your hard drive as a WAV file.

To import music from an audio CD:

1 Click Import from Audio CD in the Music & Voice tab to open the Rip CD Audio dialog box. To check if the disc is detected, see to it that
Audio drive is enabled.
2 Select the tracks to be imported in the
Track List.
3 Click
Browse and select the destination folder where the imported files will be saved.
4 Click
Rip to start importing the audio tracks.

Adding third-party music

VideoStudio's
Auto Music feature lets you easily create composer-quality sound tracks from royalty-free music and use them as background music in your project. You can have different tempos or musical instrument variations per music.
Note: Auto Music Maker utilizes the patented SmartSound Quicktracks technology in sound track creation and features a variety of SmartSound royalty-free music.

To add third-party music:

1 Click the
Auto Music tab.
2 Select how the program will search for music files in
Scope.
3 Select the **Library**
from where to import the music.
4 Under
Music, select the music you want to use.
5 Select a Variation of the selected music. Click
Play Selected Music to play back the music with the variation applied.
6 Set the Volume level then click
Add to Timeline.
Tip: Select Auto trim
to automatically trim the audio clip to fit the empty space based on the Jog Slider position.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Adding audio files

VideoStudio provides a separate Voice Track and Music Track but you may interchangeably insert voice and music files on either track. To insert, click and select
Insert Audio. Choose which track to insert your audio file.
Tip: Click
Audio View for easier editing of your audio clips.

The VideoStudio DVD also comes with several audio clips ready for your use. Click Load audio to add them to the Library for easy access.

Adding voiceover narration

Documentaries and news features often use narrations to help the audience understand what is going on in the video. VideoStudio allows you to record your own narration with crisp and clear results.

To add voiceover narration:

1 Click the
Music & Voice tab.
2 Move to the section of the video where you want to insert your narration by using the
Jog Slider.
Note:
You cannot record over an existing clip. When a clip is selected, recording is disabled. Make sure that a clip is not selected by clicking on an empty area on the Timeline.
3 Click Record Voice. The Adjust Volume
dialog box appears.
4 Speak into the microphone and check if the meter responds accordingly. Use the
Windows audio mixer to adjust the volume of the microphone.
5 Click
Start and begin speaking into the microphone.
6 Press [Esc] or click
Stop to end recording.
Tip: The best way to record narrations is to do the recording in 10 to 15-second sessions. This makes it easier to remove a badly recorded narration and redo it. To remove, just select the clip on the Timeline and press
[Delete].

Adding background music

Set the feel of your movie with the background music of your choice. VideoStudio can record and convert song tracks from your CD into WAV files and then insert them onto the Timeline.
VideoStudio also supports WMA, AVI, and other popular audio file formats which you can directly insert onto the Music Track.

Importing music from an audio CD

Capture music by importing from an audio CD. VideoStudio copies the CDA audio file then saves it in your hard drive as a WAV file.

To import music from an audio CD:

1 Click Import from Audio CD in the Music & Voice tab to open the Rip CD Audio dialog box. To check if the disc is detected, see to it that
Audio drive is enabled.
2 Select the tracks to be imported in the
Track List.
3 Click
Browse and select the destination folder where the imported files will be saved.
4 Click
Rip to start importing the audio tracks.

Adding third-party music

VideoStudio's
Auto Music feature lets you easily create composer-quality sound tracks from royalty-free music and use them as background music in your project. You can have different tempos or musical instrument variations per music.
Note: Auto Music Maker utilizes the patented SmartSound Quicktracks technology in sound track creation and features a variety of SmartSound royalty-free music.

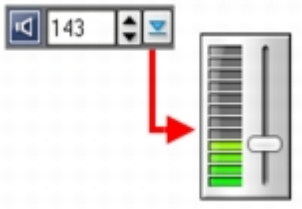
To add third-party music:

1 Click the
Auto Music tab.
2 Select how the program will search for music files in
Scope.
3 Select the **Library**
from where to import the music.
4 Under
Music, select the music you want to use.
5 Select a Variation of the selected music. Click
Play Selected Music to play back the music with the variation applied.
6 Set the Volume level then click
Add to Timeline.
Tip: Select Auto trim
to automatically trim the audio clip to fit the empty space based on the Jog Slider position.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Using the Clip Volume Control

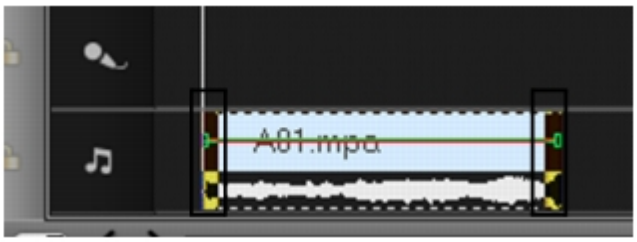
You will find the volume control in the **Attribute Panel**. Clip volume represents the percentage of the original recorded volume. Values range from **0** to **500**%, where **0**% completely silences the clip and **100** % retains the original recorded volume.



Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Trimming and cutting audio clips

After recording voice and music, you can easily trim your audio clips on the Timeline. There are two ways to trim audio clips: On the Timeline, a selected audio clip has two handles that can be used for trimming. Just grab a handle, either from the beginning or end, and drag it to shorten a clip.



Drag the Trim handles.



Tip: You can also trim a clip in the Library by using the Trim handles.
To play the trimmed portion of the clip, click
Play Trimmed Clip.
Aside from trimming, you can also cut audio clips. Drag the Jog Slider to the position where you want to cut the audio clip then click
Cut clip starting from Jog Slider's position. You can then delete the excess part of the clip.



Tips:

· Instant timecode tip is a feature of VideoStudio that allows you to add clips with a specific timecode. It appears while trimming and inserting overlapping clips on the timeline, enabling you to make adjustments based on the timecode shown.

· The instant timecode tip appears with the format 00:00:11.03 (03.06 - 09.22). 00:00:11.03 indicates the current timecode where the selected clip is located. 03.06 represents the duration overlapping with the previous clip while 09.22 is the duration overlapping with the next clip.



Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Stretching audio duration

The time stretch feature allows you to stretch an audio clip without distorting its pitch. Normally, stretching audio clips to fit the project results in a distorted sound. The time stretch feature will make the audio clip sound like it is just played in a slower tempo.

Note:

When you stretch an audio clip by 50-150%, the sound will not be distorted. However, if stretched below or above that range, the sound may be distorted.

To stretch the duration of an audio clip:

1 Click the Music & Voice tab in the
Options Panel.

2 Click Playback Speed to open the
Playback Speed dialog box.

3 Enter a value in
Speed or drag the slider to change the speed of the audio clip. A slower speed makes the clip's duration longer while a faster speed makes it shorter.

Tips:

· You can specify how long the clip will play in
Time stretch duration. The speed of the clip will automatically adjust to the specified duration. This feature will not trim the clip when you specify a shorter time.

· You can stretch the time of an audio clip on the Timeline by holding
[Shift] then dragging the handles on the selected clip.



Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Fade-in/out

Background music that starts and ends gradually is commonly used to create smooth transitions. For each of your music clips, you can click  and 
to fade-in and fade-out the volume at the start and end of the clip.

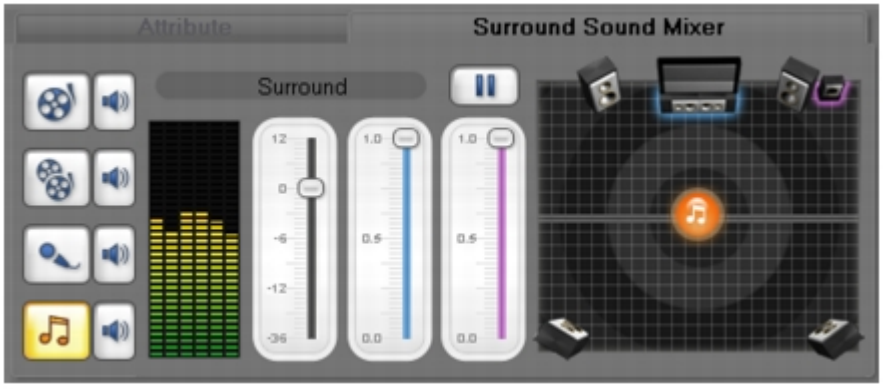
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Mixing audio tracks

The key to making narrations, background music, and existing audio of your video clips blend well together is to control the volume of your clips. Blend the different audio tracks in your project by using the Audio Step Options Panel, Surround Sound Mixer or
Audio View.

Using the Surround Sound Mixer

Unlike stereo stream that carries only two audio channels, Surround Sound has five separate audio channels encoded into one file which is delivered to five speakers and one sub-woofer frequency effect. The Surround Sound Mixer has all the controls to position sounds around the listener, outputting audio through the 5.1 configuration of multiple speakers. You can also use this mixer to adjust the volume for stereo file, making it sound as if the audio moves from one speaker to another and creating a "surround sound" effect.



Adjusting stereo channels

Stereo files (two channels) have two waveforms representing the left and right channels accordingly.

To use stereo mode:

1 Click Enable/Disable 5.1 Surround in the Toolbar. Select
Music Track in the Options Panel.
Tip: To check if the 5.1 Surround is disabled, click Audio View in the
Toolbar.
2 Click Play in the
Options Panel.
3 Click the music note symbol in the center of the Surround Sound Mixer. Drag it to either right or left, depending on your preferred sound position.
Note: Moving the note symbol will amplify the sound coming from your preferred direction.
4 Drag
Volume to adjust the volume level of the audio.

Mixing Surround Sound

All audio channels in Surround Sound have a set of similar controls that you will find in the stereo configuration of this panel, plus a few more specific controls. Six-channel VU Meter: Front Left, Front Right, Center, Sub-woofer, Surround Left, Surround Right. Center: Controls the amount of output sound from the center speaker. Sub-woofer: Controls the amount of low-frequency sound output.
Tip: Sub-woofer sound is less directional than sound output from the satellite speakers. Therefore, you can put it anywhere in the room after some experimenting. Each living space has its own acoustics so there are no fixed rules.

To use Surround Sound mode:

1 Click
Enable/Disable 5.1 Surround in the Toolbar.
2 Click the music note symbol in the center of the Surround Sound Mixer. This time, drag it to any of the six channels depending on your sound position preference. Repeat steps 1 and
2 in using stereo mode.
3 Drag the Volume, Center and
Sub-woofer to adjust sound controls of your audio
Tip: You can also adjust the sound position preference of your tracks in Video, Overlay and Voice. To do this, click your preferred track button and repeat steps 2 to
3.

Duplicating an audio channel

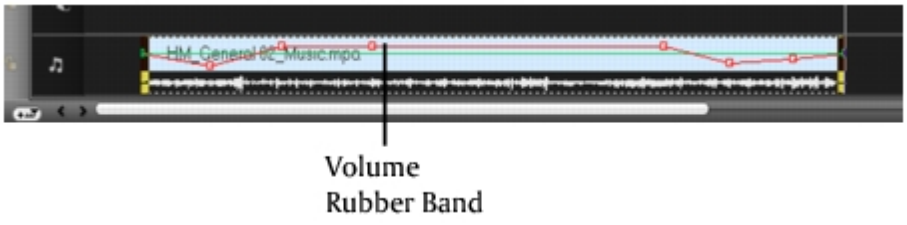
Audio files sometimes separate the vocal sound from the background audio and put them in different channels. Duplicating an audio channel allows you to mute the other channel.



For example, the voice is on the left audio channel and the background music on the right. When you duplicate the right channel, it will mute the vocal part of the song leaving the background music to play.
To duplicate an audio channel, select Duplicate audio channel in the Attribute tab in the
Options Panel then select which audio channel to duplicate.

Volume rubber banding

The volume rubber band is the horizontal line in the middle of the track and can only be seen when you are in **Audio View**. You can use the rubber band to adjust the volume of the audio track of video clip and the audio clips in the **Music** and **Voice**
Tracks.

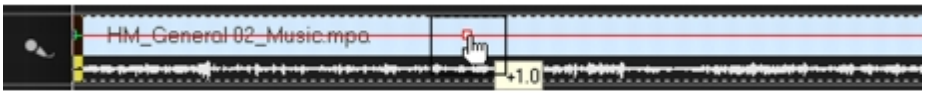


To adjust the volume level using the rubber band:

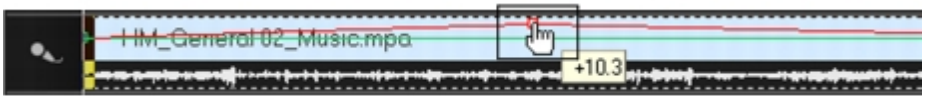
1 Click
Audio View.
2 On the Timeline, click the track to be adjusted.



3 Click a point on the rubber band to add a key frame. This allows you to adjust the volume level of the track based on this key frame.



4 Drag the key frame upwards/downwards to increase/decrease the volume level at this point of the clip.



5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to add more key frames to the rubber band and to adjust the volume level.

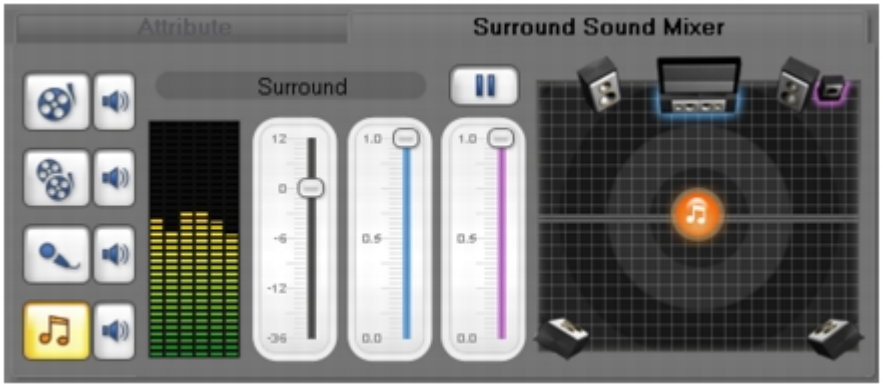
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Mixing audio tracks

The key to making narrations, background music, and existing audio of your video clips blend well together is to control the volume of your clips. Blend the different audio tracks in your project by using the Audio Step Options Panel, Surround Sound Mixer or
Audio View.

Using the Surround Sound Mixer

Unlike stereo stream that carries only two audio channels, Surround Sound has five separate audio channels encoded into one file which is delivered to five speakers and one sub-woofer frequency effect. The Surround Sound Mixer has all the controls to position sounds around the listener, outputting audio through the 5.1 configuration of multiple speakers. You can also use this mixer to adjust the volume for stereo file, making it sound as if the audio moves from one speaker to another and creating a "surround sound" effect.



Adjusting stereo channels

Stereo files (two channels) have two waveforms representing the left and right channels accordingly.

To use stereo mode:

1 Click Enable/Disable 5.1 Surround in the Toolbar. Select
Music Track in the Options Panel.
Tip: To check if the 5.1 Surround is disabled, click Audio View in the
Toolbar.
2 Click Play in the
Options Panel.
3 Click the music note symbol in the center of the Surround Sound Mixer. Drag it to either right or left, depending on your preferred sound position.
Note: Moving the note symbol will amplify the sound coming from your preferred direction.
4 Drag
Volume to adjust the volume level of the audio.

Mixing Surround Sound

All audio channels in Surround Sound have a set of similar controls that you will find in the stereo configuration of this panel, plus a few more specific controls. Six-channel VU Meter: Front Left, Front Right, Center, Sub-woofer, Surround Left, Surround Right. Center: Controls the amount of output sound from the center speaker. Sub-woofer: Controls the amount of low-frequency sound output.
Tip: Sub-woofer sound is less directional than sound output from the satellite speakers. Therefore, you can put it anywhere in the room after some experimenting. Each living space has its own acoustics so there are no fixed rules.

To use Surround Sound mode:

1 Click
Enable/Disable 5.1 Surround in the Toolbar.
2 Click the music note symbol in the center of the Surround Sound Mixer. This time, drag it to any of the six channels depending on your sound position preference. Repeat steps 1 and
2 in using stereo mode.
3 Drag the Volume, Center and
Sub-woofer to adjust sound controls of your audio
Tip: You can also adjust the sound position preference of your tracks in Video, Overlay and Voice. To do this, click your preferred track button and repeat steps 2 to
3.

Duplicating an audio channel

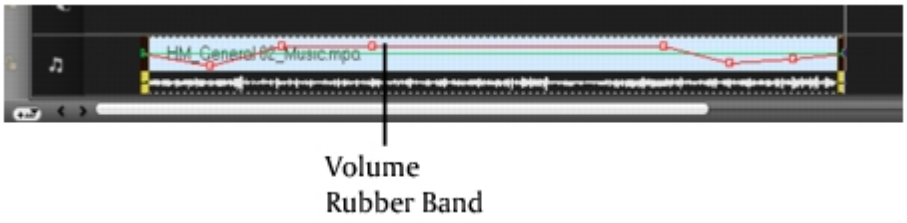
Audio files sometimes separate the vocal sound from the background audio and put them in different channels. Duplicating an audio channel allows you to mute the other channel.



For example, the voice is on the left audio channel and the background music on the right. When you duplicate the right channel, it will mute the vocal part of the song leaving the background music to play.
To duplicate an audio channel, select Duplicate audio channel in the Attribute tab in the
Options Panel then select which audio channel to duplicate.

Volume rubber banding

The volume rubber band is the horizontal line in the middle of the track and can only be seen when you are in **Audio View**. You can use the rubber band to adjust the volume of the audio track of video clip and the audio clips in the **Music** and **Voice**
Tracks.

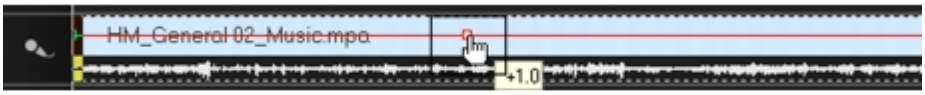


To adjust the volume level using the rubber band:

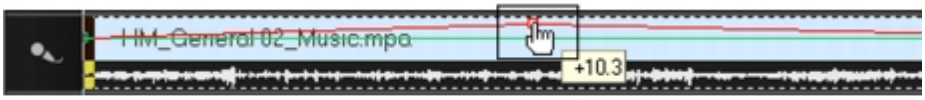
1 Click
Audio View.
2 On the Timeline, click the track to be adjusted.



3 Click a point on the rubber band to add a key frame. This allows you to adjust the volume level of the track based on this key frame.



4 Drag the key frame upwards/downwards to increase/decrease the volume level at this point of the clip.



5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to add more key frames to the rubber band and to adjust the volume level.

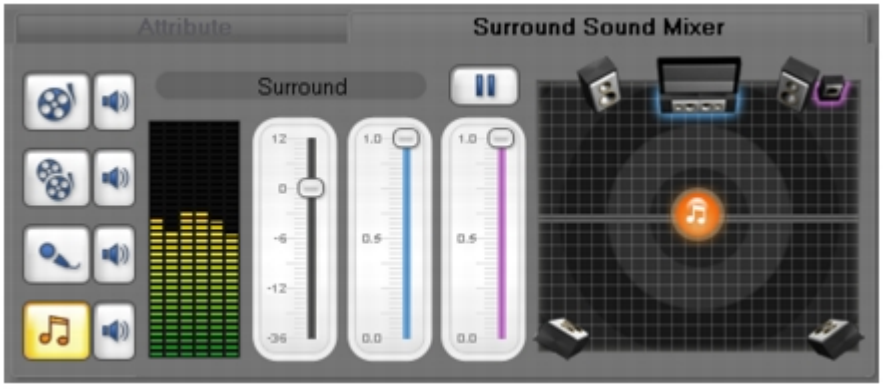
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Mixing audio tracks

The key to making narrations, background music, and existing audio of your video clips blend well together is to control the volume of your clips. Blend the different audio tracks in your project by using the Audio Step Options Panel, Surround Sound Mixer or
Audio View.

Using the Surround Sound Mixer

Unlike stereo stream that carries only two audio channels, Surround Sound has five separate audio channels encoded into one file which is delivered to five speakers and one sub-woofer frequency effect. The Surround Sound Mixer has all the controls to position sounds around the listener, outputting audio through the 5.1 configuration of multiple speakers. You can also use this mixer to adjust the volume for stereo file, making it sound as if the audio moves from one speaker to another and creating a "surround sound" effect.



Adjusting stereo channels

Stereo files (two channels) have two waveforms representing the left and right channels accordingly.

To use stereo mode:

1 Click Enable/Disable 5.1 Surround in the Toolbar. Select
Music Track in the Options Panel.
Tip: To check if the 5.1 Surround is disabled, click Audio View in the
Toolbar.
2 Click Play in the
Options Panel.
3 Click the music note symbol in the center of the Surround Sound Mixer. Drag it to either right or left, depending on your preferred sound position.
Note: Moving the note symbol will amplify the sound coming from your preferred direction.
4 Drag
Volume to adjust the volume level of the audio.

Mixing Surround Sound

All audio channels in Surround Sound have a set of similar controls that you will find in the stereo configuration of this panel, plus a few more specific controls. Six-channel VU Meter: Front Left, Front Right, Center, Sub-woofer, Surround Left, Surround Right. Center: Controls the amount of output sound from the center speaker. Sub-woofer: Controls the amount of low-frequency sound output.
Tip: Sub-woofer sound is less directional than sound output from the satellite speakers. Therefore, you can put it anywhere in the room after some experimenting. Each living space has its own acoustics so there are no fixed rules.

To use Surround Sound mode:

1 Click
Enable/Disable 5.1 Surround in the Toolbar.
2 Click the music note symbol in the center of the Surround Sound Mixer. This time, drag it to any of the six channels depending on your sound position preference. Repeat steps 1 and
2 in using stereo mode.
3 Drag the Volume, Center and
Sub-woofer to adjust sound controls of your audio
Tip: You can also adjust the sound position preference of your tracks in Video, Overlay and Voice. To do this, click your preferred track button and repeat steps 2 to
3.

Duplicating an audio channel

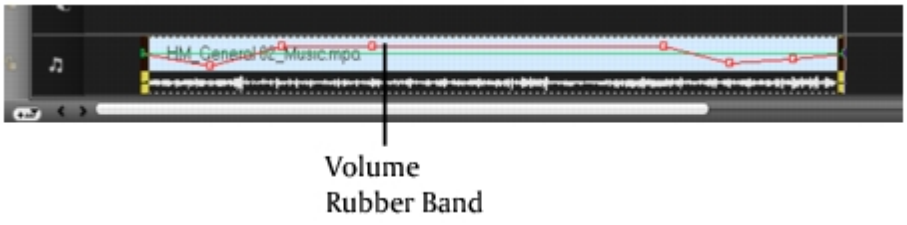
Audio files sometimes separate the vocal sound from the background audio and put them in different channels. Duplicating an audio channel allows you to mute the other channel.



For example, the voice is on the left audio channel and the background music on the right. When you duplicate the right channel, it will mute the vocal part of the song leaving the background music to play.
To duplicate an audio channel, select Duplicate audio channel in the Attribute tab in the
Options Panel then select which audio channel to duplicate.

Volume rubber banding

The volume rubber band is the horizontal line in the middle of the track and can only be seen when you are in **Audio View**. You can use the rubber band to adjust the volume of the audio track of video clip and the audio clips in the **Music** and **Voice**
Tracks.

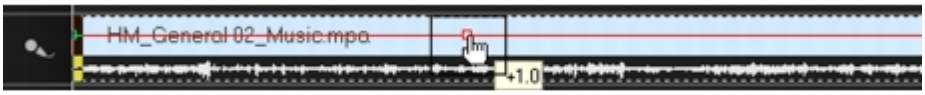


To adjust the volume level using the rubber band:

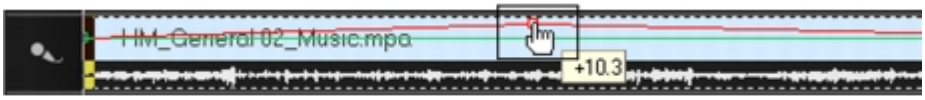
1 Click
Audio View.
2 On the Timeline, click the track to be adjusted.



3 Click a point on the rubber band to add a key frame. This allows you to adjust the volume level of the track based on this key frame.



4 Drag the key frame upwards/downwards to increase/decrease the volume level at this point of the clip.



5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to add more key frames to the rubber band and to adjust the volume level.

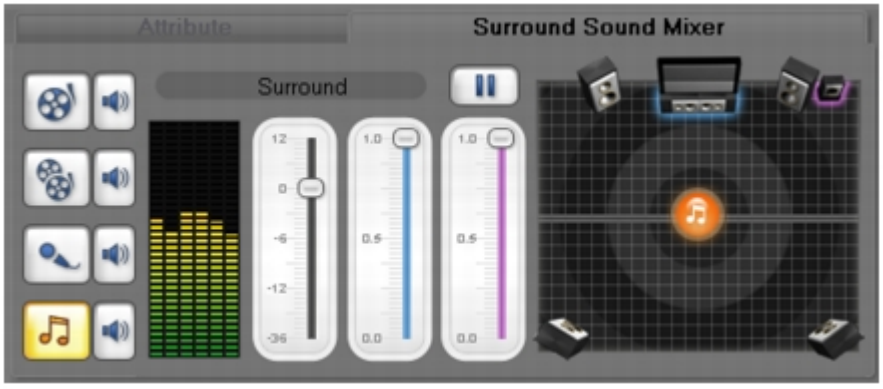
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Mixing audio tracks

The key to making narrations, background music, and existing audio of your video clips blend well together is to control the volume of your clips. Blend the different audio tracks in your project by using the Audio Step Options Panel, Surround Sound Mixer or
Audio View.

Using the Surround Sound Mixer

Unlike stereo stream that carries only two audio channels, Surround Sound has five separate audio channels encoded into one file which is delivered to five speakers and one sub-woofer frequency effect. The Surround Sound Mixer has all the controls to position sounds around the listener, outputting audio through the 5.1 configuration of multiple speakers. You can also use this mixer to adjust the volume for stereo file, making it sound as if the audio moves from one speaker to another and creating a "surround sound" effect.



Adjusting stereo channels

Stereo files (two channels) have two waveforms representing the left and right channels accordingly.

To use stereo mode:

1 Click Enable/Disable 5.1 Surround in the Toolbar. Select
Music Track in the Options Panel.
Tip: To check if the 5.1 Surround is disabled, click Audio View in the
Toolbar.
2 Click Play in the
Options Panel.
3 Click the music note symbol in the center of the Surround Sound Mixer. Drag it to either right or left, depending on your preferred sound position.
Note: Moving the note symbol will amplify the sound coming from your preferred direction.
4 Drag
Volume to adjust the volume level of the audio.

Mixing Surround Sound

All audio channels in Surround Sound have a set of similar controls that you will find in the stereo configuration of this panel, plus a few more specific controls. Six-channel VU Meter: Front Left, Front Right, Center, Sub-woofer, Surround Left, Surround Right. Center: Controls the amount of output sound from the center speaker. Sub-woofer: Controls the amount of low-frequency sound output.
Tip: Sub-woofer sound is less directional than sound output from the satellite speakers. Therefore, you can put it anywhere in the room after some experimenting. Each living space has its own acoustics so there are no fixed rules.

To use Surround Sound mode:

1 Click
Enable/Disable 5.1 Surround in the Toolbar.
2 Click the music note symbol in the center of the Surround Sound Mixer. This time, drag it to any of the six channels depending on your sound position preference. Repeat steps 1 and
2 in using stereo mode.
3 Drag the Volume, Center and
Sub-woofer to adjust sound controls of your audio
Tip: You can also adjust the sound position preference of your tracks in Video, Overlay and Voice. To do this, click your preferred track button and repeat steps 2 to
3.

Duplicating an audio channel

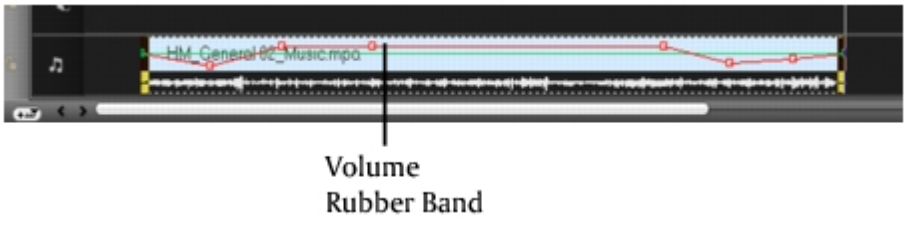
Audio files sometimes separate the vocal sound from the background audio and put them in different channels. Duplicating an audio channel allows you to mute the other channel.



For example, the voice is on the left audio channel and the background music on the right. When you duplicate the right channel, it will mute the vocal part of the song leaving the background music to play.
To duplicate an audio channel, select Duplicate audio channel in the Attribute tab in the
Options Panel then select which audio channel to duplicate.

Volume rubber banding

The volume rubber band is the horizontal line in the middle of the track and can only be seen when you are in **Audio View**. You can use the rubber band to adjust the volume of the audio track of video clip and the audio clips in the **Music** and **Voice**
Tracks.

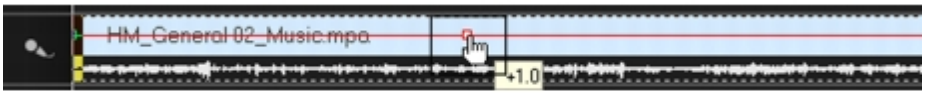


To adjust the volume level using the rubber band:

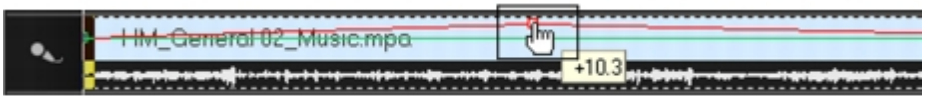
1 Click
Audio View.
2 On the Timeline, click the track to be adjusted.



3 Click a point on the rubber band to add a key frame. This allows you to adjust the volume level of the track based on this key frame.



4 Drag the key frame upwards/downwards to increase/decrease the volume level at this point of the clip.



5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to add more key frames to the rubber band and to adjust the volume level.

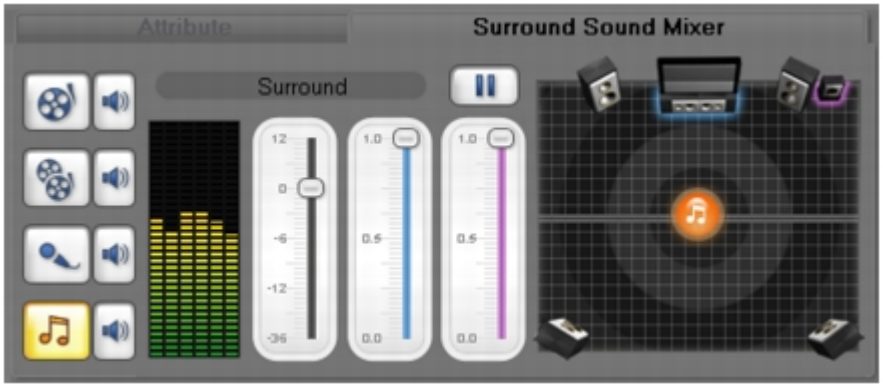
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Mixing audio tracks

The key to making narrations, background music, and existing audio of your video clips blend well together is to control the volume of your clips. Blend the different audio tracks in your project by using the Audio Step Options Panel, Surround Sound Mixer or
Audio View.

Using the Surround Sound Mixer

Unlike stereo stream that carries only two audio channels, Surround Sound has five separate audio channels encoded into one file which is delivered to five speakers and one sub-woofer frequency effect. The Surround Sound Mixer has all the controls to position sounds around the listener, outputting audio through the 5.1 configuration of multiple speakers. You can also use this mixer to adjust the volume for stereo file, making it sound as if the audio moves from one speaker to another and creating a "surround sound" effect.



Adjusting stereo channels

Stereo files (two channels) have two waveforms representing the left and right channels accordingly.

To use stereo mode:

1 Click Enable/Disable 5.1 Surround in the Toolbar. Select
Music Track in the Options Panel.
Tip: To check if the 5.1 Surround is disabled, click Audio View in the
Toolbar.
2 Click Play in the
Options Panel.
3 Click the music note symbol in the center of the Surround Sound Mixer. Drag it to either right or left, depending on your preferred sound position.
Note: Moving the note symbol will amplify the sound coming from your preferred direction.
4 Drag
Volume to adjust the volume level of the audio.

Mixing Surround Sound

All audio channels in Surround Sound have a set of similar controls that you will find in the stereo configuration of this panel, plus a few more specific controls. Six-channel VU Meter: Front Left, Front Right, Center, Sub-woofer, Surround Left, Surround Right. Center: Controls the amount of output sound from the center speaker. Sub-woofer: Controls the amount of low-frequency sound output.
Tip: Sub-woofer sound is less directional than sound output from the satellite speakers. Therefore, you can put it anywhere in the room after some experimenting. Each living space has its own acoustics so there are no fixed rules.

To use Surround Sound mode:

1 Click
Enable/Disable 5.1 Surround in the Toolbar.
2 Click the music note symbol in the center of the Surround Sound Mixer. This time, drag it to any of the six channels depending on your sound position preference. Repeat steps 1 and
2 in using stereo mode.
3 Drag the Volume, Center and
Sub-woofer to adjust sound controls of your audio
Tip: You can also adjust the sound position preference of your tracks in Video, Overlay and Voice. To do this, click your preferred track button and repeat steps 2 to
3.

Duplicating an audio channel

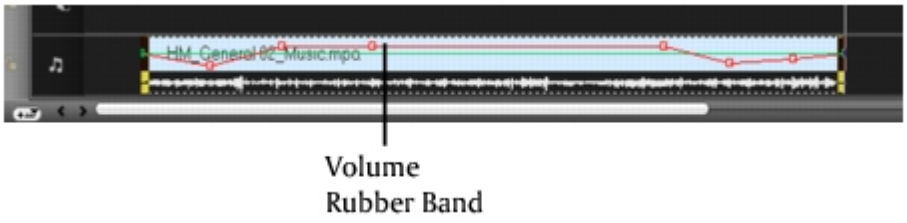
Audio files sometimes separate the vocal sound from the background audio and put them in different channels. Duplicating an audio channel allows you to mute the other channel.



For example, the voice is on the left audio channel and the background music on the right. When you duplicate the right channel, it will mute the vocal part of the song leaving the background music to play.
To duplicate an audio channel, select Duplicate audio channel in the Attribute tab in the
Options Panel then select which audio channel to duplicate.

Volume rubber banding

The volume rubber band is the horizontal line in the middle of the track and can only be seen when you are in **Audio View**. You can use the rubber band to adjust the volume of the audio track of video clip and the audio clips in the **Music** and **Voice**
Tracks.

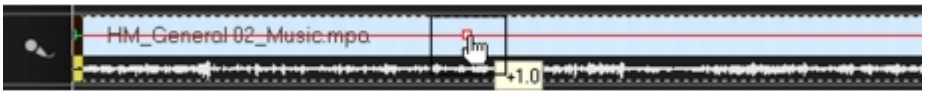


To adjust the volume level using the rubber band:

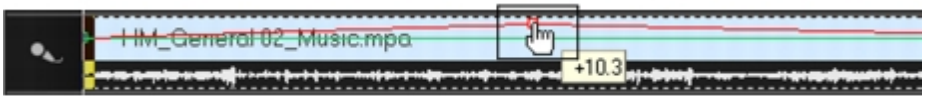
1 Click
Audio View.
2 On the Timeline, click the track to be adjusted.



3 Click a point on the rubber band to add a key frame. This allows you to adjust the volume level of the track based on this key frame.



4 Drag the key frame upwards/downwards to increase/decrease the volume level at this point of the clip.



5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to add more key frames to the rubber band and to adjust the volume level.

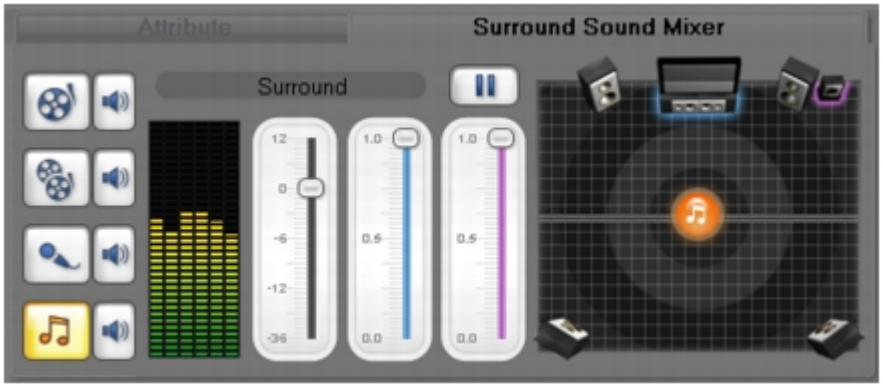
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Mixing audio tracks

The key to making narrations, background music, and existing audio of your video clips blend well together is to control the volume of your clips. Blend the different audio tracks in your project by using the Audio Step Options Panel, Surround Sound Mixer or
Audio View.

Using the Surround Sound Mixer

Unlike stereo stream that carries only two audio channels, Surround Sound has five separate audio channels encoded into one file which is delivered to five speakers and one sub-woofer frequency effect. The Surround Sound Mixer has all the controls to position sounds around the listener, outputting audio through the 5.1 configuration of multiple speakers. You can also use this mixer to adjust the volume for stereo file, making it sound as if the audio moves from one speaker to another and creating a "surround sound" effect.



Adjusting stereo channels

Stereo files (two channels) have two waveforms representing the left and right channels accordingly.

To use stereo mode:

1 Click Enable/Disable 5.1 Surround in the Toolbar. Select
Music Track in the Options Panel.
Tip: To check if the 5.1 Surround is disabled, click Audio View in the
Toolbar.
2 Click Play in the
Options Panel.
3 Click the music note symbol in the center of the Surround Sound Mixer. Drag it to either right or left, depending on your preferred sound position.
Note: Moving the note symbol will amplify the sound coming from your preferred direction.
4 Drag
Volume to adjust the volume level of the audio.

Mixing Surround Sound

All audio channels in Surround Sound have a set of similar controls that you will find in the stereo configuration of this panel, plus a few more specific controls. Six-channel VU Meter: Front Left, Front Right, Center, Sub-woofer, Surround Left, Surround Right. Center: Controls the amount of output sound from the center speaker. Sub-woofer: Controls the amount of low-frequency sound output.
Tip: Sub-woofer sound is less directional than sound output from the satellite speakers. Therefore, you can put it anywhere in the room after some experimenting. Each living space has its own acoustics so there are no fixed rules.

To use Surround Sound mode:

1 Click
Enable/Disable 5.1 Surround in the Toolbar.
2 Click the music note symbol in the center of the Surround Sound Mixer. This time, drag it to any of the six channels depending on your sound position preference. Repeat steps 1 and
2 in using stereo mode.
3 Drag the Volume, Center and
Sub-woofer to adjust sound controls of your audio
Tip: You can also adjust the sound position preference of your tracks in Video, Overlay and Voice. To do this, click your preferred track button and repeat steps 2 to
3.

Duplicating an audio channel

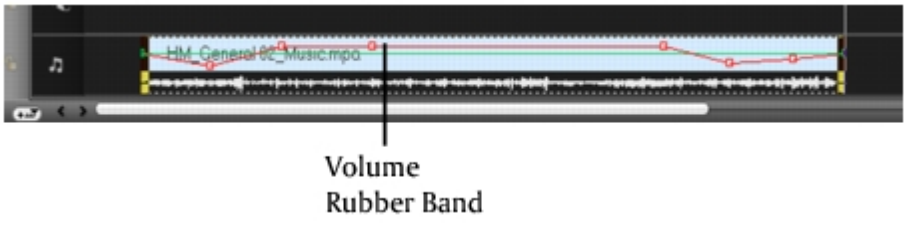
Audio files sometimes separate the vocal sound from the background audio and put them in different channels. Duplicating an audio channel allows you to mute the other channel.



For example, the voice is on the left audio channel and the background music on the right. When you duplicate the right channel, it will mute the vocal part of the song leaving the background music to play.
To duplicate an audio channel, select Duplicate audio channel in the Attribute tab in the
Options Panel then select which audio channel to duplicate.

Volume rubber banding

The volume rubber band is the horizontal line in the middle of the track and can only be seen when you are in **Audio View**. You can use the rubber band to adjust the volume of the audio track of video clip and the audio clips in the **Music** and **Voice**
Tracks.

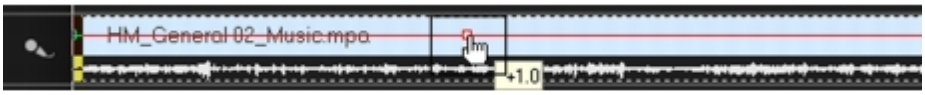


To adjust the volume level using the rubber band:

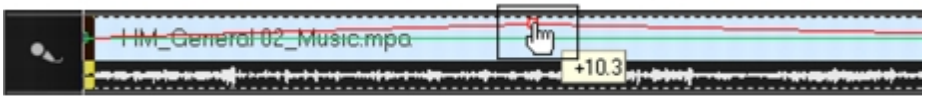
1 Click
Audio View.
2 On the Timeline, click the track to be adjusted.



3 Click a point on the rubber band to add a key frame. This allows you to adjust the volume level of the track based on this key frame.



4 Drag the key frame upwards/downwards to increase/decrease the volume level at this point of the clip.



5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 to add more key frames to the rubber band and to adjust the volume level.

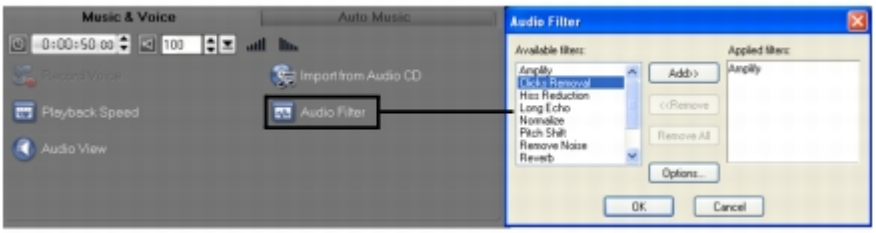
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Applying audio filters

VideoStudio allows you to apply filters such as Amplify, Hiss Reduction, Long Echo, Normalize, Pitch Shift, Remove Noise, Reverb, Stadium, Vocal Reduction and Volume Leveling to your audio clips in the **Music** and **Voice** Tracks. You can only apply audio filters when you are in **Timeline View**
.

To apply audio filters:

1 Click
Timeline View.
2 Select the audio clip on which to apply an audio filter.
3 In the **Music and Voice Panel**, click Audio Filter. This opens the
Audio Filter dialog box.
In the Available filters list, select the desired audio filters and click
Add.



Note: An audio filter can be customized if the
Options button is enabled. Click Options to open a dialog box where you can define the settings for the particular audio filter.
4 Click
OK.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Share

Render your project into a video file format that is suitable for your audience or purpose. You can export the rendered video file as a Web page, multimedia greeting card, or send it to a friend by e-mail. All these and more can be done in VideoStudio's
Share Step.
A DVD authoring wizard is also integrated in this step, enabling you to directly burn your project as AVCHD, DVD, VCD, SVCD and BDMV.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

The Share Step Options Panel

Create Video File: Creates a video file of your project with your specified project settings. Create Sound File: Allows you to save the audio segment of your project as a sound file. Create Disc: Invokes the DVD authoring wizard and allows you to choose an option from a pop-up menu to burn your project in AVCHD, DVD, VCD, SVCD or BDMV format. Export to Mobile Device: A video file can be exported to other external devices such as PSP, Windows mobile-based devices and SD (Secure Digital) cards. You can only export your project after you have created a video file. Project Playback: Clears the screen and displays the whole project or a selected segment against a black background. It can also output to a videotape if you have a VGA to a TV converter, camcorder, or a video recorder connected to your system. It also allows you to manually control the output device when recording. DV Recording: Allows you to record a selected video file onto a DV tape using a DV camcorder. HDV Recording: Allows you to record a selected video file onto a DV tape using an HDV camcorder. Share Video Online: Allows you to output your project as FLV files to upload to YouTube directly.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Creating movie templates

Movie templates contain settings which define how to create the final movie file. By using the preset movie templates provided by Corel VideoStudio, or by creating your own templates in the Make Movie Templates Manager, you can have multiple variations of your final movie. For instance, you can create movie templates that provide high quality outputs for DVD and videotape recording, and also set up movie templates that give lower quality but acceptable outputs for different purposes, such as Web streaming and e-mail distribution.

To create movie templates:

1 Select Tools: Make Movie Templates Manager. The Make Movie Templates Manager dialog box opens.
2 Click New. In the New Template dialog box, select the File format and type in a Template name. Click OK.
3 In the Template Options dialog box, set the options you want in the General and AVI/ Compression tabs.
Note: The available options in the tabs will depend on the type of file format of the template.
4 Click OK.
Notes:
· Movie templates will appear in a selection menu when you click Create Video File in the Share Step. If you do not want to use a movie template, you can select Custom from the pop-up menu. This allows you to choose your own settings for creating the final movie or simply use the current project settings.
· To modify the settings of a movie template, click Edit in the Make Movie Templates Manager dialog box.

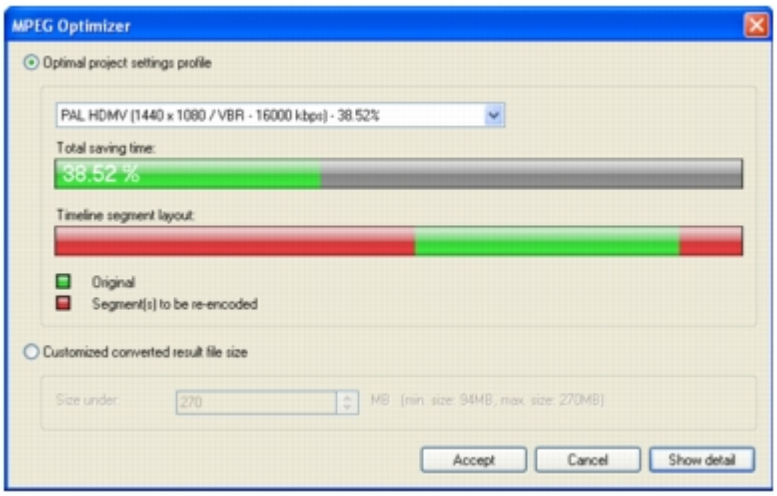
Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Optimizing MPEG videos

VideoStudio's
MPEG Optimizer makes creating and rendering movies in MPEG format a lot faster.
It analyzes and finds the best MPEG settings or the
Optimal project settings profile to use for your project. In doing so, it saves time by keeping your project's original segments with settings compatible to the Optimal project settings profile and maintains high quality for all segments including the ones that need re-encoding or re-rendering. As an additional feature, you can now specify the file size of your output to comply with file size limitations for your project.
After selecting MPEG Optimizer in the Share Step Options Panel, VideoStudio displays the
MPEG Optimizer dialog box and shows what percentage of your project needs to be re-rendered.
The MPEG Optimizer automatically detects changes in your project and renders out only the edited portions, making render time much shorter and faster.

To use MPEG Optimizer:

1 In the Share Step Options Panel, click Create Video File and select
MPEG Optimizer.
Notes:
· MPEG Optimizer is automatically enabled when an MPEG movie template is selected.
· To stop showing MPEG Optimizer dialog box when selecting MPEG movie templates, deselect Show MPEG Optimizer dialog box in
Preferences: General.
2 The
MPEG Optimizer dialog box appears.



3 Enter your desired file size output. Video and Audio Settings automatically adjust to your specified file size.
4 Click

Accept.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

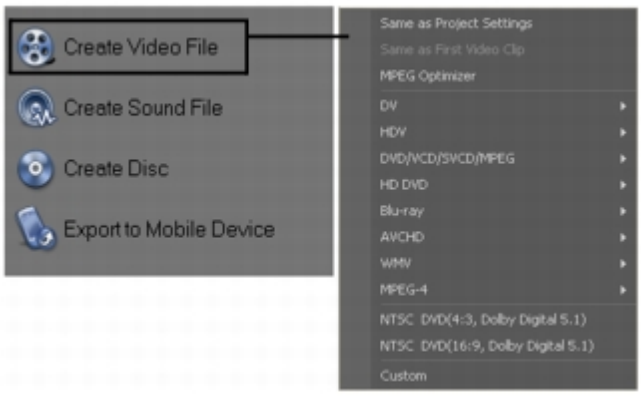
Creating and saving a video file

Before rendering your entire project into a movie file, select File: Save or
Save As to save it first as a VideoStudio project file (*.VSP). This allows you to return to your project anytime and make edits.
If you want to preview your project before creating a movie file, switch to Project Mode and click Play in the Navigation Panel. How the project is played back depends on the option you have selected in File: Preferences - General tab - Playback method.
Note: You can click
Pause in the progress bar to stop rendering and continue it when you're ready. You can also choose to stop preview while rendering for a faster and more efficient rendering of your project.



To create a video file of the entire project:

1 Click
Create Video File in the Options Panel. A selection menu of movie templates then opens.

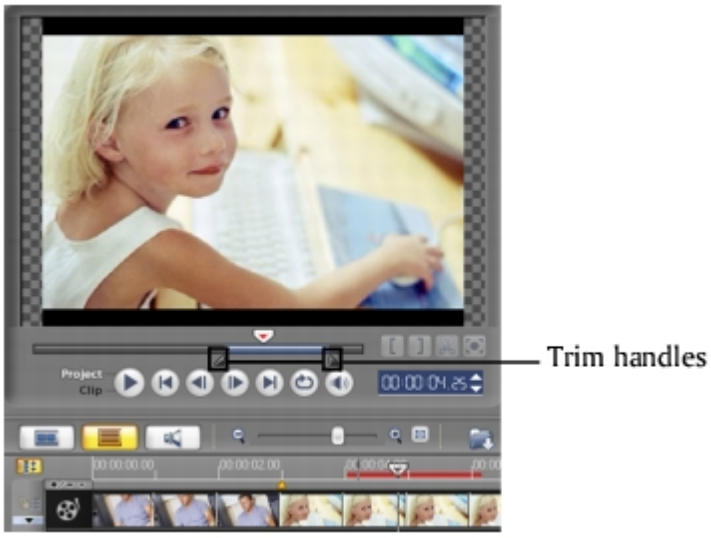


2 To create a movie file using the current project settings, select
Same as Project Settings.
Or, select one of the preset movie templates. These templates let you create a movie file that is suitable for the Web or for output to DV, DVD, SVCD or VCD, WMV and MPEG-4.
Note: To check current project settings, select File: Project Properties. To check the saving options provided by a movie template, select
Tools: Make Movie Templates Manager.
You can also use the settings of the first video clip in the Video Track by selecting
Same as First Video Clip.
3 Enter the desired file name for your movie and click Save. The movie file will then be saved and placed in the
Video Library.
Tip: To save on rendering time, use the same settings for your source video (e.g. captured video),

VideoStudio project, and movie template.
You can also render your project partially. **SmartRender**
allows "changes only" rendering, eliminating the need to re-render an entire video sequence when slight modifications have been made.

To create a video file of the preview range:

1 Click the ruler on top of the Timeline to make sure no clip is selected.
2 Select a preview range using the Trim Handles. Or, drag the triangle along the ruler then press [F3] and
[F4] to mark the start and end points respectively.

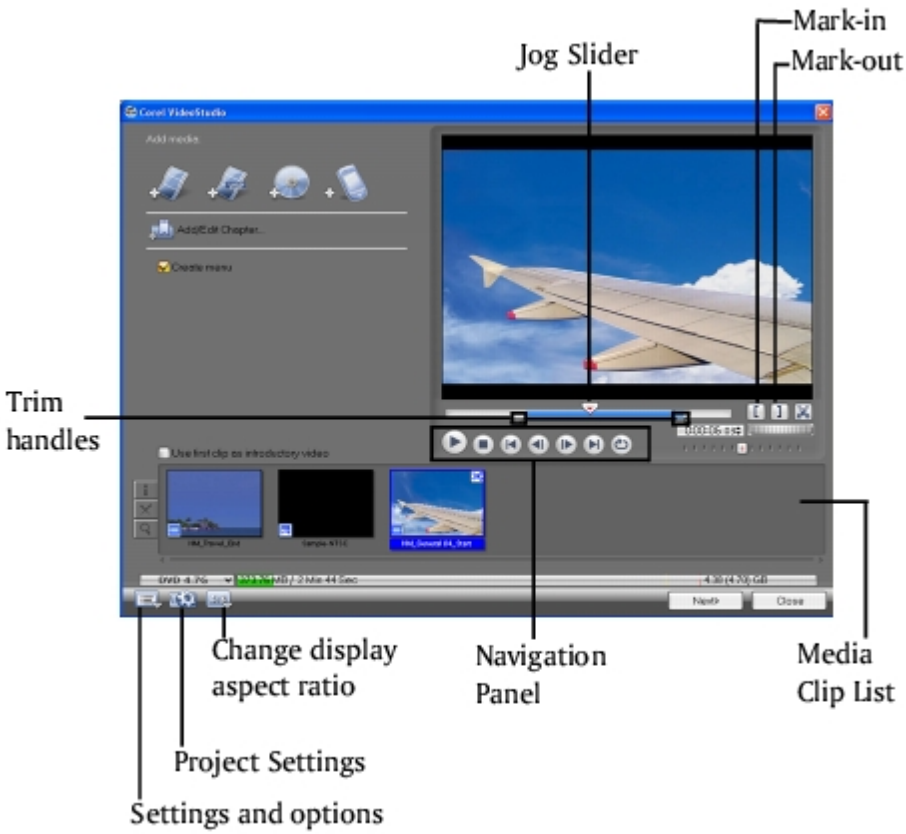


Note: A red line representing the selected range should appear on the ruler.
3 Click
Create Video File in the Options Panel.
4 Select a movie template.
5 In the Create Video File dialog box, click Options. In the Options dialog box, select Preview range. Click
OK.
6 Enter a file name and click
Save.
Another method of partially rendering your project is to click Play-Project while holding down the [Shift] key. You don't have to be in the Share Step to do this. The selected range will be rendered then shown in the Preview Window. Doing this will create a temporary video file under the folder specified in the Preview tab of the
Preferences dialog box.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Burning video discs

Click
Create Disc in the Options Panel to output your project (together with other VideoStudio projects or videos) to create an AVCHD, Blu-ray, DVD, VCD or SVCD.
In the dialog box that opens, first choose an output format. Second, decide whether you want to add other projects and videos. See the following sections for more information.



Notes:
· Your entire VideoStudio project can be brought into the Create Disc dialog box for burning even if you did not save it first as a *.vsp file.
· Video will be adjusted to the correct aspect ratio (as specified in the Disc Templates Manager dialog box), and automatically letterboxed or pillarboxed to fit the correct aspect ratio.

Assembling files

Import videos or VideoStudio project files (*.vsp) you want to include in your final movie.

To add videos:

1 Click
Add video files. Locate the folder where the videos are, and then select one or more video clips you

want to add.



2 Click
Open.
Note: After a video clip is added to the Media Clip List, sometimes you may see a black thumbnail. This is because the first scene (frame) of this video clip is a black screen. To change it, double-click to select this video clip and move the **Jog Slider** to the scene you want. Next, right-click the thumbnail and select **Change Thumbnail**
.

To add VideoStudio projects:

1 Click
Add VideoStudio project files.
Locate the folder where the projects are, and then select one or more video projects you want to add.



2 Click
Open.
You can trim a video and VideoStudio project using the
Jog Slider, mark-in/out, and navigation controls. Trimming a video gives you the freedom to precisely edit the video length.
Tip:
You can also add videos from DVD/DVD-VR discs.

Adding/Editing chapters

This feature is only available when the
Create menu option is selected. By adding chapters, you can create submenus linked to their associated video clip.



Represented as a video thumbnail in a submenu, each chapter is like a bookmark for a video clip. When viewers click on a chapter, the playback of the video will start from the selected chapter.

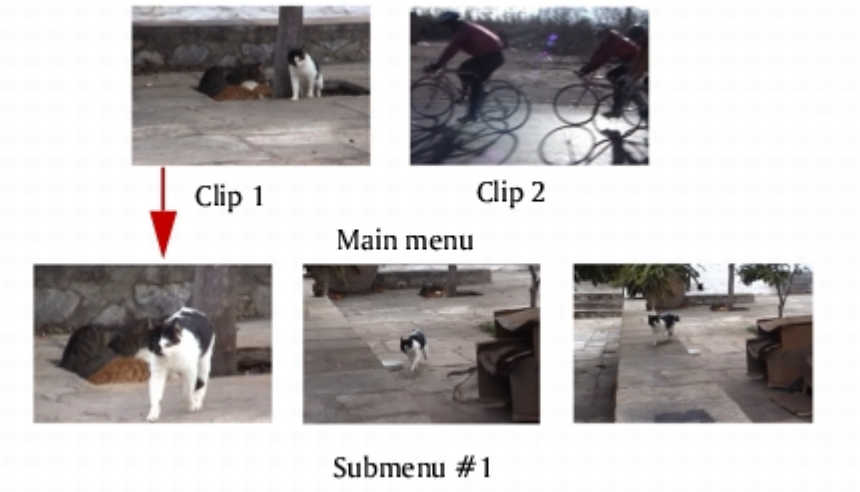
Notes:
· You can create up to 99 chapters for a video clip.
· If the Create menu option is not selected, you will be guided to the preview step immediately without creating any menus after clicking
Next.
· When you are creating a disc with only one VideoStudio project or one video clip, do not select
Use first clip as introductory video if you want to create menus.

To create or edit chapters linked to a video clip:

1 Select a video in the Media Clip
List.
2 Click
Add/Edit Chapter.
3 Drag the Jog Slider to move to a scene to set it as a chapter then click Add Chapter. Or, click
Auto Add Chapters to let VideoStudio automatically select chapters.
Tips:
· If you want to use
Auto Add Chapters, your video must be at least one minute long or the video has scene change information.
· If you click Auto
Add Chapters and your video is a DV-formatted AVI file captured from a DV camcorder, Corel VideoStudio can automatically detect scene changes and add chapters accordingly.
· If the selected video is an MPEG-2 file with scene change information, Corel VideoStudio automatically generates these chapters for you when you click
Auto Add Chapters.
4 Repeat Step 3 to add more chapter points. You can also use Remove Chapter or Remove All Chapters to delete unwanted chapters.
5 Click
OK.

Creating selection menus

In this step, you can create the main menu and submenus. These menus provide an interactive screen for your movie viewer to choose which video to watch. Corel VideoStudio includes a set of menu templates for you to create your menus and submenus.



In this example, Clip 1 has three chapters so when you click the Clip 1 video thumbnail, it will jump to submenu #1. If you look at Clip 2, it has no chapters assigned to it so when you click Clip 2, the video will start playing from the beginning.

To edit menus:

1 By default, VideoStudio automatically makes all required menus for you. Use Currently displayed menu to switch to the menu you want to edit.

2 In the Gallery tab, click Menu template category and select a specific category. Click a particular template to apply.



3 Click My Title to customize the menu heading. You can also click the text description under each video thumbnail for customization.

Note:

If you do not modify "My Title" and the thumbnail descriptions or skip Step 2, there will be no menu heading and thumbnail text in the final output.

4 In the Edit tab, you can further customize your movie by adding background image, music or audio and by modifying font properties.

Tips:

· Select Motion Menu to enable motion attributes to the selected menu template.

· Click Layout Settings to specify whether to apply layout to all pages of the menu, reset the page, or reset all pages of the menu.

· Click Advanced Settings to specify whether to add a title menu, create a chapter menu, or display the thumbnail numbers in the Chapter List

.

· Click Customize to apply pan & zoom, motion filter and menu in and menu out effects.

5 When you're done, click Preview to preview the movie.

Previewing

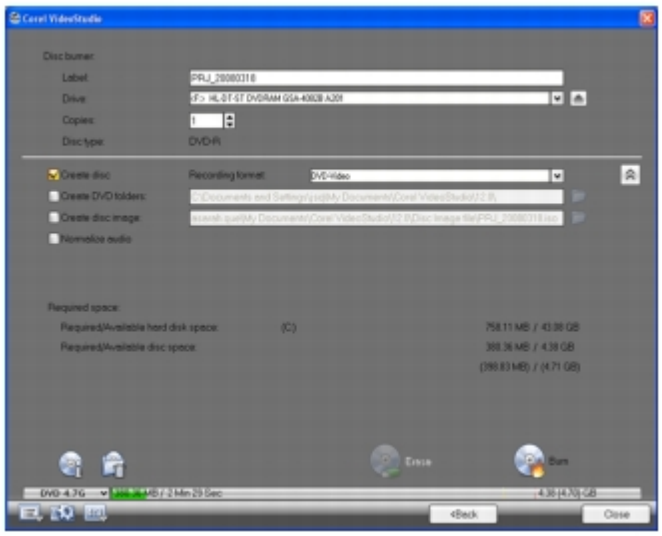
Now, it's time to see how your movie looks like before you burn it onto a disc. Simply move the mouse and click Play to watch your movie and test the menu selection on your computer. Use the navigation controls here as you would on a standard remote control of a home DVD player.



Tip: As you move between controls, a tool tip pops up and tells you its specific function.

Burning your project onto a disc

This is the final step in the disc creation process. You can burn your movie onto a disc, your preferred output or create a disc image file of your movie to save on your hard drive.



Tip: For details about the different disc formats, you can refer to
Appendix C: Technology Overview - AVCHD, BD, DVD, VCD and SVCD.

To burn your movie onto a disc:

1 Click
Next after you preview your project.
2 Click
Show more output options to show available options for your project.
· Select
Create DVD folders to create folders for your project and specify their location.
· Select
Create disc image file to make an ISO image file of the DVD for later use.
· Select
Normalize audio to make sure that irregular audio levels during playback are prevented.
3 Click Burning Options
to define additional burner and output settings.
4 Click
Burn to start the burning process.
5 After successfully burning your disc, a dialog box appears from which you can select the next step.

·

Close: Prompts you to save your work and close Corel VideoStudio.

Burning options

·

Disc burner: Specifies the settings for your burning device.

·

Label: Enables you to enter a volume name of up to 32 characters onto the CD/DVD.

·

Drive: Selects the disc burner that you want to use to burn the video file.

·

Copies: Sets the number of disc copies to burn.

·

Disc type: Displays the output disc format for the current project.

· Create to disc:

Allows you to directly burn your video project onto a disc.

·

Recording format: Select DVD-Video format to use the DVD industry standard. To quickly re-edit your disc without copying the file to the hard drive, select DVD-Video (fast re-editable) which still complies with the industry standard, and has very high compatibility when working with set-top home DVD players and computer DVD-ROM. Select DVD+VR for DVD players supporting this format.

·

Create DVD folders: This option is only enabled when the video file being created is a DVD-Video. The files created are in preparation for burning the video file to a DVD. This also allows the user to view the finished DVD file on the computer using a DVD-Video player software.

·

Create disc image: Select this option if you plan to burn the video file several times. By selecting this option, you don't have to generate the file again when you want to burn the same video file.

· Normalize audio: Select to prevent irregular audio levels during playback of your movie. Different video clips may have different audio recording levels when created. When these video clips are put together, the volume could vary greatly from one to another. To make volume levels consistent between clips, Normalize audio function evaluates and adjusts the audio waveform of the whole project to assure a balance audio level throughout the video.

·

Erase: Deletes all the data in the rewritable disc.

·

Burning Options: Adjusts the advanced output settings for burning your project.

·

Delete temp files: Removes all unnecessary files in your working folder.

·

Burn: Begins the recording process.

·

Required space: Serves as a reference in burning your projects. These indicators help determine if you have sufficient space to successfully burn your project onto the disc.

·

Required/Available hard disk space: Displays the space needed by the working folder of the project and the space available for use in the hard drive.

·

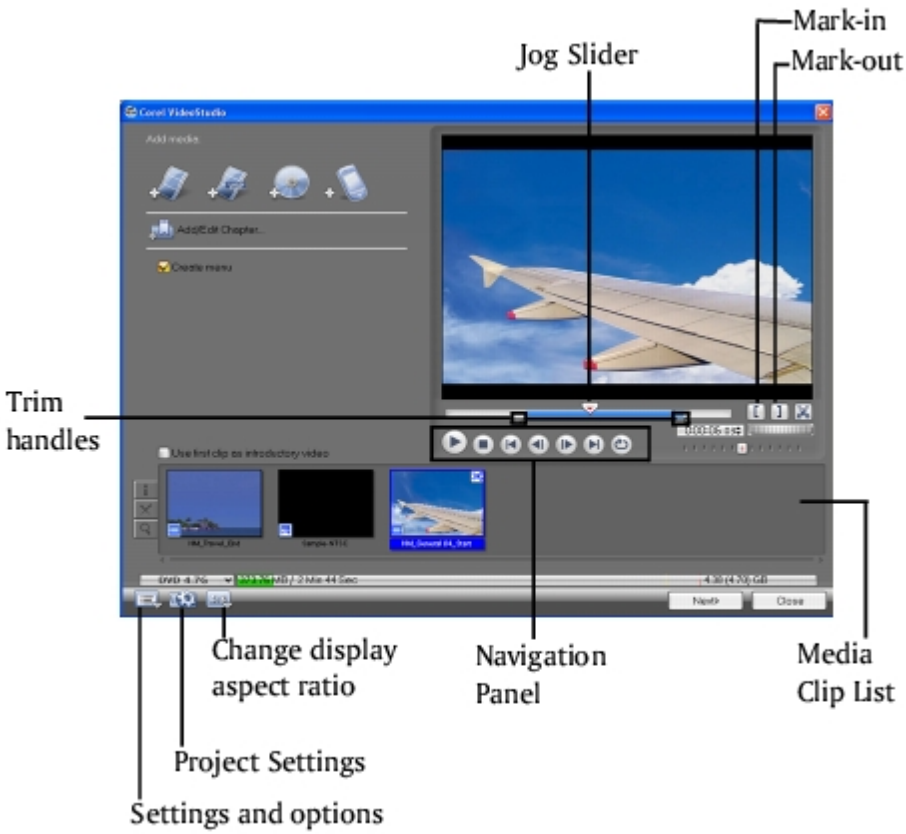
Required/Available disc space: Displays the space needed to fit the video file in the disc and the space that is available for use.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some

features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Burning video discs

Click
Create Disc in the Options Panel to output your project (together with other VideoStudio projects or videos) to create an AVCHD, Blu-ray, DVD, VCD or SVCD.
In the dialog box that opens, first choose an output format. Second, decide whether you want to add other projects and videos. See the following sections for more information.



Notes:
· Your entire VideoStudio project can be brought into the Create Disc dialog box for burning even if you did not save it first as a *.vsp file.
· Video will be adjusted to the correct aspect ratio (as specified in the Disc Templates Manager dialog box), and automatically letterboxed or pillarboxed to fit the correct aspect ratio.

Assembling files

Import videos or VideoStudio project files (*.vsp) you want to include in your final movie.

To add videos:

1 Click
Add video files. Locate the folder where the videos are, and then select one or more video clips you

want to add.



2 Click
Open.
Note: After a video clip is added to the Media Clip List, sometimes you may see a black thumbnail. This is because the first scene (frame) of this video clip is a black screen. To change it, double-click to select this video clip and move the **Jog Slider** to the scene you want. Next, right-click the thumbnail and select **Change Thumbnail**
.

To add VideoStudio projects:

1 Click
Add VideoStudio project files.
Locate the folder where the projects are, and then select one or more video projects you want to add.



2 Click
Open.
You can trim a video and VideoStudio project using the
Jog Slider, mark-in/out, and navigation controls. Trimming a video gives you the freedom to precisely edit the video length.
Tip:
You can also add videos from DVD/DVD-VR discs.

Adding/Editing chapters

This feature is only available when the
Create menu option is selected. By adding chapters, you can create submenus linked to their associated video clip.



Represented as a video thumbnail in a submenu, each chapter is like a bookmark for a video clip. When viewers click on a chapter, the playback of the video will start from the selected chapter.

Notes:
· You can create up to 99 chapters for a video clip.
· If the Create menu option is not selected, you will be guided to the preview step immediately without creating any menus after clicking
Next.
· When you are creating a disc with only one VideoStudio project or one video clip, do not select
Use first clip as introductory video if you want to create menus.

To create or edit chapters linked to a video clip:

1 Select a video in the Media Clip
List.
2 Click
Add/Edit Chapter.
3 Drag the Jog Slider to move to a scene to set it as a chapter then click Add Chapter. Or, click
Auto Add Chapters to let VideoStudio automatically select chapters.
Tips:
· If you want to use
Auto Add Chapters, your video must be at least one minute long or the video has scene change information.
· If you click Auto
Add Chapters and your video is a DV-formatted AVI file captured from a DV camcorder, Corel VideoStudio can automatically detect scene changes and add chapters accordingly.
· If the selected video is an MPEG-2 file with scene change information, Corel VideoStudio automatically generates these chapters for you when you click
Auto Add Chapters.
4 Repeat Step 3 to add more chapter points. You can also use Remove Chapter or Remove All Chapters to delete unwanted chapters.
5 Click
OK.

Creating selection menus

In this step, you can create the main menu and submenus. These menus provide an interactive screen for your movie viewer to choose which video to watch. Corel VideoStudio includes a set of menu templates for you to create your menus and submenus.



In this example, Clip 1 has three chapters so when you click the Clip 1 video thumbnail, it will jump to submenu #1. If you look at Clip 2, it has no chapters assigned to it so when you click Clip 2, the video will start playing from the beginning.

To edit menus:

1 By default, VideoStudio automatically makes all required menus for you. Use Currently displayed menu to switch to the menu you want to edit.

2 In the Gallery tab, click Menu template category and select a specific category. Click a particular template to apply.



3 Click My Title to customize the menu heading. You can also click the text description under each video thumbnail for customization.

Note:

If you do not modify "My Title" and the thumbnail descriptions or skip Step 2, there will be no menu heading and thumbnail text in the final output.

4 In the Edit tab, you can further customize your movie by adding background image, music or audio and by modifying font properties.

Tips:

· Select Motion Menu to enable motion attributes to the selected menu template.

· Click Layout Settings to specify whether to apply layout to all pages of the menu, reset the page, or reset all pages of the menu.

· Click Advanced Settings to specify whether to add a title menu, create a chapter menu, or display the thumbnail numbers in the Chapter List

.

· Click Customize to apply pan & zoom, motion filter and menu in and menu out effects.

5 When you're done, click Preview to preview the movie.

Previewing

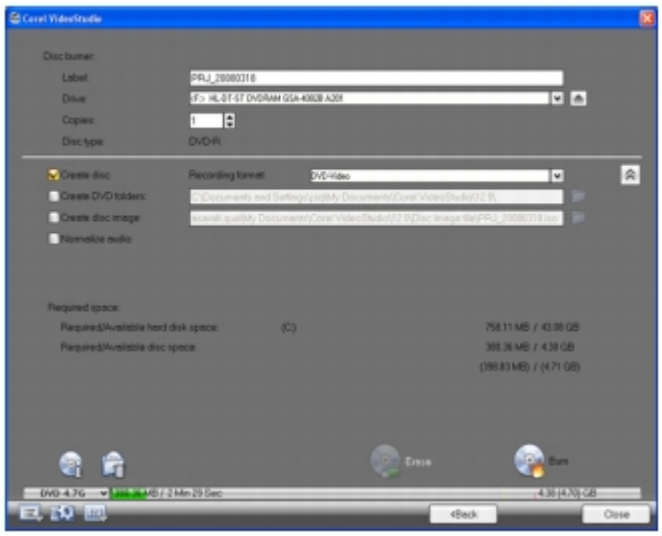
Now, it's time to see how your movie looks like before you burn it onto a disc. Simply move the mouse and click Play to watch your movie and test the menu selection on your computer. Use the navigation controls here as you would on a standard remote control of a home DVD player.



Tip: As you move between controls, a tool tip pops up and tells you its specific function.

Burning your project onto a disc

This is the final step in the disc creation process. You can burn your movie onto a disc, your preferred output or create a disc image file of your movie to save on your hard drive.



Tip: For details about the different disc formats, you can refer to
Appendix C: Technology Overview - AVCHD, BD, DVD, VCD and SVCD.

To burn your movie onto a disc:

1 Click
Next after you preview your project.
2 Click
Show more output options to show available options for your project.
· Select
Create DVD folders to create folders for your project and specify their location.
· Select
Create disc image file to make an ISO image file of the DVD for later use.
· Select
Normalize audio to make sure that irregular audio levels during playback are prevented.
3 Click Burning Options
to define additional burner and output settings.
4 Click
Burn to start the burning process.
5 After successfully burning your disc, a dialog box appears from which you can select the next step.

·

Close: Prompts you to save your work and close Corel VideoStudio.

Burning options

·

Disc burner: Specifies the settings for your burning device.

·

Label: Enables you to enter a volume name of up to 32 characters onto the CD/DVD.

·

Drive: Selects the disc burner that you want to use to burn the video file.

·

Copies: Sets the number of disc copies to burn.

·

Disc type: Displays the output disc format for the current project.

· Create to disc:

Allows you to directly burn your video project onto a disc.

·

Recording format: Select DVD-Video format to use the DVD industry standard. To quickly re-edit your disc without copying the file to the hard drive, select DVD-Video (fast re-editable) which still complies with the industry standard, and has very high compatibility when working with set-top home DVD players and computer DVD-ROM. Select DVD+VR for DVD players supporting this format.

·

Create DVD folders: This option is only enabled when the video file being created is a DVD-Video. The files created are in preparation for burning the video file to a DVD. This also allows the user to view the finished DVD file on the computer using a DVD-Video player software.

·

Create disc image: Select this option if you plan to burn the video file several times. By selecting this option, you don't have to generate the file again when you want to burn the same video file.

· Normalize audio: Select to prevent irregular audio levels during playback of your movie. Different video clips may have different audio recording levels when created. When these video clips are put together, the volume could vary greatly from one to another. To make volume levels consistent between clips, Normalize audio function evaluates and adjusts the audio waveform of the whole project to assure a balance audio level throughout the video.

·

Erase: Deletes all the data in the rewritable disc.

·

Burning Options: Adjusts the advanced output settings for burning your project.

·

Delete temp files: Removes all unnecessary files in your working folder.

·

Burn: Begins the recording process.

·

Required space: Serves as a reference in burning your projects. These indicators help determine if you have sufficient space to successfully burn your project onto the disc.

·

Required/Available hard disk space: Displays the space needed by the working folder of the project and the space available for use in the hard drive.

·

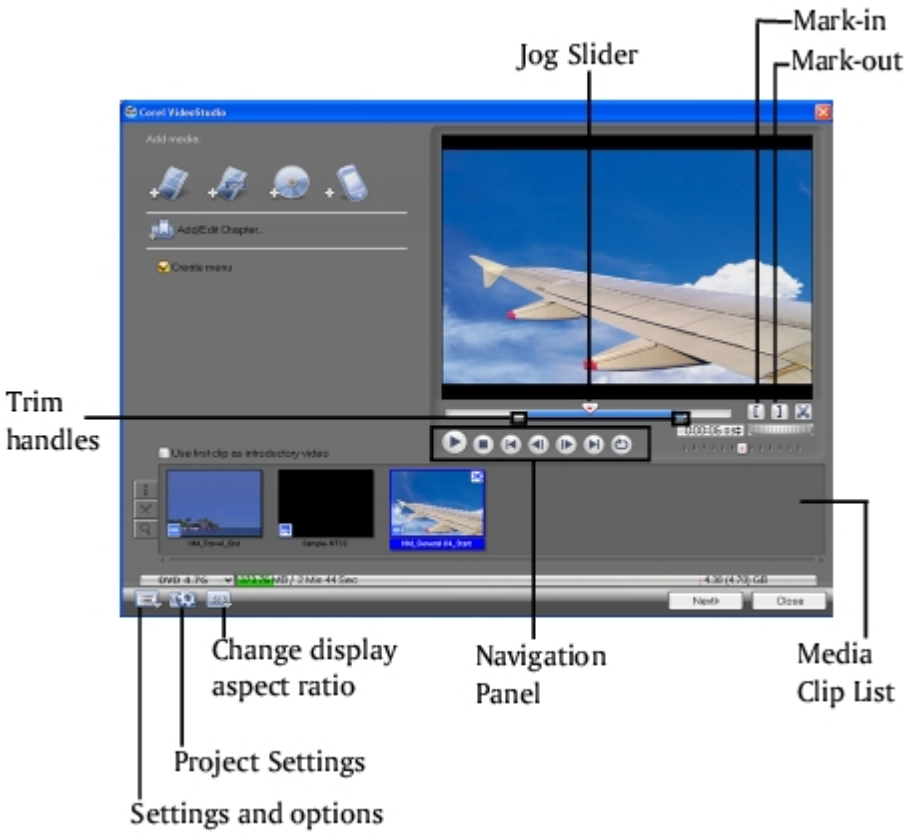
Required/Available disc space: Displays the space needed to fit the video file in the disc and the space that is available for use.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some

features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Burning video discs

Click
Create Disc in the Options Panel to output your project (together with other VideoStudio projects or videos) to create an AVCHD, Blu-ray, DVD, VCD or SVCD.
In the dialog box that opens, first choose an output format. Second, decide whether you want to add other projects and videos. See the following sections for more information.



Notes:
· Your entire VideoStudio project can be brought into the Create Disc dialog box for burning even if you did not save it first as a *.vsp file.
· Video will be adjusted to the correct aspect ratio (as specified in the Disc Templates Manager dialog box), and automatically letterboxed or pillarboxed to fit the correct aspect ratio.

Assembling files

Import videos or VideoStudio project files (*.vsp) you want to include in your final movie.

To add videos:

1 Click
Add video files. Locate the folder where the videos are, and then select one or more video clips you

want to add.



2 Click
Open.
Note: After a video clip is added to the Media Clip List, sometimes you may see a black thumbnail. This is because the first scene (frame) of this video clip is a black screen. To change it, double-click to select this video clip and move the **Jog Slider** to the scene you want. Next, right-click the thumbnail and select **Change Thumbnail**
.

To add VideoStudio projects:

1 Click
Add VideoStudio project files.
Locate the folder where the projects are, and then select one or more video projects you want to add.



2 Click
Open.
You can trim a video and VideoStudio project using the
Jog Slider, mark-in/out, and navigation controls. Trimming a video gives you the freedom to precisely edit the video length.
Tip:
You can also add videos from DVD/DVD-VR discs.

Adding/Editing chapters

This feature is only available when the
Create menu option is selected. By adding chapters, you can create submenus linked to their associated video clip.



Represented as a video thumbnail in a submenu, each chapter is like a bookmark for a video clip. When viewers click on a chapter, the playback of the video will start from the selected chapter.

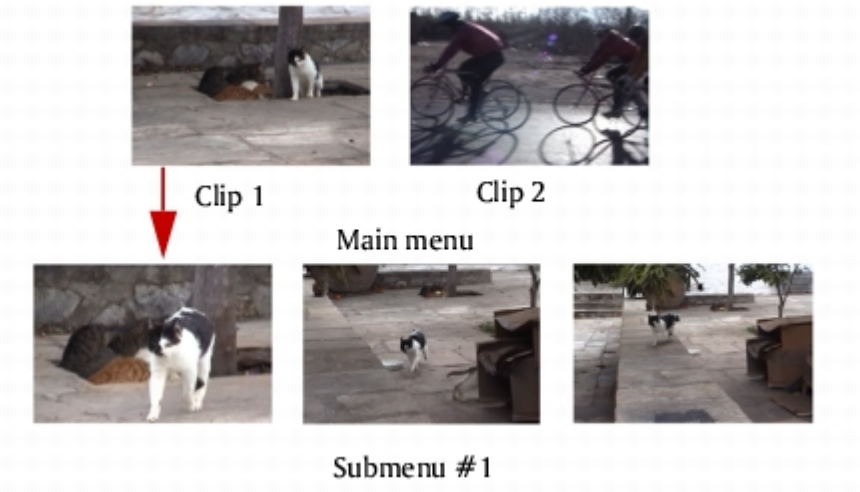
Notes:
· You can create up to 99 chapters for a video clip.
· If the Create menu option is not selected, you will be guided to the preview step immediately without creating any menus after clicking
Next.
· When you are creating a disc with only one VideoStudio project or one video clip, do not select
Use first clip as introductory video if you want to create menus.

To create or edit chapters linked to a video clip:

1 Select a video in the Media Clip
List.
2 Click
Add/Edit Chapter.
3 Drag the Jog Slider to move to a scene to set it as a chapter then click Add Chapter. Or, click
Auto Add Chapters to let VideoStudio automatically select chapters.
Tips:
· If you want to use
Auto Add Chapters, your video must be at least one minute long or the video has scene change information.
· If you click Auto
Add Chapters and your video is a DV-formatted AVI file captured from a DV camcorder, Corel VideoStudio can automatically detect scene changes and add chapters accordingly.
· If the selected video is an MPEG-2 file with scene change information, Corel VideoStudio automatically generates these chapters for you when you click
Auto Add Chapters.
4 Repeat Step 3 to add more chapter points. You can also use Remove Chapter or Remove All Chapters to delete unwanted chapters.
5 Click
OK.

Creating selection menus

In this step, you can create the main menu and submenus. These menus provide an interactive screen for your movie viewer to choose which video to watch. Corel VideoStudio includes a set of menu templates for you to create your menus and submenus.



In this example, Clip 1 has three chapters so when you click the Clip 1 video thumbnail, it will jump to submenu #1. If you look at Clip 2, it has no chapters assigned to it so when you click Clip 2, the video will start playing from the beginning.

To edit menus:

1 By default, VideoStudio automatically makes all required menus for you. Use Currently displayed menu to switch to the menu you want to edit.

2 In the Gallery tab, click Menu template category and select a specific category. Click a particular template to apply.



3 Click My Title to customize the menu heading. You can also click the text description under each video thumbnail for customization.

Note:

If you do not modify "My Title" and the thumbnail descriptions or skip Step 2, there will be no menu heading and thumbnail text in the final output.

4 In the Edit tab, you can further customize your movie by adding background image, music or audio and by modifying font properties.

Tips:

· Select Motion Menu to enable motion attributes to the selected menu template.

· Click Layout Settings to specify whether to apply layout to all pages of the menu, reset the page, or reset all pages of the menu.

· Click Advanced Settings to specify whether to add a title menu, create a chapter menu, or display the thumbnail numbers in the Chapter List

.

· Click Customize to apply pan & zoom, motion filter and menu in and menu out effects.

5 When you're done, click Preview to preview the movie.

Previewing

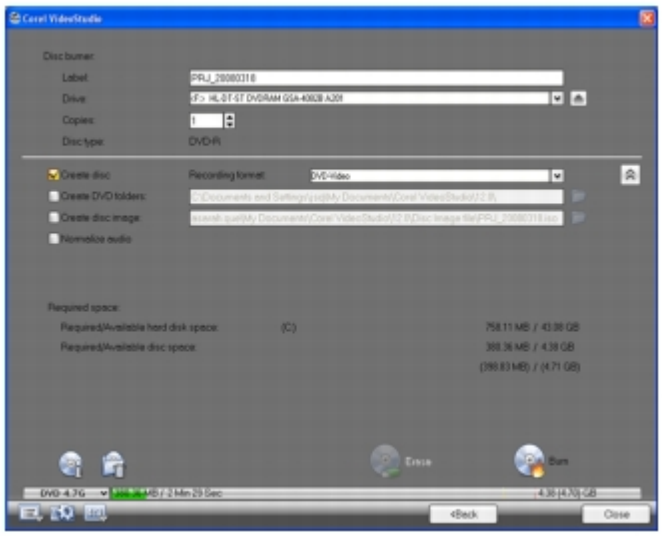
Now, it's time to see how your movie looks like before you burn it onto a disc. Simply move the mouse and click Play to watch your movie and test the menu selection on your computer. Use the navigation controls here as you would on a standard remote control of a home DVD player.



Tip: As you move between controls, a tool tip pops up and tells you its specific function.

Burning your project onto a disc

This is the final step in the disc creation process. You can burn your movie onto a disc, your preferred output or create a disc image file of your movie to save on your hard drive.



Tip: For details about the different disc formats, you can refer to
Appendix C: Technology Overview - AVCHD, BD, DVD, VCD and SVCD.

To burn your movie onto a disc:

1 Click
Next after you preview your project.
2 Click
Show more output options to show available options for your project.
· Select
Create DVD folders to create folders for your project and specify their location.
· Select
Create disc image file to make an ISO image file of the DVD for later use.
· Select
Normalize audio to make sure that irregular audio levels during playback are prevented.
3 Click Burning Options
to define additional burner and output settings.
4 Click
Burn to start the burning process.
5 After successfully burning your disc, a dialog box appears from which you can select the next step.

·

Close: Prompts you to save your work and close Corel VideoStudio.

Burning options

·

Disc burner: Specifies the settings for your burning device.

·

Label: Enables you to enter a volume name of up to 32 characters onto the CD/DVD.

·

Drive: Selects the disc burner that you want to use to burn the video file.

·

Copies: Sets the number of disc copies to burn.

·

Disc type: Displays the output disc format for the current project.

· Create to disc:

Allows you to directly burn your video project onto a disc.

·

Recording format: Select DVD-Video format to use the DVD industry standard. To quickly re-edit your disc without copying the file to the hard drive, select DVD-Video (fast re-editable) which still complies with the industry standard, and has very high compatibility when working with set-top home DVD players and computer DVD-ROM. Select DVD+VR for DVD players supporting this format.

·

Create DVD folders: This option is only enabled when the video file being created is a DVD-Video. The files created are in preparation for burning the video file to a DVD. This also allows the user to view the finished DVD file on the computer using a DVD-Video player software.

·

Create disc image: Select this option if you plan to burn the video file several times. By selecting this option, you don't have to generate the file again when you want to burn the same video file.

· Normalize audio: Select to prevent irregular audio levels during playback of your movie. Different video clips may have different audio recording levels when created. When these video clips are put together, the volume could vary greatly from one to another. To make volume levels consistent between clips, Normalize audio function evaluates and adjusts the audio waveform of the whole project to assure a balance audio level throughout the video.

·

Erase: Deletes all the data in the rewritable disc.

·

Burning Options: Adjusts the advanced output settings for burning your project.

·

Delete temp files: Removes all unnecessary files in your working folder.

·

Burn: Begins the recording process.

·

Required space: Serves as a reference in burning your projects. These indicators help determine if you have sufficient space to successfully burn your project onto the disc.

·

Required/Available hard disk space: Displays the space needed by the working folder of the project and the space available for use in the hard drive.

·

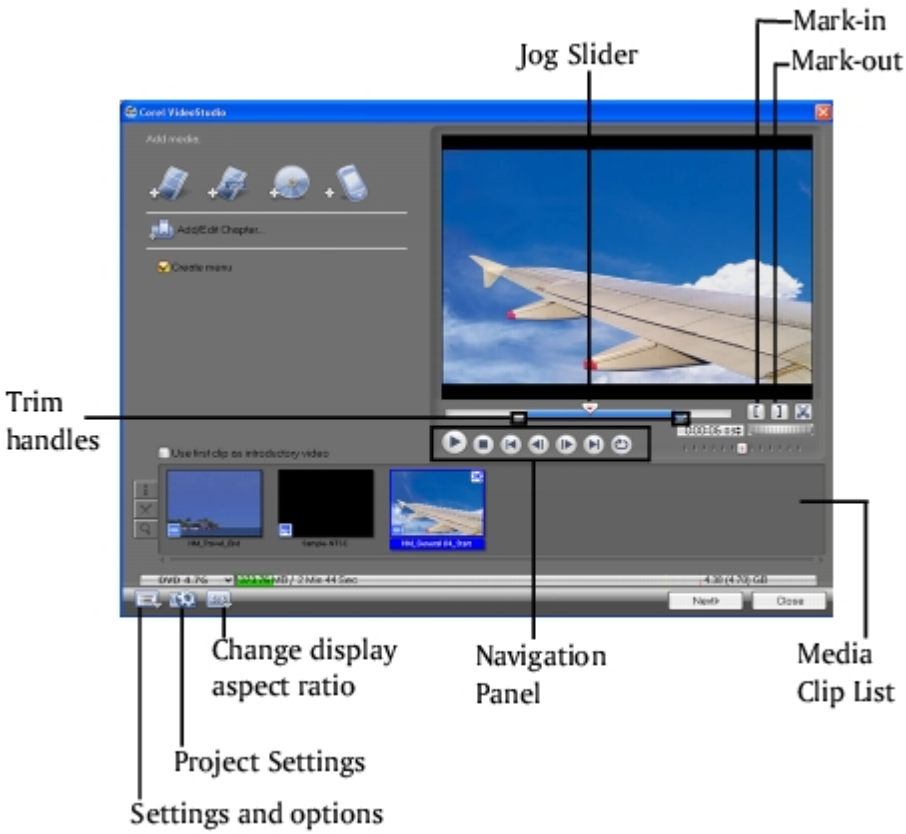
Required/Available disc space: Displays the space needed to fit the video file in the disc and the space that is available for use.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some

features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Burning video discs

Click
Create Disc in the Options Panel to output your project (together with other VideoStudio projects or videos) to create an AVCHD, Blu-ray, DVD, VCD or SVCD.
In the dialog box that opens, first choose an output format. Second, decide whether you want to add other projects and videos. See the following sections for more information.



Notes:
· Your entire VideoStudio project can be brought into the Create Disc dialog box for burning even if you did not save it first as a *.vsp file.
· Video will be adjusted to the correct aspect ratio (as specified in the Disc Templates Manager dialog box), and automatically letterboxed or pillarboxed to fit the correct aspect ratio.

Assembling files

Import videos or VideoStudio project files (*.vsp) you want to include in your final movie.

To add videos:

1 Click
Add video files. Locate the folder where the videos are, and then select one or more video clips you

want to add.



2 Click
Open.
Note: After a video clip is added to the Media Clip List, sometimes you may see a black thumbnail. This is because the first scene (frame) of this video clip is a black screen. To change it, double-click to select this video clip and move the **Jog Slider** to the scene you want. Next, right-click the thumbnail and select **Change Thumbnail**
.

To add VideoStudio projects:

1 Click
Add VideoStudio project files.
Locate the folder where the projects are, and then select one or more video projects you want to add.



2 Click
Open.
You can trim a video and VideoStudio project using the
Jog Slider, mark-in/out, and navigation controls. Trimming a video gives you the freedom to precisely edit the video length.
Tip:
You can also add videos from DVD/DVD-VR discs.

Adding/Editing chapters

This feature is only available when the
Create menu option is selected. By adding chapters, you can create submenus linked to their associated video clip.



Represented as a video thumbnail in a submenu, each chapter is like a bookmark for a video clip. When viewers click on a chapter, the playback of the video will start from the selected chapter.

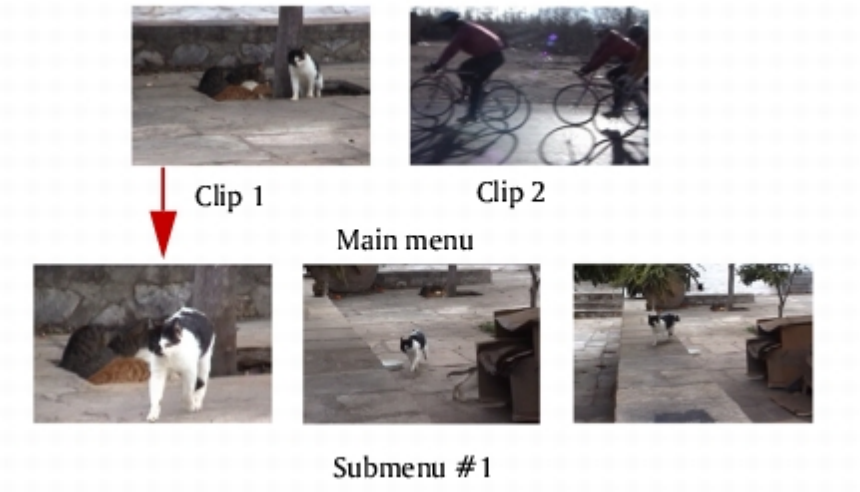
Notes:
· You can create up to 99 chapters for a video clip.
· If the Create menu option is not selected, you will be guided to the preview step immediately without creating any menus after clicking
Next.
· When you are creating a disc with only one VideoStudio project or one video clip, do not select
Use first clip as introductory video if you want to create menus.

To create or edit chapters linked to a video clip:

1 Select a video in the Media Clip
List.
2 Click
Add/Edit Chapter.
3 Drag the Jog Slider to move to a scene to set it as a chapter then click Add Chapter. Or, click
Auto Add Chapters to let VideoStudio automatically select chapters.
Tips:
· If you want to use
Auto Add Chapters, your video must be at least one minute long or the video has scene change information.
· If you click Auto
Add Chapters and your video is a DV-formatted AVI file captured from a DV camcorder, Corel VideoStudio can automatically detect scene changes and add chapters accordingly.
· If the selected video is an MPEG-2 file with scene change information, Corel VideoStudio automatically generates these chapters for you when you click
Auto Add Chapters.
4 Repeat Step 3 to add more chapter points. You can also use Remove Chapter or Remove All Chapters to delete unwanted chapters.
5 Click
OK.

Creating selection menus

In this step, you can create the main menu and submenus. These menus provide an interactive screen for your movie viewer to choose which video to watch. Corel VideoStudio includes a set of menu templates for you to create your menus and submenus.



In this example, Clip 1 has three chapters so when you click the Clip 1 video thumbnail, it will jump to submenu #1. If you look at Clip 2, it has no chapters assigned to it so when you click Clip 2, the video will start playing from the beginning.

To edit menus:

1 By default, VideoStudio automatically makes all required menus for you. Use Currently displayed menu to switch to the menu you want to edit.

2 In the Gallery tab, click Menu template category and select a specific category. Click a particular template to apply.



3 Click My Title to customize the menu heading. You can also click the text description under each video thumbnail for customization.

Note:

If you do not modify "My Title" and the thumbnail descriptions or skip Step 2, there will be no menu heading and thumbnail text in the final output.

4 In the Edit tab, you can further customize your movie by adding background image, music or audio and by modifying font properties.

Tips:

· Select Motion Menu to enable motion attributes to the selected menu template.

· Click Layout Settings to specify whether to apply layout to all pages of the menu, reset the page, or reset all pages of the menu.

· Click Advanced Settings to specify whether to add a title menu, create a chapter menu, or display the thumbnail numbers in the Chapter List

.

· Click Customize to apply pan & zoom, motion filter and menu in and menu out effects.

5 When you're done, click Preview to preview the movie.

Previewing

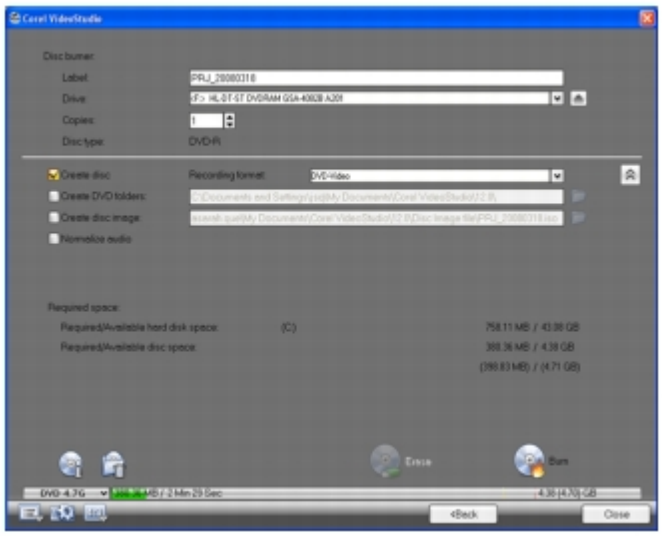
Now, it's time to see how your movie looks like before you burn it onto a disc. Simply move the mouse and click Play to watch your movie and test the menu selection on your computer. Use the navigation controls here as you would on a standard remote control of a home DVD player.



Tip: As you move between controls, a tool tip pops up and tells you its specific function.

Burning your project onto a disc

This is the final step in the disc creation process. You can burn your movie onto a disc, your preferred output or create a disc image file of your movie to save on your hard drive.



Tip: For details about the different disc formats, you can refer to
Appendix C: Technology Overview - AVCHD, BD, DVD, VCD and SVCD.

To burn your movie onto a disc:

1 Click
Next after you preview your project.
2 Click
Show more output options to show available options for your project.
· Select
Create DVD folders to create folders for your project and specify their location.
· Select
Create disc image file to make an ISO image file of the DVD for later use.
· Select
Normalize audio to make sure that irregular audio levels during playback are prevented.
3 Click Burning Options
to define additional burner and output settings.
4 Click
Burn to start the burning process.
5 After successfully burning your disc, a dialog box appears from which you can select the next step.

·

Close: Prompts you to save your work and close Corel VideoStudio.

Burning options

·

Disc burner: Specifies the settings for your burning device.

·

Label: Enables you to enter a volume name of up to 32 characters onto the CD/DVD.

·

Drive: Selects the disc burner that you want to use to burn the video file.

·

Copies: Sets the number of disc copies to burn.

·

Disc type: Displays the output disc format for the current project.

· Create to disc:

Allows you to directly burn your video project onto a disc.

·

Recording format: Select DVD-Video format to use the DVD industry standard. To quickly re-edit your disc without copying the file to the hard drive, select DVD-Video (fast re-editable) which still complies with the industry standard, and has very high compatibility when working with set-top home DVD players and computer DVD-ROM. Select DVD+VR for DVD players supporting this format.

·

Create DVD folders: This option is only enabled when the video file being created is a DVD-Video. The files created are in preparation for burning the video file to a DVD. This also allows the user to view the finished DVD file on the computer using a DVD-Video player software.

·

Create disc image: Select this option if you plan to burn the video file several times. By selecting this option, you don't have to generate the file again when you want to burn the same video file.

· Normalize audio: Select to prevent irregular audio levels during playback of your movie. Different video clips may have different audio recording levels when created. When these video clips are put together, the volume could vary greatly from one to another. To make volume levels consistent between clips, Normalize audio function evaluates and adjusts the audio waveform of the whole project to assure a balance audio level throughout the video.

·

Erase: Deletes all the data in the rewritable disc.

·

Burning Options: Adjusts the advanced output settings for burning your project.

·

Delete temp files: Removes all unnecessary files in your working folder.

·

Burn: Begins the recording process.

·

Required space: Serves as a reference in burning your projects. These indicators help determine if you have sufficient space to successfully burn your project onto the disc.

·

Required/Available hard disk space: Displays the space needed by the working folder of the project and the space available for use in the hard drive.

·

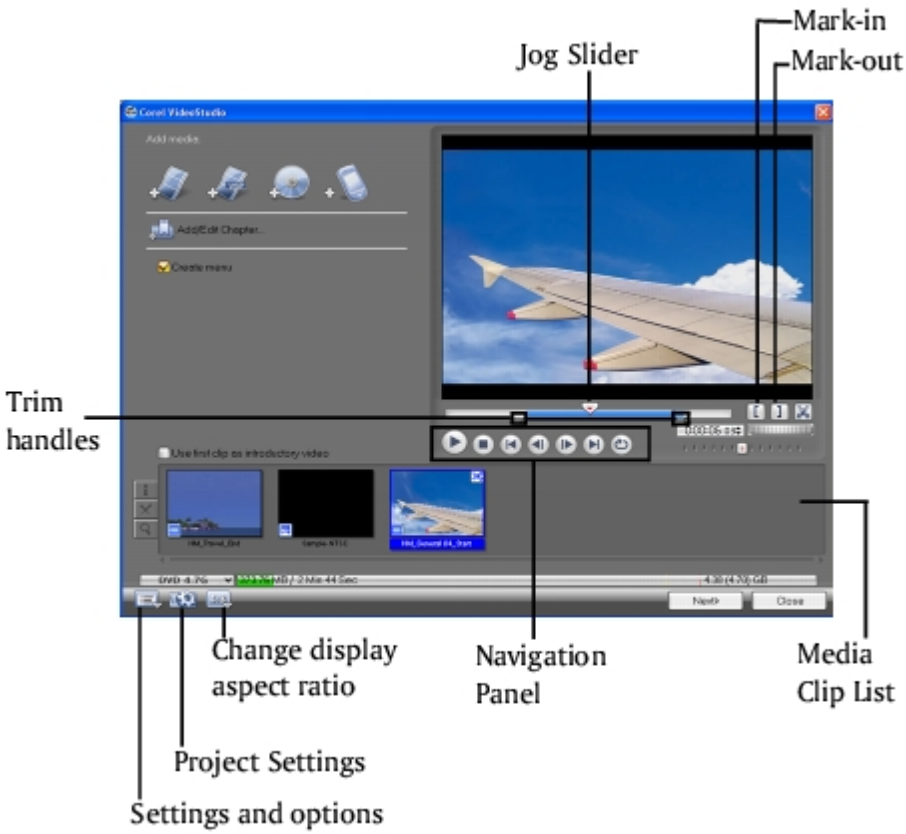
Required/Available disc space: Displays the space needed to fit the video file in the disc and the space that is available for use.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some

features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Burning video discs

Click
Create Disc in the Options Panel to output your project (together with other VideoStudio projects or videos) to create an AVCHD, Blu-ray, DVD, VCD or SVCD.
In the dialog box that opens, first choose an output format. Second, decide whether you want to add other projects and videos. See the following sections for more information.



Notes:
· Your entire VideoStudio project can be brought into the Create Disc dialog box for burning even if you did not save it first as a *.vsp file.
· Video will be adjusted to the correct aspect ratio (as specified in the Disc Templates Manager dialog box), and automatically letterboxed or pillarboxed to fit the correct aspect ratio.

Assembling files

Import videos or VideoStudio project files (*.vsp) you want to include in your final movie.

To add videos:

1 Click
Add video files. Locate the folder where the videos are, and then select one or more video clips you

want to add.



2 Click
Open.
Note: After a video clip is added to the Media Clip List, sometimes you may see a black thumbnail. This is because the first scene (frame) of this video clip is a black screen. To change it, double-click to select this video clip and move the **Jog Slider** to the scene you want. Next, right-click the thumbnail and select **Change Thumbnail**
.

To add VideoStudio projects:

1 Click
Add VideoStudio project files.
Locate the folder where the projects are, and then select one or more video projects you want to add.



2 Click
Open.
You can trim a video and VideoStudio project using the
Jog Slider, mark-in/out, and navigation controls. Trimming a video gives you the freedom to precisely edit the video length.
Tip:
You can also add videos from DVD/DVD-VR discs.

Adding/Editing chapters

This feature is only available when the
Create menu option is selected. By adding chapters, you can create submenus linked to their associated video clip.



Represented as a video thumbnail in a submenu, each chapter is like a bookmark for a video clip. When viewers click on a chapter, the playback of the video will start from the selected chapter.

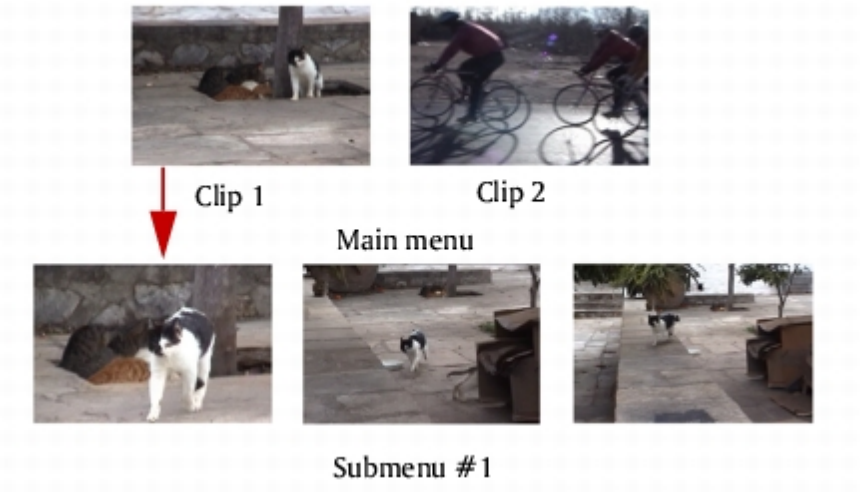
Notes:
· You can create up to 99 chapters for a video clip.
· If the Create menu option is not selected, you will be guided to the preview step immediately without creating any menus after clicking
Next.
· When you are creating a disc with only one VideoStudio project or one video clip, do not select
Use first clip as introductory video if you want to create menus.

To create or edit chapters linked to a video clip:

1 Select a video in the Media Clip
List.
2 Click
Add/Edit Chapter.
3 Drag the Jog Slider to move to a scene to set it as a chapter then click Add Chapter. Or, click
Auto Add Chapters to let VideoStudio automatically select chapters.
Tips:
· If you want to use
Auto Add Chapters, your video must be at least one minute long or the video has scene change information.
· If you click Auto
Add Chapters and your video is a DV-formatted AVI file captured from a DV camcorder, Corel VideoStudio can automatically detect scene changes and add chapters accordingly.
· If the selected video is an MPEG-2 file with scene change information, Corel VideoStudio automatically generates these chapters for you when you click
Auto Add Chapters.
4 Repeat Step 3 to add more chapter points. You can also use Remove Chapter or Remove All Chapters to delete unwanted chapters.
5 Click
OK.

Creating selection menus

In this step, you can create the main menu and submenus. These menus provide an interactive screen for your movie viewer to choose which video to watch. Corel VideoStudio includes a set of menu templates for you to create your menus and submenus.



In this example, Clip 1 has three chapters so when you click the Clip 1 video thumbnail, it will jump to submenu #1. If you look at Clip 2, it has no chapters assigned to it so when you click Clip 2, the video will start playing from the beginning.

To edit menus:

1 By default, VideoStudio automatically makes all required menus for you. Use Currently displayed menu to switch to the menu you want to edit.

2 In the Gallery tab, click Menu template category and select a specific category. Click a particular template to apply.



3 Click My Title to customize the menu heading. You can also click the text description under each video thumbnail for customization.

Note:

If you do not modify "My Title" and the thumbnail descriptions or skip Step 2, there will be no menu heading and thumbnail text in the final output.

4 In the Edit tab, you can further customize your movie by adding background image, music or audio and by modifying font properties.

Tips:

· Select Motion Menu to enable motion attributes to the selected menu template.

· Click Layout Settings to specify whether to apply layout to all pages of the menu, reset the page, or reset all pages of the menu.

· Click Advanced Settings to specify whether to add a title menu, create a chapter menu, or display the thumbnail numbers in the Chapter List

.

· Click Customize to apply pan & zoom, motion filter and menu in and menu out effects.

5 When you're done, click Preview to preview the movie.

Previewing

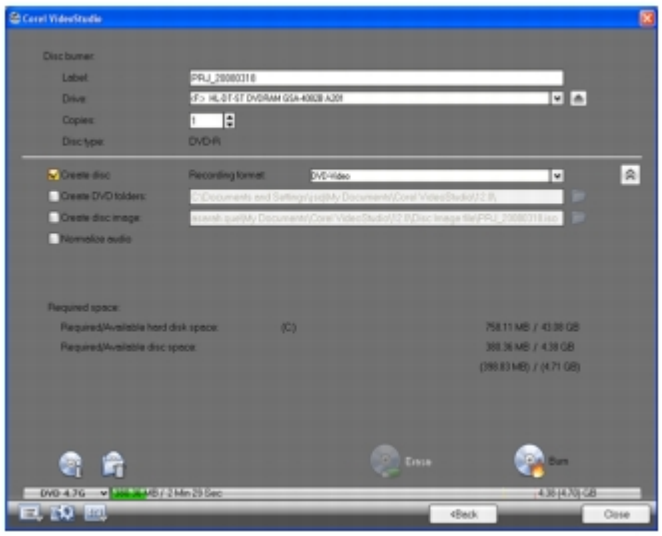
Now, it's time to see how your movie looks like before you burn it onto a disc. Simply move the mouse and click Play to watch your movie and test the menu selection on your computer. Use the navigation controls here as you would on a standard remote control of a home DVD player.



Tip: As you move between controls, a tool tip pops up and tells you its specific function.

Burning your project onto a disc

This is the final step in the disc creation process. You can burn your movie onto a disc, your preferred output or create a disc image file of your movie to save on your hard drive.



Tip: For details about the different disc formats, you can refer to
Appendix C: Technology Overview - AVCHD, BD, DVD, VCD and SVCD.

To burn your movie onto a disc:

1 Click
Next after you preview your project.
2 Click
Show more output options to show available options for your project.
· Select
Create DVD folders to create folders for your project and specify their location.
· Select
Create disc image file to make an ISO image file of the DVD for later use.
· Select
Normalize audio to make sure that irregular audio levels during playback are prevented.
3 Click Burning Options
to define additional burner and output settings.
4 Click
Burn to start the burning process.
5 After successfully burning your disc, a dialog box appears from which you can select the next step.

·

Close: Prompts you to save your work and close Corel VideoStudio.

Burning options

·

Disc burner: Specifies the settings for your burning device.

·

Label: Enables you to enter a volume name of up to 32 characters onto the CD/DVD.

·

Drive: Selects the disc burner that you want to use to burn the video file.

·

Copies: Sets the number of disc copies to burn.

·

Disc type: Displays the output disc format for the current project.

· Create to disc:

Allows you to directly burn your video project onto a disc.

·

Recording format: Select DVD-Video format to use the DVD industry standard. To quickly re-edit your disc without copying the file to the hard drive, select DVD-Video (fast re-editable) which still complies with the industry standard, and has very high compatibility when working with set-top home DVD players and computer DVD-ROM. Select DVD+VR for DVD players supporting this format.

·

Create DVD folders: This option is only enabled when the video file being created is a DVD-Video. The files created are in preparation for burning the video file to a DVD. This also allows the user to view the finished DVD file on the computer using a DVD-Video player software.

·

Create disc image: Select this option if you plan to burn the video file several times. By selecting this option, you don't have to generate the file again when you want to burn the same video file.

· Normalize audio: Select to prevent irregular audio levels during playback of your movie. Different video clips may have different audio recording levels when created. When these video clips are put together, the volume could vary greatly from one to another. To make volume levels consistent between clips, Normalize audio function evaluates and adjusts the audio waveform of the whole project to assure a balance audio level throughout the video.

·

Erase: Deletes all the data in the rewritable disc.

·

Burning Options: Adjusts the advanced output settings for burning your project.

·

Delete temp files: Removes all unnecessary files in your working folder.

·

Burn: Begins the recording process.

·

Required space: Serves as a reference in burning your projects. These indicators help determine if you have sufficient space to successfully burn your project onto the disc.

·

Required/Available hard disk space: Displays the space needed by the working folder of the project and the space available for use in the hard drive.

·

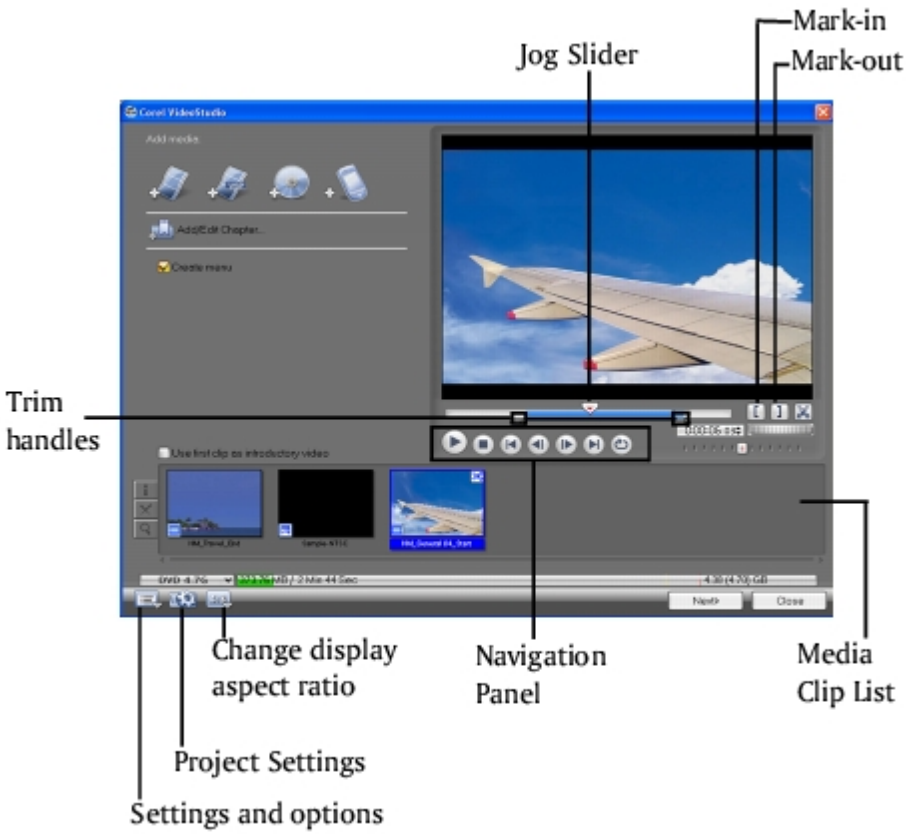
Required/Available disc space: Displays the space needed to fit the video file in the disc and the space that is available for use.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some

features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Burning video discs

Click
Create Disc in the Options Panel to output your project (together with other VideoStudio projects or videos) to create an AVCHD, Blu-ray, DVD, VCD or SVCD.
In the dialog box that opens, first choose an output format. Second, decide whether you want to add other projects and videos. See the following sections for more information.



Notes:
· Your entire VideoStudio project can be brought into the Create Disc dialog box for burning even if you did not save it first as a *.vsp file.
· Video will be adjusted to the correct aspect ratio (as specified in the Disc Templates Manager dialog box), and automatically letterboxed or pillarboxed to fit the correct aspect ratio.

Assembling files

Import videos or VideoStudio project files (*.vsp) you want to include in your final movie.

To add videos:

1 Click
Add video files. Locate the folder where the videos are, and then select one or more video clips you

want to add.



2 Click
Open.
Note: After a video clip is added to the Media Clip List, sometimes you may see a black thumbnail. This is because the first scene (frame) of this video clip is a black screen. To change it, double-click to select this video clip and move the **Jog Slider** to the scene you want. Next, right-click the thumbnail and select **Change Thumbnail**
.

To add VideoStudio projects:

1 Click
Add VideoStudio project files.
Locate the folder where the projects are, and then select one or more video projects you want to add.



2 Click
Open.
You can trim a video and VideoStudio project using the
Jog Slider, mark-in/out, and navigation controls. Trimming a video gives you the freedom to precisely edit the video length.
Tip:
You can also add videos from DVD/DVD-VR discs.

Adding/Editing chapters

This feature is only available when the
Create menu option is selected. By adding chapters, you can create submenus linked to their associated video clip.



Represented as a video thumbnail in a submenu, each chapter is like a bookmark for a video clip. When viewers click on a chapter, the playback of the video will start from the selected chapter.

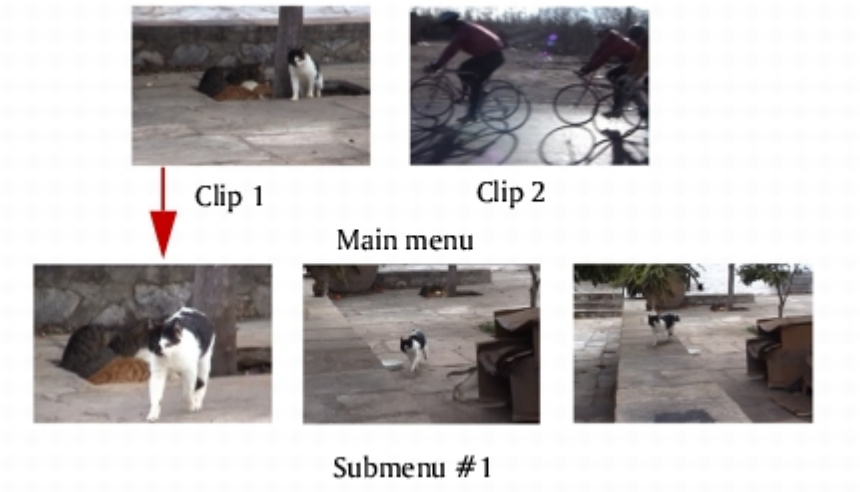
Notes:
· You can create up to 99 chapters for a video clip.
· If the Create menu option is not selected, you will be guided to the preview step immediately without creating any menus after clicking
Next.
· When you are creating a disc with only one VideoStudio project or one video clip, do not select
Use first clip as introductory video if you want to create menus.

To create or edit chapters linked to a video clip:

1 Select a video in the Media Clip
List.
2 Click
Add/Edit Chapter.
3 Drag the Jog Slider to move to a scene to set it as a chapter then click Add Chapter. Or, click
Auto Add Chapters to let VideoStudio automatically select chapters.
Tips:
· If you want to use
Auto Add Chapters, your video must be at least one minute long or the video has scene change information.
· If you click Auto
Add Chapters and your video is a DV-formatted AVI file captured from a DV camcorder, Corel VideoStudio can automatically detect scene changes and add chapters accordingly.
· If the selected video is an MPEG-2 file with scene change information, Corel VideoStudio automatically generates these chapters for you when you click
Auto Add Chapters.
4 Repeat Step 3 to add more chapter points. You can also use Remove Chapter or Remove All Chapters to delete unwanted chapters.
5 Click
OK.

Creating selection menus

In this step, you can create the main menu and submenus. These menus provide an interactive screen for your movie viewer to choose which video to watch. Corel VideoStudio includes a set of menu templates for you to create your menus and submenus.



In this example, Clip 1 has three chapters so when you click the Clip 1 video thumbnail, it will jump to submenu #1. If you look at Clip 2, it has no chapters assigned to it so when you click Clip 2, the video will start playing from the beginning.

To edit menus:

1 By default, VideoStudio automatically makes all required menus for you. Use Currently displayed menu to switch to the menu you want to edit.

2 In the Gallery tab, click Menu template category and select a specific category. Click a particular template to apply.



3 Click My Title to customize the menu heading. You can also click the text description under each video thumbnail for customization.

Note:

If you do not modify "My Title" and the thumbnail descriptions or skip Step 2, there will be no menu heading and thumbnail text in the final output.

4 In the Edit tab, you can further customize your movie by adding background image, music or audio and by modifying font properties.

Tips:

· Select Motion Menu to enable motion attributes to the selected menu template.

· Click Layout Settings to specify whether to apply layout to all pages of the menu, reset the page, or reset all pages of the menu.

· Click Advanced Settings to specify whether to add a title menu, create a chapter menu, or display the thumbnail numbers in the Chapter List

.

· Click Customize to apply pan & zoom, motion filter and menu in and menu out effects.

5 When you're done, click Preview to preview the movie.

Previewing

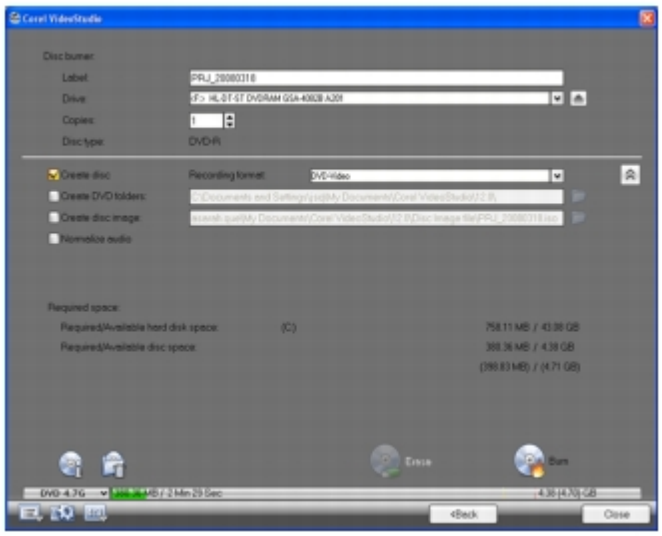
Now, it's time to see how your movie looks like before you burn it onto a disc. Simply move the mouse and click Play to watch your movie and test the menu selection on your computer. Use the navigation controls here as you would on a standard remote control of a home DVD player.



Tip: As you move between controls, a tool tip pops up and tells you its specific function.

Burning your project onto a disc

This is the final step in the disc creation process. You can burn your movie onto a disc, your preferred output or create a disc image file of your movie to save on your hard drive.



Tip: For details about the different disc formats, you can refer to
Appendix C: Technology Overview - AVCHD, BD, DVD, VCD and SVCD.

To burn your movie onto a disc:

1 Click
Next after you preview your project.
2 Click
Show more output options to show available options for your project.
· Select
Create DVD folders to create folders for your project and specify their location.
· Select
Create disc image file to make an ISO image file of the DVD for later use.
· Select
Normalize audio to make sure that irregular audio levels during playback are prevented.
3 Click Burning Options
to define additional burner and output settings.
4 Click
Burn to start the burning process.
5 After successfully burning your disc, a dialog box appears from which you can select the next step.

·

Close: Prompts you to save your work and close Corel VideoStudio.

Burning options

·

Disc burner: Specifies the settings for your burning device.

·

Label: Enables you to enter a volume name of up to 32 characters onto the CD/DVD.

·

Drive: Selects the disc burner that you want to use to burn the video file.

·

Copies: Sets the number of disc copies to burn.

·

Disc type: Displays the output disc format for the current project.

· Create to disc:

Allows you to directly burn your video project onto a disc.

·

Recording format: Select DVD-Video format to use the DVD industry standard. To quickly re-edit your disc without copying the file to the hard drive, select DVD-Video (fast re-editable) which still complies with the industry standard, and has very high compatibility when working with set-top home DVD players and computer DVD-ROM. Select DVD+VR for DVD players supporting this format.

·

Create DVD folders: This option is only enabled when the video file being created is a DVD-Video. The files created are in preparation for burning the video file to a DVD. This also allows the user to view the finished DVD file on the computer using a DVD-Video player software.

·

Create disc image: Select this option if you plan to burn the video file several times. By selecting this option, you don't have to generate the file again when you want to burn the same video file.

· Normalize audio: Select to prevent irregular audio levels during playback of your movie. Different video clips may have different audio recording levels when created. When these video clips are put together, the volume could vary greatly from one to another. To make volume levels consistent between clips, Normalize audio function evaluates and adjusts the audio waveform of the whole project to assure a balance audio level throughout the video.

·

Erase: Deletes all the data in the rewritable disc.

·

Burning Options: Adjusts the advanced output settings for burning your project.

·

Delete temp files: Removes all unnecessary files in your working folder.

·

Burn: Begins the recording process.

·

Required space: Serves as a reference in burning your projects. These indicators help determine if you have sufficient space to successfully burn your project onto the disc.

·

Required/Available hard disk space: Displays the space needed by the working folder of the project and the space available for use in the hard drive.

·

Required/Available disc space: Displays the space needed to fit the video file in the disc and the space that is available for use.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some

features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Playing back your project

Project Playback is used to output your entire project or part of it to a DV camcorder. This also gives you an actual size preview of your movie using the entire screen of either a PC or TV monitor. You can only output your project on a DV camcorder if your project is using a DV AVI template. How your video is played back will depend on the Playback method option that you selected in Preferences.

To play back your project in actual size:

1 In the **Options Panel**, click
Project Playback.
2 In the Project Playback - Options dialog box, click Finish. To stop the play back, press [Esc].
Note: If you only want to output the preview range of your project to the monitor, select Preview range.

To record your project to a DV camcorder:

1 Turn on your DV camcorder and set it to
Play (VTR/VCR) mode.
2 In the **Options Panel**, click
Project Playback.
3 In the Project Playback - Options dialog box, select Use device control then click Next.



Note: If you only want to output the preview range of your project to the DV camcorder, select Preview range.
4 In the Project Playback - Device Control dialog box, use the
Navigation Panel to go to the section of the DV tape where to start recording your project.



Tip: Click
Transmit to device unit for preview to preview your project on the DV camcorder's LCD monitor.
5 Click Record. When recording is complete, click
Finish.

_____

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Exporting your movie

VideoStudio provides you with a number of ways to export and share your movie, which will be discussed in the following sections.

Export to mobile device

A video file can be exported to other external devices such as Windows mobile-based devices such as Mobile phones, Smartphone, Pocket PC/PDA, PSP and iPod. You can only export your project after you have created a video file.

To export to a mobile device:

1 Select a video clip from the Library.
2 Click
Export to Mobile Device and select the video property.
3 In the
Save dialog box, type the file name and click the device where to export your movie.
4 Click
OK.

Output video file to a different medium

The Output the video file to a different medium 
is only allowed after you create a final video file of your project or you select a video file that is in the Library. You cannot export project files.

Posting your video on a Web page

The Internet is another medium where you can share your movies but there are a few things you need to take into consideration. A short three minute video can take up 60MB of disk space and will take many hours to download. However, at reasonable file sizes, viewers can download your movies from the Internet. Creating video for the Internet requires proper use of video format and compression to produce good quality but small file size video files.
After you have created a movie that is suitable for posting to the Internet, VideoStudio can assist with the task of coding the HTML document.

To export your video onto a Web page:

1 Select a video clip from the Library.

2 Click Output video file to a different medium  and select
Web Page.
3 A message will appear asking if you want to use
Microsoft ActiveMovie control or not.



Note: ActiveMovie is a small plug-in for your Internet browser (standard with IE 4.0 or above) which your viewers need to install. If you choose
No, the page will be set up with a simple link to the movie and will open your default media playback application to view your video.
4 Enter a name and location for the new HTML file.
5 Click
OK.
Your default browser will open, displaying your page. When you upload this page to your Web server, you need to change one line of code to reflect the relative links to the associated movie file.

Sending a movie by e-mail

When you select E-mail, VideoStudio automatically opens your default e-mail client and inserts the selected video clip into a new message as an attachment. Enter the necessary information in the fields then click
Send.
If your e-mail program was not previously configured as the default e-mail client, follow the instructions below to set up your e-mail program. In MAPI-compliant programs such as Netscape Mail and Eudora, you need to enable their MAPI (Messaging Application Programming Interface) option.

To set up Microsoft Outlook Express as your default e-mail program:

1 In Outlook Express, select
Tools: Options.
2 Click the
General Tab in the Options dialog box.
3 Under Default Messaging Programs, click the Make Default button after the
This application is NOT the default Mail handler option.
4 Click
Apply.

To enable MAPI in Netscape Mail:

1 In Netscape Mail, select
Edit: Preferences.
2 Select
Mail & Newsgroups in the Category list.
3 Select
Use Netscape Messenger from MAPI-based applications.
4 Click
OK.

To enable MAPI in Eudora:

1 In Eudora, select
Tools: Options.
2 Select MAPI in the
Category list.

3 Select Always under
Use Eudora MAPI server.

Electronic greeting cards

Share your video with friends and relatives by creating multimedia greeting cards. VideoStudio packs the movie into an executable (*.exe) file that automatically plays the video. In addition, you can even display your video using your choice of background.

To create a greeting card:

1 Select a video clip from the Library.
Note: You cannot export DV AVI files as a greeting card.

2 Click Output video file to a different medium and select
Greeting Card.



3 Your video appears in a bounding box in the Multimedia Greeting Card dialog box. Double-click an image from the
Background template to select it.
4 Drag the thumbnail to adjust the position. Another way is to enter X and Y axis values. You can also resize the image using the black controls around the thumbnail, or enter Width and Height values directly.
5 Enter a file name for the card in the Greeting card file
entry box.
6 Click
OK to create the card.
The background templates that are provided with VideoStudio are JPEG image files. You can create your own templates in any graphics editor, or even use still frames captured from your movies. To use your own backgrounds, search for images using Browse next to the
Background template file name entry box.

Setting your video as your Movie Screen Saver

Personalize your desktop computer by creating your own video file then setting it as your screen saver.

Set a video as your desktop screen saver:

1 Select a WMV file from the Library.

2 Click Output video file to a different medium and select
Movie Screen Saver. The Display Properties dialog box will appear with the video file as the selected

screen saver.
3 Click
OK to apply the settings.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Exporting your movie

VideoStudio provides you with a number of ways to export and share your movie, which will be discussed in the following sections.

Export to mobile device

A video file can be exported to other external devices such as Windows mobile-based devices such as Mobile phones, Smartphone, Pocket PC/PDA, PSP and iPod. You can only export your project after you have created a video file.

To export to a mobile device:

1 Select a video clip from the Library.
2 Click
Export to Mobile Device and select the video property.
3 In the
Save dialog box, type the file name and click the device where to export your movie.
4 Click
OK.

Output video file to a different medium

The Output the video file to a different medium 
is only allowed after you create a final video file of your project or you select a video file that is in the Library. You cannot export project files.

Posting your video on a Web page

The Internet is another medium where you can share your movies but there are a few things you need to take into consideration. A short three minute video can take up 60MB of disk space and will take many hours to download. However, at reasonable file sizes, viewers can download your movies from the Internet. Creating video for the Internet requires proper use of video format and compression to produce good quality but small file size video files.
After you have created a movie that is suitable for posting to the Internet, VideoStudio can assist with the task of coding the HTML document.

To export your video onto a Web page:

1 Select a video clip from the Library.

2 Click Output video file to a different medium  and select
Web Page.
3 A message will appear asking if you want to use
Microsoft ActiveMovie control or not.



Note: ActiveMovie is a small plug-in for your Internet browser (standard with IE 4.0 or above) which your viewers need to install. If you choose
No, the page will be set up with a simple link to the movie and will open your default media playback application to view your video.
4 Enter a name and location for the new HTML file.
5 Click
OK.
Your default browser will open, displaying your page. When you upload this page to your Web server, you need to change one line of code to reflect the relative links to the associated movie file.

Sending a movie by e-mail

When you select E-mail, VideoStudio automatically opens your default e-mail client and inserts the selected video clip into a new message as an attachment. Enter the necessary information in the fields then click
Send.
If your e-mail program was not previously configured as the default e-mail client, follow the instructions below to set up your e-mail program. In MAPI-compliant programs such as Netscape Mail and Eudora, you need to enable their MAPI (Messaging Application Programming Interface) option.

To set up Microsoft Outlook Express as your default e-mail program:

1 In Outlook Express, select
Tools: Options.
2 Click the
General Tab in the Options dialog box.
3 Under Default Messaging Programs, click the Make Default button after the
This application is NOT the default Mail handler option.
4 Click
Apply.

To enable MAPI in Netscape Mail:

1 In Netscape Mail, select
Edit: Preferences.
2 Select
Mail & Newsgroups in the Category list.
3 Select
Use Netscape Messenger from MAPI-based applications.
4 Click
OK.

To enable MAPI in Eudora:

1 In Eudora, select
Tools: Options.
2 Select MAPI in the
Category list.

3 Select Always under
Use Eudora MAPI server.

Electronic greeting cards

Share your video with friends and relatives by creating multimedia greeting cards. VideoStudio packs the movie into an executable (*.exe) file that automatically plays the video. In addition, you can even display your video using your choice of background.

To create a greeting card:

1 Select a video clip from the Library.
Note: You cannot export DV AVI files as a greeting card.

2 Click Output video file to a different medium and select
Greeting Card.



3 Your video appears in a bounding box in the Multimedia Greeting Card dialog box. Double-click an image from the
Background template to select it.
4 Drag the thumbnail to adjust the position. Another way is to enter X and Y axis values. You can also resize the image using the black controls around the thumbnail, or enter Width and Height values directly.
5 Enter a file name for the card in the Greeting card file
entry box.
6 Click
OK to create the card.
The background templates that are provided with VideoStudio are JPEG image files. You can create your own templates in any graphics editor, or even use still frames captured from your movies. To use your own backgrounds, search for images using Browse next to the
Background template file name entry box.

Setting your video as your Movie Screen Saver

Personalize your desktop computer by creating your own video file then setting it as your screen saver.

Set a video as your desktop screen saver:

1 Select a WMV file from the Library.

2 Click Output video file to a different medium and select
Movie Screen Saver. The Display Properties dialog box will appear with the video file as the selected

screen saver.
3 Click
OK to apply the settings.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Exporting your movie

VideoStudio provides you with a number of ways to export and share your movie, which will be discussed in the following sections.

Export to mobile device

A video file can be exported to other external devices such as Windows mobile-based devices such as Mobile phones, Smartphone, Pocket PC/PDA, PSP and iPod. You can only export your project after you have created a video file.

To export to a mobile device:

1 Select a video clip from the Library.
2 Click
Export to Mobile Device and select the video property.
3 In the
Save dialog box, type the file name and click the device where to export your movie.
4 Click
OK.

Output video file to a different medium

The Output the video file to a different medium 
is only allowed after you create a final video file of your project or you select a video file that is in the Library. You cannot export project files.

Posting your video on a Web page

The Internet is another medium where you can share your movies but there are a few things you need to take into consideration. A short three minute video can take up 60MB of disk space and will take many hours to download. However, at reasonable file sizes, viewers can download your movies from the Internet. Creating video for the Internet requires proper use of video format and compression to produce good quality but small file size video files.
After you have created a movie that is suitable for posting to the Internet, VideoStudio can assist with the task of coding the HTML document.

To export your video onto a Web page:

1 Select a video clip from the Library.

2 Click Output video file to a different medium  and select
Web Page.
3 A message will appear asking if you want to use
Microsoft ActiveMovie control or not.



Note: ActiveMovie is a small plug-in for your Internet browser (standard with IE 4.0 or above) which your viewers need to install. If you choose
No, the page will be set up with a simple link to the movie and will open your default media playback application to view your video.
4 Enter a name and location for the new HTML file.
5 Click
OK.
Your default browser will open, displaying your page. When you upload this page to your Web server, you need to change one line of code to reflect the relative links to the associated movie file.

Sending a movie by e-mail

When you select E-mail, VideoStudio automatically opens your default e-mail client and inserts the selected video clip into a new message as an attachment. Enter the necessary information in the fields then click
Send.
If your e-mail program was not previously configured as the default e-mail client, follow the instructions below to set up your e-mail program. In MAPI-compliant programs such as Netscape Mail and Eudora, you need to enable their MAPI (Messaging Application Programming Interface) option.

To set up Microsoft Outlook Express as your default e-mail program:

1 In Outlook Express, select
Tools: Options.
2 Click the
General Tab in the Options dialog box.
3 Under Default Messaging Programs, click the Make Default button after the
This application is NOT the default Mail handler option.
4 Click
Apply.

To enable MAPI in Netscape Mail:

1 In Netscape Mail, select
Edit: Preferences.
2 Select
Mail & Newsgroups in the Category list.
3 Select
Use Netscape Messenger from MAPI-based applications.
4 Click
OK.

To enable MAPI in Eudora:

1 In Eudora, select
Tools: Options.
2 Select MAPI in the
Category list.

3 Select Always under
Use Eudora MAPI server.

Electronic greeting cards

Share your video with friends and relatives by creating multimedia greeting cards. VideoStudio packs the movie into an executable (*.exe) file that automatically plays the video. In addition, you can even display your video using your choice of background.

To create a greeting card:

1 Select a video clip from the Library.
Note: You cannot export DV AVI files as a greeting card.

2 Click Output video file to a different medium and select
Greeting Card.



3 Your video appears in a bounding box in the Multimedia Greeting Card dialog box. Double-click an image from the
Background template to select it.
4 Drag the thumbnail to adjust the position. Another way is to enter X and Y axis values. You can also resize the image using the black controls around the thumbnail, or enter Width and Height values directly.
5 Enter a file name for the card in the Greeting card file
entry box.
6 Click
OK to create the card.
The background templates that are provided with VideoStudio are JPEG image files. You can create your own templates in any graphics editor, or even use still frames captured from your movies. To use your own backgrounds, search for images using Browse next to the
Background template file name entry box.

Setting your video as your Movie Screen Saver

Personalize your desktop computer by creating your own video file then setting it as your screen saver.

Set a video as your desktop screen saver:

1 Select a WMV file from the Library.

2 Click Output video file to a different medium and select
Movie Screen Saver. The Display Properties dialog box will appear with the video file as the selected

screen saver.
3 Click
OK to apply the settings.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Exporting your movie

VideoStudio provides you with a number of ways to export and share your movie, which will be discussed in the following sections.

Export to mobile device

A video file can be exported to other external devices such as Windows mobile-based devices such as Mobile phones, Smartphone, Pocket PC/PDA, PSP and iPod. You can only export your project after you have created a video file.

To export to a mobile device:

1 Select a video clip from the Library.
2 Click
Export to Mobile Device and select the video property.
3 In the
Save dialog box, type the file name and click the device where to export your movie.
4 Click
OK.

Output video file to a different medium

The Output the video file to a different medium 
is only allowed after you create a final video file of your project or you select a video file that is in the Library. You cannot export project files.

Posting your video on a Web page

The Internet is another medium where you can share your movies but there are a few things you need to take into consideration. A short three minute video can take up 60MB of disk space and will take many hours to download. However, at reasonable file sizes, viewers can download your movies from the Internet. Creating video for the Internet requires proper use of video format and compression to produce good quality but small file size video files.
After you have created a movie that is suitable for posting to the Internet, VideoStudio can assist with the task of coding the HTML document.

To export your video onto a Web page:

1 Select a video clip from the Library.

2 Click Output video file to a different medium  and select
Web Page.
3 A message will appear asking if you want to use
Microsoft ActiveMovie control or not.



Note: ActiveMovie is a small plug-in for your Internet browser (standard with IE 4.0 or above) which your viewers need to install. If you choose
No, the page will be set up with a simple link to the movie and will open your default media playback application to view your video.
4 Enter a name and location for the new HTML file.
5 Click
OK.
Your default browser will open, displaying your page. When you upload this page to your Web server, you need to change one line of code to reflect the relative links to the associated movie file.

Sending a movie by e-mail

When you select E-mail, VideoStudio automatically opens your default e-mail client and inserts the selected video clip into a new message as an attachment. Enter the necessary information in the fields then click
Send.
If your e-mail program was not previously configured as the default e-mail client, follow the instructions below to set up your e-mail program. In MAPI-compliant programs such as Netscape Mail and Eudora, you need to enable their MAPI (Messaging Application Programming Interface) option.

To set up Microsoft Outlook Express as your default e-mail program:

1 In Outlook Express, select
Tools: Options.
2 Click the
General Tab in the Options dialog box.
3 Under Default Messaging Programs, click the Make Default button after the
This application is NOT the default Mail handler option.
4 Click
Apply.

To enable MAPI in Netscape Mail:

1 In Netscape Mail, select
Edit: Preferences.
2 Select
Mail & Newsgroups in the Category list.
3 Select
Use Netscape Messenger from MAPI-based applications.
4 Click
OK.

To enable MAPI in Eudora:

1 In Eudora, select
Tools: Options.
2 Select MAPI in the
Category list.

3 Select Always under
Use Eudora MAPI server.

Electronic greeting cards

Share your video with friends and relatives by creating multimedia greeting cards. VideoStudio packs the movie into an executable (*.exe) file that automatically plays the video. In addition, you can even display your video using your choice of background.

To create a greeting card:

1 Select a video clip from the Library.
Note: You cannot export DV AVI files as a greeting card.

2 Click Output video file to a different medium and select
Greeting Card.



3 Your video appears in a bounding box in the Multimedia Greeting Card dialog box. Double-click an image from the
Background template to select it.
4 Drag the thumbnail to adjust the position. Another way is to enter X and Y axis values. You can also resize the image using the black controls around the thumbnail, or enter Width and Height values directly.
5 Enter a file name for the card in the Greeting card file
entry box.
6 Click
OK to create the card.
The background templates that are provided with VideoStudio are JPEG image files. You can create your own templates in any graphics editor, or even use still frames captured from your movies. To use your own backgrounds, search for images using Browse next to the
Background template file name entry box.

Setting your video as your Movie Screen Saver

Personalize your desktop computer by creating your own video file then setting it as your screen saver.

Set a video as your desktop screen saver:

1 Select a WMV file from the Library.

2 Click Output video file to a different medium and select
Movie Screen Saver. The Display Properties dialog box will appear with the video file as the selected

screen saver.
3 Click
OK to apply the settings.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Exporting your movie

VideoStudio provides you with a number of ways to export and share your movie, which will be discussed in the following sections.

Export to mobile device

A video file can be exported to other external devices such as Windows mobile-based devices such as Mobile phones, Smartphone, Pocket PC/PDA, PSP and iPod. You can only export your project after you have created a video file.

To export to a mobile device:

1 Select a video clip from the Library.
2 Click
Export to Mobile Device and select the video property.
3 In the
Save dialog box, type the file name and click the device where to export your movie.
4 Click
OK.

Output video file to a different medium

The Output the video file to a different medium 
is only allowed after you create a final video file of your project or you select a video file that is in the Library. You cannot export project files.

Posting your video on a Web page

The Internet is another medium where you can share your movies but there are a few things you need to take into consideration. A short three minute video can take up 60MB of disk space and will take many hours to download. However, at reasonable file sizes, viewers can download your movies from the Internet. Creating video for the Internet requires proper use of video format and compression to produce good quality but small file size video files.
After you have created a movie that is suitable for posting to the Internet, VideoStudio can assist with the task of coding the HTML document.

To export your video onto a Web page:

1 Select a video clip from the Library.

2 Click Output video file to a different medium  and select
Web Page.
3 A message will appear asking if you want to use
Microsoft ActiveMovie control or not.



Note: ActiveMovie is a small plug-in for your Internet browser (standard with IE 4.0 or above) which your viewers need to install. If you choose
No, the page will be set up with a simple link to the movie and will open your default media playback application to view your video.
4 Enter a name and location for the new HTML file.
5 Click
OK.
Your default browser will open, displaying your page. When you upload this page to your Web server, you need to change one line of code to reflect the relative links to the associated movie file.

Sending a movie by e-mail

When you select E-mail, VideoStudio automatically opens your default e-mail client and inserts the selected video clip into a new message as an attachment. Enter the necessary information in the fields then click
Send.
If your e-mail program was not previously configured as the default e-mail client, follow the instructions below to set up your e-mail program. In MAPI-compliant programs such as Netscape Mail and Eudora, you need to enable their MAPI (Messaging Application Programming Interface) option.

To set up Microsoft Outlook Express as your default e-mail program:

1 In Outlook Express, select
Tools: Options.
2 Click the
General Tab in the Options dialog box.
3 Under Default Messaging Programs, click the Make Default button after the
This application is NOT the default Mail handler option.
4 Click
Apply.

To enable MAPI in Netscape Mail:

1 In Netscape Mail, select
Edit: Preferences.
2 Select
Mail & Newsgroups in the Category list.
3 Select
Use Netscape Messenger from MAPI-based applications.
4 Click
OK.

To enable MAPI in Eudora:

1 In Eudora, select
Tools: Options.
2 Select MAPI in the
Category list.

3 Select Always under
Use Eudora MAPI server.

Electronic greeting cards

Share your video with friends and relatives by creating multimedia greeting cards. VideoStudio packs the movie into an executable (*.exe) file that automatically plays the video. In addition, you can even display your video using your choice of background.

To create a greeting card:

1 Select a video clip from the Library.
Note: You cannot export DV AVI files as a greeting card.

2 Click Output video file to a different medium and select
Greeting Card.



3 Your video appears in a bounding box in the Multimedia Greeting Card dialog box. Double-click an image from the
Background template to select it.
4 Drag the thumbnail to adjust the position. Another way is to enter X and Y axis values. You can also resize the image using the black controls around the thumbnail, or enter Width and Height values directly.
5 Enter a file name for the card in the Greeting card file
entry box.
6 Click
OK to create the card.
The background templates that are provided with VideoStudio are JPEG image files. You can create your own templates in any graphics editor, or even use still frames captured from your movies. To use your own backgrounds, search for images using Browse next to the
Background template file name entry box.

Setting your video as your Movie Screen Saver

Personalize your desktop computer by creating your own video file then setting it as your screen saver.

Set a video as your desktop screen saver:

1 Select a WMV file from the Library.

2 Click Output video file to a different medium and select
Movie Screen Saver. The Display Properties dialog box will appear with the video file as the selected

screen saver.
3 Click
OK to apply the settings.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Exporting your movie

VideoStudio provides you with a number of ways to export and share your movie, which will be discussed in the following sections.

Export to mobile device

A video file can be exported to other external devices such as Windows mobile-based devices such as Mobile phones, Smartphone, Pocket PC/PDA, PSP and iPod. You can only export your project after you have created a video file.

To export to a mobile device:

1 Select a video clip from the Library.
2 Click
Export to Mobile Device and select the video property.
3 In the
Save dialog box, type the file name and click the device where to export your movie.
4 Click
OK.

Output video file to a different medium

The Output the video file to a different medium 
is only allowed after you create a final video file of your project or you select a video file that is in the Library. You cannot export project files.

Posting your video on a Web page

The Internet is another medium where you can share your movies but there are a few things you need to take into consideration. A short three minute video can take up 60MB of disk space and will take many hours to download. However, at reasonable file sizes, viewers can download your movies from the Internet. Creating video for the Internet requires proper use of video format and compression to produce good quality but small file size video files.
After you have created a movie that is suitable for posting to the Internet, VideoStudio can assist with the task of coding the HTML document.

To export your video onto a Web page:

1 Select a video clip from the Library.

2 Click Output video file to a different medium  and select
Web Page.
3 A message will appear asking if you want to use
Microsoft ActiveMovie control or not.



Note: ActiveMovie is a small plug-in for your Internet browser (standard with IE 4.0 or above) which your viewers need to install. If you choose
No, the page will be set up with a simple link to the movie and will open your default media playback application to view your video.
4 Enter a name and location for the new HTML file.
5 Click
OK.
Your default browser will open, displaying your page. When you upload this page to your Web server, you need to change one line of code to reflect the relative links to the associated movie file.

Sending a movie by e-mail

When you select E-mail, VideoStudio automatically opens your default e-mail client and inserts the selected video clip into a new message as an attachment. Enter the necessary information in the fields then click
Send.
If your e-mail program was not previously configured as the default e-mail client, follow the instructions below to set up your e-mail program. In MAPI-compliant programs such as Netscape Mail and Eudora, you need to enable their MAPI (Messaging Application Programming Interface) option.

To set up Microsoft Outlook Express as your default e-mail program:

1 In Outlook Express, select
Tools: Options.
2 Click the
General Tab in the Options dialog box.
3 Under Default Messaging Programs, click the Make Default button after the
This application is NOT the default Mail handler option.
4 Click
Apply.

To enable MAPI in Netscape Mail:

1 In Netscape Mail, select
Edit: Preferences.
2 Select
Mail & Newsgroups in the Category list.
3 Select
Use Netscape Messenger from MAPI-based applications.
4 Click
OK.

To enable MAPI in Eudora:

1 In Eudora, select
Tools: Options.
2 Select MAPI in the
Category list.

3 Select Always under
Use Eudora MAPI server.

Electronic greeting cards

Share your video with friends and relatives by creating multimedia greeting cards. VideoStudio packs the movie into an executable (*.exe) file that automatically plays the video. In addition, you can even display your video using your choice of background.

To create a greeting card:

1 Select a video clip from the Library.
Note: You cannot export DV AVI files as a greeting card.

2 Click Output video file to a different medium and select
Greeting Card.



3 Your video appears in a bounding box in the Multimedia Greeting Card dialog box. Double-click an image from the
Background template to select it.
4 Drag the thumbnail to adjust the position. Another way is to enter X and Y axis values. You can also resize the image using the black controls around the thumbnail, or enter Width and Height values directly.
5 Enter a file name for the card in the Greeting card file
entry box.
6 Click
OK to create the card.
The background templates that are provided with VideoStudio are JPEG image files. You can create your own templates in any graphics editor, or even use still frames captured from your movies. To use your own backgrounds, search for images using Browse next to the
Background template file name entry box.

Setting your video as your Movie Screen Saver

Personalize your desktop computer by creating your own video file then setting it as your screen saver.

Set a video as your desktop screen saver:

1 Select a WMV file from the Library.

2 Click Output video file to a different medium and select
Movie Screen Saver. The Display Properties dialog box will appear with the video file as the selected

screen saver.
3 Click
OK to apply the settings.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Exporting your movie

VideoStudio provides you with a number of ways to export and share your movie, which will be discussed in the following sections.

Export to mobile device

A video file can be exported to other external devices such as Windows mobile-based devices such as Mobile phones, Smartphone, Pocket PC/PDA, PSP and iPod. You can only export your project after you have created a video file.

To export to a mobile device:

1 Select a video clip from the Library.
2 Click
Export to Mobile Device and select the video property.
3 In the
Save dialog box, type the file name and click the device where to export your movie.
4 Click
OK.

Output video file to a different medium

The Output the video file to a different medium 
is only allowed after you create a final video file of your project or you select a video file that is in the Library. You cannot export project files.

Posting your video on a Web page

The Internet is another medium where you can share your movies but there are a few things you need to take into consideration. A short three minute video can take up 60MB of disk space and will take many hours to download. However, at reasonable file sizes, viewers can download your movies from the Internet. Creating video for the Internet requires proper use of video format and compression to produce good quality but small file size video files.
After you have created a movie that is suitable for posting to the Internet, VideoStudio can assist with the task of coding the HTML document.

To export your video onto a Web page:

1 Select a video clip from the Library.

2 Click Output video file to a different medium  and select
Web Page.
3 A message will appear asking if you want to use
Microsoft ActiveMovie control or not.



Note: ActiveMovie is a small plug-in for your Internet browser (standard with IE 4.0 or above) which your viewers need to install. If you choose
No, the page will be set up with a simple link to the movie and will open your default media playback application to view your video.
4 Enter a name and location for the new HTML file.
5 Click
OK.
Your default browser will open, displaying your page. When you upload this page to your Web server, you need to change one line of code to reflect the relative links to the associated movie file.

Sending a movie by e-mail

When you select E-mail, VideoStudio automatically opens your default e-mail client and inserts the selected video clip into a new message as an attachment. Enter the necessary information in the fields then click
Send.
If your e-mail program was not previously configured as the default e-mail client, follow the instructions below to set up your e-mail program. In MAPI-compliant programs such as Netscape Mail and Eudora, you need to enable their MAPI (Messaging Application Programming Interface) option.

To set up Microsoft Outlook Express as your default e-mail program:

1 In Outlook Express, select
Tools: Options.
2 Click the
General Tab in the Options dialog box.
3 Under Default Messaging Programs, click the Make Default button after the
This application is NOT the default Mail handler option.
4 Click
Apply.

To enable MAPI in Netscape Mail:

1 In Netscape Mail, select
Edit: Preferences.
2 Select
Mail & Newsgroups in the Category list.
3 Select
Use Netscape Messenger from MAPI-based applications.
4 Click
OK.

To enable MAPI in Eudora:

1 In Eudora, select
Tools: Options.
2 Select MAPI in the
Category list.

3 Select Always under
Use Eudora MAPI server.

Electronic greeting cards

Share your video with friends and relatives by creating multimedia greeting cards. VideoStudio packs the movie into an executable (*.exe) file that automatically plays the video. In addition, you can even display your video using your choice of background.

To create a greeting card:

1 Select a video clip from the Library.
Note: You cannot export DV AVI files as a greeting card.

2 Click Output video file to a different medium and select
Greeting Card.



3 Your video appears in a bounding box in the Multimedia Greeting Card dialog box. Double-click an image from the
Background template to select it.
4 Drag the thumbnail to adjust the position. Another way is to enter X and Y axis values. You can also resize the image using the black controls around the thumbnail, or enter Width and Height values directly.
5 Enter a file name for the card in the Greeting card file
entry box.
6 Click
OK to create the card.
The background templates that are provided with VideoStudio are JPEG image files. You can create your own templates in any graphics editor, or even use still frames captured from your movies. To use your own backgrounds, search for images using Browse next to the
Background template file name entry box.

Setting your video as your Movie Screen Saver

Personalize your desktop computer by creating your own video file then setting it as your screen saver.

Set a video as your desktop screen saver:

1 Select a WMV file from the Library.

2 Click Output video file to a different medium and select
Movie Screen Saver. The Display Properties dialog box will appear with the video file as the selected

screen saver.
3 Click
OK to apply the settings.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Creating an audio file

Sometimes, you want to save the audio track of your video project in a separate audio file. This is especially useful when you want to use the same sound with another set of images, or when you want to convert the audio of a captured live performance into sound files. VideoStudio makes it easy for you to create an audio file of your project in MP4, MPA, WAV or WMA format.

To create an audio file:

1 Open your project and click the
Share Step.
Note: You can also create a sound file from an existing video file by selecting it in the Library.
2 Click
Create Sound File.
3 From the Save as type list, select the audio format you want to use and select Options to display the Audio Save Options dialog box.
4 Fine tune your audio attributes and click
OK.
5 Enter a file name and click
Save.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Recording back to a DV camcorder

After editing your project and creating a video file, VideoStudio allows you to record the video to your DV camcorder. You can only record a video that is using DV AVI format to your DV camcorder.

To record a movie to your DV camcorder:

1 Turn your camcorder ON and set it to Play mode (or
VTR / VCR mode). See your camcorder's manual for specific instructions.
2 Click the
Share Step.
3 Select a compatible DV AVI file from the Library.
4 Click
DV Recording.
5 The DV Recording - Preview Window dialog box opens. You can preview the video file here. After you are done previewing, click
Next.
6 In the Project Playback - Record Window dialog box, use the
Navigation Panel to go to the section of the DV tape where to start recording.
Tip: Click
Transmit to device unit for preview to preview your project on the DV camcorder's LCD monitor.
7 Click Record. After you are done recording your project to the DV camcorder, click
Finish.
Note: Before recording a video file back to your DV camcorder, make sure the video is saved with the correct codec. For example, the codec DV Video Encoder usually works well for most NTSC DV camcorders. You can select it from the Compression tab in the
Video Save Options dialog box.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Recording back to an HDV camcorder

To record your finished project to an HDV/HD camcorder, you must first render it as HDV/HD-encoded MPEG-2 transport stream file.

To record a movie to your HDV camcorder:

1 Turn your camcorder ON and set it to Play
/Edit mode. See your camcorder's manual for specific instructions.
2 In Share Step Options Panel, click
HDV Recording and select a transport stream template.
3 Enter a file name in
Create Video File dialog box.
4 VideoStudio renders the project. When done,
HDV Recording - Preview Window dialog box opens. You can preview the video file here.
5 Click
Next to start recording.
6 In the Project Playback - Record Window dialog box, use the
Navigation Panel to go to the section of the DV tape where to start recording.
Tip: Click
Transmit to device unit for preview to preview your project on the DV camcorder's LCD monitor.
7 Click Record. After you are done recording your project to the HDV camcorder, click
Finish.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Appendix A: Menus and dialog boxes

Menus
Dialog boxes

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Menus

File menu

· New Project: Creates a new Corel VideoStudio project file. This clears the existing workspace and opens the new project with the specified settings in the New dialog box. If you have an unsaved project opened in the workspace when you click
New Project, Corel VideoStudio prompts you to save the changes first.
·
Open Project: Invokes the Open dialog box for selecting a Corel VideoStudio project file (*.vsp) to place in the workspace. If you have an unsaved project opened in the workspace, a message prompts you to save the changes.
· Save/Save As: Allows you to save your work as a new or existing project file (*.vsp). It opens the Save As dialog box where you can assign a file name and location for saving the file.
·
Smart Package: Allows you to back up all your media and project files you used in a project and compile it in a specified folder.
· Project Properties: Displays the Project
Properties dialog box that includes information about the currently opened file. Here you can also edit the project file template attributes.
· Preferences: Opens the
Preferences dialog box where you can customize the Corel VideoStudio working environment.
· Relink: Displays the Relink dialog box, prompting you to relink the currently selected clip whenever necessary. If you move the folder containing the source files to another location, select
Smart search in the Relink dialog box. When you relink one thumbnail, Corel VideoStudio will relink all the source files in the directory automatically.
·
Insert Media File to Timeline: Displays a pop-up menu that allows you to select video, DVD/DVD-VR, image, or audio, and then insert it to the appropriate track.
·
Insert Media File to Library: Displays a pop-up menu that allows you to select video, DVD/DVD-VR, image, or audio, and then insert it to the Library.
·
Exit: Closes the Corel VideoStudio program. It displays a message, prompting you to save your current project.

Edit menu

· Undo: Reverses past actions that you performed on your project. Corel VideoStudio allows you to go back up to the last 99 actions. The number of steps that you can undo depends on the settings you specify in the
File: Preferences - General tab.
· Redo: Allows you to reverse up to 99 of the last undo commands you performed. The number of steps

you can redo depends on the settings you specify in the
File: Preferences - General tab.

·

Copy: Copies the currently selected media clip to the clipboard so that it can be pasted into a Library folder.

·

Paste: Pastes the copied media clip to the selected Library folder.

·

Delete: Removes the currently selected clip from the selected Track/Library folder.

Clip menu

·

Mute: Silences the audio of a video clip. This option is helpful if you want to apply a different music background to a specific video clip.

·

Fade-in: Gradually increases the volume of a clip from zero to full volume.

·

Fade-out: Gradually decreases the volume of a clip from full volume to zero.

· Cut Clip: Cuts a video or audio clip in two. With a clip selected, move the
Jog Slider under the Preview Window to select the point where you want to cut the clip.

· Split Audio:
Splits the audio and video of the selected clip into two separate entities.

· Playback Speed:
Adjusts the selected clip's playback speed.

· Multi-trim Video: Opens the
Multi-trim Video dialog box where you can select useful segments from a video clip and break down the clip into these segments.

· Split by Scene: Opens the
Scenes dialog box where you can split the video file based on frame content or shooting date. This option can also be used for clips in the Library.

· Change Image/Color Duration: Opens the
Duration dialog box where you can change the length of a clip.

· Auto Pan & Zoom:
Applies the Auto Pan & Zoom feature to the selected video clip.

·

Save Trimmed Video: Cuts the selected part according to the Trim Handles and saves it as a new video file. After trimming to a video file, a thumbnail of this new video appears in the Library.

·

Save as Still Image: Saves the current frame in the Preview Window as a new image file. A thumbnail of this new image appears in the Library.

·

Export: Provides a number of ways to export and share your movie.

·

DV Recording: Opens a dialog box allowing you to directly send and record video data to an output device such as a DV camcorder or other DV recording device.

·

HDV Recording: Opens a dialog box allowing you to directly send and record video data to an HDV camcorder.

·

Web Page: Allows you to put a selected clip or movie file on a Web page.

·

E-mail: Runs the user's default e-mail client (e.g. Outlook Express) and attaches the selected video clip or movie file.

·

Greeting Card: Opens a dialog box allowing you to create a multimedia greeting card using a selected clip or movie file.

·

Movie Screen Saver: Saves the selected clip as your desktop screen saver. You can only export WMV files as screen savers.

·

Properties: Displays information about the currently selected clip.

Tools menu

· VideoStudio DV-to-DVD Wizard:
Opens the DV to DVD Wizard that allows you to capture videos from a DV camcorder then burn them onto a video disc.

·

VideoStudio Movie Wizard: Opens the Movie Wizard that allows you to quickly create a movie.

·

Create Disc: Allows you to output your project (together with other VideoStudio projects or videos) to create AVCHD, BDMV, DVD, VCD and SVCD.

·

Painting Creator: Opens the Painting Creator module dialog box.
· Select Device Control: Opens a dialog box where you can set up device control. This will allow you to control your DV device using the
Navigation Panel.
· Change Capture Plug-in: Displays the
Change Capture Plug-in dialog box that allows you to choose a plug-in for the capture driver.
· Batch Convert: Opens the
Batch Convert dialog box where you can choose multiple video files in different file formats and convert them to a single video file format.

·

Recover DVB-T Video: Retrieves lost data from captured videos.

·

Full Screen Preview: Gives an actual size preview of your project using the entire screen of a PC or TV monitor. This is only available in the Capture and Share steps.

·

Save Current Frame as Image: Saves the current frame in the Preview Window as an image file in the Library.

·

Print Options: Opens a dialog box where you can specify settings for printing still images.

·

Smart Proxy File Manager: Creates working copies of your HD videos with lower resolution.

·

Smart Proxy Queue Manager: Shows the files in queue for the creation of working copies in Smart Proxy Manager.
· Make Movie Templates Manager: Create and manage templates that contain all the information (file format, frame rate, compression, etc.) required to create a video file from your project. After you have created a template, when you click **Create Video File** in the **Share**
Step, you will be given the option to use that template.

· Preview Files Manager: Opens the
Preview Files Manager dialog box, listing all the preview files created in the project. You can select the preview files to delete, freeing some of your system resources.
·
Library Organizer: Allows you to create custom media folders and backup/restore virtual media files in the Library.
·
Chapter Point Manager: Sets chapter points in your movie.
·
Cue Point Manager: Sets cue points in your movie.
·
Track Manager: Allows you to show / hide tracks of your movie.

Help menu

·
Corel VideoStudio Help: Displays general program help about Corel VideoStudio.
·
Online Registration: This opens your browser to the Corel VideoStudio Online Registration page. This allows you to instantly register your product and entitles you to full technical support, upgrade prices, special offers on other Corel products, and occasionally free downloads.
·
Product Updates on the Web: Automatically opens your Web browser and leads you to Corel's Web site for online registration, easy updates, special offers, and a plethora of tips, tricks, and ideas.
·
About Corel VideoStudio: Shows program version and copyright information.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Menus

File menu

· New Project: Creates a new Corel VideoStudio project file. This clears the existing workspace and opens the new project with the specified settings in the New dialog box. If you have an unsaved project opened in the workspace when you click
New Project, Corel VideoStudio prompts you to save the changes first.
·
Open Project: Invokes the Open dialog box for selecting a Corel VideoStudio project file (*.vsp) to place in the workspace. If you have an unsaved project opened in the workspace, a message prompts you to save the changes.
· Save/Save As: Allows you to save your work as a new or existing project file (*.vsp). It opens the Save As dialog box where you can assign a file name and location for saving the file.
·
Smart Package: Allows you to back up all your media and project files you used in a project and compile it in a specified folder.
· Project Properties: Displays the Project
Properties dialog box that includes information about the currently opened file. Here you can also edit the project file template attributes.
· Preferences: Opens the
Preferences dialog box where you can customize the Corel VideoStudio working environment.
· Relink: Displays the Relink dialog box, prompting you to relink the currently selected clip whenever necessary. If you move the folder containing the source files to another location, select
Smart search in the Relink dialog box. When you relink one thumbnail, Corel VideoStudio will relink all the source files in the directory automatically.
·
Insert Media File to Timeline: Displays a pop-up menu that allows you to select video, DVD/DVD-VR, image, or audio, and then insert it to the appropriate track.
·
Insert Media File to Library: Displays a pop-up menu that allows you to select video, DVD/DVD-VR, image, or audio, and then insert it to the Library.
·
Exit: Closes the Corel VideoStudio program. It displays a message, prompting you to save your current project.

Edit menu

· Undo: Reverses past actions that you performed on your project. Corel VideoStudio allows you to go back up to the last 99 actions. The number of steps that you can undo depends on the settings you specify in the
File: Preferences - General tab.
· Redo: Allows you to reverse up to 99 of the last undo commands you performed. The number of steps

you can redo depends on the settings you specify in the
File: Preferences - General tab.

·

Copy: Copies the currently selected media clip to the clipboard so that it can be pasted into a Library folder.

·

Paste: Pastes the copied media clip to the selected Library folder.

·

Delete: Removes the currently selected clip from the selected Track/Library folder.

Clip menu

·

Mute: Silences the audio of a video clip. This option is helpful if you want to apply a different music background to a specific video clip.

·

Fade-in: Gradually increases the volume of a clip from zero to full volume.

·

Fade-out: Gradually decreases the volume of a clip from full volume to zero.

· Cut Clip: Cuts a video or audio clip in two. With a clip selected, move the
Jog Slider under the Preview Window to select the point where you want to cut the clip.

· Split Audio:
Splits the audio and video of the selected clip into two separate entities.

· Playback Speed:
Adjusts the selected clip's playback speed.

· Multi-trim Video: Opens the
Multi-trim Video dialog box where you can select useful segments from a video clip and break down the clip into these segments.

· Split by Scene: Opens the
Scenes dialog box where you can split the video file based on frame content or shooting date. This option can also be used for clips in the Library.

· Change Image/Color Duration: Opens the
Duration dialog box where you can change the length of a clip.

· Auto Pan & Zoom:
Applies the Auto Pan & Zoom feature to the selected video clip.

·

Save Trimmed Video: Cuts the selected part according to the Trim Handles and saves it as a new video file. After trimming to a video file, a thumbnail of this new video appears in the Library.

·

Save as Still Image: Saves the current frame in the Preview Window as a new image file. A thumbnail of this new image appears in the Library.

·

Export: Provides a number of ways to export and share your movie.

·

DV Recording: Opens a dialog box allowing you to directly send and record video data to an output device such as a DV camcorder or other DV recording device.

·

HDV Recording: Opens a dialog box allowing you to directly send and record video data to an HDV camcorder.

·

Web Page: Allows you to put a selected clip or movie file on a Web page.

·

E-mail: Runs the user's default e-mail client (e.g. Outlook Express) and attaches the selected video clip or movie file.

·

Greeting Card: Opens a dialog box allowing you to create a multimedia greeting card using a selected clip or movie file.

·

Movie Screen Saver: Saves the selected clip as your desktop screen saver. You can only export WMV files as screen savers.

·

Properties: Displays information about the currently selected clip.

Tools menu

· VideoStudio DV-to-DVD Wizard:
Opens the DV to DVD Wizard that allows you to capture videos from a DV camcorder then burn them onto a video disc.

·

VideoStudio Movie Wizard: Opens the Movie Wizard that allows you to quickly create a movie.

·

Create Disc: Allows you to output your project (together with other VideoStudio projects or videos) to create AVCHD, BDMV, DVD, VCD and SVCD.

·

Painting Creator: Opens the Painting Creator module dialog box.
· Select Device Control: Opens a dialog box where you can set up device control. This will allow you to control your DV device using the
Navigation Panel.
· Change Capture Plug-in: Displays the
Change Capture Plug-in dialog box that allows you to choose a plug-in for the capture driver.
· Batch Convert: Opens the
Batch Convert dialog box where you can choose multiple video files in different file formats and convert them to a single video file format.

·

Recover DVB-T Video: Retrieves lost data from captured videos.

·

Full Screen Preview: Gives an actual size preview of your project using the entire screen of a PC or TV monitor. This is only available in the Capture and Share steps.

·

Save Current Frame as Image: Saves the current frame in the Preview Window as an image file in the Library.

·

Print Options: Opens a dialog box where you can specify settings for printing still images.

·

Smart Proxy File Manager: Creates working copies of your HD videos with lower resolution.

·

Smart Proxy Queue Manager: Shows the files in queue for the creation of working copies in Smart Proxy Manager.
· Make Movie Templates Manager: Create and manage templates that contain all the information (file format, frame rate, compression, etc.) required to create a video file from your project. After you have created a template, when you click **Create Video File** in the **Share**
Step, you will be given the option to use that template.

· Preview Files Manager: Opens the
Preview Files Manager dialog box, listing all the preview files created in the project. You can select the preview files to delete, freeing some of your system resources.
·
Library Organizer: Allows you to create custom media folders and backup/restore virtual media files in the Library.
·
Chapter Point Manager: Sets chapter points in your movie.
·
Cue Point Manager: Sets cue points in your movie.
·
Track Manager: Allows you to show / hide tracks of your movie.

Help menu

·
Corel VideoStudio Help: Displays general program help about Corel VideoStudio.
·
Online Registration: This opens your browser to the Corel VideoStudio Online Registration page. This allows you to instantly register your product and entitles you to full technical support, upgrade prices, special offers on other Corel products, and occasionally free downloads.
·
Product Updates on the Web: Automatically opens your Web browser and leads you to Corel's Web site for online registration, easy updates, special offers, and a plethora of tips, tricks, and ideas.
·
About Corel VideoStudio: Shows program version and copyright information.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Menus

File menu

· New Project: Creates a new Corel VideoStudio project file. This clears the existing workspace and opens the new project with the specified settings in the New dialog box. If you have an unsaved project opened in the workspace when you click
New Project, Corel VideoStudio prompts you to save the changes first.
·
Open Project: Invokes the Open dialog box for selecting a Corel VideoStudio project file (*.vsp) to place in the workspace. If you have an unsaved project opened in the workspace, a message prompts you to save the changes.
· Save/Save As: Allows you to save your work as a new or existing project file (*.vsp). It opens the Save As dialog box where you can assign a file name and location for saving the file.
·
Smart Package: Allows you to back up all your media and project files you used in a project and compile it in a specified folder.
· Project Properties: Displays the Project
Properties dialog box that includes information about the currently opened file. Here you can also edit the project file template attributes.
· Preferences: Opens the
Preferences dialog box where you can customize the Corel VideoStudio working environment.
· Relink: Displays the Relink dialog box, prompting you to relink the currently selected clip whenever necessary. If you move the folder containing the source files to another location, select
Smart search in the Relink dialog box. When you relink one thumbnail, Corel VideoStudio will relink all the source files in the directory automatically.
·
Insert Media File to Timeline: Displays a pop-up menu that allows you to select video, DVD/DVD-VR, image, or audio, and then insert it to the appropriate track.
·
Insert Media File to Library: Displays a pop-up menu that allows you to select video, DVD/DVD-VR, image, or audio, and then insert it to the Library.
·
Exit: Closes the Corel VideoStudio program. It displays a message, prompting you to save your current project.

Edit menu

· Undo: Reverses past actions that you performed on your project. Corel VideoStudio allows you to go back up to the last 99 actions. The number of steps that you can undo depends on the settings you specify in the
File: Preferences - General tab.
· Redo: Allows you to reverse up to 99 of the last undo commands you performed. The number of steps

you can redo depends on the settings you specify in the
File: Preferences - General tab.

·

Copy: Copies the currently selected media clip to the clipboard so that it can be pasted into a Library folder.

·

Paste: Pastes the copied media clip to the selected Library folder.

·

Delete: Removes the currently selected clip from the selected Track/Library folder.

Clip menu

·

Mute: Silences the audio of a video clip. This option is helpful if you want to apply a different music background to a specific video clip.

·

Fade-in: Gradually increases the volume of a clip from zero to full volume.

·

Fade-out: Gradually decreases the volume of a clip from full volume to zero.

· Cut Clip: Cuts a video or audio clip in two. With a clip selected, move the
Jog Slider under the Preview Window to select the point where you want to cut the clip.

· Split Audio:
Splits the audio and video of the selected clip into two separate entities.

· Playback Speed:
Adjusts the selected clip's playback speed.

· Multi-trim Video: Opens the
Multi-trim Video dialog box where you can select useful segments from a video clip and break down the clip into these segments.

· Split by Scene: Opens the
Scenes dialog box where you can split the video file based on frame content or shooting date. This option can also be used for clips in the Library.

· Change Image/Color Duration: Opens the
Duration dialog box where you can change the length of a clip.

· Auto Pan & Zoom:
Applies the Auto Pan & Zoom feature to the selected video clip.

·

Save Trimmed Video: Cuts the selected part according to the Trim Handles and saves it as a new video file. After trimming to a video file, a thumbnail of this new video appears in the Library.

·

Save as Still Image: Saves the current frame in the Preview Window as a new image file. A thumbnail of this new image appears in the Library.

·

Export: Provides a number of ways to export and share your movie.

·

DV Recording: Opens a dialog box allowing you to directly send and record video data to an output device such as a DV camcorder or other DV recording device.

·

HDV Recording: Opens a dialog box allowing you to directly send and record video data to an HDV camcorder.

·

Web Page: Allows you to put a selected clip or movie file on a Web page.

·

E-mail: Runs the user's default e-mail client (e.g. Outlook Express) and attaches the selected video clip or movie file.

·

Greeting Card: Opens a dialog box allowing you to create a multimedia greeting card using a selected clip or movie file.

·

Movie Screen Saver: Saves the selected clip as your desktop screen saver. You can only export WMV files as screen savers.

·

Properties: Displays information about the currently selected clip.

Tools menu

· VideoStudio DV-to-DVD Wizard:
Opens the DV to DVD Wizard that allows you to capture videos from a DV camcorder then burn them onto a video disc.

·

VideoStudio Movie Wizard: Opens the Movie Wizard that allows you to quickly create a movie.

·

Create Disc: Allows you to output your project (together with other VideoStudio projects or videos) to create AVCHD, BDMV, DVD, VCD and SVCD.

·

Painting Creator: Opens the Painting Creator module dialog box.
· Select Device Control: Opens a dialog box where you can set up device control. This will allow you to control your DV device using the
Navigation Panel.
· Change Capture Plug-in: Displays the
Change Capture Plug-in dialog box that allows you to choose a plug-in for the capture driver.
· Batch Convert: Opens the
Batch Convert dialog box where you can choose multiple video files in different file formats and convert them to a single video file format.

·

Recover DVB-T Video: Retrieves lost data from captured videos.

·

Full Screen Preview: Gives an actual size preview of your project using the entire screen of a PC or TV monitor. This is only available in the Capture and Share steps.

·

Save Current Frame as Image: Saves the current frame in the Preview Window as an image file in the Library.

·

Print Options: Opens a dialog box where you can specify settings for printing still images.

·

Smart Proxy File Manager: Creates working copies of your HD videos with lower resolution.

·

Smart Proxy Queue Manager: Shows the files in queue for the creation of working copies in Smart Proxy Manager.
· Make Movie Templates Manager: Create and manage templates that contain all the information (file format, frame rate, compression, etc.) required to create a video file from your project. After you have created a template, when you click **Create Video File** in the **Share**
Step, you will be given the option to use that template.

· Preview Files Manager: Opens the
Preview Files Manager dialog box, listing all the preview files created in the project. You can select the preview files to delete, freeing some of your system resources.
·
Library Organizer: Allows you to create custom media folders and backup/restore virtual media files in the Library.
·
Chapter Point Manager: Sets chapter points in your movie.
·
Cue Point Manager: Sets cue points in your movie.
·
Track Manager: Allows you to show / hide tracks of your movie.

Help menu

·
Corel VideoStudio Help: Displays general program help about Corel VideoStudio.
·
Online Registration: This opens your browser to the Corel VideoStudio Online Registration page. This allows you to instantly register your product and entitles you to full technical support, upgrade prices, special offers on other Corel products, and occasionally free downloads.
·
Product Updates on the Web: Automatically opens your Web browser and leads you to Corel's Web site for online registration, easy updates, special offers, and a plethora of tips, tricks, and ideas.
·
About Corel VideoStudio: Shows program version and copyright information.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Menus

File menu

· New Project: Creates a new Corel VideoStudio project file. This clears the existing workspace and opens the new project with the specified settings in the New dialog box. If you have an unsaved project opened in the workspace when you click
New Project, Corel VideoStudio prompts you to save the changes first.
·
Open Project: Invokes the Open dialog box for selecting a Corel VideoStudio project file (*.vsp) to place in the workspace. If you have an unsaved project opened in the workspace, a message prompts you to save the changes.
· Save/Save As: Allows you to save your work as a new or existing project file (*.vsp). It opens the Save As dialog box where you can assign a file name and location for saving the file.
·
Smart Package: Allows you to back up all your media and project files you used in a project and compile it in a specified folder.
· Project Properties: Displays the Project
Properties dialog box that includes information about the currently opened file. Here you can also edit the project file template attributes.
· Preferences: Opens the
Preferences dialog box where you can customize the Corel VideoStudio working environment.
· Relink: Displays the Relink dialog box, prompting you to relink the currently selected clip whenever necessary. If you move the folder containing the source files to another location, select
Smart search in the Relink dialog box. When you relink one thumbnail, Corel VideoStudio will relink all the source files in the directory automatically.
·
Insert Media File to Timeline: Displays a pop-up menu that allows you to select video, DVD/DVD-VR, image, or audio, and then insert it to the appropriate track.
·
Insert Media File to Library: Displays a pop-up menu that allows you to select video, DVD/DVD-VR, image, or audio, and then insert it to the Library.
·
Exit: Closes the Corel VideoStudio program. It displays a message, prompting you to save your current project.

Edit menu

· Undo: Reverses past actions that you performed on your project. Corel VideoStudio allows you to go back up to the last 99 actions. The number of steps that you can undo depends on the settings you specify in the
File: Preferences - General tab.
· Redo: Allows you to reverse up to 99 of the last undo commands you performed. The number of steps

you can redo depends on the settings you specify in the
File: Preferences - General tab.

·

Copy: Copies the currently selected media clip to the clipboard so that it can be pasted into a Library folder.

·

Paste: Pastes the copied media clip to the selected Library folder.

·

Delete: Removes the currently selected clip from the selected Track/Library folder.

Clip menu

·

Mute: Silences the audio of a video clip. This option is helpful if you want to apply a different music background to a specific video clip.

·

Fade-in: Gradually increases the volume of a clip from zero to full volume.

·

Fade-out: Gradually decreases the volume of a clip from full volume to zero.

· Cut Clip: Cuts a video or audio clip in two. With a clip selected, move the
Jog Slider under the Preview Window to select the point where you want to cut the clip.

· Split Audio:
Splits the audio and video of the selected clip into two separate entities.

· Playback Speed:
Adjusts the selected clip's playback speed.

· Multi-trim Video: Opens the
Multi-trim Video dialog box where you can select useful segments from a video clip and break down the clip into these segments.

· Split by Scene: Opens the
Scenes dialog box where you can split the video file based on frame content or shooting date. This option can also be used for clips in the Library.

· Change Image/Color Duration: Opens the
Duration dialog box where you can change the length of a clip.

· Auto Pan & Zoom:
Applies the Auto Pan & Zoom feature to the selected video clip.

·

Save Trimmed Video: Cuts the selected part according to the Trim Handles and saves it as a new video file. After trimming to a video file, a thumbnail of this new video appears in the Library.

·

Save as Still Image: Saves the current frame in the Preview Window as a new image file. A thumbnail of this new image appears in the Library.

·

Export: Provides a number of ways to export and share your movie.

·

DV Recording: Opens a dialog box allowing you to directly send and record video data to an output device such as a DV camcorder or other DV recording device.

·

HDV Recording: Opens a dialog box allowing you to directly send and record video data to an HDV camcorder.

·

Web Page: Allows you to put a selected clip or movie file on a Web page.

·

E-mail: Runs the user's default e-mail client (e.g. Outlook Express) and attaches the selected video clip or movie file.

·

Greeting Card: Opens a dialog box allowing you to create a multimedia greeting card using a selected clip or movie file.

·

Movie Screen Saver: Saves the selected clip as your desktop screen saver. You can only export WMV files as screen savers.

·

Properties: Displays information about the currently selected clip.

Tools menu

· VideoStudio DV-to-DVD Wizard:
Opens the DV to DVD Wizard that allows you to capture videos from a DV camcorder then burn them onto a video disc.

·

VideoStudio Movie Wizard: Opens the Movie Wizard that allows you to quickly create a movie.

·

Create Disc: Allows you to output your project (together with other VideoStudio projects or videos) to create AVCHD, BDMV, DVD, VCD and SVCD.

·

Painting Creator: Opens the Painting Creator module dialog box.
· Select Device Control: Opens a dialog box where you can set up device control. This will allow you to control your DV device using the
Navigation Panel.
· Change Capture Plug-in: Displays the
Change Capture Plug-in dialog box that allows you to choose a plug-in for the capture driver.
· Batch Convert: Opens the
Batch Convert dialog box where you can choose multiple video files in different file formats and convert them to a single video file format.

·

Recover DVB-T Video: Retrieves lost data from captured videos.

·

Full Screen Preview: Gives an actual size preview of your project using the entire screen of a PC or TV monitor. This is only available in the Capture and Share steps.

·

Save Current Frame as Image: Saves the current frame in the Preview Window as an image file in the Library.

·

Print Options: Opens a dialog box where you can specify settings for printing still images.

·

Smart Proxy File Manager: Creates working copies of your HD videos with lower resolution.

·

Smart Proxy Queue Manager: Shows the files in queue for the creation of working copies in Smart Proxy Manager.
· Make Movie Templates Manager: Create and manage templates that contain all the information (file format, frame rate, compression, etc.) required to create a video file from your project. After you have created a template, when you click **Create Video File** in the **Share**
Step, you will be given the option to use that template.

· Preview Files Manager: Opens the
Preview Files Manager dialog box, listing all the preview files created in the project. You can select the preview files to delete, freeing some of your system resources.
·
Library Organizer: Allows you to create custom media folders and backup/restore virtual media files in the Library.
·
Chapter Point Manager: Sets chapter points in your movie.
·
Cue Point Manager: Sets cue points in your movie.
·
Track Manager: Allows you to show / hide tracks of your movie.

Help menu

·
Corel VideoStudio Help: Displays general program help about Corel VideoStudio.
·
Online Registration: This opens your browser to the Corel VideoStudio Online Registration page. This allows you to instantly register your product and entitles you to full technical support, upgrade prices, special offers on other Corel products, and occasionally free downloads.
·
Product Updates on the Web: Automatically opens your Web browser and leads you to Corel's Web site for online registration, easy updates, special offers, and a plethora of tips, tricks, and ideas.
·
About Corel VideoStudio: Shows program version and copyright information.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Menus

File menu

· New Project: Creates a new Corel VideoStudio project file. This clears the existing workspace and opens the new project with the specified settings in the New dialog box. If you have an unsaved project opened in the workspace when you click
New Project, Corel VideoStudio prompts you to save the changes first.
·
Open Project: Invokes the Open dialog box for selecting a Corel VideoStudio project file (*.vsp) to place in the workspace. If you have an unsaved project opened in the workspace, a message prompts you to save the changes.
· Save/Save As: Allows you to save your work as a new or existing project file (*.vsp). It opens the Save As dialog box where you can assign a file name and location for saving the file.
·
Smart Package: Allows you to back up all your media and project files you used in a project and compile it in a specified folder.
· Project Properties: Displays the Project
Properties dialog box that includes information about the currently opened file. Here you can also edit the project file template attributes.
· Preferences: Opens the
Preferences dialog box where you can customize the Corel VideoStudio working environment.
· Relink: Displays the Relink dialog box, prompting you to relink the currently selected clip whenever necessary. If you move the folder containing the source files to another location, select
Smart search in the Relink dialog box. When you relink one thumbnail, Corel VideoStudio will relink all the source files in the directory automatically.
·
Insert Media File to Timeline: Displays a pop-up menu that allows you to select video, DVD/DVD-VR, image, or audio, and then insert it to the appropriate track.
·
Insert Media File to Library: Displays a pop-up menu that allows you to select video, DVD/DVD-VR, image, or audio, and then insert it to the Library.
·
Exit: Closes the Corel VideoStudio program. It displays a message, prompting you to save your current project.

Edit menu

· Undo: Reverses past actions that you performed on your project. Corel VideoStudio allows you to go back up to the last 99 actions. The number of steps that you can undo depends on the settings you specify in the
File: Preferences - General tab.
· Redo: Allows you to reverse up to 99 of the last undo commands you performed. The number of steps

you can redo depends on the settings you specify in the
File: Preferences - General tab.

·

Copy: Copies the currently selected media clip to the clipboard so that it can be pasted into a Library folder.

·

Paste: Pastes the copied media clip to the selected Library folder.

·

Delete: Removes the currently selected clip from the selected Track/Library folder.

Clip menu

·

Mute: Silences the audio of a video clip. This option is helpful if you want to apply a different music background to a specific video clip.

·

Fade-in: Gradually increases the volume of a clip from zero to full volume.

·

Fade-out: Gradually decreases the volume of a clip from full volume to zero.

· Cut Clip: Cuts a video or audio clip in two. With a clip selected, move the
Jog Slider under the Preview Window to select the point where you want to cut the clip.

· Split Audio:
Splits the audio and video of the selected clip into two separate entities.

· Playback Speed:
Adjusts the selected clip's playback speed.

· Multi-trim Video: Opens the
Multi-trim Video dialog box where you can select useful segments from a video clip and break down the clip into these segments.

· Split by Scene: Opens the
Scenes dialog box where you can split the video file based on frame content or shooting date. This option can also be used for clips in the Library.

· Change Image/Color Duration: Opens the
Duration dialog box where you can change the length of a clip.

· Auto Pan & Zoom:
Applies the Auto Pan & Zoom feature to the selected video clip.

·

Save Trimmed Video: Cuts the selected part according to the Trim Handles and saves it as a new video file. After trimming to a video file, a thumbnail of this new video appears in the Library.

·

Save as Still Image: Saves the current frame in the Preview Window as a new image file. A thumbnail of this new image appears in the Library.

·

Export: Provides a number of ways to export and share your movie.

·

DV Recording: Opens a dialog box allowing you to directly send and record video data to an output device such as a DV camcorder or other DV recording device.

·

HDV Recording: Opens a dialog box allowing you to directly send and record video data to an HDV camcorder.

·

Web Page: Allows you to put a selected clip or movie file on a Web page.

·

E-mail: Runs the user's default e-mail client (e.g. Outlook Express) and attaches the selected video clip or movie file.

·

Greeting Card: Opens a dialog box allowing you to create a multimedia greeting card using a selected clip or movie file.

·

Movie Screen Saver: Saves the selected clip as your desktop screen saver. You can only export WMV files as screen savers.

·

Properties: Displays information about the currently selected clip.

Tools menu

· VideoStudio DV-to-DVD Wizard:
Opens the DV to DVD Wizard that allows you to capture videos from a DV camcorder then burn them onto a video disc.

·

VideoStudio Movie Wizard: Opens the Movie Wizard that allows you to quickly create a movie.

·

Create Disc: Allows you to output your project (together with other VideoStudio projects or videos) to create AVCHD, BDMV, DVD, VCD and SVCD.

·

Painting Creator: Opens the Painting Creator module dialog box.
· Select Device Control: Opens a dialog box where you can set up device control. This will allow you to control your DV device using the
Navigation Panel.
· Change Capture Plug-in: Displays the
Change Capture Plug-in dialog box that allows you to choose a plug-in for the capture driver.
· Batch Convert: Opens the
Batch Convert dialog box where you can choose multiple video files in different file formats and convert them to a single video file format.

·

Recover DVB-T Video: Retrieves lost data from captured videos.

·

Full Screen Preview: Gives an actual size preview of your project using the entire screen of a PC or TV monitor. This is only available in the Capture and Share steps.

·

Save Current Frame as Image: Saves the current frame in the Preview Window as an image file in the Library.

·

Print Options: Opens a dialog box where you can specify settings for printing still images.

·

Smart Proxy File Manager: Creates working copies of your HD videos with lower resolution.

·

Smart Proxy Queue Manager: Shows the files in queue for the creation of working copies in Smart Proxy Manager.
· Make Movie Templates Manager: Create and manage templates that contain all the information (file format, frame rate, compression, etc.) required to create a video file from your project. After you have created a template, when you click **Create Video File** in the **Share**
Step, you will be given the option to use that template.

· Preview Files Manager: Opens the
Preview Files Manager dialog box, listing all the preview files created in the project. You can select the preview files to delete, freeing some of your system resources.
·
Library Organizer: Allows you to create custom media folders and backup/restore virtual media files in the Library.
·
Chapter Point Manager: Sets chapter points in your movie.
·
Cue Point Manager: Sets cue points in your movie.
·
Track Manager: Allows you to show / hide tracks of your movie.

Help menu

·
Corel VideoStudio Help: Displays general program help about Corel VideoStudio.
·
Online Registration: This opens your browser to the Corel VideoStudio Online Registration page. This allows you to instantly register your product and entitles you to full technical support, upgrade prices, special offers on other Corel products, and occasionally free downloads.
·
Product Updates on the Web: Automatically opens your Web browser and leads you to Corel's Web site for online registration, easy updates, special offers, and a plethora of tips, tricks, and ideas.
·
About Corel VideoStudio: Shows program version and copyright information.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Menus

File menu

· New Project: Creates a new Corel VideoStudio project file. This clears the existing workspace and opens the new project with the specified settings in the New dialog box. If you have an unsaved project opened in the workspace when you click
New Project, Corel VideoStudio prompts you to save the changes first.
·
Open Project: Invokes the Open dialog box for selecting a Corel VideoStudio project file (*.vsp) to place in the workspace. If you have an unsaved project opened in the workspace, a message prompts you to save the changes.
· Save/Save As: Allows you to save your work as a new or existing project file (*.vsp). It opens the Save As dialog box where you can assign a file name and location for saving the file.
·
Smart Package: Allows you to back up all your media and project files you used in a project and compile it in a specified folder.
· Project Properties: Displays the Project
Properties dialog box that includes information about the currently opened file. Here you can also edit the project file template attributes.
· Preferences: Opens the
Preferences dialog box where you can customize the Corel VideoStudio working environment.
· Relink: Displays the Relink dialog box, prompting you to relink the currently selected clip whenever necessary. If you move the folder containing the source files to another location, select
Smart search in the Relink dialog box. When you relink one thumbnail, Corel VideoStudio will relink all the source files in the directory automatically.
·
Insert Media File to Timeline: Displays a pop-up menu that allows you to select video, DVD/DVD-VR, image, or audio, and then insert it to the appropriate track.
·
Insert Media File to Library: Displays a pop-up menu that allows you to select video, DVD/DVD-VR, image, or audio, and then insert it to the Library.
·
Exit: Closes the Corel VideoStudio program. It displays a message, prompting you to save your current project.

Edit menu

· Undo: Reverses past actions that you performed on your project. Corel VideoStudio allows you to go back up to the last 99 actions. The number of steps that you can undo depends on the settings you specify in the
File: Preferences - General tab.
· Redo: Allows you to reverse up to 99 of the last undo commands you performed. The number of steps

you can redo depends on the settings you specify in the
File: Preferences - General tab.

·

Copy: Copies the currently selected media clip to the clipboard so that it can be pasted into a Library folder.

·

Paste: Pastes the copied media clip to the selected Library folder.

·

Delete: Removes the currently selected clip from the selected Track/Library folder.

Clip menu

·

Mute: Silences the audio of a video clip. This option is helpful if you want to apply a different music background to a specific video clip.

·

Fade-in: Gradually increases the volume of a clip from zero to full volume.

·

Fade-out: Gradually decreases the volume of a clip from full volume to zero.

· Cut Clip: Cuts a video or audio clip in two. With a clip selected, move the
Jog Slider under the Preview Window to select the point where you want to cut the clip.

· Split Audio:
Splits the audio and video of the selected clip into two separate entities.

· Playback Speed:
Adjusts the selected clip's playback speed.

· Multi-trim Video: Opens the
Multi-trim Video dialog box where you can select useful segments from a video clip and break down the clip into these segments.

· Split by Scene: Opens the
Scenes dialog box where you can split the video file based on frame content or shooting date. This option can also be used for clips in the Library.

· Change Image/Color Duration: Opens the
Duration dialog box where you can change the length of a clip.

· Auto Pan & Zoom:
Applies the Auto Pan & Zoom feature to the selected video clip.

·

Save Trimmed Video: Cuts the selected part according to the Trim Handles and saves it as a new video file. After trimming to a video file, a thumbnail of this new video appears in the Library.

·

Save as Still Image: Saves the current frame in the Preview Window as a new image file. A thumbnail of this new image appears in the Library.

·

Export: Provides a number of ways to export and share your movie.

·

DV Recording: Opens a dialog box allowing you to directly send and record video data to an output device such as a DV camcorder or other DV recording device.

·

HDV Recording: Opens a dialog box allowing you to directly send and record video data to an HDV camcorder.

·

Web Page: Allows you to put a selected clip or movie file on a Web page.

·

E-mail: Runs the user's default e-mail client (e.g. Outlook Express) and attaches the selected video clip or movie file.

·

Greeting Card: Opens a dialog box allowing you to create a multimedia greeting card using a selected clip or movie file.

·

Movie Screen Saver: Saves the selected clip as your desktop screen saver. You can only export WMV files as screen savers.

·

Properties: Displays information about the currently selected clip.

Tools menu

· VideoStudio DV-to-DVD Wizard:
Opens the DV to DVD Wizard that allows you to capture videos from a DV camcorder then burn them onto a video disc.

·

VideoStudio Movie Wizard: Opens the Movie Wizard that allows you to quickly create a movie.

·

Create Disc: Allows you to output your project (together with other VideoStudio projects or videos) to create AVCHD, BDMV, DVD, VCD and SVCD.

·

Painting Creator: Opens the Painting Creator module dialog box.
· Select Device Control: Opens a dialog box where you can set up device control. This will allow you to control your DV device using the
Navigation Panel.
· Change Capture Plug-in: Displays the
Change Capture Plug-in dialog box that allows you to choose a plug-in for the capture driver.
· Batch Convert: Opens the
Batch Convert dialog box where you can choose multiple video files in different file formats and convert them to a single video file format.

·

Recover DVB-T Video: Retrieves lost data from captured videos.

·

Full Screen Preview: Gives an actual size preview of your project using the entire screen of a PC or TV monitor. This is only available in the Capture and Share steps.

·

Save Current Frame as Image: Saves the current frame in the Preview Window as an image file in the Library.

·

Print Options: Opens a dialog box where you can specify settings for printing still images.

·

Smart Proxy File Manager: Creates working copies of your HD videos with lower resolution.

·

Smart Proxy Queue Manager: Shows the files in queue for the creation of working copies in Smart Proxy Manager.
· Make Movie Templates Manager: Create and manage templates that contain all the information (file format, frame rate, compression, etc.) required to create a video file from your project. After you have created a template, when you click **Create Video File** in the **Share**
Step, you will be given the option to use that template.

· Preview Files Manager: Opens the
Preview Files Manager dialog box, listing all the preview files created in the project. You can select the preview files to delete, freeing some of your system resources.
·
Library Organizer: Allows you to create custom media folders and backup/restore virtual media files in the Library.
·
Chapter Point Manager: Sets chapter points in your movie.
·
Cue Point Manager: Sets cue points in your movie.
·
Track Manager: Allows you to show / hide tracks of your movie.

Help menu

·
Corel VideoStudio Help: Displays general program help about Corel VideoStudio.
·
Online Registration: This opens your browser to the Corel VideoStudio Online Registration page. This allows you to instantly register your product and entitles you to full technical support, upgrade prices, special offers on other Corel products, and occasionally free downloads.
·
Product Updates on the Web: Automatically opens your Web browser and leads you to Corel's Web site for online registration, easy updates, special offers, and a plethora of tips, tricks, and ideas.
·
About Corel VideoStudio: Shows program version and copyright information.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Dialog boxes

Advanced Settings (DV-to-DVD Wizard)

·

Disc format: Displays the format of the currently inserted disc.

·

Delete temp files after burning: Select to delete the temporary files in the working folder after burning.

·

Working folder: Enter or locate a folder for temporary files.

·

Auto add chapter: Select to automatically add chapters based on a specified time, recording date or scenes.

·

Create DVD folders: Select to retain the DVD folder in your hard drive after burning. This option is only available if the project is in DVD format. This also allows you to view the finished DVD title on the computer using a DVD player.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed. Thus, avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Template music volume: Drag the slider to specify the volume level to use for the background music of DVD menus.

·

Drive: Select a disc burner drive.

·

Burning speed: Select the rate on which to burn the disc.

Audio Save Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

Entire project: Creates an audio file containing the whole project.

·

Preview range: Creates an audio file containing only the range you have marked on the Timeline.

·

Play after creating it: Select to play the audio file after the file has been created.

Compression tab

· Format: Click to open the
Audio Format dialog box where you can change the audio characteristics.

·
Attributes: Select from the drop-down list of audio characteristics to use for saving.

Batch Convert

·
Batch Convert List: Displays the video files to be converted. The size, type, date modified and path of the video files are also displayed.

· Add: Opens the
Batch Convert dialog box where you can select the files you want to convert.

·
Remove: Deletes the selected file from the Batch Convert List.

·
Remove All: Deletes all the files in the Batch Convert List.

· Save in folder: Click
Browse to select a folder where to save the converted video files.

·
Save as type: Select to what file format to convert the video files.

·
Convert: Starts the conversion process.

·
Cancel: Closes the dialog box without converting the video files.

· Options: Opens the
Video Save Options dialog box where you can define save and compression settings for the selected file format.

Border/Shadow/Transparency

Border tab

· Transparent text:
Select to create a transparent effect for your text.

· Outer stroke border:
Select to create an outer stroke border for your text.

·
Border width: Specify the thickness of the border.

·
Line color: Click to select a color for the border.

·
Text transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value, the more transparent the text becomes.

·
Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value, the more the border blends with the background.

Shadow tab

·
Shadow type: Select the type of shadow to apply to your text.

·
Intensity: Set intensity of glow shadow.

·

Color: Click to select the color of the shadow.

·

Transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value the more transparent the shadow.

·

Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value the more the shadow blends with the background.

Capture Options

·

Capture audio: Captures audio when capturing from an analog device.

·

Capture to Library: Puts the captured video into the Library.

·

Force to use preview mode: Improves captured video quality when capturing in SVCD or DVD format. This is only available if your analog capture card supports this feature.

·

Capture frame rate: Select what frame rate to use when capturing the video. The higher the frame rate, the smoother the video will be.

Change Capture Plug-in

·

Current capture plug-in: Allows you to choose a capture plug-in for the driver that comes with the capture device installed on your computer. Capture plug-ins are programs that come with Corel VideoStudio. They allow VideoStudio to communicate with your video camera.

·

Description: Displays a brief description of the selected capture plug-in.

Burning Options

· Disc burner:

Specifies the settings for your burning device.

·

Drive: Sets the disc burner to use in recording the video file.

·

Speed: Ses the recording speed to use in burning the video file.

·

Files to include on disc: Allows you to include other files on the disc aside from your video project.

·

Copyright information: Includes the Corel VideoStudio copyright text.

·

Project File: Includes the VideoStudio project file used to make the video.

·

Personal folder: Includes any other folders on the disc.

·

Advanced settings: Lets you adjust more disc burning settings.

·

Test before recording: Checks (it does not actually burn yet) the CD/DVD burning capability of the drive and disc. This will help you check if the system speed is enough to send data to the CD/DVD writing device at a specified recording speed. After the simulated burning, actual burning then starts. Clear to burn the disc without performing a test.

·

Buffer underrun protection: Select to use this technology when burning your video file. This technology helps eliminate the buffer underrun problem. Availability of this technology depends on the disc burner you use.

·

Restart DVD+RW background format: Formats the DVD+RW before recording. Enabling this option will prolong the recording process but will ensure a successful burn. This is recommended when you are using the DVD+RW disc for the first time.

Note: By default, this option is not selected to ensure maximum compatibility.

Preferences: File menu

General tab

· Undo: Allows you to define the maximum number of times you can take back an action. Values range from
1-99.

·

Relink checking: Automatically performs a crosscheck between the clips in the project and their associated source files, allowing you to relink the source files to the clips. This is important when the file in the Library is moved to another folder location.

·

Show startup screen: Select to open the startup screen every time you launch VideoStudio. This startup screen allows you to choose either to open DV-to-DVD Wizard, VideoStudio Movie Wizard, or VideoStudio Editor.

·

Show MPEG Optimizer dialog box: Displays the optimal segment settings of a project to be rendered.

·

Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save your finished projects and captured clips.

· Clip display mode: Determines the manner to which your video clip will be presented on the Timeline. Select Thumbnail only if you want your clip to be represented by a corresponding thumbnail on the Timeline. Select File name only if you want your clip to be represented by its file name on the Timeline. Or you can select
Thumbnail and file name to have your clip represented by its corresponding thumbnail and file name.

·

Media Library Animation: Select to enable animation of media in library.

·

Show message when inserting first video clip into Timeline: Enables VideoStudio to prompt a message when it detects that an inserted video clip's properties do not match with the current project settings.

Note: When you capture or insert your first video clip into the project, VideoStudio automatically checks the properties of the clip and your project. If properties such as file format, frame size, etc. are not identical, VideoStudio displays a message and gives you the option to have the project settings automatically adjusted to match the clip's properties. Changing the project settings allows VideoStudio to perform SmartRender.

· Automatically save project every:
Select and specify the time interval when VideoStudio automatically saves a currently active project.

· Playback method: Allows you to choose a method for previewing your projects. Instant Playback allows you to quickly preview changes in your project without the need to create a temporary preview file, however, playback may be jerky depending on your computer resources.

High Quality Playback renders your project as a temporary preview file then plays this preview file. Playback is smoother in High Quality Playback mode, but rendering your project for the first time in this

mode may take a long time to complete depending on the size of your project and computer resources.
· In High Quality Playback mode, VideoStudio uses **SmartRender**
technology which renders only the changes you made such as transitions, titles and effects, and eliminates re-rendering the entire project. SmartRender saves time when generating previews.
·
Instant Playback target: Selects where you want to preview your project. If you have a dual head display card, you can play back your project on both the Preview Window and an external display device.
·
Background color: Specifies the background color to use for clips.
·
Display title safe area on Preview Window: Select to show the title safe area in the Preview Window when creating titles. The title safe area is a rectangular box on the Preview Window. Make sure that your text is within the title safe area to ensure that your entire text is properly displayed on the TV screen.
·
Display DV timecode on Preview Window: Displays the timecode of a DV video on the Preview Window when it is being played back. Your display card must be VMR (Video Mixing Renderer) compatible for the DV timecode to be displayed properly.
·
Display track hint on Preview Window: Select to display track information of the different overlay tracks when playback is stopped.
Edit tab
· **Apply color filter:**
Select to configure VideoStudio to confine its color palette to those visible in the NTSC or PAL filter color space to make sure that all the colors are valid. Clear if for monitor display only.
· Resampling quality:
Specifies the quality of effects and clips during editing. It is recommended to use a lower resampling quality like Good to yield the most efficient editing performance.
·
Use Fit-to-Screen as default size in Overlay Track: Select this option to set default size to Fit-to-Screen for clips in Overlay Track.
·
Default inserted image/color clip duration: Specifies the default clip length for all image clips and colors that will be added in your video project. Unit of time for the duration is in seconds.
· Image resampling option:
Select a method for your image resampling.
·
Apply anti-flickering filter in image clips: Reduces the flickering that happens when using a television to view image clips.
·
Cache image clips in memory: Allows you to use the cache in handling large image files for a more efficient editing.
· Default audio fade-in/out duration:
Specifies the default duration for fading in and fading out of a video clip's audio. Value entered here will be the amount of time it will take for the volume to reach the normal level for fading in or the base for fading out.
· Enable audio while scrubbing:
Enables audio to be previewed while scrubbing on the timeline.
·
Apply audio cross-fade automatically: Allows you to automatically apply a cross-fade audio transition with two overlapping audio.
·

Default transition effect duration: Specifies duration of the transition effect applied to all clips in your video project, in seconds.
· Automatically add transition effect:
Select to apply your chosen transition effect when video and image clips overlap each other.
·
Default transition effect: Allows you to choose the default transition effect to be applied to your project.
Capture tab
· Press OK to capture: Allows you to press
OK to start capturing.
·
Record directly from CD: Allows you to record an audio track directly from a CD.
·
Captured still image save format: Specifies the format to which your captured still image file will be saved as.
·
Image quality: Determines the display quality of the captured image. The higher the quality, the bigger the file.
·
Image capture deinterlace: Enables constant image resolution when downloading files, as opposed to the progressive image resolution available with interlaced images.
·
Stop DV tape when capturing stops: Enables the DV camcorder to automatically stop the tape playback after a video capture process is complete.
· Show drop frame information:
Select to display how many frames were dropped during video capture.
·
Show Recover DVB-T Video warning before capturing: Select to show warning to recover DVB-T Video for a smooth capture.
Preview tab
·
Specify additional folders for preview files: Indicates which folder Corel VideoStudio can use to save preview files. The folder shown is the folder specified in the SET TEMP statement of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. Specify other folders if you have additional drives or a partitioned drive. If you only have one drive, leave the other boxes empty.
·
Limit hard disk usage to: Specifies how much memory you want to allocate just for the Corel VideoStudio's program. If you are only using Corel VideoStudio and want to optimize the performance, select the maximum amount possible. If you are using other programs in the background, you may want to limit this to half of the maximum file size. If left cleared, Corel VideoStudio uses your systems memory management to control the use and distribution of memory.
Smart Proxy
·
Enable Smart Proxy: Automatically creates proxy files whenever a video source file is inserted into the Timeline.
·
Create proxy when video size is (or above): Allows you to set the condition as to when proxy files will be generated. If the frame size of a video source file is the same or is higher than the chosen frame size here, a proxy file will be created for the video file.
·
Proxy folder: Sets the folder location to store proxy files.
·

Auto generate proxy template: Automatically generates proxy files with predefined settings.
· Video proxy options: Indicate the settings to be used in generating proxy files. To change the proxy file format or other settings, click Template to choose a template that already contains predefined settings, or click
Options to tweak detailed settings.
UI Layout
· Allows you to change the layout of Corel VideoStudio's user interface through four preset options.

Preferences (Create Disc)

General tab
·
VCD player compliant: Corel VideoStudio uses the VCD 2.0 format when creating VCDs. For navigation menus with background music, Corel VideoStudio uses a format that requires "variable-bit-rate (VBR)" decoding. However, some VCD players do not support VBR decoding and therefore VCDs created in Corel VideoStudio will not play correctly in these players. Select this option to make sure that the VCD created will play in these players.
·
Anti-flicker filter: Select to apply the anti-flickering filter to the menu pages. The anti-flickering filter reduces the "flickering" that happens when using a television (interlaced display) to view the menu pages. However, this does not help when the menu page is viewed on progressive scan devices such as computer monitors or projectors.
· Resume all confirmation dialog boxes:
Select to have the confirmation boxes appear even after the "Do not show again" option is selected.
·
TV system: Select the type of your TV system (NTSC or PAL).
·
Max 30MB menus for set-top DVD+VR recorder: Select to set the maximum file size for DVD menus to 30MB to make the DVD compatible with set-top DVD (DVD-VR) recorders.
·
Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save to your finished projects and captured clips.
Advanced tab
·
Create index file for MPEG seeking performance: Improves real-time preview result using the Jog Slider. This option is specific for MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 files only.
·
NTSC/PAL safe color: Uses video friendly colors to ensure the display quality of your menus when viewed on any TV system. This helps you avoid the flickering problem on videos when viewed on screen.
·
TV safe area: Sets a margin (represented by a red border) in the Preview Window of the Setup Menu page. If you set the TV safe area at 10%, the remaining 90% will be your working area. Make sure that all your menu objects are within the working area so that they can be properly viewed on screen.

Project Properties

·
Project file information: Displays various information about the project file such as file size and duration.
·
Project template properties: Displays the video file format and other attributes used by the project.
· Edit file format: Select the video format you are going to use to create your final movie. Click Edit to

open the
Project Options dialog box where you can customize compression and audio settings for the selected file format.

Project Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

TV Standard: Select the TV Standard supported in your location.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Audio Channels: Choose from Stereo or Multi-Channel Surround Sound.

General tab

·

Data track: Specify whether to create the video file or the video track only or include the audio track.

·

Frame rate: Specify the frame rate to use for the resulting video file.

·

Frame type: Select between saving your work as field-based or frame-based video files. Field-based video stores video data as two distinct fields of information for each frame. If your video is only for computer playback, you should save your work as frame-based.

·

Frame size: Select the size of the frame or define your own for the video file.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed thus avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

Compression tab

· Media Type:
Allows you to choose the compression format of your project.
· Video Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.
· Audio Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.

Project Settings (Create Disc)

·

MPEG properties for file conversion: Displays detailed information about the selected video setting.
· Change MPEG Settings: Click to open a menu where you can select a disc template for the selected file format. Click
Customize to define video save settings such as compression and frame rate.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select the output display of your project. VideoStudio supports standard 4:3 and widescreen 16:9 display aspect ratios for videos and menus.

·

Do not convert compliant MPEG files: Select to not re-render MPEG files that are already compliant to

the selected MPEG format.

·

Support X-Disc: Includes Extended disc (XDVD, XVCD and XSVCD) compatible files to your project.

·

Two-pass conversion: Improves the quality of the output video by analyzing the video data first before encoding.

·

Auto fade out first play to menu: Select to automatically crossfade from the first play clip to the menu.

·

Play all clips first before menu: Select to play all videos first, and then display the menu.

·

Auto repeat when playback ends: Select to loop the video after it is done playing back.

· Clip playback: Select whether to play the next clip or go back to the menu after playback ends. This option is disabled when
Auto repeat when playback ends is selected.

Preview Files Manager

Use the Preview Files Manager to free hard drive space occupied by temporary preview files used in your project.

·

Preview files list: Displays VideoStudio project files (VSP) that you created and saved.

·

Delete: Click to remove the temporary files of the selected VideoStudio project file from your computer.

·

Delete All: Click to remove all the temporary files of all VideoStudio project files from your computer.

·

Hard disk: Displays the available free space of the selected hard drive.

Select Device Control

·

Current device: Select the appropriate capture driver from the drop-down list to be used by VideoStudio in communicating with your device.

·

Timecode offset: Specify a value to adjust the discrepancy between the actual playing time of your device and the trimming marks specified in the DV Recording dialog box. If for example you have specified the mark in timecode for capturing and then after the process, the captured start frame is the frame before the actual mark in timecode, you can then set a value of -4 to correct the timing between the device and your capture board.

·

Description: Displays additional information about the current device control driver.

·

Options: Opens a dialog box related to the selected current device control driver. This button is disabled if your current device does not support additional options. (Consult your hardware device's manual for more information.)

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Dialog boxes

Advanced Settings (DV-to-DVD Wizard)

·

Disc format: Displays the format of the currently inserted disc.

·

Delete temp files after burning: Select to delete the temporary files in the working folder after burning.

·

Working folder: Enter or locate a folder for temporary files.

·

Auto add chapter: Select to automatically add chapters based on a specified time, recording date or scenes.

·

Create DVD folders: Select to retain the DVD folder in your hard drive after burning. This option is only available if the project is in DVD format. This also allows you to view the finished DVD title on the computer using a DVD player.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed. Thus, avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Template music volume: Drag the slider to specify the volume level to use for the background music of DVD menus.

·

Drive: Select a disc burner drive.

·

Burning speed: Select the rate on which to burn the disc.

Audio Save Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

Entire project: Creates an audio file containing the whole project.

·

Preview range: Creates an audio file containing only the range you have marked on the Timeline.

·

Play after creating it: Select to play the audio file after the file has been created.

Compression tab

· Format: Click to open the
Audio Format dialog box where you can change the audio characteristics.

·
Attributes: Select from the drop-down list of audio characteristics to use for saving.

Batch Convert

·
Batch Convert List: Displays the video files to be converted. The size, type, date modified and path of the video files are also displayed.

· Add: Opens the
Batch Convert dialog box where you can select the files you want to convert.

·
Remove: Deletes the selected file from the Batch Convert List.

·
Remove All: Deletes all the files in the Batch Convert List.

· Save in folder: Click
Browse to select a folder where to save the converted video files.

·
Save as type: Select to what file format to convert the video files.

·
Convert: Starts the conversion process.

·
Cancel: Closes the dialog box without converting the video files.

· Options: Opens the
Video Save Options dialog box where you can define save and compression settings for the selected file format.

Border/Shadow/Transparency

Border tab

· Transparent text:
Select to create a transparent effect for your text.

· Outer stroke border:
Select to create an outer stroke border for your text.

·
Border width: Specify the thickness of the border.

·
Line color: Click to select a color for the border.

·
Text transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value, the more transparent the text becomes.

·
Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value, the more the border blends with the background.

Shadow tab

·
Shadow type: Select the type of shadow to apply to your text.

·
Intensity: Set intensity of glow shadow.

·
Color: Click to select the color of the shadow.
·
Transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value the more transparent the shadow.
·
Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value the more the shadow blends with the background.

Capture Options

·
Capture audio: Captures audio when capturing from an analog device.
·
Capture to Library: Puts the captured video into the Library.
·
Force to use preview mode: Improves captured video quality when capturing in SVCD or DVD format. This is only available if your analog capture card supports this feature.
·
Capture frame rate: Select what frame rate to use when capturing the video. The higher the frame rate, the smoother the video will be.

Change Capture Plug-in

·
Current capture plug-in: Allows you to choose a capture plug-in for the driver that comes with the capture device installed on your computer. Capture plug-ins are programs that come with Corel VideoStudio. They allow VideoStudio to communicate with your video camera.
·
Description: Displays a brief description of the selected capture plug-in.

Burning Options

· Disc burner:
Specifies the settings for your burning device.
·
Drive: Sets the disc burner to use in recording the video file.
·
Speed: Ses the recording speed to use in burning the video file.
·
Files to include on disc: Allows you to include other files on the disc aside from your video project.
·
Copyright information: Includes the Corel VideoStudio copyright text.
·
Project File: Includes the VideoStudio project file used to make the video.
·
Personal folder: Includes any other folders on the disc.
·
Advanced settings: Lets you adjust more disc burning settings.
·
Test before recording: Checks (it does not actually burn yet) the CD/DVD burning capability of the drive and disc. This will help you check if the system speed is enough to send data to the CD/DVD writing device at a specified recording speed. After the simulated burning, actual burning then starts. Clear to burn the disc without performing a test.

·

Buffer underrun protection: Select to use this technology when burning your video file. This technology helps eliminate the buffer underrun problem. Availability of this technology depends on the disc burner you use.

·

Restart DVD+RW background format: Formats the DVD+RW before recording. Enabling this option will prolong the recording process but will ensure a successful burn. This is recommended when you are using the DVD+RW disc for the first time.

Note: By default, this option is not selected to ensure maximum compatibility.

Preferences: File menu

General tab

· Undo: Allows you to define the maximum number of times you can take back an action. Values range from
1-99.

·

Relink checking: Automatically performs a crosscheck between the clips in the project and their associated source files, allowing you to relink the source files to the clips. This is important when the file in the Library is moved to another folder location.

·

Show startup screen: Select to open the startup screen every time you launch VideoStudio. This startup screen allows you to choose either to open DV-to-DVD Wizard, VideoStudio Movie Wizard, or VideoStudio Editor.

·

Show MPEG Optimizer dialog box: Displays the optimal segment settings of a project to be rendered.

·

Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save your finished projects and captured clips.

· Clip display mode: Determines the manner to which your video clip will be presented on the Timeline. Select Thumbnail only if you want your clip to be represented by a corresponding thumbnail on the Timeline. Select File name only if you want your clip to be represented by its file name on the Timeline. Or you can select
Thumbnail and file name to have your clip represented by its corresponding thumbnail and file name.

·

Media Library Animation: Select to enable animation of media in library.

·

Show message when inserting first video clip into Timeline: Enables VideoStudio to prompt a message when it detects that an inserted video clip's properties do not match with the current project settings.

Note: When you capture or insert your first video clip into the project, VideoStudio automatically checks the properties of the clip and your project. If properties such as file format, frame size, etc. are not identical, VideoStudio displays a message and gives you the option to have the project settings automatically adjusted to match the clip's properties. Changing the project settings allows VideoStudio to perform SmartRender.

· Automatically save project every:
Select and specify the time interval when VideoStudio automatically saves a currently active project.

· Playback method: Allows you to choose a method for previewing your projects. Instant Playback allows you to quickly preview changes in your project without the need to create a temporary preview file, however, playback may be jerky depending on your computer resources.

High Quality Playback renders your project as a temporary preview file then plays this preview file. Playback is smoother in High Quality Playback mode, but rendering your project for the first time in this

mode may take a long time to complete depending on the size of your project and computer resources.
· In High Quality Playback mode, VideoStudio uses **SmartRender**
technology which renders only the changes you made such as transitions, titles and effects, and eliminates re-rendering the entire project. SmartRender saves time when generating previews.
·
Instant Playback target: Selects where you want to preview your project. If you have a dual head display card, you can play back your project on both the Preview Window and an external display device.
·
Background color: Specifies the background color to use for clips.
·
Display title safe area on Preview Window: Select to show the title safe area in the Preview Window when creating titles. The title safe area is a rectangular box on the Preview Window. Make sure that your text is within the title safe area to ensure that your entire text is properly displayed on the TV screen.
·
Display DV timecode on Preview Window: Displays the timecode of a DV video on the Preview Window when it is being played back. Your display card must be VMR (Video Mixing Renderer) compatible for the DV timecode to be displayed properly.
·
Display track hint on Preview Window: Select to display track information of the different overlay tracks when playback is stopped.
Edit tab
· **Apply color filter:**
Select to configure VideoStudio to confine its color palette to those visible in the NTSC or PAL filter color space to make sure that all the colors are valid. Clear if for monitor display only.
· Resampling quality:
Specifies the quality of effects and clips during editing. It is recommended to use a lower resampling quality like Good to yield the most efficient editing performance.
·
Use Fit-to-Screen as default size in Overlay Track: Select this option to set default size to Fit-to-Screen for clips in Overlay Track.
·
Default inserted image/color clip duration: Specifies the default clip length for all image clips and colors that will be added in your video project. Unit of time for the duration is in seconds.
· Image resampling option:
Select a method for your image resampling.
·
Apply anti-flickering filter in image clips: Reduces the flickering that happens when using a television to view image clips.
·
Cache image clips in memory: Allows you to use the cache in handling large image files for a more efficient editing.
· Default audio fade-in/out duration:
Specifies the default duration for fading in and fading out of a video clip's audio. Value entered here will be the amount of time it will take for the volume to reach the normal level for fading in or the base for fading out.
· Enable audio while scrubbing:
Enables audio to be previewed while scrubbing on the timeline.
·
Apply audio cross-fade automatically: Allows you to automatically apply a cross-fade audio transition with two overlapping audio.
·

Default transition effect duration: Specifies duration of the transition effect applied to all clips in your video project, in seconds.
· Automatically add transition effect:
Select to apply your chosen transition effect when video and image clips overlap each other.
·
Default transition effect: Allows you to choose the default transition effect to be applied to your project.
Capture tab
· Press OK to capture: Allows you to press
OK to start capturing.
·
Record directly from CD: Allows you to record an audio track directly from a CD.
·
Captured still image save format: Specifies the format to which your captured still image file will be saved as.
·
Image quality: Determines the display quality of the captured image. The higher the quality, the bigger the file.
·
Image capture deinterlace: Enables constant image resolution when downloading files, as opposed to the progressive image resolution available with interlaced images.
·
Stop DV tape when capturing stops: Enables the DV camcorder to automatically stop the tape playback after a video capture process is complete.
· Show drop frame information:
Select to display how many frames were dropped during video capture.
·
Show Recover DVB-T Video warning before capturing: Select to show warning to recover DVB-T Video for a smooth capture.
Preview tab
·
Specify additional folders for preview files: Indicates which folder Corel VideoStudio can use to save preview files. The folder shown is the folder specified in the SET TEMP statement of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. Specify other folders if you have additional drives or a partitioned drive. If you only have one drive, leave the other boxes empty.
·
Limit hard disk usage to: Specifies how much memory you want to allocate just for the Corel VideoStudio's program. If you are only using Corel VideoStudio and want to optimize the performance, select the maximum amount possible. If you are using other programs in the background, you may want to limit this to half of the maximum file size. If left cleared, Corel VideoStudio uses your systems memory management to control the use and distribution of memory.
Smart Proxy
·
Enable Smart Proxy: Automatically creates proxy files whenever a video source file is inserted into the Timeline.
·
Create proxy when video size is (or above): Allows you to set the condition as to when proxy files will be generated. If the frame size of a video source file is the same or is higher than the chosen frame size here, a proxy file will be created for the video file.
·
Proxy folder: Sets the folder location to store proxy files.
·

Auto generate proxy template: Automatically generates proxy files with predefined settings.
· Video proxy options: Indicate the settings to be used in generating proxy files. To change the proxy file format or other settings, click Template to choose a template that already contains predefined settings, or click
Options to tweak detailed settings.
UI Layout
· Allows you to change the layout of Corel VideoStudio's user interface through four preset options.

Preferences (Create Disc)

General tab
·
VCD player compliant: Corel VideoStudio uses the VCD 2.0 format when creating VCDs. For navigation menus with background music, Corel VideoStudio uses a format that requires "variable-bit-rate (VBR)" decoding. However, some VCD players do not support VBR decoding and therefore VCDs created in Corel VideoStudio will not play correctly in these players. Select this option to make sure that the VCD created will play in these players.
·
Anti-flicker filter: Select to apply the anti-flickering filter to the menu pages. The anti-flickering filter reduces the "flickering" that happens when using a television (interlaced display) to view the menu pages. However, this does not help when the menu page is viewed on progressive scan devices such as computer monitors or projectors.
· Resume all confirmation dialog boxes:
Select to have the confirmation boxes appear even after the "Do not show again" option is selected.
·
TV system: Select the type of your TV system (NTSC or PAL).
·
Max 30MB menus for set-top DVD+VR recorder: Select to set the maximum file size for DVD menus to 30MB to make the DVD compatible with set-top DVD (DVD-VR) recorders.
·
Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save to your finished projects and captured clips.
Advanced tab
·
Create index file for MPEG seeking performance: Improves real-time preview result using the Jog Slider. This option is specific for MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 files only.
·
NTSC/PAL safe color: Uses video friendly colors to ensure the display quality of your menus when viewed on any TV system. This helps you avoid the flickering problem on videos when viewed on screen.
·
TV safe area: Sets a margin (represented by a red border) in the Preview Window of the Setup Menu page. If you set the TV safe area at 10%, the remaining 90% will be your working area. Make sure that all your menu objects are within the working area so that they can be properly viewed on screen.

Project Properties

·
Project file information: Displays various information about the project file such as file size and duration.
·
Project template properties: Displays the video file format and other attributes used by the project.
· Edit file format: Select the video format you are going to use to create your final movie. Click Edit to

open the
Project Options dialog box where you can customize compression and audio settings for the selected file format.

Project Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

TV Standard: Select the TV Standard supported in your location.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Audio Channels: Choose from Stereo or Multi-Channel Surround Sound.

General tab

·

Data track: Specify whether to create the video file or the video track only or include the audio track.

·

Frame rate: Specify the frame rate to use for the resulting video file.

·

Frame type: Select between saving your work as field-based or frame-based video files. Field-based video stores video data as two distinct fields of information for each frame. If your video is only for computer playback, you should save your work as frame-based.

·

Frame size: Select the size of the frame or define your own for the video file.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed thus avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

Compression tab

· Media Type:
Allows you to choose the compression format of your project.
· Video Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.
· Audio Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.

Project Settings (Create Disc)

·

MPEG properties for file conversion: Displays detailed information about the selected video setting.
· Change MPEG Settings: Click to open a menu where you can select a disc template for the selected file format. Click
Customize to define video save settings such as compression and frame rate.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select the output display of your project. VideoStudio supports standard 4:3 and widescreen 16:9 display aspect ratios for videos and menus.

·

Do not convert compliant MPEG files: Select to not re-render MPEG files that are already compliant to

the selected MPEG format.

·

Support X-Disc: Includes Extended disc (XDVD, XVCD and XSVCD) compatible files to your project.

·

Two-pass conversion: Improves the quality of the output video by analyzing the video data first before encoding.

·

Auto fade out first play to menu: Select to automatically crossfade from the first play clip to the menu.

·

Play all clips first before menu: Select to play all videos first, and then display the menu.

·

Auto repeat when playback ends: Select to loop the video after it is done playing back.

· Clip playback: Select whether to play the next clip or go back to the menu after playback ends. This option is disabled when
Auto repeat when playback ends is selected.

Preview Files Manager

Use the Preview Files Manager to free hard drive space occupied by temporary preview files used in your project.

·

Preview files list: Displays VideoStudio project files (VSP) that you created and saved.

·

Delete: Click to remove the temporary files of the selected VideoStudio project file from your computer.

·

Delete All: Click to remove all the temporary files of all VideoStudio project files from your computer.

·

Hard disk: Displays the available free space of the selected hard drive.

Select Device Control

·

Current device: Select the appropriate capture driver from the drop-down list to be used by VideoStudio in communicating with your device.

·

Timecode offset: Specify a value to adjust the discrepancy between the actual playing time of your device and the trimming marks specified in the DV Recording dialog box. If for example you have specified the mark in timecode for capturing and then after the process, the captured start frame is the frame before the actual mark in timecode, you can then set a value of -4 to correct the timing between the device and your capture board.

·

Description: Displays additional information about the current device control driver.

·

Options: Opens a dialog box related to the selected current device control driver. This button is disabled if your current device does not support additional options. (Consult your hardware device's manual for more information.)

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Dialog boxes

Advanced Settings (DV-to-DVD Wizard)

·

Disc format: Displays the format of the currently inserted disc.

·

Delete temp files after burning: Select to delete the temporary files in the working folder after burning.

·

Working folder: Enter or locate a folder for temporary files.

·

Auto add chapter: Select to automatically add chapters based on a specified time, recording date or scenes.

·

Create DVD folders: Select to retain the DVD folder in your hard drive after burning. This option is only available if the project is in DVD format. This also allows you to view the finished DVD title on the computer using a DVD player.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed. Thus, avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Template music volume: Drag the slider to specify the volume level to use for the background music of DVD menus.

·

Drive: Select a disc burner drive.

·

Burning speed: Select the rate on which to burn the disc.

Audio Save Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

Entire project: Creates an audio file containing the whole project.

·

Preview range: Creates an audio file containing only the range you have marked on the Timeline.

·

Play after creating it: Select to play the audio file after the file has been created.

Compression tab

· Format: Click to open the
Audio Format dialog box where you can change the audio characteristics.

·
Attributes: Select from the drop-down list of audio characteristics to use for saving.

Batch Convert

·
Batch Convert List: Displays the video files to be converted. The size, type, date modified and path of the video files are also displayed.

· Add: Opens the
Batch Convert dialog box where you can select the files you want to convert.

·
Remove: Deletes the selected file from the Batch Convert List.

·
Remove All: Deletes all the files in the Batch Convert List.

· Save in folder: Click
Browse to select a folder where to save the converted video files.

·
Save as type: Select to what file format to convert the video files.

·
Convert: Starts the conversion process.

·
Cancel: Closes the dialog box without converting the video files.

· Options: Opens the
Video Save Options dialog box where you can define save and compression settings for the selected file format.

Border/Shadow/Transparency

Border tab

· Transparent text:
Select to create a transparent effect for your text.

· Outer stroke border:
Select to create an outer stroke border for your text.

·
Border width: Specify the thickness of the border.

·
Line color: Click to select a color for the border.

·
Text transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value, the more transparent the text becomes.

·
Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value, the more the border blends with the background.

Shadow tab

·
Shadow type: Select the type of shadow to apply to your text.

·
Intensity: Set intensity of glow shadow.

·

Color: Click to select the color of the shadow.

·

Transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value the more transparent the shadow.

·

Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value the more the shadow blends with the background.

Capture Options

·

Capture audio: Captures audio when capturing from an analog device.

·

Capture to Library: Puts the captured video into the Library.

·

Force to use preview mode: Improves captured video quality when capturing in SVCD or DVD format. This is only available if your analog capture card supports this feature.

·

Capture frame rate: Select what frame rate to use when capturing the video. The higher the frame rate, the smoother the video will be.

Change Capture Plug-in

·

Current capture plug-in: Allows you to choose a capture plug-in for the driver that comes with the capture device installed on your computer. Capture plug-ins are programs that come with Corel VideoStudio. They allow VideoStudio to communicate with your video camera.

·

Description: Displays a brief description of the selected capture plug-in.

Burning Options

· Disc burner:

Specifies the settings for your burning device.

·

Drive: Sets the disc burner to use in recording the video file.

·

Speed: Ses the recording speed to use in burning the video file.

·

Files to include on disc: Allows you to include other files on the disc aside from your video project.

·

Copyright information: Includes the Corel VideoStudio copyright text.

·

Project File: Includes the VideoStudio project file used to make the video.

·

Personal folder: Includes any other folders on the disc.

·

Advanced settings: Lets you adjust more disc burning settings.

·

Test before recording: Checks (it does not actually burn yet) the CD/DVD burning capability of the drive and disc. This will help you check if the system speed is enough to send data to the CD/DVD writing device at a specified recording speed. After the simulated burning, actual burning then starts. Clear to burn the disc without performing a test.

·

Buffer underrun protection: Select to use this technology when burning your video file. This technology helps eliminate the buffer underrun problem. Availability of this technology depends on the disc burner you use.

·

Restart DVD+RW background format: Formats the DVD+RW before recording. Enabling this option will prolong the recording process but will ensure a successful burn. This is recommended when you are using the DVD+RW disc for the first time.

Note: By default, this option is not selected to ensure maximum compatibility.

Preferences: File menu

General tab

· Undo: Allows you to define the maximum number of times you can take back an action. Values range from
1-99.

·

Relink checking: Automatically performs a crosscheck between the clips in the project and their associated source files, allowing you to relink the source files to the clips. This is important when the file in the Library is moved to another folder location.

·

Show startup screen: Select to open the startup screen every time you launch VideoStudio. This startup screen allows you to choose either to open DV-to-DVD Wizard, VideoStudio Movie Wizard, or VideoStudio Editor.

·

Show MPEG Optimizer dialog box: Displays the optimal segment settings of a project to be rendered.

·

Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save your finished projects and captured clips.

· Clip display mode: Determines the manner to which your video clip will be presented on the Timeline. Select Thumbnail only if you want your clip to be represented by a corresponding thumbnail on the Timeline. Select File name only if you want your clip to be represented by its file name on the Timeline. Or you can select
Thumbnail and file name to have your clip represented by its corresponding thumbnail and file name.

·

Media Library Animation: Select to enable animation of media in library.

·

Show message when inserting first video clip into Timeline: Enables VideoStudio to prompt a message when it detects that an inserted video clip's properties do not match with the current project settings.

Note: When you capture or insert your first video clip into the project, VideoStudio automatically checks the properties of the clip and your project. If properties such as file format, frame size, etc. are not identical, VideoStudio displays a message and gives you the option to have the project settings automatically adjusted to match the clip's properties. Changing the project settings allows VideoStudio to perform SmartRender.

· Automatically save project every:
Select and specify the time interval when VideoStudio automatically saves a currently active project.

· Playback method: Allows you to choose a method for previewing your projects. Instant Playback allows you to quickly preview changes in your project without the need to create a temporary preview file, however, playback may be jerky depending on your computer resources.

High Quality Playback renders your project as a temporary preview file then plays this preview file. Playback is smoother in High Quality Playback mode, but rendering your project for the first time in this

mode may take a long time to complete depending on the size of your project and computer resources.
· In High Quality Playback mode, VideoStudio uses **SmartRender**
technology which renders only the changes you made such as transitions, titles and effects, and eliminates re-rendering the entire project. SmartRender saves time when generating previews.
·
Instant Playback target: Selects where you want to preview your project. If you have a dual head display card, you can play back your project on both the Preview Window and an external display device.
·
Background color: Specifies the background color to use for clips.
·
Display title safe area on Preview Window: Select to show the title safe area in the Preview Window when creating titles. The title safe area is a rectangular box on the Preview Window. Make sure that your text is within the title safe area to ensure that your entire text is properly displayed on the TV screen.
·
Display DV timecode on Preview Window: Displays the timecode of a DV video on the Preview Window when it is being played back. Your display card must be VMR (Video Mixing Renderer) compatible for the DV timecode to be displayed properly.
·
Display track hint on Preview Window: Select to display track information of the different overlay tracks when playback is stopped.
Edit tab
· **Apply color filter:**
Select to configure VideoStudio to confine its color palette to those visible in the NTSC or PAL filter color space to make sure that all the colors are valid. Clear if for monitor display only.
· Resampling quality:
Specifies the quality of effects and clips during editing. It is recommended to use a lower resampling quality like Good to yield the most efficient editing performance.
·
Use Fit-to-Screen as default size in Overlay Track: Select this option to set default size to Fit-to-Screen for clips in Overlay Track.
·
Default inserted image/color clip duration: Specifies the default clip length for all image clips and colors that will be added in your video project. Unit of time for the duration is in seconds.
· Image resampling option:
Select a method for your image resampling.
·
Apply anti-flickering filter in image clips: Reduces the flickering that happens when using a television to view image clips.
·
Cache image clips in memory: Allows you to use the cache in handling large image files for a more efficient editing.
· Default audio fade-in/out duration:
Specifies the default duration for fading in and fading out of a video clip's audio. Value entered here will be the amount of time it will take for the volume to reach the normal level for fading in or the base for fading out.
· Enable audio while scrubbing:
Enables audio to be previewed while scrubbing on the timeline.
·
Apply audio cross-fade automatically: Allows you to automatically apply a cross-fade audio transition with two overlapping audio.
·

Default transition effect duration: Specifies duration of the transition effect applied to all clips in your video project, in seconds.

· Automatically add transition effect:

Select to apply your chosen transition effect when video and image clips overlap each other.

·

Default transition effect: Allows you to choose the default transition effect to be applied to your project.

Capture tab

· Press OK to capture: Allows you to press

OK to start capturing.

·

Record directly from CD: Allows you to record an audio track directly from a CD.

·

Captured still image save format: Specifies the format to which your captured still image file will be saved as.

·

Image quality: Determines the display quality of the captured image. The higher the quality, the bigger the file.

·

Image capture deinterlace: Enables constant image resolution when downloading files, as opposed to the progressive image resolution available with interlaced images.

·

Stop DV tape when capturing stops: Enables the DV camcorder to automatically stop the tape playback after a video capture process is complete.

· Show drop frame information:

Select to display how many frames were dropped during video capture.

·

Show Recover DVB-T Video warning before capturing: Select to show warning to recover DVB-T Video for a smooth capture.

Preview tab

·

Specify additional folders for preview files: Indicates which folder Corel VideoStudio can use to save preview files. The folder shown is the folder specified in the SET TEMP statement of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. Specify other folders if you have additional drives or a partitioned drive. If you only have one drive, leave the other boxes empty.

·

Limit hard disk usage to: Specifies how much memory you want to allocate just for the Corel VideoStudio's program. If you are only using Corel VideoStudio and want to optimize the performance, select the maximum amount possible. If you are using other programs in the background, you may want to limit this to half of the maximum file size. If left cleared, Corel VideoStudio uses your systems memory management to control the use and distribution of memory.

Smart Proxy

·

Enable Smart Proxy: Automatically creates proxy files whenever a video source file is inserted into the Timeline.

·

Create proxy when video size is (or above): Allows you to set the condition as to when proxy files will be generated. If the frame size of a video source file is the same or is higher than the chosen frame size here, a proxy file will be created for the video file.

·

Proxy folder: Sets the folder location to store proxy files.

·

Auto generate proxy template: Automatically generates proxy files with predefined settings.
· Video proxy options: Indicate the settings to be used in generating proxy files. To change the proxy file format or other settings, click Template to choose a template that already contains predefined settings, or click
Options to tweak detailed settings.
UI Layout
· Allows you to change the layout of Corel VideoStudio's user interface through four preset options.

Preferences (Create Disc)

General tab
·
VCD player compliant: Corel VideoStudio uses the VCD 2.0 format when creating VCDs. For navigation menus with background music, Corel VideoStudio uses a format that requires "variable-bit-rate (VBR)" decoding. However, some VCD players do not support VBR decoding and therefore VCDs created in Corel VideoStudio will not play correctly in these players. Select this option to make sure that the VCD created will play in these players.
·
Anti-flicker filter: Select to apply the anti-flickering filter to the menu pages. The anti-flickering filter reduces the "flickering" that happens when using a television (interlaced display) to view the menu pages. However, this does not help when the menu page is viewed on progressive scan devices such as computer monitors or projectors.
· Resume all confirmation dialog boxes:
Select to have the confirmation boxes appear even after the "Do not show again" option is selected.
·
TV system: Select the type of your TV system (NTSC or PAL).
·
Max 30MB menus for set-top DVD+VR recorder: Select to set the maximum file size for DVD menus to 30MB to make the DVD compatible with set-top DVD (DVD-VR) recorders.
·
Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save to your finished projects and captured clips.
Advanced tab
·
Create index file for MPEG seeking performance: Improves real-time preview result using the Jog Slider. This option is specific for MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 files only.
·
NTSC/PAL safe color: Uses video friendly colors to ensure the display quality of your menus when viewed on any TV system. This helps you avoid the flickering problem on videos when viewed on screen.
·
TV safe area: Sets a margin (represented by a red border) in the Preview Window of the Setup Menu page. If you set the TV safe area at 10%, the remaining 90% will be your working area. Make sure that all your menu objects are within the working area so that they can be properly viewed on screen.

Project Properties

·
Project file information: Displays various information about the project file such as file size and duration.
·
Project template properties: Displays the video file format and other attributes used by the project.
· Edit file format: Select the video format you are going to use to create your final movie. Click Edit to

open the
Project Options dialog box where you can customize compression and audio settings for the selected file format.

Project Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

TV Standard: Select the TV Standard supported in your location.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Audio Channels: Choose from Stereo or Multi-Channel Surround Sound.

General tab

·

Data track: Specify whether to create the video file or the video track only or include the audio track.

·

Frame rate: Specify the frame rate to use for the resulting video file.

·

Frame type: Select between saving your work as field-based or frame-based video files. Field-based video stores video data as two distinct fields of information for each frame. If your video is only for computer playback, you should save your work as frame-based.

·

Frame size: Select the size of the frame or define your own for the video file.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed thus avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

Compression tab

· Media Type:
Allows you to choose the compression format of your project.
· Video Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.
· Audio Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.

Project Settings (Create Disc)

·

MPEG properties for file conversion: Displays detailed information about the selected video setting.
· Change MPEG Settings: Click to open a menu where you can select a disc template for the selected file format. Click
Customize to define video save settings such as compression and frame rate.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select the output display of your project. VideoStudio supports standard 4:3 and widescreen 16:9 display aspect ratios for videos and menus.

·

Do not convert compliant MPEG files: Select to not re-render MPEG files that are already compliant to

the selected MPEG format.

·

Support X-Disc: Includes Extended disc (XDVD, XVCD and XSVCD) compatible files to your project.

·

Two-pass conversion: Improves the quality of the output video by analyzing the video data first before encoding.

·

Auto fade out first play to menu: Select to automatically crossfade from the first play clip to the menu.

·

Play all clips first before menu: Select to play all videos first, and then display the menu.

·

Auto repeat when playback ends: Select to loop the video after it is done playing back.

· Clip playback: Select whether to play the next clip or go back to the menu after playback ends. This option is disabled when
Auto repeat when playback ends is selected.

Preview Files Manager

Use the Preview Files Manager to free hard drive space occupied by temporary preview files used in your project.

·

Preview files list: Displays VideoStudio project files (VSP) that you created and saved.

·

Delete: Click to remove the temporary files of the selected VideoStudio project file from your computer.

·

Delete All: Click to remove all the temporary files of all VideoStudio project files from your computer.

·

Hard disk: Displays the available free space of the selected hard drive.

Select Device Control

·

Current device: Select the appropriate capture driver from the drop-down list to be used by VideoStudio in communicating with your device.

·

Timecode offset: Specify a value to adjust the discrepancy between the actual playing time of your device and the trimming marks specified in the DV Recording dialog box. If for example you have specified the mark in timecode for capturing and then after the process, the captured start frame is the frame before the actual mark in timecode, you can then set a value of -4 to correct the timing between the device and your capture board.

·

Description: Displays additional information about the current device control driver.

·

Options: Opens a dialog box related to the selected current device control driver. This button is disabled if your current device does not support additional options. (Consult your hardware device's manual for more information.)

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Dialog boxes

Advanced Settings (DV-to-DVD Wizard)

·

Disc format: Displays the format of the currently inserted disc.

·

Delete temp files after burning: Select to delete the temporary files in the working folder after burning.

·

Working folder: Enter or locate a folder for temporary files.

·

Auto add chapter: Select to automatically add chapters based on a specified time, recording date or scenes.

·

Create DVD folders: Select to retain the DVD folder in your hard drive after burning. This option is only available if the project is in DVD format. This also allows you to view the finished DVD title on the computer using a DVD player.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed. Thus, avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Template music volume: Drag the slider to specify the volume level to use for the background music of DVD menus.

·

Drive: Select a disc burner drive.

·

Burning speed: Select the rate on which to burn the disc.

Audio Save Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

Entire project: Creates an audio file containing the whole project.

·

Preview range: Creates an audio file containing only the range you have marked on the Timeline.

·

Play after creating it: Select to play the audio file after the file has been created.

Compression tab

· Format: Click to open the
Audio Format dialog box where you can change the audio characteristics.

·
Attributes: Select from the drop-down list of audio characteristics to use for saving.

Batch Convert

·
Batch Convert List: Displays the video files to be converted. The size, type, date modified and path of the video files are also displayed.

· Add: Opens the
Batch Convert dialog box where you can select the files you want to convert.

·
Remove: Deletes the selected file from the Batch Convert List.

·
Remove All: Deletes all the files in the Batch Convert List.

· Save in folder: Click
Browse to select a folder where to save the converted video files.

·
Save as type: Select to what file format to convert the video files.

·
Convert: Starts the conversion process.

·
Cancel: Closes the dialog box without converting the video files.

· Options: Opens the
Video Save Options dialog box where you can define save and compression settings for the selected file format.

Border/Shadow/Transparency

Border tab

· Transparent text:
Select to create a transparent effect for your text.

· Outer stroke border:
Select to create an outer stroke border for your text.

·
Border width: Specify the thickness of the border.

·
Line color: Click to select a color for the border.

·
Text transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value, the more transparent the text becomes.

·
Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value, the more the border blends with the background.

Shadow tab

·
Shadow type: Select the type of shadow to apply to your text.

·
Intensity: Set intensity of glow shadow.

·

Color: Click to select the color of the shadow.

·

Transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value the more transparent the shadow.

·

Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value the more the shadow blends with the background.

Capture Options

·

Capture audio: Captures audio when capturing from an analog device.

·

Capture to Library: Puts the captured video into the Library.

·

Force to use preview mode: Improves captured video quality when capturing in SVCD or DVD format. This is only available if your analog capture card supports this feature.

·

Capture frame rate: Select what frame rate to use when capturing the video. The higher the frame rate, the smoother the video will be.

Change Capture Plug-in

·

Current capture plug-in: Allows you to choose a capture plug-in for the driver that comes with the capture device installed on your computer. Capture plug-ins are programs that come with Corel VideoStudio. They allow VideoStudio to communicate with your video camera.

·

Description: Displays a brief description of the selected capture plug-in.

Burning Options

· Disc burner:

Specifies the settings for your burning device.

·

Drive: Sets the disc burner to use in recording the video file.

·

Speed: Ses the recording speed to use in burning the video file.

·

Files to include on disc: Allows you to include other files on the disc aside from your video project.

·

Copyright information: Includes the Corel VideoStudio copyright text.

·

Project File: Includes the VideoStudio project file used to make the video.

·

Personal folder: Includes any other folders on the disc.

·

Advanced settings: Lets you adjust more disc burning settings.

·

Test before recording: Checks (it does not actually burn yet) the CD/DVD burning capability of the drive and disc. This will help you check if the system speed is enough to send data to the CD/DVD writing device at a specified recording speed. After the simulated burning, actual burning then starts. Clear to burn the disc without performing a test.

·

Buffer underrun protection: Select to use this technology when burning your video file. This technology helps eliminate the buffer underrun problem. Availability of this technology depends on the disc burner you use.

·

Restart DVD+RW background format: Formats the DVD+RW before recording. Enabling this option will prolong the recording process but will ensure a successful burn. This is recommended when you are using the DVD+RW disc for the first time.

Note: By default, this option is not selected to ensure maximum compatibility.

Preferences: File menu

General tab

· Undo: Allows you to define the maximum number of times you can take back an action. Values range from
1-99.

·

Relink checking: Automatically performs a crosscheck between the clips in the project and their associated source files, allowing you to relink the source files to the clips. This is important when the file in the Library is moved to another folder location.

·

Show startup screen: Select to open the startup screen every time you launch VideoStudio. This startup screen allows you to choose either to open DV-to-DVD Wizard, VideoStudio Movie Wizard, or VideoStudio Editor.

·

Show MPEG Optimizer dialog box: Displays the optimal segment settings of a project to be rendered.

·

Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save your finished projects and captured clips.

· Clip display mode: Determines the manner to which your video clip will be presented on the Timeline. Select Thumbnail only if you want your clip to be represented by a corresponding thumbnail on the Timeline. Select File name only if you want your clip to be represented by its file name on the Timeline. Or you can select
Thumbnail and file name to have your clip represented by its corresponding thumbnail and file name.

·

Media Library Animation: Select to enable animation of media in library.

·

Show message when inserting first video clip into Timeline: Enables VideoStudio to prompt a message when it detects that an inserted video clip's properties do not match with the current project settings.

Note: When you capture or insert your first video clip into the project, VideoStudio automatically checks the properties of the clip and your project. If properties such as file format, frame size, etc. are not identical, VideoStudio displays a message and gives you the option to have the project settings automatically adjusted to match the clip's properties. Changing the project settings allows VideoStudio to perform SmartRender.

· Automatically save project every:
Select and specify the time interval when VideoStudio automatically saves a currently active project.

· Playback method: Allows you to choose a method for previewing your projects. Instant Playback allows you to quickly preview changes in your project without the need to create a temporary preview file, however, playback may be jerky depending on your computer resources.

High Quality Playback renders your project as a temporary preview file then plays this preview file. Playback is smoother in High Quality Playback mode, but rendering your project for the first time in this

mode may take a long time to complete depending on the size of your project and computer resources.
· In High Quality Playback mode, VideoStudio uses **SmartRender**
technology which renders only the changes you made such as transitions, titles and effects, and eliminates re-rendering the entire project. SmartRender saves time when generating previews.
·
Instant Playback target: Selects where you want to preview your project. If you have a dual head display card, you can play back your project on both the Preview Window and an external display device.
·
Background color: Specifies the background color to use for clips.
·
Display title safe area on Preview Window: Select to show the title safe area in the Preview Window when creating titles. The title safe area is a rectangular box on the Preview Window. Make sure that your text is within the title safe area to ensure that your entire text is properly displayed on the TV screen.
·
Display DV timecode on Preview Window: Displays the timecode of a DV video on the Preview Window when it is being played back. Your display card must be VMR (Video Mixing Renderer) compatible for the DV timecode to be displayed properly.
·
Display track hint on Preview Window: Select to display track information of the different overlay tracks when playback is stopped.
Edit tab
· **Apply color filter:**
Select to configure VideoStudio to confine its color palette to those visible in the NTSC or PAL filter color space to make sure that all the colors are valid. Clear if for monitor display only.
· Resampling quality:
Specifies the quality of effects and clips during editing. It is recommended to use a lower resampling quality like Good to yield the most efficient editing performance.
·
Use Fit-to-Screen as default size in Overlay Track: Select this option to set default size to Fit-to-Screen for clips in Overlay Track.
·
Default inserted image/color clip duration: Specifies the default clip length for all image clips and colors that will be added in your video project. Unit of time for the duration is in seconds.
· Image resampling option:
Select a method for your image resampling.
·
Apply anti-flickering filter in image clips: Reduces the flickering that happens when using a television to view image clips.
·
Cache image clips in memory: Allows you to use the cache in handling large image files for a more efficient editing.
· Default audio fade-in/out duration:
Specifies the default duration for fading in and fading out of a video clip's audio. Value entered here will be the amount of time it will take for the volume to reach the normal level for fading in or the base for fading out.
· Enable audio while scrubbing:
Enables audio to be previewed while scrubbing on the timeline.
·
Apply audio cross-fade automatically: Allows you to automatically apply a cross-fade audio transition with two overlapping audio.
·

Default transition effect duration: Specifies duration of the transition effect applied to all clips in your video project, in seconds.
· Automatically add transition effect:
Select to apply your chosen transition effect when video and image clips overlap each other.
·
Default transition effect: Allows you to choose the default transition effect to be applied to your project.
Capture tab
· Press OK to capture: Allows you to press
OK to start capturing.
·
Record directly from CD: Allows you to record an audio track directly from a CD.
·
Captured still image save format: Specifies the format to which your captured still image file will be saved as.
·
Image quality: Determines the display quality of the captured image. The higher the quality, the bigger the file.
·
Image capture deinterlace: Enables constant image resolution when downloading files, as opposed to the progressive image resolution available with interlaced images.
·
Stop DV tape when capturing stops: Enables the DV camcorder to automatically stop the tape playback after a video capture process is complete.
· Show drop frame information:
Select to display how many frames were dropped during video capture.
·
Show Recover DVB-T Video warning before capturing: Select to show warning to recover DVB-T Video for a smooth capture.
Preview tab
·
Specify additional folders for preview files: Indicates which folder Corel VideoStudio can use to save preview files. The folder shown is the folder specified in the SET TEMP statement of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. Specify other folders if you have additional drives or a partitioned drive. If you only have one drive, leave the other boxes empty.
·
Limit hard disk usage to: Specifies how much memory you want to allocate just for the Corel VideoStudio's program. If you are only using Corel VideoStudio and want to optimize the performance, select the maximum amount possible. If you are using other programs in the background, you may want to limit this to half of the maximum file size. If left cleared, Corel VideoStudio uses your systems memory management to control the use and distribution of memory.
Smart Proxy
·
Enable Smart Proxy: Automatically creates proxy files whenever a video source file is inserted into the Timeline.
·
Create proxy when video size is (or above): Allows you to set the condition as to when proxy files will be generated. If the frame size of a video source file is the same or is higher than the chosen frame size here, a proxy file will be created for the video file.
·
Proxy folder: Sets the folder location to store proxy files.
·

Auto generate proxy template: Automatically generates proxy files with predefined settings.
· Video proxy options: Indicate the settings to be used in generating proxy files. To change the proxy file format or other settings, click Template to choose a template that already contains predefined settings, or click
Options to tweak detailed settings.
UI Layout
· Allows you to change the layout of Corel VideoStudio's user interface through four preset options.

Preferences (Create Disc)

General tab
·
VCD player compliant: Corel VideoStudio uses the VCD 2.0 format when creating VCDs. For navigation menus with background music, Corel VideoStudio uses a format that requires "variable-bit-rate (VBR)" decoding. However, some VCD players do not support VBR decoding and therefore VCDs created in Corel VideoStudio will not play correctly in these players. Select this option to make sure that the VCD created will play in these players.
·
Anti-flicker filter: Select to apply the anti-flickering filter to the menu pages. The anti-flickering filter reduces the "flickering" that happens when using a television (interlaced display) to view the menu pages. However, this does not help when the menu page is viewed on progressive scan devices such as computer monitors or projectors.
· Resume all confirmation dialog boxes:
Select to have the confirmation boxes appear even after the "Do not show again" option is selected.
·
TV system: Select the type of your TV system (NTSC or PAL).
·
Max 30MB menus for set-top DVD+VR recorder: Select to set the maximum file size for DVD menus to 30MB to make the DVD compatible with set-top DVD (DVD-VR) recorders.
·
Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save to your finished projects and captured clips.
Advanced tab
·
Create index file for MPEG seeking performance: Improves real-time preview result using the Jog Slider. This option is specific for MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 files only.
·
NTSC/PAL safe color: Uses video friendly colors to ensure the display quality of your menus when viewed on any TV system. This helps you avoid the flickering problem on videos when viewed on screen.
·
TV safe area: Sets a margin (represented by a red border) in the Preview Window of the Setup Menu page. If you set the TV safe area at 10%, the remaining 90% will be your working area. Make sure that all your menu objects are within the working area so that they can be properly viewed on screen.

Project Properties

·
Project file information: Displays various information about the project file such as file size and duration.
·
Project template properties: Displays the video file format and other attributes used by the project.
· Edit file format: Select the video format you are going to use to create your final movie. Click Edit to

open the
Project Options dialog box where you can customize compression and audio settings for the selected file format.

Project Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

TV Standard: Select the TV Standard supported in your location.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Audio Channels: Choose from Stereo or Multi-Channel Surround Sound.

General tab

·

Data track: Specify whether to create the video file or the video track only or include the audio track.

·

Frame rate: Specify the frame rate to use for the resulting video file.

·

Frame type: Select between saving your work as field-based or frame-based video files. Field-based video stores video data as two distinct fields of information for each frame. If your video is only for computer playback, you should save your work as frame-based.

·

Frame size: Select the size of the frame or define your own for the video file.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed thus avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

Compression tab

· Media Type:
Allows you to choose the compression format of your project.
· Video Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.
· Audio Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.

Project Settings (Create Disc)

·

MPEG properties for file conversion: Displays detailed information about the selected video setting.
· Change MPEG Settings: Click to open a menu where you can select a disc template for the selected file format. Click
Customize to define video save settings such as compression and frame rate.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select the output display of your project. VideoStudio supports standard 4:3 and widescreen 16:9 display aspect ratios for videos and menus.

·

Do not convert compliant MPEG files: Select to not re-render MPEG files that are already compliant to

the selected MPEG format.

·

Support X-Disc: Includes Extended disc (XDVD, XVCD and XSVCD) compatible files to your project.

·

Two-pass conversion: Improves the quality of the output video by analyzing the video data first before encoding.

·

Auto fade out first play to menu: Select to automatically crossfade from the first play clip to the menu.

·

Play all clips first before menu: Select to play all videos first, and then display the menu.

·

Auto repeat when playback ends: Select to loop the video after it is done playing back.

· Clip playback: Select whether to play the next clip or go back to the menu after playback ends. This option is disabled when
Auto repeat when playback ends is selected.

Preview Files Manager

Use the Preview Files Manager to free hard drive space occupied by temporary preview files used in your project.

·

Preview files list: Displays VideoStudio project files (VSP) that you created and saved.

·

Delete: Click to remove the temporary files of the selected VideoStudio project file from your computer.

·

Delete All: Click to remove all the temporary files of all VideoStudio project files from your computer.

·

Hard disk: Displays the available free space of the selected hard drive.

Select Device Control

·

Current device: Select the appropriate capture driver from the drop-down list to be used by VideoStudio in communicating with your device.

·

Timecode offset: Specify a value to adjust the discrepancy between the actual playing time of your device and the trimming marks specified in the DV Recording dialog box. If for example you have specified the mark in timecode for capturing and then after the process, the captured start frame is the frame before the actual mark in timecode, you can then set a value of -4 to correct the timing between the device and your capture board.

·

Description: Displays additional information about the current device control driver.

·

Options: Opens a dialog box related to the selected current device control driver. This button is disabled if your current device does not support additional options. (Consult your hardware device's manual for more information.)

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Dialog boxes

Advanced Settings (DV-to-DVD Wizard)

·

Disc format: Displays the format of the currently inserted disc.

·

Delete temp files after burning: Select to delete the temporary files in the working folder after burning.

·

Working folder: Enter or locate a folder for temporary files.

·

Auto add chapter: Select to automatically add chapters based on a specified time, recording date or scenes.

·

Create DVD folders: Select to retain the DVD folder in your hard drive after burning. This option is only available if the project is in DVD format. This also allows you to view the finished DVD title on the computer using a DVD player.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed. Thus, avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Template music volume: Drag the slider to specify the volume level to use for the background music of DVD menus.

·

Drive: Select a disc burner drive.

·

Burning speed: Select the rate on which to burn the disc.

Audio Save Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

Entire project: Creates an audio file containing the whole project.

·

Preview range: Creates an audio file containing only the range you have marked on the Timeline.

·

Play after creating it: Select to play the audio file after the file has been created.

Compression tab

· Format: Click to open the
Audio Format dialog box where you can change the audio characteristics.

·
Attributes: Select from the drop-down list of audio characteristics to use for saving.

Batch Convert

·
Batch Convert List: Displays the video files to be converted. The size, type, date modified and path of the video files are also displayed.

· Add: Opens the
Batch Convert dialog box where you can select the files you want to convert.

·
Remove: Deletes the selected file from the Batch Convert List.

·
Remove All: Deletes all the files in the Batch Convert List.

· Save in folder: Click
Browse to select a folder where to save the converted video files.

·
Save as type: Select to what file format to convert the video files.

·
Convert: Starts the conversion process.

·
Cancel: Closes the dialog box without converting the video files.

· Options: Opens the
Video Save Options dialog box where you can define save and compression settings for the selected file format.

Border/Shadow/Transparency

Border tab

· Transparent text:
Select to create a transparent effect for your text.

· Outer stroke border:
Select to create an outer stroke border for your text.

·
Border width: Specify the thickness of the border.

·
Line color: Click to select a color for the border.

·
Text transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value, the more transparent the text becomes.

·
Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value, the more the border blends with the background.

Shadow tab

·
Shadow type: Select the type of shadow to apply to your text.

·
Intensity: Set intensity of glow shadow.

·

Color: Click to select the color of the shadow.

·

Transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value the more transparent the shadow.

·

Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value the more the shadow blends with the background.

Capture Options

·

Capture audio: Captures audio when capturing from an analog device.

·

Capture to Library: Puts the captured video into the Library.

·

Force to use preview mode: Improves captured video quality when capturing in SVCD or DVD format. This is only available if your analog capture card supports this feature.

·

Capture frame rate: Select what frame rate to use when capturing the video. The higher the frame rate, the smoother the video will be.

Change Capture Plug-in

·

Current capture plug-in: Allows you to choose a capture plug-in for the driver that comes with the capture device installed on your computer. Capture plug-ins are programs that come with Corel VideoStudio. They allow VideoStudio to communicate with your video camera.

·

Description: Displays a brief description of the selected capture plug-in.

Burning Options

· Disc burner:

Specifies the settings for your burning device.

·

Drive: Sets the disc burner to use in recording the video file.

·

Speed: Ses the recording speed to use in burning the video file.

·

Files to include on disc: Allows you to include other files on the disc aside from your video project.

·

Copyright information: Includes the Corel VideoStudio copyright text.

·

Project File: Includes the VideoStudio project file used to make the video.

·

Personal folder: Includes any other folders on the disc.

·

Advanced settings: Lets you adjust more disc burning settings.

·

Test before recording: Checks (it does not actually burn yet) the CD/DVD burning capability of the drive and disc. This will help you check if the system speed is enough to send data to the CD/DVD writing device at a specified recording speed. After the simulated burning, actual burning then starts. Clear to burn the disc without performing a test.

·

Buffer underrun protection: Select to use this technology when burning your video file. This technology helps eliminate the buffer underrun problem. Availability of this technology depends on the disc burner you use.

·

Restart DVD+RW background format: Formats the DVD+RW before recording. Enabling this option will prolong the recording process but will ensure a successful burn. This is recommended when you are using the DVD+RW disc for the first time.

Note: By default, this option is not selected to ensure maximum compatibility.

Preferences: File menu

General tab

· Undo: Allows you to define the maximum number of times you can take back an action. Values range from
1-99.

·

Relink checking: Automatically performs a crosscheck between the clips in the project and their associated source files, allowing you to relink the source files to the clips. This is important when the file in the Library is moved to another folder location.

·

Show startup screen: Select to open the startup screen every time you launch VideoStudio. This startup screen allows you to choose either to open DV-to-DVD Wizard, VideoStudio Movie Wizard, or VideoStudio Editor.

·

Show MPEG Optimizer dialog box: Displays the optimal segment settings of a project to be rendered.

·

Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save your finished projects and captured clips.

· Clip display mode: Determines the manner to which your video clip will be presented on the Timeline. Select Thumbnail only if you want your clip to be represented by a corresponding thumbnail on the Timeline. Select File name only if you want your clip to be represented by its file name on the Timeline. Or you can select
Thumbnail and file name to have your clip represented by its corresponding thumbnail and file name.

·

Media Library Animation: Select to enable animation of media in library.

·

Show message when inserting first video clip into Timeline: Enables VideoStudio to prompt a message when it detects that an inserted video clip's properties do not match with the current project settings.

Note: When you capture or insert your first video clip into the project, VideoStudio automatically checks the properties of the clip and your project. If properties such as file format, frame size, etc. are not identical, VideoStudio displays a message and gives you the option to have the project settings automatically adjusted to match the clip's properties. Changing the project settings allows VideoStudio to perform SmartRender.

· Automatically save project every:
Select and specify the time interval when VideoStudio automatically saves a currently active project.

· Playback method: Allows you to choose a method for previewing your projects. Instant Playback allows you to quickly preview changes in your project without the need to create a temporary preview file, however, playback may be jerky depending on your computer resources.

High Quality Playback renders your project as a temporary preview file then plays this preview file. Playback is smoother in High Quality Playback mode, but rendering your project for the first time in this

mode may take a long time to complete depending on the size of your project and computer resources.
· In High Quality Playback mode, VideoStudio uses **SmartRender**
technology which renders only the changes you made such as transitions, titles and effects, and eliminates re-rendering the entire project. SmartRender saves time when generating previews.
·
Instant Playback target: Selects where you want to preview your project. If you have a dual head display card, you can play back your project on both the Preview Window and an external display device.
·
Background color: Specifies the background color to use for clips.
·
Display title safe area on Preview Window: Select to show the title safe area in the Preview Window when creating titles. The title safe area is a rectangular box on the Preview Window. Make sure that your text is within the title safe area to ensure that your entire text is properly displayed on the TV screen.
·
Display DV timecode on Preview Window: Displays the timecode of a DV video on the Preview Window when it is being played back. Your display card must be VMR (Video Mixing Renderer) compatible for the DV timecode to be displayed properly.
·
Display track hint on Preview Window: Select to display track information of the different overlay tracks when playback is stopped.
Edit tab
· **Apply color filter:**
Select to configure VideoStudio to confine its color palette to those visible in the NTSC or PAL filter color space to make sure that all the colors are valid. Clear if for monitor display only.
· Resampling quality:
Specifies the quality of effects and clips during editing. It is recommended to use a lower resampling quality like Good to yield the most efficient editing performance.
·
Use Fit-to-Screen as default size in Overlay Track: Select this option to set default size to Fit-to-Screen for clips in Overlay Track.
·
Default inserted image/color clip duration: Specifies the default clip length for all image clips and colors that will be added in your video project. Unit of time for the duration is in seconds.
· Image resampling option:
Select a method for your image resampling.
·
Apply anti-flickering filter in image clips: Reduces the flickering that happens when using a television to view image clips.
·
Cache image clips in memory: Allows you to use the cache in handling large image files for a more efficient editing.
· Default audio fade-in/out duration:
Specifies the default duration for fading in and fading out of a video clip's audio. Value entered here will be the amount of time it will take for the volume to reach the normal level for fading in or the base for fading out.
· Enable audio while scrubbing:
Enables audio to be previewed while scrubbing on the timeline.
·
Apply audio cross-fade automatically: Allows you to automatically apply a cross-fade audio transition with two overlapping audio.
·

Default transition effect duration: Specifies duration of the transition effect applied to all clips in your video project, in seconds.

· Automatically add transition effect:

Select to apply your chosen transition effect when video and image clips overlap each other.

·

Default transition effect: Allows you to choose the default transition effect to be applied to your project.

Capture tab

· Press OK to capture: Allows you to press

OK to start capturing.

·

Record directly from CD: Allows you to record an audio track directly from a CD.

·

Captured still image save format: Specifies the format to which your captured still image file will be saved as.

·

Image quality: Determines the display quality of the captured image. The higher the quality, the bigger the file.

·

Image capture deinterlace: Enables constant image resolution when downloading files, as opposed to the progressive image resolution available with interlaced images.

·

Stop DV tape when capturing stops: Enables the DV camcorder to automatically stop the tape playback after a video capture process is complete.

· Show drop frame information:

Select to display how many frames were dropped during video capture.

·

Show Recover DVB-T Video warning before capturing: Select to show warning to recover DVB-T Video for a smooth capture.

Preview tab

·

Specify additional folders for preview files: Indicates which folder Corel VideoStudio can use to save preview files. The folder shown is the folder specified in the SET TEMP statement of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. Specify other folders if you have additional drives or a partitioned drive. If you only have one drive, leave the other boxes empty.

·

Limit hard disk usage to: Specifies how much memory you want to allocate just for the Corel VideoStudio's program. If you are only using Corel VideoStudio and want to optimize the performance, select the maximum amount possible. If you are using other programs in the background, you may want to limit this to half of the maximum file size. If left cleared, Corel VideoStudio uses your systems memory management to control the use and distribution of memory.

Smart Proxy

·

Enable Smart Proxy: Automatically creates proxy files whenever a video source file is inserted into the Timeline.

·

Create proxy when video size is (or above): Allows you to set the condition as to when proxy files will be generated. If the frame size of a video source file is the same or is higher than the chosen frame size here, a proxy file will be created for the video file.

·

Proxy folder: Sets the folder location to store proxy files.

·

Auto generate proxy template: Automatically generates proxy files with predefined settings.
· Video proxy options: Indicate the settings to be used in generating proxy files. To change the proxy file format or other settings, click Template to choose a template that already contains predefined settings, or click
Options to tweak detailed settings.
UI Layout
· Allows you to change the layout of Corel VideoStudio's user interface through four preset options.

Preferences (Create Disc)

General tab
·
VCD player compliant: Corel VideoStudio uses the VCD 2.0 format when creating VCDs. For navigation menus with background music, Corel VideoStudio uses a format that requires "variable-bit-rate (VBR)" decoding. However, some VCD players do not support VBR decoding and therefore VCDs created in Corel VideoStudio will not play correctly in these players. Select this option to make sure that the VCD created will play in these players.
·
Anti-flicker filter: Select to apply the anti-flickering filter to the menu pages. The anti-flickering filter reduces the "flickering" that happens when using a television (interlaced display) to view the menu pages. However, this does not help when the menu page is viewed on progressive scan devices such as computer monitors or projectors.
· Resume all confirmation dialog boxes:
Select to have the confirmation boxes appear even after the "Do not show again" option is selected.
·
TV system: Select the type of your TV system (NTSC or PAL).
·
Max 30MB menus for set-top DVD+VR recorder: Select to set the maximum file size for DVD menus to 30MB to make the DVD compatible with set-top DVD (DVD-VR) recorders.
·
Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save to your finished projects and captured clips.
Advanced tab
·
Create index file for MPEG seeking performance: Improves real-time preview result using the Jog Slider. This option is specific for MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 files only.
·
NTSC/PAL safe color: Uses video friendly colors to ensure the display quality of your menus when viewed on any TV system. This helps you avoid the flickering problem on videos when viewed on screen.
·
TV safe area: Sets a margin (represented by a red border) in the Preview Window of the Setup Menu page. If you set the TV safe area at 10%, the remaining 90% will be your working area. Make sure that all your menu objects are within the working area so that they can be properly viewed on screen.

Project Properties

·
Project file information: Displays various information about the project file such as file size and duration.
·
Project template properties: Displays the video file format and other attributes used by the project.
· Edit file format: Select the video format you are going to use to create your final movie. Click Edit to

open the
Project Options dialog box where you can customize compression and audio settings for the selected file format.

Project Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

TV Standard: Select the TV Standard supported in your location.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Audio Channels: Choose from Stereo or Multi-Channel Surround Sound.

General tab

·

Data track: Specify whether to create the video file or the video track only or include the audio track.

·

Frame rate: Specify the frame rate to use for the resulting video file.

·

Frame type: Select between saving your work as field-based or frame-based video files. Field-based video stores video data as two distinct fields of information for each frame. If your video is only for computer playback, you should save your work as frame-based.

·

Frame size: Select the size of the frame or define your own for the video file.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed thus avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

Compression tab

· Media Type:
Allows you to choose the compression format of your project.
· Video Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.
· Audio Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.

Project Settings (Create Disc)

·

MPEG properties for file conversion: Displays detailed information about the selected video setting.
· Change MPEG Settings: Click to open a menu where you can select a disc template for the selected file format. Click
Customize to define video save settings such as compression and frame rate.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select the output display of your project. VideoStudio supports standard 4:3 and widescreen 16:9 display aspect ratios for videos and menus.

·

Do not convert compliant MPEG files: Select to not re-render MPEG files that are already compliant to

the selected MPEG format.

·

Support X-Disc: Includes Extended disc (XDVD, XVCD and XSVCD) compatible files to your project.

·

Two-pass conversion: Improves the quality of the output video by analyzing the video data first before encoding.

·

Auto fade out first play to menu: Select to automatically crossfade from the first play clip to the menu.

·

Play all clips first before menu: Select to play all videos first, and then display the menu.

·

Auto repeat when playback ends: Select to loop the video after it is done playing back.

· Clip playback: Select whether to play the next clip or go back to the menu after playback ends. This option is disabled when
Auto repeat when playback ends is selected.

Preview Files Manager

Use the Preview Files Manager to free hard drive space occupied by temporary preview files used in your project.

·

Preview files list: Displays VideoStudio project files (VSP) that you created and saved.

·

Delete: Click to remove the temporary files of the selected VideoStudio project file from your computer.

·

Delete All: Click to remove all the temporary files of all VideoStudio project files from your computer.

·

Hard disk: Displays the available free space of the selected hard drive.

Select Device Control

·

Current device: Select the appropriate capture driver from the drop-down list to be used by VideoStudio in communicating with your device.

·

Timecode offset: Specify a value to adjust the discrepancy between the actual playing time of your device and the trimming marks specified in the DV Recording dialog box. If for example you have specified the mark in timecode for capturing and then after the process, the captured start frame is the frame before the actual mark in timecode, you can then set a value of -4 to correct the timing between the device and your capture board.

·

Description: Displays additional information about the current device control driver.

·

Options: Opens a dialog box related to the selected current device control driver. This button is disabled if your current device does not support additional options. (Consult your hardware device's manual for more information.)

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Dialog boxes

Advanced Settings (DV-to-DVD Wizard)

·

Disc format: Displays the format of the currently inserted disc.

·

Delete temp files after burning: Select to delete the temporary files in the working folder after burning.

·

Working folder: Enter or locate a folder for temporary files.

·

Auto add chapter: Select to automatically add chapters based on a specified time, recording date or scenes.

·

Create DVD folders: Select to retain the DVD folder in your hard drive after burning. This option is only available if the project is in DVD format. This also allows you to view the finished DVD title on the computer using a DVD player.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed. Thus, avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Template music volume: Drag the slider to specify the volume level to use for the background music of DVD menus.

·

Drive: Select a disc burner drive.

·

Burning speed: Select the rate on which to burn the disc.

Audio Save Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

Entire project: Creates an audio file containing the whole project.

·

Preview range: Creates an audio file containing only the range you have marked on the Timeline.

·

Play after creating it: Select to play the audio file after the file has been created.

Compression tab

· Format: Click to open the
Audio Format dialog box where you can change the audio characteristics.

·
Attributes: Select from the drop-down list of audio characteristics to use for saving.

Batch Convert

·
Batch Convert List: Displays the video files to be converted. The size, type, date modified and path of the video files are also displayed.

· Add: Opens the
Batch Convert dialog box where you can select the files you want to convert.

·
Remove: Deletes the selected file from the Batch Convert List.

·
Remove All: Deletes all the files in the Batch Convert List.

· Save in folder: Click
Browse to select a folder where to save the converted video files.

·
Save as type: Select to what file format to convert the video files.

·
Convert: Starts the conversion process.

·
Cancel: Closes the dialog box without converting the video files.

· Options: Opens the
Video Save Options dialog box where you can define save and compression settings for the selected file format.

Border/Shadow/Transparency

Border tab

· Transparent text:
Select to create a transparent effect for your text.

· Outer stroke border:
Select to create an outer stroke border for your text.

·
Border width: Specify the thickness of the border.

·
Line color: Click to select a color for the border.

·
Text transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value, the more transparent the text becomes.

·
Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value, the more the border blends with the background.

Shadow tab

·
Shadow type: Select the type of shadow to apply to your text.

·
Intensity: Set intensity of glow shadow.

·

Color: Click to select the color of the shadow.

·

Transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value the more transparent the shadow.

·

Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value the more the shadow blends with the background.

Capture Options

·

Capture audio: Captures audio when capturing from an analog device.

·

Capture to Library: Puts the captured video into the Library.

·

Force to use preview mode: Improves captured video quality when capturing in SVCD or DVD format. This is only available if your analog capture card supports this feature.

·

Capture frame rate: Select what frame rate to use when capturing the video. The higher the frame rate, the smoother the video will be.

Change Capture Plug-in

·

Current capture plug-in: Allows you to choose a capture plug-in for the driver that comes with the capture device installed on your computer. Capture plug-ins are programs that come with Corel VideoStudio. They allow VideoStudio to communicate with your video camera.

·

Description: Displays a brief description of the selected capture plug-in.

Burning Options

· Disc burner:

Specifies the settings for your burning device.

·

Drive: Sets the disc burner to use in recording the video file.

·

Speed: Ses the recording speed to use in burning the video file.

·

Files to include on disc: Allows you to include other files on the disc aside from your video project.

·

Copyright information: Includes the Corel VideoStudio copyright text.

·

Project File: Includes the VideoStudio project file used to make the video.

·

Personal folder: Includes any other folders on the disc.

·

Advanced settings: Lets you adjust more disc burning settings.

·

Test before recording: Checks (it does not actually burn yet) the CD/DVD burning capability of the drive and disc. This will help you check if the system speed is enough to send data to the CD/DVD writing device at a specified recording speed. After the simulated burning, actual burning then starts. Clear to burn the disc without performing a test.

·

Buffer underrun protection: Select to use this technology when burning your video file. This technology helps eliminate the buffer underrun problem. Availability of this technology depends on the disc burner you use.

·

Restart DVD+RW background format: Formats the DVD+RW before recording. Enabling this option will prolong the recording process but will ensure a successful burn. This is recommended when you are using the DVD+RW disc for the first time.

Note: By default, this option is not selected to ensure maximum compatibility.

Preferences: File menu

General tab

· Undo: Allows you to define the maximum number of times you can take back an action. Values range from
1-99.

·

Relink checking: Automatically performs a crosscheck between the clips in the project and their associated source files, allowing you to relink the source files to the clips. This is important when the file in the Library is moved to another folder location.

·

Show startup screen: Select to open the startup screen every time you launch VideoStudio. This startup screen allows you to choose either to open DV-to-DVD Wizard, VideoStudio Movie Wizard, or VideoStudio Editor.

·

Show MPEG Optimizer dialog box: Displays the optimal segment settings of a project to be rendered.

·

Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save your finished projects and captured clips.

· Clip display mode: Determines the manner to which your video clip will be presented on the Timeline. Select Thumbnail only if you want your clip to be represented by a corresponding thumbnail on the Timeline. Select File name only if you want your clip to be represented by its file name on the Timeline. Or you can select
Thumbnail and file name to have your clip represented by its corresponding thumbnail and file name.

·

Media Library Animation: Select to enable animation of media in library.

·

Show message when inserting first video clip into Timeline: Enables VideoStudio to prompt a message when it detects that an inserted video clip's properties do not match with the current project settings.

Note: When you capture or insert your first video clip into the project, VideoStudio automatically checks the properties of the clip and your project. If properties such as file format, frame size, etc. are not identical, VideoStudio displays a message and gives you the option to have the project settings automatically adjusted to match the clip's properties. Changing the project settings allows VideoStudio to perform SmartRender.

· Automatically save project every:
Select and specify the time interval when VideoStudio automatically saves a currently active project.

· Playback method: Allows you to choose a method for previewing your projects. Instant Playback allows you to quickly preview changes in your project without the need to create a temporary preview file, however, playback may be jerky depending on your computer resources.

High Quality Playback renders your project as a temporary preview file then plays this preview file. Playback is smoother in High Quality Playback mode, but rendering your project for the first time in this

mode may take a long time to complete depending on the size of your project and computer resources.
· In High Quality Playback mode, VideoStudio uses **SmartRender**
technology which renders only the changes you made such as transitions, titles and effects, and eliminates re-rendering the entire project. SmartRender saves time when generating previews.
·
Instant Playback target: Selects where you want to preview your project. If you have a dual head display card, you can play back your project on both the Preview Window and an external display device.
·
Background color: Specifies the background color to use for clips.
·
Display title safe area on Preview Window: Select to show the title safe area in the Preview Window when creating titles. The title safe area is a rectangular box on the Preview Window. Make sure that your text is within the title safe area to ensure that your entire text is properly displayed on the TV screen.
·
Display DV timecode on Preview Window: Displays the timecode of a DV video on the Preview Window when it is being played back. Your display card must be VMR (Video Mixing Renderer) compatible for the DV timecode to be displayed properly.
·
Display track hint on Preview Window: Select to display track information of the different overlay tracks when playback is stopped.
Edit tab
· **Apply color filter:**
Select to configure VideoStudio to confine its color palette to those visible in the NTSC or PAL filter color space to make sure that all the colors are valid. Clear if for monitor display only.
· Resampling quality:
Specifies the quality of effects and clips during editing. It is recommended to use a lower resampling quality like Good to yield the most efficient editing performance.
·
Use Fit-to-Screen as default size in Overlay Track: Select this option to set default size to Fit-to-Screen for clips in Overlay Track.
·
Default inserted image/color clip duration: Specifies the default clip length for all image clips and colors that will be added in your video project. Unit of time for the duration is in seconds.
· Image resampling option:
Select a method for your image resampling.
·
Apply anti-flickering filter in image clips: Reduces the flickering that happens when using a television to view image clips.
·
Cache image clips in memory: Allows you to use the cache in handling large image files for a more efficient editing.
· Default audio fade-in/out duration:
Specifies the default duration for fading in and fading out of a video clip's audio. Value entered here will be the amount of time it will take for the volume to reach the normal level for fading in or the base for fading out.
· Enable audio while scrubbing:
Enables audio to be previewed while scrubbing on the timeline.
·
Apply audio cross-fade automatically: Allows you to automatically apply a cross-fade audio transition with two overlapping audio.
·

Default transition effect duration: Specifies duration of the transition effect applied to all clips in your video project, in seconds.

· Automatically add transition effect:

Select to apply your chosen transition effect when video and image clips overlap each other.

·

Default transition effect: Allows you to choose the default transition effect to be applied to your project.

Capture tab

· Press OK to capture: Allows you to press

OK to start capturing.

·

Record directly from CD: Allows you to record an audio track directly from a CD.

·

Captured still image save format: Specifies the format to which your captured still image file will be saved as.

·

Image quality: Determines the display quality of the captured image. The higher the quality, the bigger the file.

·

Image capture deinterlace: Enables constant image resolution when downloading files, as opposed to the progressive image resolution available with interlaced images.

·

Stop DV tape when capturing stops: Enables the DV camcorder to automatically stop the tape playback after a video capture process is complete.

· Show drop frame information:

Select to display how many frames were dropped during video capture.

·

Show Recover DVB-T Video warning before capturing: Select to show warning to recover DVB-T Video for a smooth capture.

Preview tab

·

Specify additional folders for preview files: Indicates which folder Corel VideoStudio can use to save preview files. The folder shown is the folder specified in the SET TEMP statement of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. Specify other folders if you have additional drives or a partitioned drive. If you only have one drive, leave the other boxes empty.

·

Limit hard disk usage to: Specifies how much memory you want to allocate just for the Corel VideoStudio's program. If you are only using Corel VideoStudio and want to optimize the performance, select the maximum amount possible. If you are using other programs in the background, you may want to limit this to half of the maximum file size. If left cleared, Corel VideoStudio uses your systems memory management to control the use and distribution of memory.

Smart Proxy

·

Enable Smart Proxy: Automatically creates proxy files whenever a video source file is inserted into the Timeline.

·

Create proxy when video size is (or above): Allows you to set the condition as to when proxy files will be generated. If the frame size of a video source file is the same or is higher than the chosen frame size here, a proxy file will be created for the video file.

·

Proxy folder: Sets the folder location to store proxy files.

·

Auto generate proxy template: Automatically generates proxy files with predefined settings.
· Video proxy options: Indicate the settings to be used in generating proxy files. To change the proxy file format or other settings, click Template to choose a template that already contains predefined settings, or click
Options to tweak detailed settings.
UI Layout
· Allows you to change the layout of Corel VideoStudio's user interface through four preset options.

Preferences (Create Disc)

General tab
·
VCD player compliant: Corel VideoStudio uses the VCD 2.0 format when creating VCDs. For navigation menus with background music, Corel VideoStudio uses a format that requires "variable-bit-rate (VBR)" decoding. However, some VCD players do not support VBR decoding and therefore VCDs created in Corel VideoStudio will not play correctly in these players. Select this option to make sure that the VCD created will play in these players.
·
Anti-flicker filter: Select to apply the anti-flickering filter to the menu pages. The anti-flickering filter reduces the "flickering" that happens when using a television (interlaced display) to view the menu pages. However, this does not help when the menu page is viewed on progressive scan devices such as computer monitors or projectors.
· Resume all confirmation dialog boxes:
Select to have the confirmation boxes appear even after the "Do not show again" option is selected.
·
TV system: Select the type of your TV system (NTSC or PAL).
·
Max 30MB menus for set-top DVD+VR recorder: Select to set the maximum file size for DVD menus to 30MB to make the DVD compatible with set-top DVD (DVD-VR) recorders.
·
Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save to your finished projects and captured clips.
Advanced tab
·
Create index file for MPEG seeking performance: Improves real-time preview result using the Jog Slider. This option is specific for MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 files only.
·
NTSC/PAL safe color: Uses video friendly colors to ensure the display quality of your menus when viewed on any TV system. This helps you avoid the flickering problem on videos when viewed on screen.
·
TV safe area: Sets a margin (represented by a red border) in the Preview Window of the Setup Menu page. If you set the TV safe area at 10%, the remaining 90% will be your working area. Make sure that all your menu objects are within the working area so that they can be properly viewed on screen.

Project Properties

·
Project file information: Displays various information about the project file such as file size and duration.
·
Project template properties: Displays the video file format and other attributes used by the project.
· Edit file format: Select the video format you are going to use to create your final movie. Click Edit to

open the
Project Options dialog box where you can customize compression and audio settings for the selected file format.

Project Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

TV Standard: Select the TV Standard supported in your location.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Audio Channels: Choose from Stereo or Multi-Channel Surround Sound.

General tab

·

Data track: Specify whether to create the video file or the video track only or include the audio track.

·

Frame rate: Specify the frame rate to use for the resulting video file.

·

Frame type: Select between saving your work as field-based or frame-based video files. Field-based video stores video data as two distinct fields of information for each frame. If your video is only for computer playback, you should save your work as frame-based.

·

Frame size: Select the size of the frame or define your own for the video file.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed thus avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

Compression tab

· Media Type:
Allows you to choose the compression format of your project.
· Video Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.
· Audio Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.

Project Settings (Create Disc)

·

MPEG properties for file conversion: Displays detailed information about the selected video setting.
· Change MPEG Settings: Click to open a menu where you can select a disc template for the selected file format. Click
Customize to define video save settings such as compression and frame rate.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select the output display of your project. VideoStudio supports standard 4:3 and widescreen 16:9 display aspect ratios for videos and menus.

·

Do not convert compliant MPEG files: Select to not re-render MPEG files that are already compliant to

the selected MPEG format.

·

Support X-Disc: Includes Extended disc (XDVD, XVCD and XSVCD) compatible files to your project.

·

Two-pass conversion: Improves the quality of the output video by analyzing the video data first before encoding.

·

Auto fade out first play to menu: Select to automatically crossfade from the first play clip to the menu.

·

Play all clips first before menu: Select to play all videos first, and then display the menu.

·

Auto repeat when playback ends: Select to loop the video after it is done playing back.

· Clip playback: Select whether to play the next clip or go back to the menu after playback ends. This option is disabled when
Auto repeat when playback ends is selected.

Preview Files Manager

Use the Preview Files Manager to free hard drive space occupied by temporary preview files used in your project.

·

Preview files list: Displays VideoStudio project files (VSP) that you created and saved.

·

Delete: Click to remove the temporary files of the selected VideoStudio project file from your computer.

·

Delete All: Click to remove all the temporary files of all VideoStudio project files from your computer.

·

Hard disk: Displays the available free space of the selected hard drive.

Select Device Control

·

Current device: Select the appropriate capture driver from the drop-down list to be used by VideoStudio in communicating with your device.

·

Timecode offset: Specify a value to adjust the discrepancy between the actual playing time of your device and the trimming marks specified in the DV Recording dialog box. If for example you have specified the mark in timecode for capturing and then after the process, the captured start frame is the frame before the actual mark in timecode, you can then set a value of -4 to correct the timing between the device and your capture board.

·

Description: Displays additional information about the current device control driver.

·

Options: Opens a dialog box related to the selected current device control driver. This button is disabled if your current device does not support additional options. (Consult your hardware device's manual for more information.)

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Dialog boxes

Advanced Settings (DV-to-DVD Wizard)

·

Disc format: Displays the format of the currently inserted disc.

·

Delete temp files after burning: Select to delete the temporary files in the working folder after burning.

·

Working folder: Enter or locate a folder for temporary files.

·

Auto add chapter: Select to automatically add chapters based on a specified time, recording date or scenes.

·

Create DVD folders: Select to retain the DVD folder in your hard drive after burning. This option is only available if the project is in DVD format. This also allows you to view the finished DVD title on the computer using a DVD player.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed. Thus, avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Template music volume: Drag the slider to specify the volume level to use for the background music of DVD menus.

·

Drive: Select a disc burner drive.

·

Burning speed: Select the rate on which to burn the disc.

Audio Save Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

Entire project: Creates an audio file containing the whole project.

·

Preview range: Creates an audio file containing only the range you have marked on the Timeline.

·

Play after creating it: Select to play the audio file after the file has been created.

Compression tab

· Format: Click to open the
Audio Format dialog box where you can change the audio characteristics.

·
Attributes: Select from the drop-down list of audio characteristics to use for saving.

Batch Convert

·
Batch Convert List: Displays the video files to be converted. The size, type, date modified and path of the video files are also displayed.

· Add: Opens the
Batch Convert dialog box where you can select the files you want to convert.

·
Remove: Deletes the selected file from the Batch Convert List.

·
Remove All: Deletes all the files in the Batch Convert List.

· Save in folder: Click
Browse to select a folder where to save the converted video files.

·
Save as type: Select to what file format to convert the video files.

·
Convert: Starts the conversion process.

·
Cancel: Closes the dialog box without converting the video files.

· Options: Opens the
Video Save Options dialog box where you can define save and compression settings for the selected file format.

Border/Shadow/Transparency

Border tab

· Transparent text:
Select to create a transparent effect for your text.

· Outer stroke border:
Select to create an outer stroke border for your text.

·
Border width: Specify the thickness of the border.

·
Line color: Click to select a color for the border.

·
Text transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value, the more transparent the text becomes.

·
Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value, the more the border blends with the background.

Shadow tab

·
Shadow type: Select the type of shadow to apply to your text.

·
Intensity: Set intensity of glow shadow.

·

Color: Click to select the color of the shadow.

·

Transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value the more transparent the shadow.

·

Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value the more the shadow blends with the background.

Capture Options

·

Capture audio: Captures audio when capturing from an analog device.

·

Capture to Library: Puts the captured video into the Library.

·

Force to use preview mode: Improves captured video quality when capturing in SVCD or DVD format. This is only available if your analog capture card supports this feature.

·

Capture frame rate: Select what frame rate to use when capturing the video. The higher the frame rate, the smoother the video will be.

Change Capture Plug-in

·

Current capture plug-in: Allows you to choose a capture plug-in for the driver that comes with the capture device installed on your computer. Capture plug-ins are programs that come with Corel VideoStudio. They allow VideoStudio to communicate with your video camera.

·

Description: Displays a brief description of the selected capture plug-in.

Burning Options

· Disc burner:

Specifies the settings for your burning device.

·

Drive: Sets the disc burner to use in recording the video file.

·

Speed: Ses the recording speed to use in burning the video file.

·

Files to include on disc: Allows you to include other files on the disc aside from your video project.

·

Copyright information: Includes the Corel VideoStudio copyright text.

·

Project File: Includes the VideoStudio project file used to make the video.

·

Personal folder: Includes any other folders on the disc.

·

Advanced settings: Lets you adjust more disc burning settings.

·

Test before recording: Checks (it does not actually burn yet) the CD/DVD burning capability of the drive and disc. This will help you check if the system speed is enough to send data to the CD/DVD writing device at a specified recording speed. After the simulated burning, actual burning then starts. Clear to burn the disc without performing a test.

·

Buffer underrun protection: Select to use this technology when burning your video file. This technology helps eliminate the buffer underrun problem. Availability of this technology depends on the disc burner you use.

·

Restart DVD+RW background format: Formats the DVD+RW before recording. Enabling this option will prolong the recording process but will ensure a successful burn. This is recommended when you are using the DVD+RW disc for the first time.

Note: By default, this option is not selected to ensure maximum compatibility.

Preferences: File menu

General tab

· Undo: Allows you to define the maximum number of times you can take back an action. Values range from
1-99.

·

Relink checking: Automatically performs a crosscheck between the clips in the project and their associated source files, allowing you to relink the source files to the clips. This is important when the file in the Library is moved to another folder location.

·

Show startup screen: Select to open the startup screen every time you launch VideoStudio. This startup screen allows you to choose either to open DV-to-DVD Wizard, VideoStudio Movie Wizard, or VideoStudio Editor.

·

Show MPEG Optimizer dialog box: Displays the optimal segment settings of a project to be rendered.

·

Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save your finished projects and captured clips.

· Clip display mode: Determines the manner to which your video clip will be presented on the Timeline. Select Thumbnail only if you want your clip to be represented by a corresponding thumbnail on the Timeline. Select File name only if you want your clip to be represented by its file name on the Timeline. Or you can select
Thumbnail and file name to have your clip represented by its corresponding thumbnail and file name.

·

Media Library Animation: Select to enable animation of media in library.

·

Show message when inserting first video clip into Timeline: Enables VideoStudio to prompt a message when it detects that an inserted video clip's properties do not match with the current project settings.

Note: When you capture or insert your first video clip into the project, VideoStudio automatically checks the properties of the clip and your project. If properties such as file format, frame size, etc. are not identical, VideoStudio displays a message and gives you the option to have the project settings automatically adjusted to match the clip's properties. Changing the project settings allows VideoStudio to perform SmartRender.

· Automatically save project every:
Select and specify the time interval when VideoStudio automatically saves a currently active project.

· Playback method: Allows you to choose a method for previewing your projects. Instant Playback allows you to quickly preview changes in your project without the need to create a temporary preview file, however, playback may be jerky depending on your computer resources.

High Quality Playback renders your project as a temporary preview file then plays this preview file. Playback is smoother in High Quality Playback mode, but rendering your project for the first time in this

mode may take a long time to complete depending on the size of your project and computer resources.
· In High Quality Playback mode, VideoStudio uses **SmartRender**
technology which renders only the changes you made such as transitions, titles and effects, and eliminates re-rendering the entire project. SmartRender saves time when generating previews.
·
Instant Playback target: Selects where you want to preview your project. If you have a dual head display card, you can play back your project on both the Preview Window and an external display device.
·
Background color: Specifies the background color to use for clips.
·
Display title safe area on Preview Window: Select to show the title safe area in the Preview Window when creating titles. The title safe area is a rectangular box on the Preview Window. Make sure that your text is within the title safe area to ensure that your entire text is properly displayed on the TV screen.
·
Display DV timecode on Preview Window: Displays the timecode of a DV video on the Preview Window when it is being played back. Your display card must be VMR (Video Mixing Renderer) compatible for the DV timecode to be displayed properly.
·
Display track hint on Preview Window: Select to display track information of the different overlay tracks when playback is stopped.
Edit tab
· **Apply color filter:**
Select to configure VideoStudio to confine its color palette to those visible in the NTSC or PAL filter color space to make sure that all the colors are valid. Clear if for monitor display only.
· Resampling quality:
Specifies the quality of effects and clips during editing. It is recommended to use a lower resampling quality like Good to yield the most efficient editing performance.
·
Use Fit-to-Screen as default size in Overlay Track: Select this option to set default size to Fit-to-Screen for clips in Overlay Track.
·
Default inserted image/color clip duration: Specifies the default clip length for all image clips and colors that will be added in your video project. Unit of time for the duration is in seconds.
· Image resampling option:
Select a method for your image resampling.
·
Apply anti-flickering filter in image clips: Reduces the flickering that happens when using a television to view image clips.
·
Cache image clips in memory: Allows you to use the cache in handling large image files for a more efficient editing.
· Default audio fade-in/out duration:
Specifies the default duration for fading in and fading out of a video clip's audio. Value entered here will be the amount of time it will take for the volume to reach the normal level for fading in or the base for fading out.
· Enable audio while scrubbing:
Enables audio to be previewed while scrubbing on the timeline.
·
Apply audio cross-fade automatically: Allows you to automatically apply a cross-fade audio transition with two overlapping audio.
·

Default transition effect duration: Specifies duration of the transition effect applied to all clips in your video project, in seconds.

· Automatically add transition effect:

Select to apply your chosen transition effect when video and image clips overlap each other.

·

Default transition effect: Allows you to choose the default transition effect to be applied to your project.

Capture tab

· Press OK to capture: Allows you to press

OK to start capturing.

·

Record directly from CD: Allows you to record an audio track directly from a CD.

·

Captured still image save format: Specifies the format to which your captured still image file will be saved as.

·

Image quality: Determines the display quality of the captured image. The higher the quality, the bigger the file.

·

Image capture deinterlace: Enables constant image resolution when downloading files, as opposed to the progressive image resolution available with interlaced images.

·

Stop DV tape when capturing stops: Enables the DV camcorder to automatically stop the tape playback after a video capture process is complete.

· Show drop frame information:

Select to display how many frames were dropped during video capture.

·

Show Recover DVB-T Video warning before capturing: Select to show warning to recover DVB-T Video for a smooth capture.

Preview tab

·

Specify additional folders for preview files: Indicates which folder Corel VideoStudio can use to save preview files. The folder shown is the folder specified in the SET TEMP statement of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. Specify other folders if you have additional drives or a partitioned drive. If you only have one drive, leave the other boxes empty.

·

Limit hard disk usage to: Specifies how much memory you want to allocate just for the Corel VideoStudio's program. If you are only using Corel VideoStudio and want to optimize the performance, select the maximum amount possible. If you are using other programs in the background, you may want to limit this to half of the maximum file size. If left cleared, Corel VideoStudio uses your systems memory management to control the use and distribution of memory.

Smart Proxy

·

Enable Smart Proxy: Automatically creates proxy files whenever a video source file is inserted into the Timeline.

·

Create proxy when video size is (or above): Allows you to set the condition as to when proxy files will be generated. If the frame size of a video source file is the same or is higher than the chosen frame size here, a proxy file will be created for the video file.

·

Proxy folder: Sets the folder location to store proxy files.

·

Auto generate proxy template: Automatically generates proxy files with predefined settings.
· Video proxy options: Indicate the settings to be used in generating proxy files. To change the proxy file format or other settings, click Template to choose a template that already contains predefined settings, or click
Options to tweak detailed settings.
UI Layout
· Allows you to change the layout of Corel VideoStudio's user interface through four preset options.

Preferences (Create Disc)

General tab
·
VCD player compliant: Corel VideoStudio uses the VCD 2.0 format when creating VCDs. For navigation menus with background music, Corel VideoStudio uses a format that requires "variable-bit-rate (VBR)" decoding. However, some VCD players do not support VBR decoding and therefore VCDs created in Corel VideoStudio will not play correctly in these players. Select this option to make sure that the VCD created will play in these players.
·
Anti-flicker filter: Select to apply the anti-flickering filter to the menu pages. The anti-flickering filter reduces the "flickering" that happens when using a television (interlaced display) to view the menu pages. However, this does not help when the menu page is viewed on progressive scan devices such as computer monitors or projectors.
· Resume all confirmation dialog boxes:
Select to have the confirmation boxes appear even after the "Do not show again" option is selected.
·
TV system: Select the type of your TV system (NTSC or PAL).
·
Max 30MB menus for set-top DVD+VR recorder: Select to set the maximum file size for DVD menus to 30MB to make the DVD compatible with set-top DVD (DVD-VR) recorders.
·
Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save to your finished projects and captured clips.
Advanced tab
·
Create index file for MPEG seeking performance: Improves real-time preview result using the Jog Slider. This option is specific for MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 files only.
·
NTSC/PAL safe color: Uses video friendly colors to ensure the display quality of your menus when viewed on any TV system. This helps you avoid the flickering problem on videos when viewed on screen.
·
TV safe area: Sets a margin (represented by a red border) in the Preview Window of the Setup Menu page. If you set the TV safe area at 10%, the remaining 90% will be your working area. Make sure that all your menu objects are within the working area so that they can be properly viewed on screen.

Project Properties

·
Project file information: Displays various information about the project file such as file size and duration.
·
Project template properties: Displays the video file format and other attributes used by the project.
· Edit file format: Select the video format you are going to use to create your final movie. Click Edit to

open the
Project Options dialog box where you can customize compression and audio settings for the selected file format.

Project Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

TV Standard: Select the TV Standard supported in your location.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Audio Channels: Choose from Stereo or Multi-Channel Surround Sound.

General tab

·

Data track: Specify whether to create the video file or the video track only or include the audio track.

·

Frame rate: Specify the frame rate to use for the resulting video file.

·

Frame type: Select between saving your work as field-based or frame-based video files. Field-based video stores video data as two distinct fields of information for each frame. If your video is only for computer playback, you should save your work as frame-based.

·

Frame size: Select the size of the frame or define your own for the video file.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed thus avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

Compression tab

· Media Type:
Allows you to choose the compression format of your project.
· Video Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.
· Audio Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.

Project Settings (Create Disc)

·

MPEG properties for file conversion: Displays detailed information about the selected video setting.
· Change MPEG Settings: Click to open a menu where you can select a disc template for the selected file format. Click
Customize to define video save settings such as compression and frame rate.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select the output display of your project. VideoStudio supports standard 4:3 and widescreen 16:9 display aspect ratios for videos and menus.

·

Do not convert compliant MPEG files: Select to not re-render MPEG files that are already compliant to

the selected MPEG format.

·

Support X-Disc: Includes Extended disc (XDVD, XVCD and XSVCD) compatible files to your project.

·

Two-pass conversion: Improves the quality of the output video by analyzing the video data first before encoding.

·

Auto fade out first play to menu: Select to automatically crossfade from the first play clip to the menu.

·

Play all clips first before menu: Select to play all videos first, and then display the menu.

·

Auto repeat when playback ends: Select to loop the video after it is done playing back.

· Clip playback: Select whether to play the next clip or go back to the menu after playback ends. This option is disabled when
Auto repeat when playback ends is selected.

Preview Files Manager

Use the Preview Files Manager to free hard drive space occupied by temporary preview files used in your project.

·

Preview files list: Displays VideoStudio project files (VSP) that you created and saved.

·

Delete: Click to remove the temporary files of the selected VideoStudio project file from your computer.

·

Delete All: Click to remove all the temporary files of all VideoStudio project files from your computer.

·

Hard disk: Displays the available free space of the selected hard drive.

Select Device Control

·

Current device: Select the appropriate capture driver from the drop-down list to be used by VideoStudio in communicating with your device.

·

Timecode offset: Specify a value to adjust the discrepancy between the actual playing time of your device and the trimming marks specified in the DV Recording dialog box. If for example you have specified the mark in timecode for capturing and then after the process, the captured start frame is the frame before the actual mark in timecode, you can then set a value of -4 to correct the timing between the device and your capture board.

·

Description: Displays additional information about the current device control driver.

·

Options: Opens a dialog box related to the selected current device control driver. This button is disabled if your current device does not support additional options. (Consult your hardware device's manual for more information.)

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Dialog boxes

Advanced Settings (DV-to-DVD Wizard)

·

Disc format: Displays the format of the currently inserted disc.

·

Delete temp files after burning: Select to delete the temporary files in the working folder after burning.

·

Working folder: Enter or locate a folder for temporary files.

·

Auto add chapter: Select to automatically add chapters based on a specified time, recording date or scenes.

·

Create DVD folders: Select to retain the DVD folder in your hard drive after burning. This option is only available if the project is in DVD format. This also allows you to view the finished DVD title on the computer using a DVD player.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed. Thus, avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Template music volume: Drag the slider to specify the volume level to use for the background music of DVD menus.

·

Drive: Select a disc burner drive.

·

Burning speed: Select the rate on which to burn the disc.

Audio Save Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

Entire project: Creates an audio file containing the whole project.

·

Preview range: Creates an audio file containing only the range you have marked on the Timeline.

·

Play after creating it: Select to play the audio file after the file has been created.

Compression tab

· Format: Click to open the
Audio Format dialog box where you can change the audio characteristics.

·
Attributes: Select from the drop-down list of audio characteristics to use for saving.

Batch Convert

·
Batch Convert List: Displays the video files to be converted. The size, type, date modified and path of the video files are also displayed.

· Add: Opens the
Batch Convert dialog box where you can select the files you want to convert.

·
Remove: Deletes the selected file from the Batch Convert List.

·
Remove All: Deletes all the files in the Batch Convert List.

· Save in folder: Click
Browse to select a folder where to save the converted video files.

·
Save as type: Select to what file format to convert the video files.

·
Convert: Starts the conversion process.

·
Cancel: Closes the dialog box without converting the video files.

· Options: Opens the
Video Save Options dialog box where you can define save and compression settings for the selected file format.

Border/Shadow/Transparency

Border tab

· Transparent text:
Select to create a transparent effect for your text.

· Outer stroke border:
Select to create an outer stroke border for your text.

·
Border width: Specify the thickness of the border.

·
Line color: Click to select a color for the border.

·
Text transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value, the more transparent the text becomes.

·
Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value, the more the border blends with the background.

Shadow tab

·
Shadow type: Select the type of shadow to apply to your text.

·
Intensity: Set intensity of glow shadow.

·

Color: Click to select the color of the shadow.

·

Transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value the more transparent the shadow.

·

Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value the more the shadow blends with the background.

Capture Options

·

Capture audio: Captures audio when capturing from an analog device.

·

Capture to Library: Puts the captured video into the Library.

·

Force to use preview mode: Improves captured video quality when capturing in SVCD or DVD format. This is only available if your analog capture card supports this feature.

·

Capture frame rate: Select what frame rate to use when capturing the video. The higher the frame rate, the smoother the video will be.

Change Capture Plug-in

·

Current capture plug-in: Allows you to choose a capture plug-in for the driver that comes with the capture device installed on your computer. Capture plug-ins are programs that come with Corel VideoStudio. They allow VideoStudio to communicate with your video camera.

·

Description: Displays a brief description of the selected capture plug-in.

Burning Options

· Disc burner:

Specifies the settings for your burning device.

·

Drive: Sets the disc burner to use in recording the video file.

·

Speed: Ses the recording speed to use in burning the video file.

·

Files to include on disc: Allows you to include other files on the disc aside from your video project.

·

Copyright information: Includes the Corel VideoStudio copyright text.

·

Project File: Includes the VideoStudio project file used to make the video.

·

Personal folder: Includes any other folders on the disc.

·

Advanced settings: Lets you adjust more disc burning settings.

·

Test before recording: Checks (it does not actually burn yet) the CD/DVD burning capability of the drive and disc. This will help you check if the system speed is enough to send data to the CD/DVD writing device at a specified recording speed. After the simulated burning, actual burning then starts. Clear to burn the disc without performing a test.

·

Buffer underrun protection: Select to use this technology when burning your video file. This technology helps eliminate the buffer underrun problem. Availability of this technology depends on the disc burner you use.

·

Restart DVD+RW background format: Formats the DVD+RW before recording. Enabling this option will prolong the recording process but will ensure a successful burn. This is recommended when you are using the DVD+RW disc for the first time.

Note: By default, this option is not selected to ensure maximum compatibility.

Preferences: File menu

General tab

· Undo: Allows you to define the maximum number of times you can take back an action. Values range from
1-99.

·

Relink checking: Automatically performs a crosscheck between the clips in the project and their associated source files, allowing you to relink the source files to the clips. This is important when the file in the Library is moved to another folder location.

·

Show startup screen: Select to open the startup screen every time you launch VideoStudio. This startup screen allows you to choose either to open DV-to-DVD Wizard, VideoStudio Movie Wizard, or VideoStudio Editor.

·

Show MPEG Optimizer dialog box: Displays the optimal segment settings of a project to be rendered.

·

Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save your finished projects and captured clips.

· Clip display mode: Determines the manner to which your video clip will be presented on the Timeline. Select Thumbnail only if you want your clip to be represented by a corresponding thumbnail on the Timeline. Select File name only if you want your clip to be represented by its file name on the Timeline. Or you can select
Thumbnail and file name to have your clip represented by its corresponding thumbnail and file name.

·

Media Library Animation: Select to enable animation of media in library.

·

Show message when inserting first video clip into Timeline: Enables VideoStudio to prompt a message when it detects that an inserted video clip's properties do not match with the current project settings.

Note: When you capture or insert your first video clip into the project, VideoStudio automatically checks the properties of the clip and your project. If properties such as file format, frame size, etc. are not identical, VideoStudio displays a message and gives you the option to have the project settings automatically adjusted to match the clip's properties. Changing the project settings allows VideoStudio to perform SmartRender.

· Automatically save project every:
Select and specify the time interval when VideoStudio automatically saves a currently active project.

· Playback method: Allows you to choose a method for previewing your projects. Instant Playback allows you to quickly preview changes in your project without the need to create a temporary preview file, however, playback may be jerky depending on your computer resources.

High Quality Playback renders your project as a temporary preview file then plays this preview file. Playback is smoother in High Quality Playback mode, but rendering your project for the first time in this

mode may take a long time to complete depending on the size of your project and computer resources.
· In High Quality Playback mode, VideoStudio uses **SmartRender**
technology which renders only the changes you made such as transitions, titles and effects, and eliminates re-rendering the entire project. SmartRender saves time when generating previews.
·
Instant Playback target: Selects where you want to preview your project. If you have a dual head display card, you can play back your project on both the Preview Window and an external display device.
·
Background color: Specifies the background color to use for clips.
·
Display title safe area on Preview Window: Select to show the title safe area in the Preview Window when creating titles. The title safe area is a rectangular box on the Preview Window. Make sure that your text is within the title safe area to ensure that your entire text is properly displayed on the TV screen.
·
Display DV timecode on Preview Window: Displays the timecode of a DV video on the Preview Window when it is being played back. Your display card must be VMR (Video Mixing Renderer) compatible for the DV timecode to be displayed properly.
·
Display track hint on Preview Window: Select to display track information of the different overlay tracks when playback is stopped.
Edit tab
· **Apply color filter:**
Select to configure VideoStudio to confine its color palette to those visible in the NTSC or PAL filter color space to make sure that all the colors are valid. Clear if for monitor display only.
· Resampling quality:
Specifies the quality of effects and clips during editing. It is recommended to use a lower resampling quality like Good to yield the most efficient editing performance.
·
Use Fit-to-Screen as default size in Overlay Track: Select this option to set default size to Fit-to-Screen for clips in Overlay Track.
·
Default inserted image/color clip duration: Specifies the default clip length for all image clips and colors that will be added in your video project. Unit of time for the duration is in seconds.
· Image resampling option:
Select a method for your image resampling.
·
Apply anti-flickering filter in image clips: Reduces the flickering that happens when using a television to view image clips.
·
Cache image clips in memory: Allows you to use the cache in handling large image files for a more efficient editing.
· Default audio fade-in/out duration:
Specifies the default duration for fading in and fading out of a video clip's audio. Value entered here will be the amount of time it will take for the volume to reach the normal level for fading in or the base for fading out.
· Enable audio while scrubbing:
Enables audio to be previewed while scrubbing on the timeline.
·
Apply audio cross-fade automatically: Allows you to automatically apply a cross-fade audio transition with two overlapping audio.
·

Default transition effect duration: Specifies duration of the transition effect applied to all clips in your video project, in seconds.

· Automatically add transition effect:

Select to apply your chosen transition effect when video and image clips overlap each other.

·

Default transition effect: Allows you to choose the default transition effect to be applied to your project.

Capture tab

· Press OK to capture: Allows you to press

OK to start capturing.

·

Record directly from CD: Allows you to record an audio track directly from a CD.

·

Captured still image save format: Specifies the format to which your captured still image file will be saved as.

·

Image quality: Determines the display quality of the captured image. The higher the quality, the bigger the file.

·

Image capture deinterlace: Enables constant image resolution when downloading files, as opposed to the progressive image resolution available with interlaced images.

·

Stop DV tape when capturing stops: Enables the DV camcorder to automatically stop the tape playback after a video capture process is complete.

· Show drop frame information:

Select to display how many frames were dropped during video capture.

·

Show Recover DVB-T Video warning before capturing: Select to show warning to recover DVB-T Video for a smooth capture.

Preview tab

·

Specify additional folders for preview files: Indicates which folder Corel VideoStudio can use to save preview files. The folder shown is the folder specified in the SET TEMP statement of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. Specify other folders if you have additional drives or a partitioned drive. If you only have one drive, leave the other boxes empty.

·

Limit hard disk usage to: Specifies how much memory you want to allocate just for the Corel VideoStudio's program. If you are only using Corel VideoStudio and want to optimize the performance, select the maximum amount possible. If you are using other programs in the background, you may want to limit this to half of the maximum file size. If left cleared, Corel VideoStudio uses your systems memory management to control the use and distribution of memory.

Smart Proxy

·

Enable Smart Proxy: Automatically creates proxy files whenever a video source file is inserted into the Timeline.

·

Create proxy when video size is (or above): Allows you to set the condition as to when proxy files will be generated. If the frame size of a video source file is the same or is higher than the chosen frame size here, a proxy file will be created for the video file.

·

Proxy folder: Sets the folder location to store proxy files.

·

Auto generate proxy template: Automatically generates proxy files with predefined settings.
· Video proxy options: Indicate the settings to be used in generating proxy files. To change the proxy file format or other settings, click Template to choose a template that already contains predefined settings, or click
Options to tweak detailed settings.
UI Layout
· Allows you to change the layout of Corel VideoStudio's user interface through four preset options.

Preferences (Create Disc)

General tab
·
VCD player compliant: Corel VideoStudio uses the VCD 2.0 format when creating VCDs. For navigation menus with background music, Corel VideoStudio uses a format that requires "variable-bit-rate (VBR)" decoding. However, some VCD players do not support VBR decoding and therefore VCDs created in Corel VideoStudio will not play correctly in these players. Select this option to make sure that the VCD created will play in these players.
·
Anti-flicker filter: Select to apply the anti-flickering filter to the menu pages. The anti-flickering filter reduces the "flickering" that happens when using a television (interlaced display) to view the menu pages. However, this does not help when the menu page is viewed on progressive scan devices such as computer monitors or projectors.
· Resume all confirmation dialog boxes:
Select to have the confirmation boxes appear even after the "Do not show again" option is selected.
·
TV system: Select the type of your TV system (NTSC or PAL).
·
Max 30MB menus for set-top DVD+VR recorder: Select to set the maximum file size for DVD menus to 30MB to make the DVD compatible with set-top DVD (DVD-VR) recorders.
·
Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save to your finished projects and captured clips.
Advanced tab
·
Create index file for MPEG seeking performance: Improves real-time preview result using the Jog Slider. This option is specific for MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 files only.
·
NTSC/PAL safe color: Uses video friendly colors to ensure the display quality of your menus when viewed on any TV system. This helps you avoid the flickering problem on videos when viewed on screen.
·
TV safe area: Sets a margin (represented by a red border) in the Preview Window of the Setup Menu page. If you set the TV safe area at 10%, the remaining 90% will be your working area. Make sure that all your menu objects are within the working area so that they can be properly viewed on screen.

Project Properties

·
Project file information: Displays various information about the project file such as file size and duration.
·
Project template properties: Displays the video file format and other attributes used by the project.
· Edit file format: Select the video format you are going to use to create your final movie. Click Edit to

open the
Project Options dialog box where you can customize compression and audio settings for the selected file format.

Project Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

TV Standard: Select the TV Standard supported in your location.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Audio Channels: Choose from Stereo or Multi-Channel Surround Sound.

General tab

·

Data track: Specify whether to create the video file or the video track only or include the audio track.

·

Frame rate: Specify the frame rate to use for the resulting video file.

·

Frame type: Select between saving your work as field-based or frame-based video files. Field-based video stores video data as two distinct fields of information for each frame. If your video is only for computer playback, you should save your work as frame-based.

·

Frame size: Select the size of the frame or define your own for the video file.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed thus avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

Compression tab

· Media Type:
Allows you to choose the compression format of your project.
· Video Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.
· Audio Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.

Project Settings (Create Disc)

·

MPEG properties for file conversion: Displays detailed information about the selected video setting.
· Change MPEG Settings: Click to open a menu where you can select a disc template for the selected file format. Click
Customize to define video save settings such as compression and frame rate.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select the output display of your project. VideoStudio supports standard 4:3 and widescreen 16:9 display aspect ratios for videos and menus.

·

Do not convert compliant MPEG files: Select to not re-render MPEG files that are already compliant to

the selected MPEG format.

·

Support X-Disc: Includes Extended disc (XDVD, XVCD and XSVCD) compatible files to your project.

·

Two-pass conversion: Improves the quality of the output video by analyzing the video data first before encoding.

·

Auto fade out first play to menu: Select to automatically crossfade from the first play clip to the menu.

·

Play all clips first before menu: Select to play all videos first, and then display the menu.

·

Auto repeat when playback ends: Select to loop the video after it is done playing back.

· Clip playback: Select whether to play the next clip or go back to the menu after playback ends. This option is disabled when
Auto repeat when playback ends is selected.

Preview Files Manager

Use the Preview Files Manager to free hard drive space occupied by temporary preview files used in your project.

·

Preview files list: Displays VideoStudio project files (VSP) that you created and saved.

·

Delete: Click to remove the temporary files of the selected VideoStudio project file from your computer.

·

Delete All: Click to remove all the temporary files of all VideoStudio project files from your computer.

·

Hard disk: Displays the available free space of the selected hard drive.

Select Device Control

·

Current device: Select the appropriate capture driver from the drop-down list to be used by VideoStudio in communicating with your device.

·

Timecode offset: Specify a value to adjust the discrepancy between the actual playing time of your device and the trimming marks specified in the DV Recording dialog box. If for example you have specified the mark in timecode for capturing and then after the process, the captured start frame is the frame before the actual mark in timecode, you can then set a value of -4 to correct the timing between the device and your capture board.

·

Description: Displays additional information about the current device control driver.

·

Options: Opens a dialog box related to the selected current device control driver. This button is disabled if your current device does not support additional options. (Consult your hardware device's manual for more information.)

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Dialog boxes

Advanced Settings (DV-to-DVD Wizard)

·

Disc format: Displays the format of the currently inserted disc.

·

Delete temp files after burning: Select to delete the temporary files in the working folder after burning.

·

Working folder: Enter or locate a folder for temporary files.

·

Auto add chapter: Select to automatically add chapters based on a specified time, recording date or scenes.

·

Create DVD folders: Select to retain the DVD folder in your hard drive after burning. This option is only available if the project is in DVD format. This also allows you to view the finished DVD title on the computer using a DVD player.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed. Thus, avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Template music volume: Drag the slider to specify the volume level to use for the background music of DVD menus.

·

Drive: Select a disc burner drive.

·

Burning speed: Select the rate on which to burn the disc.

Audio Save Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

Entire project: Creates an audio file containing the whole project.

·

Preview range: Creates an audio file containing only the range you have marked on the Timeline.

·

Play after creating it: Select to play the audio file after the file has been created.

Compression tab

· Format: Click to open the
Audio Format dialog box where you can change the audio characteristics.

·
Attributes: Select from the drop-down list of audio characteristics to use for saving.

Batch Convert

·
Batch Convert List: Displays the video files to be converted. The size, type, date modified and path of the video files are also displayed.

· Add: Opens the
Batch Convert dialog box where you can select the files you want to convert.

·
Remove: Deletes the selected file from the Batch Convert List.

·
Remove All: Deletes all the files in the Batch Convert List.

· Save in folder: Click
Browse to select a folder where to save the converted video files.

·
Save as type: Select to what file format to convert the video files.

·
Convert: Starts the conversion process.

·
Cancel: Closes the dialog box without converting the video files.

· Options: Opens the
Video Save Options dialog box where you can define save and compression settings for the selected file format.

Border/Shadow/Transparency

Border tab

· Transparent text:
Select to create a transparent effect for your text.

· Outer stroke border:
Select to create an outer stroke border for your text.

·
Border width: Specify the thickness of the border.

·
Line color: Click to select a color for the border.

·
Text transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value, the more transparent the text becomes.

·
Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value, the more the border blends with the background.

Shadow tab

·
Shadow type: Select the type of shadow to apply to your text.

·
Intensity: Set intensity of glow shadow.

·

Color: Click to select the color of the shadow.

·

Transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value the more transparent the shadow.

·

Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value the more the shadow blends with the background.

Capture Options

·

Capture audio: Captures audio when capturing from an analog device.

·

Capture to Library: Puts the captured video into the Library.

·

Force to use preview mode: Improves captured video quality when capturing in SVCD or DVD format. This is only available if your analog capture card supports this feature.

·

Capture frame rate: Select what frame rate to use when capturing the video. The higher the frame rate, the smoother the video will be.

Change Capture Plug-in

·

Current capture plug-in: Allows you to choose a capture plug-in for the driver that comes with the capture device installed on your computer. Capture plug-ins are programs that come with Corel VideoStudio. They allow VideoStudio to communicate with your video camera.

·

Description: Displays a brief description of the selected capture plug-in.

Burning Options

· Disc burner:

Specifies the settings for your burning device.

·

Drive: Sets the disc burner to use in recording the video file.

·

Speed: Ses the recording speed to use in burning the video file.

·

Files to include on disc: Allows you to include other files on the disc aside from your video project.

·

Copyright information: Includes the Corel VideoStudio copyright text.

·

Project File: Includes the VideoStudio project file used to make the video.

·

Personal folder: Includes any other folders on the disc.

·

Advanced settings: Lets you adjust more disc burning settings.

·

Test before recording: Checks (it does not actually burn yet) the CD/DVD burning capability of the drive and disc. This will help you check if the system speed is enough to send data to the CD/DVD writing device at a specified recording speed. After the simulated burning, actual burning then starts. Clear to burn the disc without performing a test.

·

Buffer underrun protection: Select to use this technology when burning your video file. This technology helps eliminate the buffer underrun problem. Availability of this technology depends on the disc burner you use.

·

Restart DVD+RW background format: Formats the DVD+RW before recording. Enabling this option will prolong the recording process but will ensure a successful burn. This is recommended when you are using the DVD+RW disc for the first time.

Note: By default, this option is not selected to ensure maximum compatibility.

Preferences: File menu

General tab

· Undo: Allows you to define the maximum number of times you can take back an action. Values range from
1-99.

·

Relink checking: Automatically performs a crosscheck between the clips in the project and their associated source files, allowing you to relink the source files to the clips. This is important when the file in the Library is moved to another folder location.

·

Show startup screen: Select to open the startup screen every time you launch VideoStudio. This startup screen allows you to choose either to open DV-to-DVD Wizard, VideoStudio Movie Wizard, or VideoStudio Editor.

·

Show MPEG Optimizer dialog box: Displays the optimal segment settings of a project to be rendered.

·

Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save your finished projects and captured clips.

· Clip display mode: Determines the manner to which your video clip will be presented on the Timeline. Select Thumbnail only if you want your clip to be represented by a corresponding thumbnail on the Timeline. Select File name only if you want your clip to be represented by its file name on the Timeline. Or you can select
Thumbnail and file name to have your clip represented by its corresponding thumbnail and file name.

·

Media Library Animation: Select to enable animation of media in library.

·

Show message when inserting first video clip into Timeline: Enables VideoStudio to prompt a message when it detects that an inserted video clip's properties do not match with the current project settings.

Note: When you capture or insert your first video clip into the project, VideoStudio automatically checks the properties of the clip and your project. If properties such as file format, frame size, etc. are not identical, VideoStudio displays a message and gives you the option to have the project settings automatically adjusted to match the clip's properties. Changing the project settings allows VideoStudio to perform SmartRender.

· Automatically save project every:
Select and specify the time interval when VideoStudio automatically saves a currently active project.

· Playback method: Allows you to choose a method for previewing your projects. Instant Playback allows you to quickly preview changes in your project without the need to create a temporary preview file, however, playback may be jerky depending on your computer resources.

High Quality Playback renders your project as a temporary preview file then plays this preview file. Playback is smoother in High Quality Playback mode, but rendering your project for the first time in this

mode may take a long time to complete depending on the size of your project and computer resources.
· In High Quality Playback mode, VideoStudio uses **SmartRender**
technology which renders only the changes you made such as transitions, titles and effects, and eliminates re-rendering the entire project. SmartRender saves time when generating previews.
·
Instant Playback target: Selects where you want to preview your project. If you have a dual head display card, you can play back your project on both the Preview Window and an external display device.
·
Background color: Specifies the background color to use for clips.
·
Display title safe area on Preview Window: Select to show the title safe area in the Preview Window when creating titles. The title safe area is a rectangular box on the Preview Window. Make sure that your text is within the title safe area to ensure that your entire text is properly displayed on the TV screen.
·
Display DV timecode on Preview Window: Displays the timecode of a DV video on the Preview Window when it is being played back. Your display card must be VMR (Video Mixing Renderer) compatible for the DV timecode to be displayed properly.
·
Display track hint on Preview Window: Select to display track information of the different overlay tracks when playback is stopped.
Edit tab
· **Apply color filter:**
Select to configure VideoStudio to confine its color palette to those visible in the NTSC or PAL filter color space to make sure that all the colors are valid. Clear if for monitor display only.
· Resampling quality:
Specifies the quality of effects and clips during editing. It is recommended to use a lower resampling quality like Good to yield the most efficient editing performance.
·
Use Fit-to-Screen as default size in Overlay Track: Select this option to set default size to Fit-to-Screen for clips in Overlay Track.
·
Default inserted image/color clip duration: Specifies the default clip length for all image clips and colors that will be added in your video project. Unit of time for the duration is in seconds.
· Image resampling option:
Select a method for your image resampling.
·
Apply anti-flickering filter in image clips: Reduces the flickering that happens when using a television to view image clips.
·
Cache image clips in memory: Allows you to use the cache in handling large image files for a more efficient editing.
· Default audio fade-in/out duration:
Specifies the default duration for fading in and fading out of a video clip's audio. Value entered here will be the amount of time it will take for the volume to reach the normal level for fading in or the base for fading out.
· Enable audio while scrubbing:
Enables audio to be previewed while scrubbing on the timeline.
·
Apply audio cross-fade automatically: Allows you to automatically apply a cross-fade audio transition with two overlapping audio.
·

Default transition effect duration: Specifies duration of the transition effect applied to all clips in your video project, in seconds.

· Automatically add transition effect:

Select to apply your chosen transition effect when video and image clips overlap each other.

·

Default transition effect: Allows you to choose the default transition effect to be applied to your project.

Capture tab

· Press OK to capture: Allows you to press

OK to start capturing.

·

Record directly from CD: Allows you to record an audio track directly from a CD.

·

Captured still image save format: Specifies the format to which your captured still image file will be saved as.

·

Image quality: Determines the display quality of the captured image. The higher the quality, the bigger the file.

·

Image capture deinterlace: Enables constant image resolution when downloading files, as opposed to the progressive image resolution available with interlaced images.

·

Stop DV tape when capturing stops: Enables the DV camcorder to automatically stop the tape playback after a video capture process is complete.

· Show drop frame information:

Select to display how many frames were dropped during video capture.

·

Show Recover DVB-T Video warning before capturing: Select to show warning to recover DVB-T Video for a smooth capture.

Preview tab

·

Specify additional folders for preview files: Indicates which folder Corel VideoStudio can use to save preview files. The folder shown is the folder specified in the SET TEMP statement of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. Specify other folders if you have additional drives or a partitioned drive. If you only have one drive, leave the other boxes empty.

·

Limit hard disk usage to: Specifies how much memory you want to allocate just for the Corel VideoStudio's program. If you are only using Corel VideoStudio and want to optimize the performance, select the maximum amount possible. If you are using other programs in the background, you may want to limit this to half of the maximum file size. If left cleared, Corel VideoStudio uses your systems memory management to control the use and distribution of memory.

Smart Proxy

·

Enable Smart Proxy: Automatically creates proxy files whenever a video source file is inserted into the Timeline.

·

Create proxy when video size is (or above): Allows you to set the condition as to when proxy files will be generated. If the frame size of a video source file is the same or is higher than the chosen frame size here, a proxy file will be created for the video file.

·

Proxy folder: Sets the folder location to store proxy files.

·

Auto generate proxy template: Automatically generates proxy files with predefined settings.
· Video proxy options: Indicate the settings to be used in generating proxy files. To change the proxy file format or other settings, click Template to choose a template that already contains predefined settings, or click
Options to tweak detailed settings.
UI Layout
· Allows you to change the layout of Corel VideoStudio's user interface through four preset options.

Preferences (Create Disc)

General tab
·
VCD player compliant: Corel VideoStudio uses the VCD 2.0 format when creating VCDs. For navigation menus with background music, Corel VideoStudio uses a format that requires "variable-bit-rate (VBR)" decoding. However, some VCD players do not support VBR decoding and therefore VCDs created in Corel VideoStudio will not play correctly in these players. Select this option to make sure that the VCD created will play in these players.
·
Anti-flicker filter: Select to apply the anti-flickering filter to the menu pages. The anti-flickering filter reduces the "flickering" that happens when using a television (interlaced display) to view the menu pages. However, this does not help when the menu page is viewed on progressive scan devices such as computer monitors or projectors.
· Resume all confirmation dialog boxes:
Select to have the confirmation boxes appear even after the "Do not show again" option is selected.
·
TV system: Select the type of your TV system (NTSC or PAL).
·
Max 30MB menus for set-top DVD+VR recorder: Select to set the maximum file size for DVD menus to 30MB to make the DVD compatible with set-top DVD (DVD-VR) recorders.
·
Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save to your finished projects and captured clips.
Advanced tab
·
Create index file for MPEG seeking performance: Improves real-time preview result using the Jog Slider. This option is specific for MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 files only.
·
NTSC/PAL safe color: Uses video friendly colors to ensure the display quality of your menus when viewed on any TV system. This helps you avoid the flickering problem on videos when viewed on screen.
·
TV safe area: Sets a margin (represented by a red border) in the Preview Window of the Setup Menu page. If you set the TV safe area at 10%, the remaining 90% will be your working area. Make sure that all your menu objects are within the working area so that they can be properly viewed on screen.

Project Properties

·
Project file information: Displays various information about the project file such as file size and duration.
·
Project template properties: Displays the video file format and other attributes used by the project.
· Edit file format: Select the video format you are going to use to create your final movie. Click Edit to

open the
Project Options dialog box where you can customize compression and audio settings for the selected file format.

Project Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

TV Standard: Select the TV Standard supported in your location.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Audio Channels: Choose from Stereo or Multi-Channel Surround Sound.

General tab

·

Data track: Specify whether to create the video file or the video track only or include the audio track.

·

Frame rate: Specify the frame rate to use for the resulting video file.

·

Frame type: Select between saving your work as field-based or frame-based video files. Field-based video stores video data as two distinct fields of information for each frame. If your video is only for computer playback, you should save your work as frame-based.

·

Frame size: Select the size of the frame or define your own for the video file.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed thus avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

Compression tab

· Media Type:
Allows you to choose the compression format of your project.
· Video Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.
· Audio Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.

Project Settings (Create Disc)

·

MPEG properties for file conversion: Displays detailed information about the selected video setting.
· Change MPEG Settings: Click to open a menu where you can select a disc template for the selected file format. Click
Customize to define video save settings such as compression and frame rate.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select the output display of your project. VideoStudio supports standard 4:3 and widescreen 16:9 display aspect ratios for videos and menus.

·

Do not convert compliant MPEG files: Select to not re-render MPEG files that are already compliant to

the selected MPEG format.

·

Support X-Disc: Includes Extended disc (XDVD, XVCD and XSVCD) compatible files to your project.

·

Two-pass conversion: Improves the quality of the output video by analyzing the video data first before encoding.

·

Auto fade out first play to menu: Select to automatically crossfade from the first play clip to the menu.

·

Play all clips first before menu: Select to play all videos first, and then display the menu.

·

Auto repeat when playback ends: Select to loop the video after it is done playing back.

· Clip playback: Select whether to play the next clip or go back to the menu after playback ends. This option is disabled when
Auto repeat when playback ends is selected.

Preview Files Manager

Use the Preview Files Manager to free hard drive space occupied by temporary preview files used in your project.

·

Preview files list: Displays VideoStudio project files (VSP) that you created and saved.

·

Delete: Click to remove the temporary files of the selected VideoStudio project file from your computer.

·

Delete All: Click to remove all the temporary files of all VideoStudio project files from your computer.

·

Hard disk: Displays the available free space of the selected hard drive.

Select Device Control

·

Current device: Select the appropriate capture driver from the drop-down list to be used by VideoStudio in communicating with your device.

·

Timecode offset: Specify a value to adjust the discrepancy between the actual playing time of your device and the trimming marks specified in the DV Recording dialog box. If for example you have specified the mark in timecode for capturing and then after the process, the captured start frame is the frame before the actual mark in timecode, you can then set a value of -4 to correct the timing between the device and your capture board.

·

Description: Displays additional information about the current device control driver.

·

Options: Opens a dialog box related to the selected current device control driver. This button is disabled if your current device does not support additional options. (Consult your hardware device's manual for more information.)

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Dialog boxes

Advanced Settings (DV-to-DVD Wizard)

·

Disc format: Displays the format of the currently inserted disc.

·

Delete temp files after burning: Select to delete the temporary files in the working folder after burning.

·

Working folder: Enter or locate a folder for temporary files.

·

Auto add chapter: Select to automatically add chapters based on a specified time, recording date or scenes.

·

Create DVD folders: Select to retain the DVD folder in your hard drive after burning. This option is only available if the project is in DVD format. This also allows you to view the finished DVD title on the computer using a DVD player.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed. Thus, avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Template music volume: Drag the slider to specify the volume level to use for the background music of DVD menus.

·

Drive: Select a disc burner drive.

·

Burning speed: Select the rate on which to burn the disc.

Audio Save Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

Entire project: Creates an audio file containing the whole project.

·

Preview range: Creates an audio file containing only the range you have marked on the Timeline.

·

Play after creating it: Select to play the audio file after the file has been created.

Compression tab

· Format: Click to open the
Audio Format dialog box where you can change the audio characteristics.

·
Attributes: Select from the drop-down list of audio characteristics to use for saving.

Batch Convert

·
Batch Convert List: Displays the video files to be converted. The size, type, date modified and path of the video files are also displayed.

· Add: Opens the
Batch Convert dialog box where you can select the files you want to convert.

·
Remove: Deletes the selected file from the Batch Convert List.

·
Remove All: Deletes all the files in the Batch Convert List.

· Save in folder: Click
Browse to select a folder where to save the converted video files.

·
Save as type: Select to what file format to convert the video files.

·
Convert: Starts the conversion process.

·
Cancel: Closes the dialog box without converting the video files.

· Options: Opens the
Video Save Options dialog box where you can define save and compression settings for the selected file format.

Border/Shadow/Transparency

Border tab

· Transparent text:
Select to create a transparent effect for your text.

· Outer stroke border:
Select to create an outer stroke border for your text.

·
Border width: Specify the thickness of the border.

·
Line color: Click to select a color for the border.

·
Text transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value, the more transparent the text becomes.

·
Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value, the more the border blends with the background.

Shadow tab

·
Shadow type: Select the type of shadow to apply to your text.

·
Intensity: Set intensity of glow shadow.

·
Color: Click to select the color of the shadow.
·
Transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value the more transparent the shadow.
·
Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value the more the shadow blends with the background.

Capture Options

·
Capture audio: Captures audio when capturing from an analog device.
·
Capture to Library: Puts the captured video into the Library.
·
Force to use preview mode: Improves captured video quality when capturing in SVCD or DVD format. This is only available if your analog capture card supports this feature.
·
Capture frame rate: Select what frame rate to use when capturing the video. The higher the frame rate, the smoother the video will be.

Change Capture Plug-in

·
Current capture plug-in: Allows you to choose a capture plug-in for the driver that comes with the capture device installed on your computer. Capture plug-ins are programs that come with Corel VideoStudio. They allow VideoStudio to communicate with your video camera.
·
Description: Displays a brief description of the selected capture plug-in.

Burning Options

· Disc burner:
Specifies the settings for your burning device.
·
Drive: Sets the disc burner to use in recording the video file.
·
Speed: Ses the recording speed to use in burning the video file.
·
Files to include on disc: Allows you to include other files on the disc aside from your video project.
·
Copyright information: Includes the Corel VideoStudio copyright text.
·
Project File: Includes the VideoStudio project file used to make the video.
·
Personal folder: Includes any other folders on the disc.
·
Advanced settings: Lets you adjust more disc burning settings.
·
Test before recording: Checks (it does not actually burn yet) the CD/DVD burning capability of the drive and disc. This will help you check if the system speed is enough to send data to the CD/DVD writing device at a specified recording speed. After the simulated burning, actual burning then starts. Clear to burn the disc without performing a test.

·

Buffer underrun protection: Select to use this technology when burning your video file. This technology helps eliminate the buffer underrun problem. Availability of this technology depends on the disc burner you use.

·

Restart DVD+RW background format: Formats the DVD+RW before recording. Enabling this option will prolong the recording process but will ensure a successful burn. This is recommended when you are using the DVD+RW disc for the first time.

Note: By default, this option is not selected to ensure maximum compatibility.

Preferences: File menu

General tab

· Undo: Allows you to define the maximum number of times you can take back an action. Values range from
1-99.

·

Relink checking: Automatically performs a crosscheck between the clips in the project and their associated source files, allowing you to relink the source files to the clips. This is important when the file in the Library is moved to another folder location.

·

Show startup screen: Select to open the startup screen every time you launch VideoStudio. This startup screen allows you to choose either to open DV-to-DVD Wizard, VideoStudio Movie Wizard, or VideoStudio Editor.

·

Show MPEG Optimizer dialog box: Displays the optimal segment settings of a project to be rendered.

·

Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save your finished projects and captured clips.

· Clip display mode: Determines the manner to which your video clip will be presented on the Timeline. Select Thumbnail only if you want your clip to be represented by a corresponding thumbnail on the Timeline. Select File name only if you want your clip to be represented by its file name on the Timeline. Or you can select
Thumbnail and file name to have your clip represented by its corresponding thumbnail and file name.

·

Media Library Animation: Select to enable animation of media in library.

·

Show message when inserting first video clip into Timeline: Enables VideoStudio to prompt a message when it detects that an inserted video clip's properties do not match with the current project settings.

Note: When you capture or insert your first video clip into the project, VideoStudio automatically checks the properties of the clip and your project. If properties such as file format, frame size, etc. are not identical, VideoStudio displays a message and gives you the option to have the project settings automatically adjusted to match the clip's properties. Changing the project settings allows VideoStudio to perform SmartRender.

· Automatically save project every:
Select and specify the time interval when VideoStudio automatically saves a currently active project.

· Playback method: Allows you to choose a method for previewing your projects. Instant Playback allows you to quickly preview changes in your project without the need to create a temporary preview file, however, playback may be jerky depending on your computer resources.

High Quality Playback renders your project as a temporary preview file then plays this preview file. Playback is smoother in High Quality Playback mode, but rendering your project for the first time in this

mode may take a long time to complete depending on the size of your project and computer resources.
· In High Quality Playback mode, VideoStudio uses **SmartRender**
technology which renders only the changes you made such as transitions, titles and effects, and eliminates re-rendering the entire project. SmartRender saves time when generating previews.
·
Instant Playback target: Selects where you want to preview your project. If you have a dual head display card, you can play back your project on both the Preview Window and an external display device.
·
Background color: Specifies the background color to use for clips.
·
Display title safe area on Preview Window: Select to show the title safe area in the Preview Window when creating titles. The title safe area is a rectangular box on the Preview Window. Make sure that your text is within the title safe area to ensure that your entire text is properly displayed on the TV screen.
·
Display DV timecode on Preview Window: Displays the timecode of a DV video on the Preview Window when it is being played back. Your display card must be VMR (Video Mixing Renderer) compatible for the DV timecode to be displayed properly.
·
Display track hint on Preview Window: Select to display track information of the different overlay tracks when playback is stopped.
Edit tab
· **Apply color filter:**
Select to configure VideoStudio to confine its color palette to those visible in the NTSC or PAL filter color space to make sure that all the colors are valid. Clear if for monitor display only.
· Resampling quality:
Specifies the quality of effects and clips during editing. It is recommended to use a lower resampling quality like Good to yield the most efficient editing performance.
·
Use Fit-to-Screen as default size in Overlay Track: Select this option to set default size to Fit-to-Screen for clips in Overlay Track.
·
Default inserted image/color clip duration: Specifies the default clip length for all image clips and colors that will be added in your video project. Unit of time for the duration is in seconds.
· Image resampling option:
Select a method for your image resampling.
·
Apply anti-flickering filter in image clips: Reduces the flickering that happens when using a television to view image clips.
·
Cache image clips in memory: Allows you to use the cache in handling large image files for a more efficient editing.
· Default audio fade-in/out duration:
Specifies the default duration for fading in and fading out of a video clip's audio. Value entered here will be the amount of time it will take for the volume to reach the normal level for fading in or the base for fading out.
· Enable audio while scrubbing:
Enables audio to be previewed while scrubbing on the timeline.
·
Apply audio cross-fade automatically: Allows you to automatically apply a cross-fade audio transition with two overlapping audio.
·

Default transition effect duration: Specifies duration of the transition effect applied to all clips in your video project, in seconds.

· Automatically add transition effect:

Select to apply your chosen transition effect when video and image clips overlap each other.

·

Default transition effect: Allows you to choose the default transition effect to be applied to your project.

Capture tab

· Press OK to capture: Allows you to press

OK to start capturing.

·

Record directly from CD: Allows you to record an audio track directly from a CD.

·

Captured still image save format: Specifies the format to which your captured still image file will be saved as.

·

Image quality: Determines the display quality of the captured image. The higher the quality, the bigger the file.

·

Image capture deinterlace: Enables constant image resolution when downloading files, as opposed to the progressive image resolution available with interlaced images.

·

Stop DV tape when capturing stops: Enables the DV camcorder to automatically stop the tape playback after a video capture process is complete.

· Show drop frame information:

Select to display how many frames were dropped during video capture.

·

Show Recover DVB-T Video warning before capturing: Select to show warning to recover DVB-T Video for a smooth capture.

Preview tab

·

Specify additional folders for preview files: Indicates which folder Corel VideoStudio can use to save preview files. The folder shown is the folder specified in the SET TEMP statement of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. Specify other folders if you have additional drives or a partitioned drive. If you only have one drive, leave the other boxes empty.

·

Limit hard disk usage to: Specifies how much memory you want to allocate just for the Corel VideoStudio's program. If you are only using Corel VideoStudio and want to optimize the performance, select the maximum amount possible. If you are using other programs in the background, you may want to limit this to half of the maximum file size. If left cleared, Corel VideoStudio uses your systems memory management to control the use and distribution of memory.

Smart Proxy

·

Enable Smart Proxy: Automatically creates proxy files whenever a video source file is inserted into the Timeline.

·

Create proxy when video size is (or above): Allows you to set the condition as to when proxy files will be generated. If the frame size of a video source file is the same or is higher than the chosen frame size here, a proxy file will be created for the video file.

·

Proxy folder: Sets the folder location to store proxy files.

·

Auto generate proxy template: Automatically generates proxy files with predefined settings.
· Video proxy options: Indicate the settings to be used in generating proxy files. To change the proxy file format or other settings, click Template to choose a template that already contains predefined settings, or click
Options to tweak detailed settings.
UI Layout
· Allows you to change the layout of Corel VideoStudio's user interface through four preset options.

Preferences (Create Disc)

General tab
·
VCD player compliant: Corel VideoStudio uses the VCD 2.0 format when creating VCDs. For navigation menus with background music, Corel VideoStudio uses a format that requires "variable-bit-rate (VBR)" decoding. However, some VCD players do not support VBR decoding and therefore VCDs created in Corel VideoStudio will not play correctly in these players. Select this option to make sure that the VCD created will play in these players.
·
Anti-flicker filter: Select to apply the anti-flickering filter to the menu pages. The anti-flickering filter reduces the "flickering" that happens when using a television (interlaced display) to view the menu pages. However, this does not help when the menu page is viewed on progressive scan devices such as computer monitors or projectors.
· Resume all confirmation dialog boxes:
Select to have the confirmation boxes appear even after the "Do not show again" option is selected.
·
TV system: Select the type of your TV system (NTSC or PAL).
·
Max 30MB menus for set-top DVD+VR recorder: Select to set the maximum file size for DVD menus to 30MB to make the DVD compatible with set-top DVD (DVD-VR) recorders.
·
Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save to your finished projects and captured clips.
Advanced tab
·
Create index file for MPEG seeking performance: Improves real-time preview result using the Jog Slider. This option is specific for MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 files only.
·
NTSC/PAL safe color: Uses video friendly colors to ensure the display quality of your menus when viewed on any TV system. This helps you avoid the flickering problem on videos when viewed on screen.
·
TV safe area: Sets a margin (represented by a red border) in the Preview Window of the Setup Menu page. If you set the TV safe area at 10%, the remaining 90% will be your working area. Make sure that all your menu objects are within the working area so that they can be properly viewed on screen.

Project Properties

·
Project file information: Displays various information about the project file such as file size and duration.
·
Project template properties: Displays the video file format and other attributes used by the project.
· Edit file format: Select the video format you are going to use to create your final movie. Click Edit to

open the
Project Options dialog box where you can customize compression and audio settings for the selected file format.

Project Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

TV Standard: Select the TV Standard supported in your location.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Audio Channels: Choose from Stereo or Multi-Channel Surround Sound.

General tab

·

Data track: Specify whether to create the video file or the video track only or include the audio track.

·

Frame rate: Specify the frame rate to use for the resulting video file.

·

Frame type: Select between saving your work as field-based or frame-based video files. Field-based video stores video data as two distinct fields of information for each frame. If your video is only for computer playback, you should save your work as frame-based.

·

Frame size: Select the size of the frame or define your own for the video file.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed thus avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

Compression tab

· Media Type:
Allows you to choose the compression format of your project.
· Video Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.
· Audio Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.

Project Settings (Create Disc)

·

MPEG properties for file conversion: Displays detailed information about the selected video setting.
· Change MPEG Settings: Click to open a menu where you can select a disc template for the selected file format. Click
Customize to define video save settings such as compression and frame rate.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select the output display of your project. VideoStudio supports standard 4:3 and widescreen 16:9 display aspect ratios for videos and menus.

·

Do not convert compliant MPEG files: Select to not re-render MPEG files that are already compliant to

the selected MPEG format.

·

Support X-Disc: Includes Extended disc (XDVD, XVCD and XSVCD) compatible files to your project.

·

Two-pass conversion: Improves the quality of the output video by analyzing the video data first before encoding.

·

Auto fade out first play to menu: Select to automatically crossfade from the first play clip to the menu.

·

Play all clips first before menu: Select to play all videos first, and then display the menu.

·

Auto repeat when playback ends: Select to loop the video after it is done playing back.

· Clip playback: Select whether to play the next clip or go back to the menu after playback ends. This option is disabled when
Auto repeat when playback ends is selected.

Preview Files Manager

Use the Preview Files Manager to free hard drive space occupied by temporary preview files used in your project.

·

Preview files list: Displays VideoStudio project files (VSP) that you created and saved.

·

Delete: Click to remove the temporary files of the selected VideoStudio project file from your computer.

·

Delete All: Click to remove all the temporary files of all VideoStudio project files from your computer.

·

Hard disk: Displays the available free space of the selected hard drive.

Select Device Control

·

Current device: Select the appropriate capture driver from the drop-down list to be used by VideoStudio in communicating with your device.

·

Timecode offset: Specify a value to adjust the discrepancy between the actual playing time of your device and the trimming marks specified in the DV Recording dialog box. If for example you have specified the mark in timecode for capturing and then after the process, the captured start frame is the frame before the actual mark in timecode, you can then set a value of -4 to correct the timing between the device and your capture board.

·

Description: Displays additional information about the current device control driver.

·

Options: Opens a dialog box related to the selected current device control driver. This button is disabled if your current device does not support additional options. (Consult your hardware device's manual for more information.)

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Dialog boxes

Advanced Settings (DV-to-DVD Wizard)

·

Disc format: Displays the format of the currently inserted disc.

·

Delete temp files after burning: Select to delete the temporary files in the working folder after burning.

·

Working folder: Enter or locate a folder for temporary files.

·

Auto add chapter: Select to automatically add chapters based on a specified time, recording date or scenes.

·

Create DVD folders: Select to retain the DVD folder in your hard drive after burning. This option is only available if the project is in DVD format. This also allows you to view the finished DVD title on the computer using a DVD player.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed. Thus, avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Template music volume: Drag the slider to specify the volume level to use for the background music of DVD menus.

·

Drive: Select a disc burner drive.

·

Burning speed: Select the rate on which to burn the disc.

Audio Save Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

Entire project: Creates an audio file containing the whole project.

·

Preview range: Creates an audio file containing only the range you have marked on the Timeline.

·

Play after creating it: Select to play the audio file after the file has been created.

Compression tab

· Format: Click to open the
Audio Format dialog box where you can change the audio characteristics.

·
Attributes: Select from the drop-down list of audio characteristics to use for saving.

Batch Convert

·
Batch Convert List: Displays the video files to be converted. The size, type, date modified and path of the video files are also displayed.

· Add: Opens the
Batch Convert dialog box where you can select the files you want to convert.

·
Remove: Deletes the selected file from the Batch Convert List.

·
Remove All: Deletes all the files in the Batch Convert List.

· Save in folder: Click
Browse to select a folder where to save the converted video files.

·
Save as type: Select to what file format to convert the video files.

·
Convert: Starts the conversion process.

·
Cancel: Closes the dialog box without converting the video files.

· Options: Opens the
Video Save Options dialog box where you can define save and compression settings for the selected file format.

Border/Shadow/Transparency

Border tab

· Transparent text:
Select to create a transparent effect for your text.

· Outer stroke border:
Select to create an outer stroke border for your text.

·
Border width: Specify the thickness of the border.

·
Line color: Click to select a color for the border.

·
Text transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value, the more transparent the text becomes.

·
Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value, the more the border blends with the background.

Shadow tab

·
Shadow type: Select the type of shadow to apply to your text.

·
Intensity: Set intensity of glow shadow.

·

Color: Click to select the color of the shadow.

·

Transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value the more transparent the shadow.

·

Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value the more the shadow blends with the background.

Capture Options

·

Capture audio: Captures audio when capturing from an analog device.

·

Capture to Library: Puts the captured video into the Library.

·

Force to use preview mode: Improves captured video quality when capturing in SVCD or DVD format. This is only available if your analog capture card supports this feature.

·

Capture frame rate: Select what frame rate to use when capturing the video. The higher the frame rate, the smoother the video will be.

Change Capture Plug-in

·

Current capture plug-in: Allows you to choose a capture plug-in for the driver that comes with the capture device installed on your computer. Capture plug-ins are programs that come with Corel VideoStudio. They allow VideoStudio to communicate with your video camera.

·

Description: Displays a brief description of the selected capture plug-in.

Burning Options

· Disc burner:

Specifies the settings for your burning device.

·

Drive: Sets the disc burner to use in recording the video file.

·

Speed: Ses the recording speed to use in burning the video file.

·

Files to include on disc: Allows you to include other files on the disc aside from your video project.

·

Copyright information: Includes the Corel VideoStudio copyright text.

·

Project File: Includes the VideoStudio project file used to make the video.

·

Personal folder: Includes any other folders on the disc.

·

Advanced settings: Lets you adjust more disc burning settings.

·

Test before recording: Checks (it does not actually burn yet) the CD/DVD burning capability of the drive and disc. This will help you check if the system speed is enough to send data to the CD/DVD writing device at a specified recording speed. After the simulated burning, actual burning then starts. Clear to burn the disc without performing a test.

·

Buffer underrun protection: Select to use this technology when burning your video file. This technology helps eliminate the buffer underrun problem. Availability of this technology depends on the disc burner you use.

·

Restart DVD+RW background format: Formats the DVD+RW before recording. Enabling this option will prolong the recording process but will ensure a successful burn. This is recommended when you are using the DVD+RW disc for the first time.

Note: By default, this option is not selected to ensure maximum compatibility.

Preferences: File menu

General tab

· Undo: Allows you to define the maximum number of times you can take back an action. Values range from
1-99.

·

Relink checking: Automatically performs a crosscheck between the clips in the project and their associated source files, allowing you to relink the source files to the clips. This is important when the file in the Library is moved to another folder location.

·

Show startup screen: Select to open the startup screen every time you launch VideoStudio. This startup screen allows you to choose either to open DV-to-DVD Wizard, VideoStudio Movie Wizard, or VideoStudio Editor.

·

Show MPEG Optimizer dialog box: Displays the optimal segment settings of a project to be rendered.

·

Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save your finished projects and captured clips.

· Clip display mode: Determines the manner to which your video clip will be presented on the Timeline. Select Thumbnail only if you want your clip to be represented by a corresponding thumbnail on the Timeline. Select File name only if you want your clip to be represented by its file name on the Timeline. Or you can select
Thumbnail and file name to have your clip represented by its corresponding thumbnail and file name.

·

Media Library Animation: Select to enable animation of media in library.

·

Show message when inserting first video clip into Timeline: Enables VideoStudio to prompt a message when it detects that an inserted video clip's properties do not match with the current project settings.

Note: When you capture or insert your first video clip into the project, VideoStudio automatically checks the properties of the clip and your project. If properties such as file format, frame size, etc. are not identical, VideoStudio displays a message and gives you the option to have the project settings automatically adjusted to match the clip's properties. Changing the project settings allows VideoStudio to perform SmartRender.

· Automatically save project every:
Select and specify the time interval when VideoStudio automatically saves a currently active project.

· Playback method: Allows you to choose a method for previewing your projects. Instant Playback allows you to quickly preview changes in your project without the need to create a temporary preview file, however, playback may be jerky depending on your computer resources.

High Quality Playback renders your project as a temporary preview file then plays this preview file. Playback is smoother in High Quality Playback mode, but rendering your project for the first time in this

mode may take a long time to complete depending on the size of your project and computer resources.
· In High Quality Playback mode, VideoStudio uses **SmartRender**
technology which renders only the changes you made such as transitions, titles and effects, and eliminates re-rendering the entire project. SmartRender saves time when generating previews.
·
Instant Playback target: Selects where you want to preview your project. If you have a dual head display card, you can play back your project on both the Preview Window and an external display device.
·
Background color: Specifies the background color to use for clips.
·
Display title safe area on Preview Window: Select to show the title safe area in the Preview Window when creating titles. The title safe area is a rectangular box on the Preview Window. Make sure that your text is within the title safe area to ensure that your entire text is properly displayed on the TV screen.
·
Display DV timecode on Preview Window: Displays the timecode of a DV video on the Preview Window when it is being played back. Your display card must be VMR (Video Mixing Renderer) compatible for the DV timecode to be displayed properly.
·
Display track hint on Preview Window: Select to display track information of the different overlay tracks when playback is stopped.
Edit tab
· **Apply color filter:**
Select to configure VideoStudio to confine its color palette to those visible in the NTSC or PAL filter color space to make sure that all the colors are valid. Clear if for monitor display only.
· Resampling quality:
Specifies the quality of effects and clips during editing. It is recommended to use a lower resampling quality like Good to yield the most efficient editing performance.
·
Use Fit-to-Screen as default size in Overlay Track: Select this option to set default size to Fit-to-Screen for clips in Overlay Track.
·
Default inserted image/color clip duration: Specifies the default clip length for all image clips and colors that will be added in your video project. Unit of time for the duration is in seconds.
· Image resampling option:
Select a method for your image resampling.
·
Apply anti-flickering filter in image clips: Reduces the flickering that happens when using a television to view image clips.
·
Cache image clips in memory: Allows you to use the cache in handling large image files for a more efficient editing.
· Default audio fade-in/out duration:
Specifies the default duration for fading in and fading out of a video clip's audio. Value entered here will be the amount of time it will take for the volume to reach the normal level for fading in or the base for fading out.
· Enable audio while scrubbing:
Enables audio to be previewed while scrubbing on the timeline.
·
Apply audio cross-fade automatically: Allows you to automatically apply a cross-fade audio transition with two overlapping audio.
·

Default transition effect duration: Specifies duration of the transition effect applied to all clips in your video project, in seconds.

· Automatically add transition effect:

Select to apply your chosen transition effect when video and image clips overlap each other.

·

Default transition effect: Allows you to choose the default transition effect to be applied to your project.

Capture tab

· Press OK to capture: Allows you to press

OK to start capturing.

·

Record directly from CD: Allows you to record an audio track directly from a CD.

·

Captured still image save format: Specifies the format to which your captured still image file will be saved as.

·

Image quality: Determines the display quality of the captured image. The higher the quality, the bigger the file.

·

Image capture deinterlace: Enables constant image resolution when downloading files, as opposed to the progressive image resolution available with interlaced images.

·

Stop DV tape when capturing stops: Enables the DV camcorder to automatically stop the tape playback after a video capture process is complete.

· Show drop frame information:

Select to display how many frames were dropped during video capture.

·

Show Recover DVB-T Video warning before capturing: Select to show warning to recover DVB-T Video for a smooth capture.

Preview tab

·

Specify additional folders for preview files: Indicates which folder Corel VideoStudio can use to save preview files. The folder shown is the folder specified in the SET TEMP statement of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. Specify other folders if you have additional drives or a partitioned drive. If you only have one drive, leave the other boxes empty.

·

Limit hard disk usage to: Specifies how much memory you want to allocate just for the Corel VideoStudio's program. If you are only using Corel VideoStudio and want to optimize the performance, select the maximum amount possible. If you are using other programs in the background, you may want to limit this to half of the maximum file size. If left cleared, Corel VideoStudio uses your systems memory management to control the use and distribution of memory.

Smart Proxy

·

Enable Smart Proxy: Automatically creates proxy files whenever a video source file is inserted into the Timeline.

·

Create proxy when video size is (or above): Allows you to set the condition as to when proxy files will be generated. If the frame size of a video source file is the same or is higher than the chosen frame size here, a proxy file will be created for the video file.

·

Proxy folder: Sets the folder location to store proxy files.

·

Auto generate proxy template: Automatically generates proxy files with predefined settings.
· Video proxy options: Indicate the settings to be used in generating proxy files. To change the proxy file format or other settings, click Template to choose a template that already contains predefined settings, or click
Options to tweak detailed settings.
UI Layout
· Allows you to change the layout of Corel VideoStudio's user interface through four preset options.

Preferences (Create Disc)

General tab
·
VCD player compliant: Corel VideoStudio uses the VCD 2.0 format when creating VCDs. For navigation menus with background music, Corel VideoStudio uses a format that requires "variable-bit-rate (VBR)" decoding. However, some VCD players do not support VBR decoding and therefore VCDs created in Corel VideoStudio will not play correctly in these players. Select this option to make sure that the VCD created will play in these players.
·
Anti-flicker filter: Select to apply the anti-flickering filter to the menu pages. The anti-flickering filter reduces the "flickering" that happens when using a television (interlaced display) to view the menu pages. However, this does not help when the menu page is viewed on progressive scan devices such as computer monitors or projectors.
· Resume all confirmation dialog boxes:
Select to have the confirmation boxes appear even after the "Do not show again" option is selected.
·
TV system: Select the type of your TV system (NTSC or PAL).
·
Max 30MB menus for set-top DVD+VR recorder: Select to set the maximum file size for DVD menus to 30MB to make the DVD compatible with set-top DVD (DVD-VR) recorders.
·
Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save to your finished projects and captured clips.
Advanced tab
·
Create index file for MPEG seeking performance: Improves real-time preview result using the Jog Slider. This option is specific for MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 files only.
·
NTSC/PAL safe color: Uses video friendly colors to ensure the display quality of your menus when viewed on any TV system. This helps you avoid the flickering problem on videos when viewed on screen.
·
TV safe area: Sets a margin (represented by a red border) in the Preview Window of the Setup Menu page. If you set the TV safe area at 10%, the remaining 90% will be your working area. Make sure that all your menu objects are within the working area so that they can be properly viewed on screen.

Project Properties

·
Project file information: Displays various information about the project file such as file size and duration.
·
Project template properties: Displays the video file format and other attributes used by the project.
· Edit file format: Select the video format you are going to use to create your final movie. Click Edit to

open the
Project Options dialog box where you can customize compression and audio settings for the selected file format.

Project Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

TV Standard: Select the TV Standard supported in your location.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Audio Channels: Choose from Stereo or Multi-Channel Surround Sound.

General tab

·

Data track: Specify whether to create the video file or the video track only or include the audio track.

·

Frame rate: Specify the frame rate to use for the resulting video file.

·

Frame type: Select between saving your work as field-based or frame-based video files. Field-based video stores video data as two distinct fields of information for each frame. If your video is only for computer playback, you should save your work as frame-based.

·

Frame size: Select the size of the frame or define your own for the video file.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed thus avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

Compression tab

· Media Type:
Allows you to choose the compression format of your project.
· Video Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.
· Audio Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.

Project Settings (Create Disc)

·

MPEG properties for file conversion: Displays detailed information about the selected video setting.
· Change MPEG Settings: Click to open a menu where you can select a disc template for the selected file format. Click
Customize to define video save settings such as compression and frame rate.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select the output display of your project. VideoStudio supports standard 4:3 and widescreen 16:9 display aspect ratios for videos and menus.

·

Do not convert compliant MPEG files: Select to not re-render MPEG files that are already compliant to

the selected MPEG format.

·

Support X-Disc: Includes Extended disc (XDVD, XVCD and XSVCD) compatible files to your project.

·

Two-pass conversion: Improves the quality of the output video by analyzing the video data first before encoding.

·

Auto fade out first play to menu: Select to automatically crossfade from the first play clip to the menu.

·

Play all clips first before menu: Select to play all videos first, and then display the menu.

·

Auto repeat when playback ends: Select to loop the video after it is done playing back.

· Clip playback: Select whether to play the next clip or go back to the menu after playback ends. This option is disabled when
Auto repeat when playback ends is selected.

Preview Files Manager

Use the Preview Files Manager to free hard drive space occupied by temporary preview files used in your project.

·

Preview files list: Displays VideoStudio project files (VSP) that you created and saved.

·

Delete: Click to remove the temporary files of the selected VideoStudio project file from your computer.

·

Delete All: Click to remove all the temporary files of all VideoStudio project files from your computer.

·

Hard disk: Displays the available free space of the selected hard drive.

Select Device Control

·

Current device: Select the appropriate capture driver from the drop-down list to be used by VideoStudio in communicating with your device.

·

Timecode offset: Specify a value to adjust the discrepancy between the actual playing time of your device and the trimming marks specified in the DV Recording dialog box. If for example you have specified the mark in timecode for capturing and then after the process, the captured start frame is the frame before the actual mark in timecode, you can then set a value of -4 to correct the timing between the device and your capture board.

·

Description: Displays additional information about the current device control driver.

·

Options: Opens a dialog box related to the selected current device control driver. This button is disabled if your current device does not support additional options. (Consult your hardware device's manual for more information.)

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Dialog boxes

Advanced Settings (DV-to-DVD Wizard)

·

Disc format: Displays the format of the currently inserted disc.

·

Delete temp files after burning: Select to delete the temporary files in the working folder after burning.

·

Working folder: Enter or locate a folder for temporary files.

·

Auto add chapter: Select to automatically add chapters based on a specified time, recording date or scenes.

·

Create DVD folders: Select to retain the DVD folder in your hard drive after burning. This option is only available if the project is in DVD format. This also allows you to view the finished DVD title on the computer using a DVD player.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed. Thus, avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Template music volume: Drag the slider to specify the volume level to use for the background music of DVD menus.

·

Drive: Select a disc burner drive.

·

Burning speed: Select the rate on which to burn the disc.

Audio Save Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

Entire project: Creates an audio file containing the whole project.

·

Preview range: Creates an audio file containing only the range you have marked on the Timeline.

·

Play after creating it: Select to play the audio file after the file has been created.

Compression tab

· Format: Click to open the
Audio Format dialog box where you can change the audio characteristics.

·
Attributes: Select from the drop-down list of audio characteristics to use for saving.

Batch Convert

·
Batch Convert List: Displays the video files to be converted. The size, type, date modified and path of the video files are also displayed.

· Add: Opens the
Batch Convert dialog box where you can select the files you want to convert.

·
Remove: Deletes the selected file from the Batch Convert List.

·
Remove All: Deletes all the files in the Batch Convert List.

· Save in folder: Click
Browse to select a folder where to save the converted video files.

·
Save as type: Select to what file format to convert the video files.

·
Convert: Starts the conversion process.

·
Cancel: Closes the dialog box without converting the video files.

· Options: Opens the
Video Save Options dialog box where you can define save and compression settings for the selected file format.

Border/Shadow/Transparency

Border tab

· Transparent text:
Select to create a transparent effect for your text.

· Outer stroke border:
Select to create an outer stroke border for your text.

·
Border width: Specify the thickness of the border.

·
Line color: Click to select a color for the border.

·
Text transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value, the more transparent the text becomes.

·
Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value, the more the border blends with the background.

Shadow tab

·
Shadow type: Select the type of shadow to apply to your text.

·
Intensity: Set intensity of glow shadow.

·
Color: Click to select the color of the shadow.
·
Transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value the more transparent the shadow.
·
Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value the more the shadow blends with the background.

Capture Options

·
Capture audio: Captures audio when capturing from an analog device.
·
Capture to Library: Puts the captured video into the Library.
·
Force to use preview mode: Improves captured video quality when capturing in SVCD or DVD format. This is only available if your analog capture card supports this feature.
·
Capture frame rate: Select what frame rate to use when capturing the video. The higher the frame rate, the smoother the video will be.

Change Capture Plug-in

·
Current capture plug-in: Allows you to choose a capture plug-in for the driver that comes with the capture device installed on your computer. Capture plug-ins are programs that come with Corel VideoStudio. They allow VideoStudio to communicate with your video camera.
·
Description: Displays a brief description of the selected capture plug-in.

Burning Options

· Disc burner:
Specifies the settings for your burning device.
·
Drive: Sets the disc burner to use in recording the video file.
·
Speed: Ses the recording speed to use in burning the video file.
·
Files to include on disc: Allows you to include other files on the disc aside from your video project.
·
Copyright information: Includes the Corel VideoStudio copyright text.
·
Project File: Includes the VideoStudio project file used to make the video.
·
Personal folder: Includes any other folders on the disc.
·
Advanced settings: Lets you adjust more disc burning settings.
·
Test before recording: Checks (it does not actually burn yet) the CD/DVD burning capability of the drive and disc. This will help you check if the system speed is enough to send data to the CD/DVD writing device at a specified recording speed. After the simulated burning, actual burning then starts. Clear to burn the disc without performing a test.

·

Buffer underrun protection: Select to use this technology when burning your video file. This technology helps eliminate the buffer underrun problem. Availability of this technology depends on the disc burner you use.

·

Restart DVD+RW background format: Formats the DVD+RW before recording. Enabling this option will prolong the recording process but will ensure a successful burn. This is recommended when you are using the DVD+RW disc for the first time.

Note: By default, this option is not selected to ensure maximum compatibility.

Preferences: File menu

General tab

· Undo: Allows you to define the maximum number of times you can take back an action. Values range from
1-99.

·

Relink checking: Automatically performs a crosscheck between the clips in the project and their associated source files, allowing you to relink the source files to the clips. This is important when the file in the Library is moved to another folder location.

·

Show startup screen: Select to open the startup screen every time you launch VideoStudio. This startup screen allows you to choose either to open DV-to-DVD Wizard, VideoStudio Movie Wizard, or VideoStudio Editor.

·

Show MPEG Optimizer dialog box: Displays the optimal segment settings of a project to be rendered.

·

Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save your finished projects and captured clips.

· Clip display mode: Determines the manner to which your video clip will be presented on the Timeline. Select Thumbnail only if you want your clip to be represented by a corresponding thumbnail on the Timeline. Select File name only if you want your clip to be represented by its file name on the Timeline. Or you can select
Thumbnail and file name to have your clip represented by its corresponding thumbnail and file name.

·

Media Library Animation: Select to enable animation of media in library.

·

Show message when inserting first video clip into Timeline: Enables VideoStudio to prompt a message when it detects that an inserted video clip's properties do not match with the current project settings.

Note: When you capture or insert your first video clip into the project, VideoStudio automatically checks the properties of the clip and your project. If properties such as file format, frame size, etc. are not identical, VideoStudio displays a message and gives you the option to have the project settings automatically adjusted to match the clip's properties. Changing the project settings allows VideoStudio to perform SmartRender.

· Automatically save project every:
Select and specify the time interval when VideoStudio automatically saves a currently active project.

· Playback method: Allows you to choose a method for previewing your projects. Instant Playback allows you to quickly preview changes in your project without the need to create a temporary preview file, however, playback may be jerky depending on your computer resources.

High Quality Playback renders your project as a temporary preview file then plays this preview file. Playback is smoother in High Quality Playback mode, but rendering your project for the first time in this

mode may take a long time to complete depending on the size of your project and computer resources.
· In High Quality Playback mode, VideoStudio uses **SmartRender**
technology which renders only the changes you made such as transitions, titles and effects, and eliminates re-rendering the entire project. SmartRender saves time when generating previews.
·
Instant Playback target: Selects where you want to preview your project. If you have a dual head display card, you can play back your project on both the Preview Window and an external display device.
·
Background color: Specifies the background color to use for clips.
·
Display title safe area on Preview Window: Select to show the title safe area in the Preview Window when creating titles. The title safe area is a rectangular box on the Preview Window. Make sure that your text is within the title safe area to ensure that your entire text is properly displayed on the TV screen.
·
Display DV timecode on Preview Window: Displays the timecode of a DV video on the Preview Window when it is being played back. Your display card must be VMR (Video Mixing Renderer) compatible for the DV timecode to be displayed properly.
·
Display track hint on Preview Window: Select to display track information of the different overlay tracks when playback is stopped.
Edit tab
· **Apply color filter:**
Select to configure VideoStudio to confine its color palette to those visible in the NTSC or PAL filter color space to make sure that all the colors are valid. Clear if for monitor display only.
· Resampling quality:
Specifies the quality of effects and clips during editing. It is recommended to use a lower resampling quality like Good to yield the most efficient editing performance.
·
Use Fit-to-Screen as default size in Overlay Track: Select this option to set default size to Fit-to-Screen for clips in Overlay Track.
·
Default inserted image/color clip duration: Specifies the default clip length for all image clips and colors that will be added in your video project. Unit of time for the duration is in seconds.
· Image resampling option:
Select a method for your image resampling.
·
Apply anti-flickering filter in image clips: Reduces the flickering that happens when using a television to view image clips.
·
Cache image clips in memory: Allows you to use the cache in handling large image files for a more efficient editing.
· Default audio fade-in/out duration:
Specifies the default duration for fading in and fading out of a video clip's audio. Value entered here will be the amount of time it will take for the volume to reach the normal level for fading in or the base for fading out.
· Enable audio while scrubbing:
Enables audio to be previewed while scrubbing on the timeline.
·
Apply audio cross-fade automatically: Allows you to automatically apply a cross-fade audio transition with two overlapping audio.
·

Default transition effect duration: Specifies duration of the transition effect applied to all clips in your video project, in seconds.
· Automatically add transition effect:
Select to apply your chosen transition effect when video and image clips overlap each other.
·
Default transition effect: Allows you to choose the default transition effect to be applied to your project.
Capture tab
· Press OK to capture: Allows you to press
OK to start capturing.
·
Record directly from CD: Allows you to record an audio track directly from a CD.
·
Captured still image save format: Specifies the format to which your captured still image file will be saved as.
·
Image quality: Determines the display quality of the captured image. The higher the quality, the bigger the file.
·
Image capture deinterlace: Enables constant image resolution when downloading files, as opposed to the progressive image resolution available with interlaced images.
·
Stop DV tape when capturing stops: Enables the DV camcorder to automatically stop the tape playback after a video capture process is complete.
· Show drop frame information:
Select to display how many frames were dropped during video capture.
·
Show Recover DVB-T Video warning before capturing: Select to show warning to recover DVB-T Video for a smooth capture.
Preview tab
·
Specify additional folders for preview files: Indicates which folder Corel VideoStudio can use to save preview files. The folder shown is the folder specified in the SET TEMP statement of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. Specify other folders if you have additional drives or a partitioned drive. If you only have one drive, leave the other boxes empty.
·
Limit hard disk usage to: Specifies how much memory you want to allocate just for the Corel VideoStudio's program. If you are only using Corel VideoStudio and want to optimize the performance, select the maximum amount possible. If you are using other programs in the background, you may want to limit this to half of the maximum file size. If left cleared, Corel VideoStudio uses your systems memory management to control the use and distribution of memory.
Smart Proxy
·
Enable Smart Proxy: Automatically creates proxy files whenever a video source file is inserted into the Timeline.
·
Create proxy when video size is (or above): Allows you to set the condition as to when proxy files will be generated. If the frame size of a video source file is the same or is higher than the chosen frame size here, a proxy file will be created for the video file.
·
Proxy folder: Sets the folder location to store proxy files.
·

Auto generate proxy template: Automatically generates proxy files with predefined settings.
· Video proxy options: Indicate the settings to be used in generating proxy files. To change the proxy file format or other settings, click Template to choose a template that already contains predefined settings, or click
Options to tweak detailed settings.
UI Layout
· Allows you to change the layout of Corel VideoStudio's user interface through four preset options.

Preferences (Create Disc)

General tab
·
VCD player compliant: Corel VideoStudio uses the VCD 2.0 format when creating VCDs. For navigation menus with background music, Corel VideoStudio uses a format that requires "variable-bit-rate (VBR)" decoding. However, some VCD players do not support VBR decoding and therefore VCDs created in Corel VideoStudio will not play correctly in these players. Select this option to make sure that the VCD created will play in these players.
·
Anti-flicker filter: Select to apply the anti-flickering filter to the menu pages. The anti-flickering filter reduces the "flickering" that happens when using a television (interlaced display) to view the menu pages. However, this does not help when the menu page is viewed on progressive scan devices such as computer monitors or projectors.
· Resume all confirmation dialog boxes:
Select to have the confirmation boxes appear even after the "Do not show again" option is selected.
·
TV system: Select the type of your TV system (NTSC or PAL).
·
Max 30MB menus for set-top DVD+VR recorder: Select to set the maximum file size for DVD menus to 30MB to make the DVD compatible with set-top DVD (DVD-VR) recorders.
·
Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save to your finished projects and captured clips.
Advanced tab
·
Create index file for MPEG seeking performance: Improves real-time preview result using the Jog Slider. This option is specific for MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 files only.
·
NTSC/PAL safe color: Uses video friendly colors to ensure the display quality of your menus when viewed on any TV system. This helps you avoid the flickering problem on videos when viewed on screen.
·
TV safe area: Sets a margin (represented by a red border) in the Preview Window of the Setup Menu page. If you set the TV safe area at 10%, the remaining 90% will be your working area. Make sure that all your menu objects are within the working area so that they can be properly viewed on screen.

Project Properties

·
Project file information: Displays various information about the project file such as file size and duration.
·
Project template properties: Displays the video file format and other attributes used by the project.
· Edit file format: Select the video format you are going to use to create your final movie. Click Edit to

open the
Project Options dialog box where you can customize compression and audio settings for the selected file format.

Project Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

TV Standard: Select the TV Standard supported in your location.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Audio Channels: Choose from Stereo or Multi-Channel Surround Sound.

General tab

·

Data track: Specify whether to create the video file or the video track only or include the audio track.

·

Frame rate: Specify the frame rate to use for the resulting video file.

·

Frame type: Select between saving your work as field-based or frame-based video files. Field-based video stores video data as two distinct fields of information for each frame. If your video is only for computer playback, you should save your work as frame-based.

·

Frame size: Select the size of the frame or define your own for the video file.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed thus avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

Compression tab

· Media Type:
Allows you to choose the compression format of your project.
· Video Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.
· Audio Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.

Project Settings (Create Disc)

·

MPEG properties for file conversion: Displays detailed information about the selected video setting.
· Change MPEG Settings: Click to open a menu where you can select a disc template for the selected file format. Click
Customize to define video save settings such as compression and frame rate.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select the output display of your project. VideoStudio supports standard 4:3 and widescreen 16:9 display aspect ratios for videos and menus.

·

Do not convert compliant MPEG files: Select to not re-render MPEG files that are already compliant to

the selected MPEG format.

·

Support X-Disc: Includes Extended disc (XDVD, XVCD and XSVCD) compatible files to your project.

·

Two-pass conversion: Improves the quality of the output video by analyzing the video data first before encoding.

·

Auto fade out first play to menu: Select to automatically crossfade from the first play clip to the menu.

·

Play all clips first before menu: Select to play all videos first, and then display the menu.

·

Auto repeat when playback ends: Select to loop the video after it is done playing back.

· Clip playback: Select whether to play the next clip or go back to the menu after playback ends. This option is disabled when
Auto repeat when playback ends is selected.

Preview Files Manager

Use the Preview Files Manager to free hard drive space occupied by temporary preview files used in your project.

·

Preview files list: Displays VideoStudio project files (VSP) that you created and saved.

·

Delete: Click to remove the temporary files of the selected VideoStudio project file from your computer.

·

Delete All: Click to remove all the temporary files of all VideoStudio project files from your computer.

·

Hard disk: Displays the available free space of the selected hard drive.

Select Device Control

·

Current device: Select the appropriate capture driver from the drop-down list to be used by VideoStudio in communicating with your device.

·

Timecode offset: Specify a value to adjust the discrepancy between the actual playing time of your device and the trimming marks specified in the DV Recording dialog box. If for example you have specified the mark in timecode for capturing and then after the process, the captured start frame is the frame before the actual mark in timecode, you can then set a value of -4 to correct the timing between the device and your capture board.

·

Description: Displays additional information about the current device control driver.

·

Options: Opens a dialog box related to the selected current device control driver. This button is disabled if your current device does not support additional options. (Consult your hardware device's manual for more information.)

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Dialog boxes

Advanced Settings (DV-to-DVD Wizard)

·

Disc format: Displays the format of the currently inserted disc.

·

Delete temp files after burning: Select to delete the temporary files in the working folder after burning.

·

Working folder: Enter or locate a folder for temporary files.

·

Auto add chapter: Select to automatically add chapters based on a specified time, recording date or scenes.

·

Create DVD folders: Select to retain the DVD folder in your hard drive after burning. This option is only available if the project is in DVD format. This also allows you to view the finished DVD title on the computer using a DVD player.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed. Thus, avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Template music volume: Drag the slider to specify the volume level to use for the background music of DVD menus.

·

Drive: Select a disc burner drive.

·

Burning speed: Select the rate on which to burn the disc.

Audio Save Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

Entire project: Creates an audio file containing the whole project.

·

Preview range: Creates an audio file containing only the range you have marked on the Timeline.

·

Play after creating it: Select to play the audio file after the file has been created.

Compression tab

· Format: Click to open the
Audio Format dialog box where you can change the audio characteristics.

·
Attributes: Select from the drop-down list of audio characteristics to use for saving.

Batch Convert

·
Batch Convert List: Displays the video files to be converted. The size, type, date modified and path of the video files are also displayed.

· Add: Opens the
Batch Convert dialog box where you can select the files you want to convert.

·
Remove: Deletes the selected file from the Batch Convert List.

·
Remove All: Deletes all the files in the Batch Convert List.

· Save in folder: Click
Browse to select a folder where to save the converted video files.

·
Save as type: Select to what file format to convert the video files.

·
Convert: Starts the conversion process.

·
Cancel: Closes the dialog box without converting the video files.

· Options: Opens the
Video Save Options dialog box where you can define save and compression settings for the selected file format.

Border/Shadow/Transparency

Border tab

· Transparent text:
Select to create a transparent effect for your text.

· Outer stroke border:
Select to create an outer stroke border for your text.

·
Border width: Specify the thickness of the border.

·
Line color: Click to select a color for the border.

·
Text transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value, the more transparent the text becomes.

·
Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value, the more the border blends with the background.

Shadow tab

·
Shadow type: Select the type of shadow to apply to your text.

·
Intensity: Set intensity of glow shadow.

·

Color: Click to select the color of the shadow.

·

Transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value the more transparent the shadow.

·

Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value the more the shadow blends with the background.

Capture Options

·

Capture audio: Captures audio when capturing from an analog device.

·

Capture to Library: Puts the captured video into the Library.

·

Force to use preview mode: Improves captured video quality when capturing in SVCD or DVD format. This is only available if your analog capture card supports this feature.

·

Capture frame rate: Select what frame rate to use when capturing the video. The higher the frame rate, the smoother the video will be.

Change Capture Plug-in

·

Current capture plug-in: Allows you to choose a capture plug-in for the driver that comes with the capture device installed on your computer. Capture plug-ins are programs that come with Corel VideoStudio. They allow VideoStudio to communicate with your video camera.

·

Description: Displays a brief description of the selected capture plug-in.

Burning Options

· Disc burner:

Specifies the settings for your burning device.

·

Drive: Sets the disc burner to use in recording the video file.

·

Speed: Ses the recording speed to use in burning the video file.

·

Files to include on disc: Allows you to include other files on the disc aside from your video project.

·

Copyright information: Includes the Corel VideoStudio copyright text.

·

Project File: Includes the VideoStudio project file used to make the video.

·

Personal folder: Includes any other folders on the disc.

·

Advanced settings: Lets you adjust more disc burning settings.

·

Test before recording: Checks (it does not actually burn yet) the CD/DVD burning capability of the drive and disc. This will help you check if the system speed is enough to send data to the CD/DVD writing device at a specified recording speed. After the simulated burning, actual burning then starts. Clear to burn the disc without performing a test.

·

Buffer underrun protection: Select to use this technology when burning your video file. This technology helps eliminate the buffer underrun problem. Availability of this technology depends on the disc burner you use.

·

Restart DVD+RW background format: Formats the DVD+RW before recording. Enabling this option will prolong the recording process but will ensure a successful burn. This is recommended when you are using the DVD+RW disc for the first time.

Note: By default, this option is not selected to ensure maximum compatibility.

Preferences: File menu

General tab

· Undo: Allows you to define the maximum number of times you can take back an action. Values range from
1-99.

·

Relink checking: Automatically performs a crosscheck between the clips in the project and their associated source files, allowing you to relink the source files to the clips. This is important when the file in the Library is moved to another folder location.

·

Show startup screen: Select to open the startup screen every time you launch VideoStudio. This startup screen allows you to choose either to open DV-to-DVD Wizard, VideoStudio Movie Wizard, or VideoStudio Editor.

·

Show MPEG Optimizer dialog box: Displays the optimal segment settings of a project to be rendered.

·

Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save your finished projects and captured clips.

· Clip display mode: Determines the manner to which your video clip will be presented on the Timeline. Select Thumbnail only if you want your clip to be represented by a corresponding thumbnail on the Timeline. Select File name only if you want your clip to be represented by its file name on the Timeline. Or you can select
Thumbnail and file name to have your clip represented by its corresponding thumbnail and file name.

·

Media Library Animation: Select to enable animation of media in library.

·

Show message when inserting first video clip into Timeline: Enables VideoStudio to prompt a message when it detects that an inserted video clip's properties do not match with the current project settings.

Note: When you capture or insert your first video clip into the project, VideoStudio automatically checks the properties of the clip and your project. If properties such as file format, frame size, etc. are not identical, VideoStudio displays a message and gives you the option to have the project settings automatically adjusted to match the clip's properties. Changing the project settings allows VideoStudio to perform SmartRender.

· Automatically save project every:
Select and specify the time interval when VideoStudio automatically saves a currently active project.

· Playback method: Allows you to choose a method for previewing your projects. Instant Playback allows you to quickly preview changes in your project without the need to create a temporary preview file, however, playback may be jerky depending on your computer resources.

High Quality Playback renders your project as a temporary preview file then plays this preview file. Playback is smoother in High Quality Playback mode, but rendering your project for the first time in this

mode may take a long time to complete depending on the size of your project and computer resources.
· In High Quality Playback mode, VideoStudio uses **SmartRender**
technology which renders only the changes you made such as transitions, titles and effects, and eliminates re-rendering the entire project. SmartRender saves time when generating previews.
·
Instant Playback target: Selects where you want to preview your project. If you have a dual head display card, you can play back your project on both the Preview Window and an external display device.
·
Background color: Specifies the background color to use for clips.
·
Display title safe area on Preview Window: Select to show the title safe area in the Preview Window when creating titles. The title safe area is a rectangular box on the Preview Window. Make sure that your text is within the title safe area to ensure that your entire text is properly displayed on the TV screen.
·
Display DV timecode on Preview Window: Displays the timecode of a DV video on the Preview Window when it is being played back. Your display card must be VMR (Video Mixing Renderer) compatible for the DV timecode to be displayed properly.
·
Display track hint on Preview Window: Select to display track information of the different overlay tracks when playback is stopped.
Edit tab
· **Apply color filter:**
Select to configure VideoStudio to confine its color palette to those visible in the NTSC or PAL filter color space to make sure that all the colors are valid. Clear if for monitor display only.
· Resampling quality:
Specifies the quality of effects and clips during editing. It is recommended to use a lower resampling quality like Good to yield the most efficient editing performance.
·
Use Fit-to-Screen as default size in Overlay Track: Select this option to set default size to Fit-to-Screen for clips in Overlay Track.
·
Default inserted image/color clip duration: Specifies the default clip length for all image clips and colors that will be added in your video project. Unit of time for the duration is in seconds.
· Image resampling option:
Select a method for your image resampling.
·
Apply anti-flickering filter in image clips: Reduces the flickering that happens when using a television to view image clips.
·
Cache image clips in memory: Allows you to use the cache in handling large image files for a more efficient editing.
· Default audio fade-in/out duration:
Specifies the default duration for fading in and fading out of a video clip's audio. Value entered here will be the amount of time it will take for the volume to reach the normal level for fading in or the base for fading out.
· Enable audio while scrubbing:
Enables audio to be previewed while scrubbing on the timeline.
·
Apply audio cross-fade automatically: Allows you to automatically apply a cross-fade audio transition with two overlapping audio.
·

Default transition effect duration: Specifies duration of the transition effect applied to all clips in your video project, in seconds.

· Automatically add transition effect:

Select to apply your chosen transition effect when video and image clips overlap each other.

·

Default transition effect: Allows you to choose the default transition effect to be applied to your project.

Capture tab

· Press OK to capture: Allows you to press

OK to start capturing.

·

Record directly from CD: Allows you to record an audio track directly from a CD.

·

Captured still image save format: Specifies the format to which your captured still image file will be saved as.

·

Image quality: Determines the display quality of the captured image. The higher the quality, the bigger the file.

·

Image capture deinterlace: Enables constant image resolution when downloading files, as opposed to the progressive image resolution available with interlaced images.

·

Stop DV tape when capturing stops: Enables the DV camcorder to automatically stop the tape playback after a video capture process is complete.

· Show drop frame information:

Select to display how many frames were dropped during video capture.

·

Show Recover DVB-T Video warning before capturing: Select to show warning to recover DVB-T Video for a smooth capture.

Preview tab

·

Specify additional folders for preview files: Indicates which folder Corel VideoStudio can use to save preview files. The folder shown is the folder specified in the SET TEMP statement of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. Specify other folders if you have additional drives or a partitioned drive. If you only have one drive, leave the other boxes empty.

·

Limit hard disk usage to: Specifies how much memory you want to allocate just for the Corel VideoStudio's program. If you are only using Corel VideoStudio and want to optimize the performance, select the maximum amount possible. If you are using other programs in the background, you may want to limit this to half of the maximum file size. If left cleared, Corel VideoStudio uses your systems memory management to control the use and distribution of memory.

Smart Proxy

·

Enable Smart Proxy: Automatically creates proxy files whenever a video source file is inserted into the Timeline.

·

Create proxy when video size is (or above): Allows you to set the condition as to when proxy files will be generated. If the frame size of a video source file is the same or is higher than the chosen frame size here, a proxy file will be created for the video file.

·

Proxy folder: Sets the folder location to store proxy files.

·

Auto generate proxy template: Automatically generates proxy files with predefined settings.
· Video proxy options: Indicate the settings to be used in generating proxy files. To change the proxy file format or other settings, click Template to choose a template that already contains predefined settings, or click
Options to tweak detailed settings.
UI Layout
· Allows you to change the layout of Corel VideoStudio's user interface through four preset options.

Preferences (Create Disc)

General tab
·
VCD player compliant: Corel VideoStudio uses the VCD 2.0 format when creating VCDs. For navigation menus with background music, Corel VideoStudio uses a format that requires "variable-bit-rate (VBR)" decoding. However, some VCD players do not support VBR decoding and therefore VCDs created in Corel VideoStudio will not play correctly in these players. Select this option to make sure that the VCD created will play in these players.
·
Anti-flicker filter: Select to apply the anti-flickering filter to the menu pages. The anti-flickering filter reduces the "flickering" that happens when using a television (interlaced display) to view the menu pages. However, this does not help when the menu page is viewed on progressive scan devices such as computer monitors or projectors.
· Resume all confirmation dialog boxes:
Select to have the confirmation boxes appear even after the "Do not show again" option is selected.
·
TV system: Select the type of your TV system (NTSC or PAL).
·
Max 30MB menus for set-top DVD+VR recorder: Select to set the maximum file size for DVD menus to 30MB to make the DVD compatible with set-top DVD (DVD-VR) recorders.
·
Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save to your finished projects and captured clips.
Advanced tab
·
Create index file for MPEG seeking performance: Improves real-time preview result using the Jog Slider. This option is specific for MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 files only.
·
NTSC/PAL safe color: Uses video friendly colors to ensure the display quality of your menus when viewed on any TV system. This helps you avoid the flickering problem on videos when viewed on screen.
·
TV safe area: Sets a margin (represented by a red border) in the Preview Window of the Setup Menu page. If you set the TV safe area at 10%, the remaining 90% will be your working area. Make sure that all your menu objects are within the working area so that they can be properly viewed on screen.

Project Properties

·
Project file information: Displays various information about the project file such as file size and duration.
·
Project template properties: Displays the video file format and other attributes used by the project.
· Edit file format: Select the video format you are going to use to create your final movie. Click Edit to

open the
Project Options dialog box where you can customize compression and audio settings for the selected file format.

Project Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

TV Standard: Select the TV Standard supported in your location.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Audio Channels: Choose from Stereo or Multi-Channel Surround Sound.

General tab

·

Data track: Specify whether to create the video file or the video track only or include the audio track.

·

Frame rate: Specify the frame rate to use for the resulting video file.

·

Frame type: Select between saving your work as field-based or frame-based video files. Field-based video stores video data as two distinct fields of information for each frame. If your video is only for computer playback, you should save your work as frame-based.

·

Frame size: Select the size of the frame or define your own for the video file.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed thus avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

Compression tab

· Media Type:
Allows you to choose the compression format of your project.
· Video Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.
· Audio Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.

Project Settings (Create Disc)

·

MPEG properties for file conversion: Displays detailed information about the selected video setting.
· Change MPEG Settings: Click to open a menu where you can select a disc template for the selected file format. Click
Customize to define video save settings such as compression and frame rate.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select the output display of your project. VideoStudio supports standard 4:3 and widescreen 16:9 display aspect ratios for videos and menus.

·

Do not convert compliant MPEG files: Select to not re-render MPEG files that are already compliant to

the selected MPEG format.

·

Support X-Disc: Includes Extended disc (XDVD, XVCD and XSVCD) compatible files to your project.

·

Two-pass conversion: Improves the quality of the output video by analyzing the video data first before encoding.

·

Auto fade out first play to menu: Select to automatically crossfade from the first play clip to the menu.

·

Play all clips first before menu: Select to play all videos first, and then display the menu.

·

Auto repeat when playback ends: Select to loop the video after it is done playing back.

· Clip playback: Select whether to play the next clip or go back to the menu after playback ends. This option is disabled when
Auto repeat when playback ends is selected.

Preview Files Manager

Use the Preview Files Manager to free hard drive space occupied by temporary preview files used in your project.

·

Preview files list: Displays VideoStudio project files (VSP) that you created and saved.

·

Delete: Click to remove the temporary files of the selected VideoStudio project file from your computer.

·

Delete All: Click to remove all the temporary files of all VideoStudio project files from your computer.

·

Hard disk: Displays the available free space of the selected hard drive.

Select Device Control

·

Current device: Select the appropriate capture driver from the drop-down list to be used by VideoStudio in communicating with your device.

·

Timecode offset: Specify a value to adjust the discrepancy between the actual playing time of your device and the trimming marks specified in the DV Recording dialog box. If for example you have specified the mark in timecode for capturing and then after the process, the captured start frame is the frame before the actual mark in timecode, you can then set a value of -4 to correct the timing between the device and your capture board.

·

Description: Displays additional information about the current device control driver.

·

Options: Opens a dialog box related to the selected current device control driver. This button is disabled if your current device does not support additional options. (Consult your hardware device's manual for more information.)

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Dialog boxes

Advanced Settings (DV-to-DVD Wizard)

·

Disc format: Displays the format of the currently inserted disc.

·

Delete temp files after burning: Select to delete the temporary files in the working folder after burning.

·

Working folder: Enter or locate a folder for temporary files.

·

Auto add chapter: Select to automatically add chapters based on a specified time, recording date or scenes.

·

Create DVD folders: Select to retain the DVD folder in your hard drive after burning. This option is only available if the project is in DVD format. This also allows you to view the finished DVD title on the computer using a DVD player.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed. Thus, avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Template music volume: Drag the slider to specify the volume level to use for the background music of DVD menus.

·

Drive: Select a disc burner drive.

·

Burning speed: Select the rate on which to burn the disc.

Audio Save Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

Entire project: Creates an audio file containing the whole project.

·

Preview range: Creates an audio file containing only the range you have marked on the Timeline.

·

Play after creating it: Select to play the audio file after the file has been created.

Compression tab

· Format: Click to open the
Audio Format dialog box where you can change the audio characteristics.

·
Attributes: Select from the drop-down list of audio characteristics to use for saving.

Batch Convert

·
Batch Convert List: Displays the video files to be converted. The size, type, date modified and path of the video files are also displayed.

· Add: Opens the
Batch Convert dialog box where you can select the files you want to convert.

·
Remove: Deletes the selected file from the Batch Convert List.

·
Remove All: Deletes all the files in the Batch Convert List.

· Save in folder: Click
Browse to select a folder where to save the converted video files.

·
Save as type: Select to what file format to convert the video files.

·
Convert: Starts the conversion process.

·
Cancel: Closes the dialog box without converting the video files.

· Options: Opens the
Video Save Options dialog box where you can define save and compression settings for the selected file format.

Border/Shadow/Transparency

Border tab

· Transparent text:
Select to create a transparent effect for your text.

· Outer stroke border:
Select to create an outer stroke border for your text.

·
Border width: Specify the thickness of the border.

·
Line color: Click to select a color for the border.

·
Text transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value, the more transparent the text becomes.

·
Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value, the more the border blends with the background.

Shadow tab

·
Shadow type: Select the type of shadow to apply to your text.

·
Intensity: Set intensity of glow shadow.

·
Color: Click to select the color of the shadow.
·
Transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value the more transparent the shadow.
·
Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value the more the shadow blends with the background.

Capture Options

·
Capture audio: Captures audio when capturing from an analog device.
·
Capture to Library: Puts the captured video into the Library.
·
Force to use preview mode: Improves captured video quality when capturing in SVCD or DVD format. This is only available if your analog capture card supports this feature.
·
Capture frame rate: Select what frame rate to use when capturing the video. The higher the frame rate, the smoother the video will be.

Change Capture Plug-in

·
Current capture plug-in: Allows you to choose a capture plug-in for the driver that comes with the capture device installed on your computer. Capture plug-ins are programs that come with Corel VideoStudio. They allow VideoStudio to communicate with your video camera.
·
Description: Displays a brief description of the selected capture plug-in.

Burning Options

· Disc burner:
Specifies the settings for your burning device.
·
Drive: Sets the disc burner to use in recording the video file.
·
Speed: Ses the recording speed to use in burning the video file.
·
Files to include on disc: Allows you to include other files on the disc aside from your video project.
·
Copyright information: Includes the Corel VideoStudio copyright text.
·
Project File: Includes the VideoStudio project file used to make the video.
·
Personal folder: Includes any other folders on the disc.
·
Advanced settings: Lets you adjust more disc burning settings.
·
Test before recording: Checks (it does not actually burn yet) the CD/DVD burning capability of the drive and disc. This will help you check if the system speed is enough to send data to the CD/DVD writing device at a specified recording speed. After the simulated burning, actual burning then starts. Clear to burn the disc without performing a test.

·

Buffer underrun protection: Select to use this technology when burning your video file. This technology helps eliminate the buffer underrun problem. Availability of this technology depends on the disc burner you use.

·

Restart DVD+RW background format: Formats the DVD+RW before recording. Enabling this option will prolong the recording process but will ensure a successful burn. This is recommended when you are using the DVD+RW disc for the first time.

Note: By default, this option is not selected to ensure maximum compatibility.

Preferences: File menu

General tab

· Undo: Allows you to define the maximum number of times you can take back an action. Values range from
1-99.

·

Relink checking: Automatically performs a crosscheck between the clips in the project and their associated source files, allowing you to relink the source files to the clips. This is important when the file in the Library is moved to another folder location.

·

Show startup screen: Select to open the startup screen every time you launch VideoStudio. This startup screen allows you to choose either to open DV-to-DVD Wizard, VideoStudio Movie Wizard, or VideoStudio Editor.

·

Show MPEG Optimizer dialog box: Displays the optimal segment settings of a project to be rendered.

·

Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save your finished projects and captured clips.

· Clip display mode: Determines the manner to which your video clip will be presented on the Timeline. Select Thumbnail only if you want your clip to be represented by a corresponding thumbnail on the Timeline. Select File name only if you want your clip to be represented by its file name on the Timeline. Or you can select
Thumbnail and file name to have your clip represented by its corresponding thumbnail and file name.

·

Media Library Animation: Select to enable animation of media in library.

·

Show message when inserting first video clip into Timeline: Enables VideoStudio to prompt a message when it detects that an inserted video clip's properties do not match with the current project settings.

Note: When you capture or insert your first video clip into the project, VideoStudio automatically checks the properties of the clip and your project. If properties such as file format, frame size, etc. are not identical, VideoStudio displays a message and gives you the option to have the project settings automatically adjusted to match the clip's properties. Changing the project settings allows VideoStudio to perform SmartRender.

· Automatically save project every:
Select and specify the time interval when VideoStudio automatically saves a currently active project.

· Playback method: Allows you to choose a method for previewing your projects. Instant Playback allows you to quickly preview changes in your project without the need to create a temporary preview file, however, playback may be jerky depending on your computer resources.

High Quality Playback renders your project as a temporary preview file then plays this preview file. Playback is smoother in High Quality Playback mode, but rendering your project for the first time in this

mode may take a long time to complete depending on the size of your project and computer resources.
· In High Quality Playback mode, VideoStudio uses **SmartRender**
technology which renders only the changes you made such as transitions, titles and effects, and eliminates re-rendering the entire project. SmartRender saves time when generating previews.
·
Instant Playback target: Selects where you want to preview your project. If you have a dual head display card, you can play back your project on both the Preview Window and an external display device.
·
Background color: Specifies the background color to use for clips.
·
Display title safe area on Preview Window: Select to show the title safe area in the Preview Window when creating titles. The title safe area is a rectangular box on the Preview Window. Make sure that your text is within the title safe area to ensure that your entire text is properly displayed on the TV screen.
·
Display DV timecode on Preview Window: Displays the timecode of a DV video on the Preview Window when it is being played back. Your display card must be VMR (Video Mixing Renderer) compatible for the DV timecode to be displayed properly.
·
Display track hint on Preview Window: Select to display track information of the different overlay tracks when playback is stopped.
Edit tab
· **Apply color filter:**
Select to configure VideoStudio to confine its color palette to those visible in the NTSC or PAL filter color space to make sure that all the colors are valid. Clear if for monitor display only.
· Resampling quality:
Specifies the quality of effects and clips during editing. It is recommended to use a lower resampling quality like Good to yield the most efficient editing performance.
·
Use Fit-to-Screen as default size in Overlay Track: Select this option to set default size to Fit-to-Screen for clips in Overlay Track.
·
Default inserted image/color clip duration: Specifies the default clip length for all image clips and colors that will be added in your video project. Unit of time for the duration is in seconds.
· Image resampling option:
Select a method for your image resampling.
·
Apply anti-flickering filter in image clips: Reduces the flickering that happens when using a television to view image clips.
·
Cache image clips in memory: Allows you to use the cache in handling large image files for a more efficient editing.
· Default audio fade-in/out duration:
Specifies the default duration for fading in and fading out of a video clip's audio. Value entered here will be the amount of time it will take for the volume to reach the normal level for fading in or the base for fading out.
· Enable audio while scrubbing:
Enables audio to be previewed while scrubbing on the timeline.
·
Apply audio cross-fade automatically: Allows you to automatically apply a cross-fade audio transition with two overlapping audio.
·

Default transition effect duration: Specifies duration of the transition effect applied to all clips in your video project, in seconds.

· Automatically add transition effect:

Select to apply your chosen transition effect when video and image clips overlap each other.

·

Default transition effect: Allows you to choose the default transition effect to be applied to your project.

Capture tab

· Press OK to capture: Allows you to press

OK to start capturing.

·

Record directly from CD: Allows you to record an audio track directly from a CD.

·

Captured still image save format: Specifies the format to which your captured still image file will be saved as.

·

Image quality: Determines the display quality of the captured image. The higher the quality, the bigger the file.

·

Image capture deinterlace: Enables constant image resolution when downloading files, as opposed to the progressive image resolution available with interlaced images.

·

Stop DV tape when capturing stops: Enables the DV camcorder to automatically stop the tape playback after a video capture process is complete.

· Show drop frame information:

Select to display how many frames were dropped during video capture.

·

Show Recover DVB-T Video warning before capturing: Select to show warning to recover DVB-T Video for a smooth capture.

Preview tab

·

Specify additional folders for preview files: Indicates which folder Corel VideoStudio can use to save preview files. The folder shown is the folder specified in the SET TEMP statement of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. Specify other folders if you have additional drives or a partitioned drive. If you only have one drive, leave the other boxes empty.

·

Limit hard disk usage to: Specifies how much memory you want to allocate just for the Corel VideoStudio's program. If you are only using Corel VideoStudio and want to optimize the performance, select the maximum amount possible. If you are using other programs in the background, you may want to limit this to half of the maximum file size. If left cleared, Corel VideoStudio uses your systems memory management to control the use and distribution of memory.

Smart Proxy

·

Enable Smart Proxy: Automatically creates proxy files whenever a video source file is inserted into the Timeline.

·

Create proxy when video size is (or above): Allows you to set the condition as to when proxy files will be generated. If the frame size of a video source file is the same or is higher than the chosen frame size here, a proxy file will be created for the video file.

·

Proxy folder: Sets the folder location to store proxy files.

·

Auto generate proxy template: Automatically generates proxy files with predefined settings.
· Video proxy options: Indicate the settings to be used in generating proxy files. To change the proxy file format or other settings, click Template to choose a template that already contains predefined settings, or click
Options to tweak detailed settings.
UI Layout
· Allows you to change the layout of Corel VideoStudio's user interface through four preset options.

Preferences (Create Disc)

General tab
·
VCD player compliant: Corel VideoStudio uses the VCD 2.0 format when creating VCDs. For navigation menus with background music, Corel VideoStudio uses a format that requires "variable-bit-rate (VBR)" decoding. However, some VCD players do not support VBR decoding and therefore VCDs created in Corel VideoStudio will not play correctly in these players. Select this option to make sure that the VCD created will play in these players.
·
Anti-flicker filter: Select to apply the anti-flickering filter to the menu pages. The anti-flickering filter reduces the "flickering" that happens when using a television (interlaced display) to view the menu pages. However, this does not help when the menu page is viewed on progressive scan devices such as computer monitors or projectors.
· Resume all confirmation dialog boxes:
Select to have the confirmation boxes appear even after the "Do not show again" option is selected.
·
TV system: Select the type of your TV system (NTSC or PAL).
·
Max 30MB menus for set-top DVD+VR recorder: Select to set the maximum file size for DVD menus to 30MB to make the DVD compatible with set-top DVD (DVD-VR) recorders.
·
Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save to your finished projects and captured clips.
Advanced tab
·
Create index file for MPEG seeking performance: Improves real-time preview result using the Jog Slider. This option is specific for MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 files only.
·
NTSC/PAL safe color: Uses video friendly colors to ensure the display quality of your menus when viewed on any TV system. This helps you avoid the flickering problem on videos when viewed on screen.
·
TV safe area: Sets a margin (represented by a red border) in the Preview Window of the Setup Menu page. If you set the TV safe area at 10%, the remaining 90% will be your working area. Make sure that all your menu objects are within the working area so that they can be properly viewed on screen.

Project Properties

·
Project file information: Displays various information about the project file such as file size and duration.
·
Project template properties: Displays the video file format and other attributes used by the project.
· Edit file format: Select the video format you are going to use to create your final movie. Click Edit to

open the
Project Options dialog box where you can customize compression and audio settings for the selected file format.

Project Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

TV Standard: Select the TV Standard supported in your location.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Audio Channels: Choose from Stereo or Multi-Channel Surround Sound.

General tab

·

Data track: Specify whether to create the video file or the video track only or include the audio track.

·

Frame rate: Specify the frame rate to use for the resulting video file.

·

Frame type: Select between saving your work as field-based or frame-based video files. Field-based video stores video data as two distinct fields of information for each frame. If your video is only for computer playback, you should save your work as frame-based.

·

Frame size: Select the size of the frame or define your own for the video file.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed thus avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

Compression tab

· Media Type:
Allows you to choose the compression format of your project.
· Video Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.
· Audio Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.

Project Settings (Create Disc)

·

MPEG properties for file conversion: Displays detailed information about the selected video setting.
· Change MPEG Settings: Click to open a menu where you can select a disc template for the selected file format. Click
Customize to define video save settings such as compression and frame rate.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select the output display of your project. VideoStudio supports standard 4:3 and widescreen 16:9 display aspect ratios for videos and menus.

·

Do not convert compliant MPEG files: Select to not re-render MPEG files that are already compliant to

the selected MPEG format.

·

Support X-Disc: Includes Extended disc (XDVD, XVCD and XSVCD) compatible files to your project.

·

Two-pass conversion: Improves the quality of the output video by analyzing the video data first before encoding.

·

Auto fade out first play to menu: Select to automatically crossfade from the first play clip to the menu.

·

Play all clips first before menu: Select to play all videos first, and then display the menu.

·

Auto repeat when playback ends: Select to loop the video after it is done playing back.

· Clip playback: Select whether to play the next clip or go back to the menu after playback ends. This option is disabled when
Auto repeat when playback ends is selected.

Preview Files Manager

Use the Preview Files Manager to free hard drive space occupied by temporary preview files used in your project.

·

Preview files list: Displays VideoStudio project files (VSP) that you created and saved.

·

Delete: Click to remove the temporary files of the selected VideoStudio project file from your computer.

·

Delete All: Click to remove all the temporary files of all VideoStudio project files from your computer.

·

Hard disk: Displays the available free space of the selected hard drive.

Select Device Control

·

Current device: Select the appropriate capture driver from the drop-down list to be used by VideoStudio in communicating with your device.

·

Timecode offset: Specify a value to adjust the discrepancy between the actual playing time of your device and the trimming marks specified in the DV Recording dialog box. If for example you have specified the mark in timecode for capturing and then after the process, the captured start frame is the frame before the actual mark in timecode, you can then set a value of -4 to correct the timing between the device and your capture board.

·

Description: Displays additional information about the current device control driver.

·

Options: Opens a dialog box related to the selected current device control driver. This button is disabled if your current device does not support additional options. (Consult your hardware device's manual for more information.)

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Dialog boxes

Advanced Settings (DV-to-DVD Wizard)

·

Disc format: Displays the format of the currently inserted disc.

·

Delete temp files after burning: Select to delete the temporary files in the working folder after burning.

·

Working folder: Enter or locate a folder for temporary files.

·

Auto add chapter: Select to automatically add chapters based on a specified time, recording date or scenes.

·

Create DVD folders: Select to retain the DVD folder in your hard drive after burning. This option is only available if the project is in DVD format. This also allows you to view the finished DVD title on the computer using a DVD player.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed. Thus, avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Template music volume: Drag the slider to specify the volume level to use for the background music of DVD menus.

·

Drive: Select a disc burner drive.

·

Burning speed: Select the rate on which to burn the disc.

Audio Save Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

Entire project: Creates an audio file containing the whole project.

·

Preview range: Creates an audio file containing only the range you have marked on the Timeline.

·

Play after creating it: Select to play the audio file after the file has been created.

Compression tab

· Format: Click to open the
Audio Format dialog box where you can change the audio characteristics.

·
Attributes: Select from the drop-down list of audio characteristics to use for saving.

Batch Convert

·
Batch Convert List: Displays the video files to be converted. The size, type, date modified and path of the video files are also displayed.

· Add: Opens the
Batch Convert dialog box where you can select the files you want to convert.

·
Remove: Deletes the selected file from the Batch Convert List.

·
Remove All: Deletes all the files in the Batch Convert List.

· Save in folder: Click
Browse to select a folder where to save the converted video files.

·
Save as type: Select to what file format to convert the video files.

·
Convert: Starts the conversion process.

·
Cancel: Closes the dialog box without converting the video files.

· Options: Opens the
Video Save Options dialog box where you can define save and compression settings for the selected file format.

Border/Shadow/Transparency

Border tab

· Transparent text:
Select to create a transparent effect for your text.

· Outer stroke border:
Select to create an outer stroke border for your text.

·
Border width: Specify the thickness of the border.

·
Line color: Click to select a color for the border.

·
Text transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value, the more transparent the text becomes.

·
Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value, the more the border blends with the background.

Shadow tab

·
Shadow type: Select the type of shadow to apply to your text.

·
Intensity: Set intensity of glow shadow.

·

Color: Click to select the color of the shadow.

·

Transparency: Set the transparency of the text. The higher the value the more transparent the shadow.

·

Soft edge: Make the border blend smoothly with the background. The higher the value the more the shadow blends with the background.

Capture Options

·

Capture audio: Captures audio when capturing from an analog device.

·

Capture to Library: Puts the captured video into the Library.

·

Force to use preview mode: Improves captured video quality when capturing in SVCD or DVD format. This is only available if your analog capture card supports this feature.

·

Capture frame rate: Select what frame rate to use when capturing the video. The higher the frame rate, the smoother the video will be.

Change Capture Plug-in

·

Current capture plug-in: Allows you to choose a capture plug-in for the driver that comes with the capture device installed on your computer. Capture plug-ins are programs that come with Corel VideoStudio. They allow VideoStudio to communicate with your video camera.

·

Description: Displays a brief description of the selected capture plug-in.

Burning Options

· Disc burner:

Specifies the settings for your burning device.

·

Drive: Sets the disc burner to use in recording the video file.

·

Speed: Ses the recording speed to use in burning the video file.

·

Files to include on disc: Allows you to include other files on the disc aside from your video project.

·

Copyright information: Includes the Corel VideoStudio copyright text.

·

Project File: Includes the VideoStudio project file used to make the video.

·

Personal folder: Includes any other folders on the disc.

·

Advanced settings: Lets you adjust more disc burning settings.

·

Test before recording: Checks (it does not actually burn yet) the CD/DVD burning capability of the drive and disc. This will help you check if the system speed is enough to send data to the CD/DVD writing device at a specified recording speed. After the simulated burning, actual burning then starts. Clear to burn the disc without performing a test.

·

Buffer underrun protection: Select to use this technology when burning your video file. This technology helps eliminate the buffer underrun problem. Availability of this technology depends on the disc burner you use.

·

Restart DVD+RW background format: Formats the DVD+RW before recording. Enabling this option will prolong the recording process but will ensure a successful burn. This is recommended when you are using the DVD+RW disc for the first time.

Note: By default, this option is not selected to ensure maximum compatibility.

Preferences: File menu

General tab

· Undo: Allows you to define the maximum number of times you can take back an action. Values range from
1-99.

·

Relink checking: Automatically performs a crosscheck between the clips in the project and their associated source files, allowing you to relink the source files to the clips. This is important when the file in the Library is moved to another folder location.

·

Show startup screen: Select to open the startup screen every time you launch VideoStudio. This startup screen allows you to choose either to open DV-to-DVD Wizard, VideoStudio Movie Wizard, or VideoStudio Editor.

·

Show MPEG Optimizer dialog box: Displays the optimal segment settings of a project to be rendered.

·

Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save your finished projects and captured clips.

· Clip display mode: Determines the manner to which your video clip will be presented on the Timeline. Select Thumbnail only if you want your clip to be represented by a corresponding thumbnail on the Timeline. Select File name only if you want your clip to be represented by its file name on the Timeline. Or you can select
Thumbnail and file name to have your clip represented by its corresponding thumbnail and file name.

·

Media Library Animation: Select to enable animation of media in library.

·

Show message when inserting first video clip into Timeline: Enables VideoStudio to prompt a message when it detects that an inserted video clip's properties do not match with the current project settings.

Note: When you capture or insert your first video clip into the project, VideoStudio automatically checks the properties of the clip and your project. If properties such as file format, frame size, etc. are not identical, VideoStudio displays a message and gives you the option to have the project settings automatically adjusted to match the clip's properties. Changing the project settings allows VideoStudio to perform SmartRender.

· Automatically save project every:
Select and specify the time interval when VideoStudio automatically saves a currently active project.

· Playback method: Allows you to choose a method for previewing your projects. Instant Playback allows you to quickly preview changes in your project without the need to create a temporary preview file, however, playback may be jerky depending on your computer resources.

High Quality Playback renders your project as a temporary preview file then plays this preview file. Playback is smoother in High Quality Playback mode, but rendering your project for the first time in this

mode may take a long time to complete depending on the size of your project and computer resources.
· In High Quality Playback mode, VideoStudio uses **SmartRender**
technology which renders only the changes you made such as transitions, titles and effects, and eliminates re-rendering the entire project. SmartRender saves time when generating previews.
·
Instant Playback target: Selects where you want to preview your project. If you have a dual head display card, you can play back your project on both the Preview Window and an external display device.
·
Background color: Specifies the background color to use for clips.
·
Display title safe area on Preview Window: Select to show the title safe area in the Preview Window when creating titles. The title safe area is a rectangular box on the Preview Window. Make sure that your text is within the title safe area to ensure that your entire text is properly displayed on the TV screen.
·
Display DV timecode on Preview Window: Displays the timecode of a DV video on the Preview Window when it is being played back. Your display card must be VMR (Video Mixing Renderer) compatible for the DV timecode to be displayed properly.
·
Display track hint on Preview Window: Select to display track information of the different overlay tracks when playback is stopped.
Edit tab
· **Apply color filter:**
Select to configure VideoStudio to confine its color palette to those visible in the NTSC or PAL filter color space to make sure that all the colors are valid. Clear if for monitor display only.
· Resampling quality:
Specifies the quality of effects and clips during editing. It is recommended to use a lower resampling quality like Good to yield the most efficient editing performance.
·
Use Fit-to-Screen as default size in Overlay Track: Select this option to set default size to Fit-to-Screen for clips in Overlay Track.
·
Default inserted image/color clip duration: Specifies the default clip length for all image clips and colors that will be added in your video project. Unit of time for the duration is in seconds.
· Image resampling option:
Select a method for your image resampling.
·
Apply anti-flickering filter in image clips: Reduces the flickering that happens when using a television to view image clips.
·
Cache image clips in memory: Allows you to use the cache in handling large image files for a more efficient editing.
· Default audio fade-in/out duration:
Specifies the default duration for fading in and fading out of a video clip's audio. Value entered here will be the amount of time it will take for the volume to reach the normal level for fading in or the base for fading out.
· Enable audio while scrubbing:
Enables audio to be previewed while scrubbing on the timeline.
·
Apply audio cross-fade automatically: Allows you to automatically apply a cross-fade audio transition with two overlapping audio.
·

Default transition effect duration: Specifies duration of the transition effect applied to all clips in your video project, in seconds.

· Automatically add transition effect:

Select to apply your chosen transition effect when video and image clips overlap each other.

·

Default transition effect: Allows you to choose the default transition effect to be applied to your project.

Capture tab

· Press OK to capture: Allows you to press

OK to start capturing.

·

Record directly from CD: Allows you to record an audio track directly from a CD.

·

Captured still image save format: Specifies the format to which your captured still image file will be saved as.

·

Image quality: Determines the display quality of the captured image. The higher the quality, the bigger the file.

·

Image capture deinterlace: Enables constant image resolution when downloading files, as opposed to the progressive image resolution available with interlaced images.

·

Stop DV tape when capturing stops: Enables the DV camcorder to automatically stop the tape playback after a video capture process is complete.

· Show drop frame information:

Select to display how many frames were dropped during video capture.

·

Show Recover DVB-T Video warning before capturing: Select to show warning to recover DVB-T Video for a smooth capture.

Preview tab

·

Specify additional folders for preview files: Indicates which folder Corel VideoStudio can use to save preview files. The folder shown is the folder specified in the SET TEMP statement of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file. Specify other folders if you have additional drives or a partitioned drive. If you only have one drive, leave the other boxes empty.

·

Limit hard disk usage to: Specifies how much memory you want to allocate just for the Corel VideoStudio's program. If you are only using Corel VideoStudio and want to optimize the performance, select the maximum amount possible. If you are using other programs in the background, you may want to limit this to half of the maximum file size. If left cleared, Corel VideoStudio uses your systems memory management to control the use and distribution of memory.

Smart Proxy

·

Enable Smart Proxy: Automatically creates proxy files whenever a video source file is inserted into the Timeline.

·

Create proxy when video size is (or above): Allows you to set the condition as to when proxy files will be generated. If the frame size of a video source file is the same or is higher than the chosen frame size here, a proxy file will be created for the video file.

·

Proxy folder: Sets the folder location to store proxy files.

·

Auto generate proxy template: Automatically generates proxy files with predefined settings.
· Video proxy options: Indicate the settings to be used in generating proxy files. To change the proxy file format or other settings, click Template to choose a template that already contains predefined settings, or click
Options to tweak detailed settings.
UI Layout
· Allows you to change the layout of Corel VideoStudio's user interface through four preset options.

Preferences (Create Disc)

General tab
·
VCD player compliant: Corel VideoStudio uses the VCD 2.0 format when creating VCDs. For navigation menus with background music, Corel VideoStudio uses a format that requires "variable-bit-rate (VBR)" decoding. However, some VCD players do not support VBR decoding and therefore VCDs created in Corel VideoStudio will not play correctly in these players. Select this option to make sure that the VCD created will play in these players.
·
Anti-flicker filter: Select to apply the anti-flickering filter to the menu pages. The anti-flickering filter reduces the "flickering" that happens when using a television (interlaced display) to view the menu pages. However, this does not help when the menu page is viewed on progressive scan devices such as computer monitors or projectors.
· Resume all confirmation dialog boxes:
Select to have the confirmation boxes appear even after the "Do not show again" option is selected.
·
TV system: Select the type of your TV system (NTSC or PAL).
·
Max 30MB menus for set-top DVD+VR recorder: Select to set the maximum file size for DVD menus to 30MB to make the DVD compatible with set-top DVD (DVD-VR) recorders.
·
Working folder: Allows you to select the folder you want to save to your finished projects and captured clips.
Advanced tab
·
Create index file for MPEG seeking performance: Improves real-time preview result using the Jog Slider. This option is specific for MPEG-1 and MPEG-2 files only.
·
NTSC/PAL safe color: Uses video friendly colors to ensure the display quality of your menus when viewed on any TV system. This helps you avoid the flickering problem on videos when viewed on screen.
·
TV safe area: Sets a margin (represented by a red border) in the Preview Window of the Setup Menu page. If you set the TV safe area at 10%, the remaining 90% will be your working area. Make sure that all your menu objects are within the working area so that they can be properly viewed on screen.

Project Properties

·
Project file information: Displays various information about the project file such as file size and duration.
·
Project template properties: Displays the video file format and other attributes used by the project.
· Edit file format: Select the video format you are going to use to create your final movie. Click Edit to

open the
Project Options dialog box where you can customize compression and audio settings for the selected file format.

Project Options

Corel VideoStudio tab

·

TV Standard: Select the TV Standard supported in your location.

·

Perform non-square pixel rendering: Select to perform non-square pixel rendering when previewing your video. Non-square pixel support helps avoid distortion and keeps the real resolution of DV and MPEG-2 content. Generally, the square pixel is suited for the aspect ratio of computer monitors while the non-square pixel is best used for viewing on a TV screen. Remember to take into account which medium will be your primary mode of display.

·

Audio Channels: Choose from Stereo or Multi-Channel Surround Sound.

General tab

·

Data track: Specify whether to create the video file or the video track only or include the audio track.

·

Frame rate: Specify the frame rate to use for the resulting video file.

·

Frame type: Select between saving your work as field-based or frame-based video files. Field-based video stores video data as two distinct fields of information for each frame. If your video is only for computer playback, you should save your work as frame-based.

·

Frame size: Select the size of the frame or define your own for the video file.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select from a list of supported pixel aspect ratios. By applying the correct aspect ratio, images appear properly when previewed thus avoiding distorted motion and transparency on images.

Compression tab

· Media Type:
Allows you to choose the compression format of your project.
· Video Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.
· Audio Settings:
Allows you to modify the video settings of your project.

Project Settings (Create Disc)

·

MPEG properties for file conversion: Displays detailed information about the selected video setting.
· Change MPEG Settings: Click to open a menu where you can select a disc template for the selected file format. Click
Customize to define video save settings such as compression and frame rate.

·

Display aspect ratio: Select the output display of your project. VideoStudio supports standard 4:3 and widescreen 16:9 display aspect ratios for videos and menus.

·

Do not convert compliant MPEG files: Select to not re-render MPEG files that are already compliant to

the selected MPEG format.

·

Support X-Disc: Includes Extended disc (XDVD, XVCD and XSVCD) compatible files to your project.

·

Two-pass conversion: Improves the quality of the output video by analyzing the video data first before encoding.

·

Auto fade out first play to menu: Select to automatically crossfade from the first play clip to the menu.

·

Play all clips first before menu: Select to play all videos first, and then display the menu.

·

Auto repeat when playback ends: Select to loop the video after it is done playing back.

· Clip playback: Select whether to play the next clip or go back to the menu after playback ends. This option is disabled when
Auto repeat when playback ends is selected.

Preview Files Manager

Use the Preview Files Manager to free hard drive space occupied by temporary preview files used in your project.

·

Preview files list: Displays VideoStudio project files (VSP) that you created and saved.

·

Delete: Click to remove the temporary files of the selected VideoStudio project file from your computer.

·

Delete All: Click to remove all the temporary files of all VideoStudio project files from your computer.

·

Hard disk: Displays the available free space of the selected hard drive.

Select Device Control

·

Current device: Select the appropriate capture driver from the drop-down list to be used by VideoStudio in communicating with your device.

·

Timecode offset: Specify a value to adjust the discrepancy between the actual playing time of your device and the trimming marks specified in the DV Recording dialog box. If for example you have specified the mark in timecode for capturing and then after the process, the captured start frame is the frame before the actual mark in timecode, you can then set a value of -4 to correct the timing between the device and your capture board.

·

Description: Displays additional information about the current device control driver.

·

Options: Opens a dialog box related to the selected current device control driver. This button is disabled if your current device does not support additional options. (Consult your hardware device's manual for more information.)

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Appendix B: Shortcuts

Menu command shortcuts
Step Panel shortcuts
Navigation Panel shortcuts
Timeline shortcuts
Multi-trim Video shortcuts
Others

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Menu command shortcuts

Ctrl + N	Create a new project
Ctrl + O	Open a project
Ctrl + S	Save a project
Alt + Enter	Project Properties
F6	Preferences
Ctrl + Z	Undo
Ctrl + Y	Redo
Ctrl + C	Copy
Ctrl + V	Paste
Del	Delete
F1	Help

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Step Panel shortcuts

Alt + C	Go to Capture Step
Alt + E	Go to Edit Step
Alt + F	Go to Effect Step
Alt + O	Go to Overlay Step
Alt + T	Go to Title Step
Alt + A	Go to Audio Step
Alt + S	Go to Share Step
Up	Go to the previous step
Down	Go to the next step

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Navigation Panel shortcuts

F3	Set mark-in
F4	Set mark-out
Ctrl + 1	Switch to Project mode
Ctrl + 2	Switch to Clip mode
Ctrl + P	Play/Pause
Space	Play/Pause
Shift + Play button	Play the currently selected clip
Home	Home
Ctrl + H	Home
End	End
Ctrl + E	End
Ctrl + U	Previous frame
Ctrl + T	Next frame
Ctrl + R	Repeat
Ctrl + L	System Volume
Ctrl + I	Split Video
Tab	Toggle between the Trim Handles and Jog Slider.
Enter	When the left Trim Handle is active, pressing [Tab] or [Enter] switches to the right handle.
Left	If you pressed [Tab] or [Enter] to make the Trim Handles or Jog Slider active, use the Left-arrow key to move to the previous frame.
Right	If you pressed [Tab] or [Enter] to make the Trim Handles or Jog Slider active, use the Right-arrow key to move to the next frame.
ESC	If you pressed [Tab] or [Enter] to activate and toggle between the Trim Handles and Jog Slider, you can press [Esc] to deactivate the Trim Handles /Jog Slider.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Timeline shortcuts

Ctrl + A	Select all clips on the Timeline. Single title: Select all characters in the on-screen edit mode.
Ctrl + X	Single title: Cut selected characters in the on-screen edit mode.
Shift + Click	Select multiple clips in the same track. (To select multiple clips in the Library, Shift+Click or Ctrl+Click the clips.)
Left	Select the previous clip on the Timeline.
Right	Select the next clip on the Timeline.
+ / -	Zoom in/out.
Ctrl + Right	Scroll forward.
Ctrl + Left	Scroll backward.
Ctrl + Up / Page Up	Scroll up.
Ctrl + Down / Page Down	Scroll down.
Ctrl + Home	Move to the start of the Timeline.
Ctrl + End	Move to the end of the Timeline.
Ctrl + H	The previous segment.
Ctrl + E	The next segment.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Multi-trim Video shortcuts

Del	Delete
F3	Set mark-in
F4	Set mark-out
F5	Go backward in the clip
F6	Go forward in the clip
Esc	Cancel

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Others

ESC	Stop capturing, recording, rendering, or close a dialog box without making any changes. If you switched to Full Screen Preview, press [Esc] to change back to the VideoStudio Editor interface.
Double-click a transition in the Effects Library	Double-clicking a transition in the Library automatically inserts it into the first empty transition slot between two clips. Repeating this process will insert a transition into the next empty transition slot.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Appendix C: Technology Overview

Analog vs. Digital
HD Technology
SmartRender Technology
DV SmartPlay
AVCHD, BD, HD DVD, DVD, VCD, SVCD

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Analog vs. Digital

With repeated use, the magnetic tape used in High-8, 8 mm, VHS, and S-VHS becomes prone to wear and tear. It gets thinner and thinner until the video could no longer be played. On the other hand, the quality of digital video doesn't diminish over time. You can play DVs countless times and still expect the quality to be as sharp as it originally was. Digitization also extends a video's life span and allows you to enhance its original sound and picture quality.

Digitizing analog videos is a breeze with VideoStudio, wherein data captured from an analog device are automatically converted to digital format. Once digitized, you can edit these footage and output them in any disc format of your choice.



Footage can be captured from your analog source and digitized for editing in your PC.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

HD Technology

HDV users are by definition concerned with picture quality. VideoStudio allows you to work with high definition videos just as you would with DV: batch capture, edit, apply filters and transitions, then output to various formats such as SD, HD or WMV-HD for Web-sharing.

After you have connected an HDV camcorder and properly set up the device for capturing, VideoStudio will automatically set the capture plug-in and device control to HDV Capture Plug-in and HDV 1394 Device Control respectively.

The HDV Capture Plug-in converts the source video from your HDV camcorder into an MPEG-2 Program Stream (PS) video file when capturing it into your computer. By converting the video, it allows you to take advantage of VideoStudio's SmartRender technology when you edit the captured video clips. This means that whenever you preview your edits or create a video file, only the clips which have been altered will be rendered.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

SmartRender Technology

Speed is usually one of the primary concerns of users when editing videos. While working on a video project, usually, you will want to preview the project as you edit, and it can be quite discouraging if you have to wait a long time to see the results of your work.

Corel VideoStudio's SmartRender feature makes previewing and creating movies a lot faster. When you preview your video project for the first time, VideoStudio 'renders' the project by creating a temporary preview file on your hard drive which combines the video, image, and audio clips with the special effects which you applied to them. The SmartRender feature detects any changes in your project and if there are no changes, instantly plays back the preview file. If there are changes (for instance, when titles, video filters or transition effects have been added), it renders out only the edited portions, making render times much shorter and faster.

The SmartRender feature also skips re-rendering when the properties of the captured video are consistent with the project settings. It only renders your project the first time you inserted your captured video clips. When you add more captured video clips, VideoStudio directly plays back the project without rendering.

In addition to previewing your video files, Corel VideoStudio gives you an option to instantly preview your project without creating temporary files. With the Instant Playback option, you can play the entire project without having to wait then preview it immediately.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

DV SmartPlay

Corel VideoStudio's DV SmartPlay feature plays a video project directly from the Timeline out to a DV/D8 camcorder without rendering a movie file. It also lets you view your project on an external TV monitor if your IEEE-1394 capture card supports such monitor connection. While you are viewing your project on a DV/D8 camcorder, you can simultaneously record the project to the videotape by pressing Record on your camcorder.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

AVCHD, BD, DVD, VCD and SVCD

There are several factors to consider in choosing an output format for your project. These include your desired output quality, target playback device, and viewing screen size, among others. Here are the advantages and disadvantages that picking each output format entails:

AVCHD (Advanced Video Codec High Definition) A new digital video camera recording format that records 1080i and 720p high definition quality and stores data in 8 cm recordable DVDs, flash memory cards or hard disks.

BD (Blu-ray Disc) Developed by the Blu-ray disc Association, BD is an optical disc format that uses a blue-violet laser, allowing data to be packed in 25 and 50 GB Blu-ray discs and play high definition video.

Digital Versatile Disc (DVD) is popular in video production because of its quality. Not only does it guarantee superb audio and video quality, it can also hold several times more data than VCDs and SVCDs. DVDs make use of the MPEG-2 format, which has a much bigger file size than MPEG-1, and can likewise be produced as single or dual-sided, and single and dual-layered. They can be played on stand-alone DVD players or on the DVD-ROM drive of your PC.

Video Compact Disc (VCD) is a special version of a CD-ROM that uses the MPEG-1 format. The quality of the exported movie is almost the same, but usually better than VHS tape-based movies. A VCD can be played back on a CD-ROM drive, VCD player, and even on a DVD player.

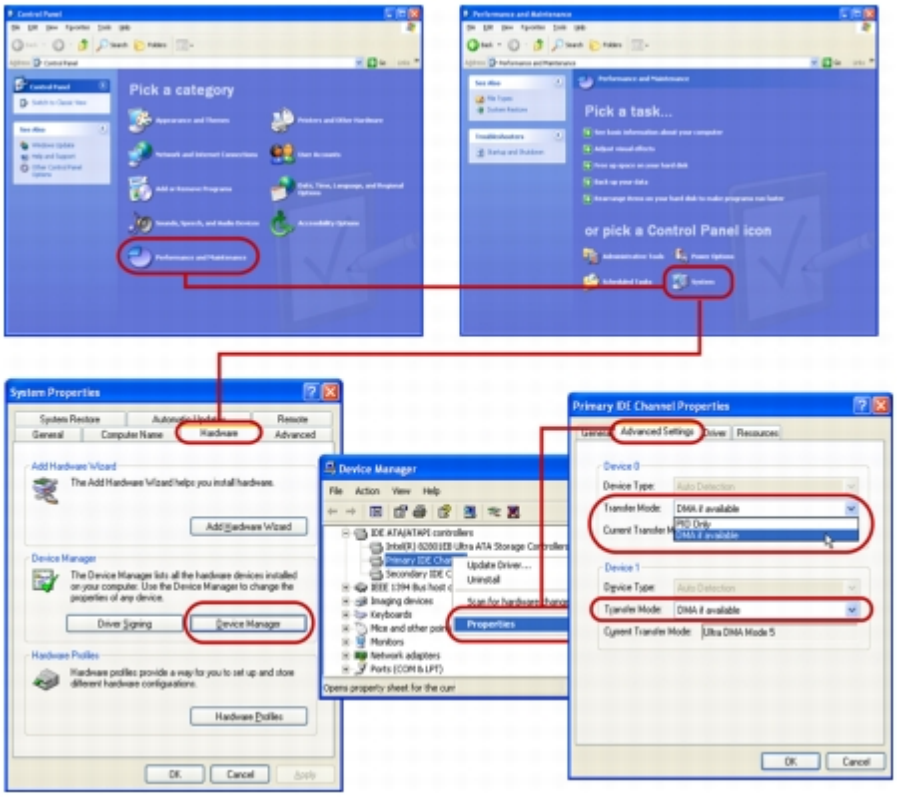
Super Video CD (SVCD) is commonly described as an enhanced version of VCD. It is based on MPEG-2 technology with Variable Bit Rate (VBR) support. The typical running time of an SVCD is about 30-45 minutes. Although you could extend this to 70 minutes, you will have to compromise sound and image quality. SVCDs can be played back on stand-alone VCD/SVCD players, most DVD players, and all CD-ROM/DVD-ROM with a DVD/SVCD player software.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

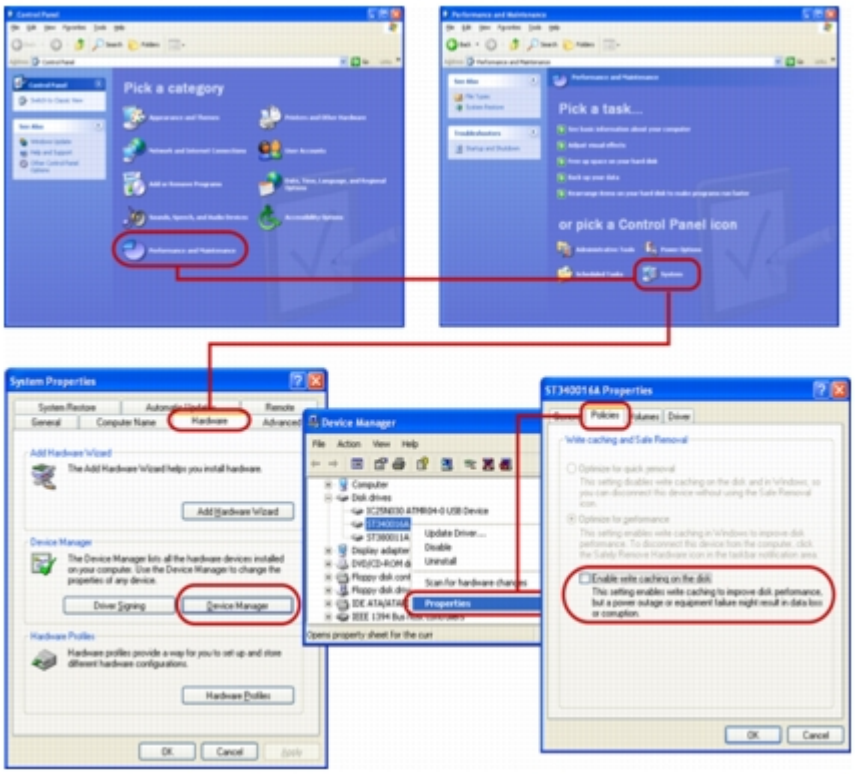
Appendix D: System tweaks

Enabling DMA for IDE disks

Direct Memory Access (DMA) is a method of transporting data from the system's main memory without passing through the CPU. Open the Control Panel's System program, and in the Device Manager, enable
DMA (Direct Memory Access) for all the hard disks (in the primary and secondary IDE channels) that will be used for capturing video. DMA avoids possible drop frame problems when you are capturing video.



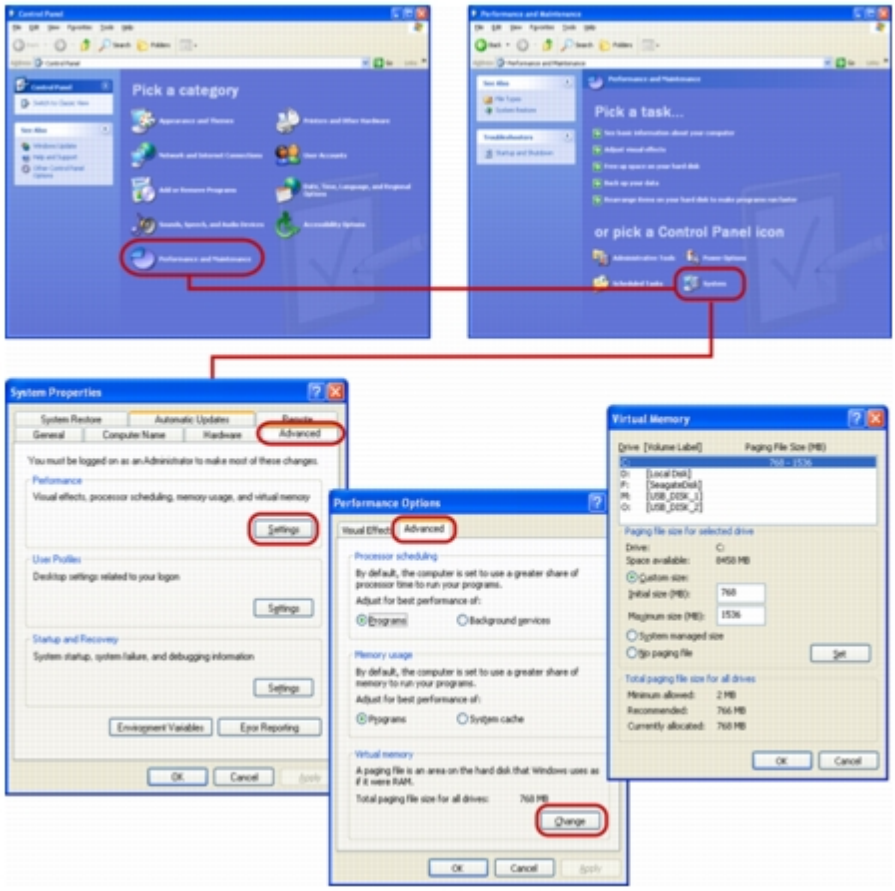
Disabling Write-Behind Caching
Disable **Write-Behind Caching**
on the hard drive used for video capture.
In Windows XP:



Setting the Paging File size

Change the values of your Paging File (Swap File) size. Set the minimum and maximum to twice your amount of RAM. For instance, if you have 256MB of RAM, set both your minimum and maximum paging file limits to 512MB.

In Windows XP:



Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Appendix E: Tips and techniques

A. DV camcorder tips
B. Web video tips
C. Troubleshooting tips

A. DV camcorder tips

· **Format the DV tape before shooting video.**

Formatting a DV tape is desirable for batch capture and for accurately locating timecodes. Formatting here means to record a blank video from start to end without interruption. This is what a professional cameraman will do with a new DV tape. Once it is formatted, you can start shooting video. Thus, when you play your video footage on the DV camcorder, the counter (displayed as Timecode on the camcorder's LCD monitor or viewfinder) keeps running even when there's no actual video.

· **How to get the best video quality out of a DV camcorder.**

Capturing video using the IEEE-1394 interface card provides loss-proof quality. After editing your project, you can then render your final movie at any file format of your choice.

If you don't have an IEEE-1394 card or a DV camcorder, the second choice is to use an analog capture card. If you intend to record your finished project back to the videotape, using an analog capture card with S-video output yields better video quality.

B. Web video tips

· **Use a smaller frame size for movie files intended for the Web.**

A one-minute video clip, which is captured in its native DV AVI format from a DV camcorder, takes about 200MB of disk space. If you have such a large-size captured clip inserted in your project, it will also take much time to render the project into a movie file. For files that you intend to send over the Internet, it's better to use a smaller frame size (for example, 352 x 240) when rendering.

· **About Windows Media Video (*.WMV) and RealVideo (*.RM) files**

Corel VideoStudio lets you create movies in file formats such as Windows Media Video (*.WMV) and RealNetworks RealVideo (*.RM) formats for streaming over the Internet and for playback on computers. Windows Media Video files can be directly inserted into a VideoStudio project and edited.

C. Troubleshooting tips

· **Power on the camcorder to reestablish connection.**

Camcorders may automatically shut down to save power, as such, losing the connection between the camcorder and Corel VideoStudio is common. When this happens, users need to turn on the camcorder to reestablish connection. There is no need to close and reopen VideoStudio, since the program can automatically detect capture devices.

· **When VideoStudio cannot accurately locate timecodes...**

When capturing video or positioning the tape at a particular timecode, sometimes VideoStudio may not be able to locate the timecode accurately and may even halt the program itself. When this happens, you

may need to shut down the program. Another option is to turn off your camcorder, then wait for a few seconds (at least six seconds) before turning it back on. This resets VideoStudio, and once again, allows the program to properly detect capture devices.

· **If VideoStudio cannot control the DV camcorder...**

If VideoStudio cannot control your DV camcorder and locate specific timecodes accurately, select Tools: Select Device Control and click the
Options button. A Device Control Options dialog box then appears. Here, you can fine-tune the control settings so that your camcorder and VideoStudio can work together more closely in the way that you like.

Note: Failure to locate the correct timecode may lead to unexpected problems (such as noise or delays) during capturing or recording back to the DV camcorder.

· **If VideoStudio does not work properly...**

Repair VideoStudio if it does not work properly. To repair VideoStudio, double-click Add or Remove Programs in the Control Panel. Select Corel VideoStudio, click Change/Remove, then click
Repair.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.

Glossary

Analog
A signal that is not digital. Most VCRs, radio/television broadcasting, AV in/out, S-VIDEO, and stereos are analog. Computers are digital, dealing in ones and zeros. Information from an analog source must be digitized to be used on a computer.
Aspect Ratio
The relationship of width to height for a given image or graphic. Keeping or maintaining the aspect ratio refers to the process of maintaining size relationships when either the width or height of an image or graphic is changed.
AVI
Audio-Video Interleave is a digital video file format designed specifically for the Microsoft Windows environment.
BD
Blu-ray Disc is an optical disc format that uses a blue-violet laser, allowing data to be packed in 25 and 50 GB Blu-ray discs and play high definition video.
Capture
The recording of video or images to a computer hard disk.
Capture Plug-ins
These are utilities integrated with Corel VideoStudio that allow the program to recognize capture devices and automatically detect them when they are connected to the computer.
Clip
A short section or part of a movie. A clip can be audio, video, still images or a title.
Codec
COmpress and DECompress. All videos on a computer uses a special algorithm or program to process video. This program is called a codec.
Color Clip
A simple background color used in a movie. It is often used for titles and credits since they stand out clearly against the solid color.
Composite Video
A video signal that combines luminance and chrominance. NTSC and PAL are examples of composite video.
Compression
Making a file smaller by removing redundant data. Nearly all digital video is compressed in some way or another. Compression is achieved through a codec.
Data Rate
The amount of data per second that is transferred from one part of your computer to another. In digital video, the data rate of your source is very important: CD-ROMs have lower data rates than hard disks. The data rate of the Internet is very low.
Device Control
A software driver that allows programs to control video sources like the camcorder or VCR.
Digital

Computer data consisting of ones and zeros. Contrast digital information with analog.

Digitizing

The process of converting analog input to a digital form so that it can be used by the computer.

DNLE

Digital Non-Linear Editing is a method of combining and editing multiple video clips to produce a finished product. DNLE offers random access to all source materials and all portions on the master tape at all times during the editing process.

Driver

A software program that controls the connection between a specific device and a computer.

DV

Digital Video with a capital "D" and a capital "V" stands for a very specific format of video, just like VHS or High-8. This format can be understood (played back, recorded) by your camcorder and also by your computer, if you have the proper hardware (capture card) and software (DV codec). The most exciting thing about DV is that it can be copied from your camcorder to your computer, and then back to your camcorder (after editing, of course) without any loss of quality.

DVD

Digital Versatile Disc (DVD)

is popular in video production because of its quality. Not only does it guarantee superb audio and video quality, it can also hold several times more data than VCDs and SVCDs. DVDs make use of the MPEG-2 format, which has a much bigger file size than MPEG-1, and can likewise be produced as single or dual-sided, and single and dual-layered. They can be played on stand-alone DVD players or on the DVD-ROM drive of your PC.

Effect

In VideoStudio, an effect is a special computer generated transition between two video clips.

Export

The process of sharing files between applications. When you export a file, the data is usually converted into a format that is recognizable by the receiving application. The original file remains unchanged.

Fade

A transition effect where the clip gradually disappears or appears. In video, the picture would gradually change to or from a solid color; for audio, the transition would be from full volume to complete silence or vice-versa.

FireWire

A standard interface used for connecting digital audio/video devices such as DV camcorders to computers. It is the trademarked name given by Apple Computers for the IEEE-1394 standard.

Footage

A length of recorded film intended for use in a larger project.

Frame

A single image in a movie.

Frame Rate

The number of frames per second in a video. NTSC video is commonly 29.97 frames per second (fps), but smaller video files can be created on the computer by using lower frame rates, like 15 fps (not suitable for VCD or DVD).

Frame Size

The size of displayed images in video or animation sequences. If an image intended for the sequence is larger or smaller than the current frame size, it must be resized or cropped.

HDV

Abbreviation for High Definition Video. It is the video recording format that allows for high data compression, and in turn allows for higher picture resolutions. HDV can go up to 1920 x 1080 in resolution.

HiColor

A 16-bit image data type that can contain up to 65,536 colors. The TGA file format supports images of

this type. Other file formats require prior conversion of a HiColor image into True Color. For displays, HiColor normally refers to 15-bit (5-5-5) display adapters that can display up to 32,768 colors.

IEEE

Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers is a non-profit organization that sets and reviews standards for the electronics industry.

IEEE-1394

A standard that allows high-speed serial connections between the computer and a DV camcorder, VCR or any kind of digital audio/video device. Devices conforming to this standard are capable of transmitting digital data at 100 megabits per second (at the least).

Instant Playback

Allows you to view the entire project without rendering. It instantly plays all the clips in the Preview Window without creating a temporary preview file in your system. However, if played in a slower computer, it may drop some frames. If the project is composed of many effects, filters, titles, etc., and you're playing it in a slow PC, then drop frames may occur.

If Instant Playback results in drop frames, then use

High Quality Playback to preview a project.

Key frame

A specific frame in a clip that is flagged for special editing or other activities in order to control the flow, playback or other characteristics of the completed animation. For example, when applying a video filter, assigning different effect levels on the beginning and end frames shows a change in the appearance of the video from start to end of the video clip. When creating a video, assigning key frames on parts where there are high data transfer requirements helps control how smoothly the video plays back.

Library (Corel VideoStudio)

The Library is the repository for all of your media clips. You can store video, audio, titles, or color clips in the Library and instantly retrieve them for use in a project.

Linear Editing

Traditional editing done on a flatbed where the source film is fed in one side, marked, cut, and spliced, and then fed out the other end. It's called linear because tape must be edited in the order it's presented (as opposed to non-linear editing).

Link

A method of storing previously saved information in another program without significantly affecting the size of the resulting file. Linking offers another advantage in that the original file can be modified in its original program and the changes will automatically be reflected in the program where it is linked.

Mark In/Out

Points in a clip that have been marked for editing and trimming purposes. A section can be selected from a longer clip by setting its beginning (Mark in) and ending (Mark out).

MP3

Abbreviation of MPEG Audio Layer-3. MP3 is an audio compression technology that produces near CD audio quality at a very small file size, making it transfer quickly over the Internet.

MPEG-1

A standard for video and audio compression used in many products like VCD. For NTSC, its video resolution is 352x240 pixels at 29.97 fps. For PAL, it works at 352x288 pixels at 25 fps.

MPEG-2

A subset of MPEG-1. It's a standard for video and audio compression used in products like DVD. For NTSC DVD, its video resolution is 720x480 pixels at 29.97 fps. For PAL DVD, it works at 720x576 pixels at 25 fps.

NLE

Non-Linear Editing. Conventional editing on a VCR is necessarily linear because you must access clips on a video tape in order. Computer editing can be done in any order that is convenient.

Noise

Small audible or visual discrepancies that adversely affect audio and video files which have been

recorded or captured incorrectly or with faulty equipment.

NTSC/PAL

NTSC is the video standard in North America, Japan, Taiwan, and some other regions. Its frame rate is 29.97 fps. PAL is common in Europe, Australia, New Zealand, China, Thailand, and some other Asian places, which has a frame rate of 25 fps. There are other differences. In the world of DV and DVD, NTSC has the video resolution of 720x480 pixels, while PAL has 720x576 pixels.

Overlay

These are the superimposed video or image clips over existing clips in your project.

Plug-ins

Plug-ins are utilities that add more functions and effects to a program. In Corel VideoStudio, plug-ins have made it possible for the program to automatically recognize capture devices as well as output videos for different purposes such as for e-mail, Web page, video greeting cards, and DV recording.

Profile

A Profile covers various attributes for a Windows Media Format file such as bit rate, number and type of streams, compression quality, frame size and so on.

Project File

In VideoStudio, a project file (*.VSP) contains the required information to link all associated image, audio, and video files. You need to open a project file first before starting video-editing in VideoStudio.

Render

Rendering is the process of making a finished movie from the source files in a project.

Scenes

A scene is a series of frames binded by continuity. In Corel VideoStudio, each scene that is captured using the Split by Scene feature is based on the footage's recording date and time. In a captured DV AVI file, scenes can be separated into several files based on the footage's recording date and time or by changes in the content of the video. In an MPEG-1 or MPEG-2 file, scenes are separated into files based on content changes.

Seamless Capture

As a workaround to the 4 GB capture file size limitation in Windows systems that use the FAT 32 file system (such as Windows 98 and Windows Me), Corel VideoStudio automatically saves captured video as a new file when this limitation has been reached. This method, known as seamless capture, allows the capturing process to be performed uninterrupted no matter how long the footage is. VideoStudio performs seamless capture when capturing DV Type-1 or DV Type-2 (from DV camcorder), or when capturing MPEG video (from DV camcorder or analog capture device).

Windows systems such as Windows 2000 and Windows XP that are installed using the NTFS file system do not have the 4 GB limitation.

SmartRender

SmartRender technology renders only project changes, eliminating the need to re-render whole projects and enabling fast previewing.

Split by scene

This feature automatically splits up different scenes into individual files. In Corel VideoStudio, the way scenes are detected depends on which step you are in. In the Capture Step, Split by Scene detects individual scenes based on the original footage's recording date and time. In the Edit Step, if Split by Scene is applied to a DV AVI file, scenes can be detected in two ways: by the recording date and time, or by the changes in the content of the video. Whereas in an MPEG file, scenes are detected only based on the content changes.

Storyboard

A Storyboard is a visual representation of your movie. Individual clips are represented as image thumbnails on the Timeline.

Streaming

This is a relatively new Internet technology that allows large files to be played as they are being downloaded. Streaming is commonly used for large video and audio files.

SVCD
Super Video CD (SVCD)
is commonly described as an enhanced version of VCD. It is based on MPEG-2 technology with Variable Bit Rate (VBR) support. The typical running time of an SVCD is about 30-45 minutes. Although you could extend this to 70 minutes, you will have to compromise sound and image quality. SVCDs can be played back on stand-alone VCD/SVCD players, most DVD players, and all CD-ROM/DVD-ROM with a DVD/SVCD player software.
Template
A work pattern in a software program. It includes predefined formats and settings to save user's efforts and reduce risks of making mistakes.
Timecode
The timecode of a video file is a numerical way of representing the position in a video. Timecodes can be used to make very accurate edits.
Timeline
The Timeline is a graphic representation of your movie in chronological order. The relative size of clips on the Timeline gives you an accurate idea of the length of your media clips.
Title
A title can be a movie title, a caption or credit. Any text, image, or video file that overlays in your movie can be referred to as titles.
Transition Effect
A transition is a method of sequencing between two video clips, like fading from one into another. In Corel VideoStudio, there are a large variety of special transitions available, and they are called Effects.
Trim
The process of editing or cropping a movie clip. Computer video can be trimmed frame by frame.
VCD
Video Compact Disc (VCD)
is a special version of a CD-ROM that uses the MPEG-1 format. The quality of the exported movie is almost the same, but usually better than VHS tape-based movies. A VCD can be played back on a CD-ROM drive, VCD player, and even on a DVD player.
Video Filters
A video filter is a method of changing the appearance of a video clip, like mosaic and ripple.
Voiceover
The narration of a video or movie is commonly called the voiceover. This is most notable in documentaries such as nature shows.

Note: This online Help provides information on the features of different Corel VideoStudio editions. Some features are not available in all editions. Visit www.corel.com for more information.